Accessory Design Guidelines for Apple Devices

Release R23

Contents

Overview 21

1. Introduction 22

2. Requirements 23
3. Terminology 24
3.1 Device 24
3.2 Accessory 24
3.3 Component 24
3.4 Control Surface 25
3.5 Direct User Action 25
3.6 Built-In Cable 25
3.7 Apple MFi Program 26
3.8 Accessory Interface Specification 26
Accessories 27
4. All Accessories 28
4.1 Scratches and Damage 28
4.2 Compliance Testing 28
4.3 Integrated USB Receptacles 28
4.4 User Supplied Cables and AC Power Adapters 29
4.5 TDMA Noise 29
4.6 Attachments 29
4.7 Magnetic Interference 29
4.8 Radio Frequency (RF) Performance 31
4.8.1 Materials and Coatings 31
4.8.2 Antenna Keep-Out 31
4.8.3 Over The Air (OTA) Transmission/Reception 31
4.8.4 Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) 32
4.8.5 Near Field Communication (NFC) 32
4.9 Thermal Management 33

4.10 Tripod Connections 344.11 Anthropometric Considerations 34
5. Cases 35 5.1 Product Design 35 5.1.1 Device Protection 35 5.1.2 Access to Inputs and Interconnects 36 5.1.3 Dock Compatibility 41 5.1.4 Wireless Power and Rear Pockets 41 5.2 Acoustics 41 5.2.1 Call Quality 41
 5.2.2 Speaker to Microphone Coupling 41 5.2.3 Speaker/Microphone Openings 42 5.3 Ambient Light Sensor and Proximity Sensor 44 5.4 Taptic Engine 44
5.5 Magnetic Interference 45 5.6 Touch ID 45 5.7 Camera 46 5.7.1 Geometry 46 5.7.2 Color 46 5.7.3 Surface Finish 46
5.7.4 Image Degradation Examples 47 5.8 Reliability 48 5.8.1 Device Insertion and Removal 48 5.8.2 Colorfastness 48 5.9 Environmental 48 5.10 Test Procedures 49 5.10.1 Device Models 49 5.10.2 Product Design 67
5.10.3 Taptic Engine 69 5.10.4 Touch ID Sensor Overlays 69 5.10.5 Camera 70 5.10.6 Near-Field Communication (NFC) 71 5.10.7 Compass 72 5.10.8 Acoustics 73
6. Covers 75 6.1 Device Protection 75 6.2 Magnetic Interference 75 6.3 Smart Covers 75

7. Screen Overlays 77
7.1 Product Design 77
7.1.1 Optical Transmission 77
7.1.2 Infrared Transmission 78
7.1.3 Transmission Haze 78
7.1.4 Dynamic Island 79
7.2 Edge Swipe Gestures 79
8. Camera Attachments 80
8.1 Magnetic Interference 80
9. Adapters 81
9.1 Headset Adapters (Lightning to 3.5 mm) 81
9.2 USB-A/USB-C to Lightning Headset Adapters 81
9.3 Lightning to USB Micro-B Adapters 81
10. AC Power Adapters 83
10.1 Converter Switching Frequencies 83
10.2 YCAP AC Capacitor 83
10.3 Impedance Stability 83
10.4 Fuse Protection 84
10.5 Short Circuit Response 85
11. Battery Packs 86
12. Headsets 87
12.1 Product Design 87
12.2 Audio Interface 87
12.3 Remote Controls 87
12.4 USB-C Headset Identification 88
13. Strobes 89
14. Keyboards 91
14.1 Requirements 91
14.2 Examples 96
14.2.1 Example HID Report Descriptor 96
15. Trackpads 97
15.1 Requirements 97

15.1.1 Integration with Keyboards 97 15.1.2 HID Report Descriptor 97 15.1.3 Coexistence 98 15.1.4 Performance 98 15.1.5 Input Confidence 99 15.1.6 Click to Wake 99 15.2 Examples 100 15.2.1 Example HID Report Descriptor 100 15.2.2 Example Trackpad 103
40. Followed Olement 400
16. External Storage 106
16.1 Overview 106
16.2 Apple ProRes 4K 106
16.3 Test Procedures 107
16.3.1 Apple ProRes 4K 107
17. AirPods Accessories 108
17.1 Charging Case Covers 108
17.2 Chargers 109
17.3 AirPods Max Accessories 109
17.3.1 Sleep Mode 109
17.4 Magnetic Flux Probe 110
17.5 Test Procedures 111
17.5.1 Power 111
17.5.1 Power III
18. Apple Vision Pro Accessories 112
18.1 Apple Vision Pro Storage Cases 112
18.2 Apple Vision Pro Battery Holders 112
18.3 Apple Vision Pro Bands 113
18.4 Test Procedures 113
18.4.1 Equipment 113
18.4.2 Peel Force Test 113
19. Watch Bands 115
19.1 Requirements 115
19.2 Apple Watch Band Interface 117
19.3 Example Apple Watch Lug Assembly 118
19.4 Example Apple Watch Lug 120
13.4 Example Apple Water Lug 120

20. Apple MagSafe Charger Mounts

2024-09-19 | Copyright © 2024 Apple Inc. All Rights Reserved.

20.1 Mechanical 121 21. StandBy Mounts 122 21.1 Product Design 123 21.2 Test Procedures 124 124 21.2.1 Equipment 21.2.2 Enable StandBy 124 21.2.3 Product Design 124 22. Continuity Camera Mounts 22.1 Product Design 126 22.2 Apple TV Mount 127 22.3 MacBook Mount 128 22.4 iMac or Display Mount 129 22.5 Test Procedures 130 22.5.1 Equipment 130 22.5.2 Test Setup 130 22.5.3 Product Design 131 22.5.4 Center Stage 131 22.5.5 Desk View 132 Features 134 23. Accessory Power (USB-C) 23.1 Available Current 135 23.2 Fast Role Swap (FRS) 136 23.3 Test Procedures 136 23.3.1 Maximum Accessory Power 136 24. Accessory Power (Lightning) 25. App Discovery 140 26. App Launch 27. App Match 142 28. Bluetooth Accessory Identification 143

28.1 HFP Command AT+XAPL

29. Bluetooth Headset Battery Level Indication 145 29.1 HFP Command AT+IPHONEACCEV 145
30. Device Power (USB-C) 146
30.1 External Power Source 146
30.2 Power State Changes 147
30.21 ower state shanges 147
31. Device Power (Lightning) 148
31.1 Direct Power Source 148
31.2 External Power Source 148
31.3 Declaring Capability 149
31.4 Providing Power using USB Connectors 149
31.5 Labeling Multiple Connectors 149
31.6 Fast Charge for iPhone (20 W) 150
31.7 Overcurrent and Short Circuit Protection 151
31.8 Overcurrent and Short Circuit Protection Resets 152
31.9 Power State Changes 152
32. Device Power (Inductive) 153
32.1 Qi Wireless Power 153
32.2 MagSafe 154
32.3 Electromagnetic Compatibility (EMC) 155
ezie zieckiemagnekie cempakiemi, (zme)
33. Ethernet over USB 157
34. External Accessory Protocol 158
35. HID Headset Remote 159
35.1 Requirements 159
35.2 Examples 160
35.2.1 Headset Remote Example HID Report Descriptor (Telephony) 160
35.2.2 Headset Remote Example HID Report Descriptor (Media Playback) 160
35.2.3 Headset Remote Example HID Report Descriptor (Telephony and Media Playback)
161
36. Location Information 163
37. MagSafe Attach 164
37.1 MagSafe Case Magnet Array 165
37.1.1 Product Design 165

37.1.2 Mechanical 165
37.1.3 Magnetic Interference 171
37.2 MagSafe Accessory Magnet Array 172
37.2.1 Product Design 172
37.2.2 Mechanical 172
37.3 MagSafe Accessory Enclosure Geometry 179
37.4 Test Procedures 180
37.4.1 MagSafe Case Magnet Array 180
37.4.2 MagSafe Accessory Magnet Array 183
38. Media Library Access 185
39. Musical Instrument Digital Interface (MIDI) 186
39.1 Requirements 186
39.2 Test Procedures 186
40. Now Playing Updates 187
41. Out-of-Band Bluetooth Pairing 188
42. Siri 189
42.1 Enabling Custom Siri Commands 189
42.2 Obtaining Siri Availability Information 189
42.2.1 Obtaining Status Information at Connection 189
42.2.2 Receiving Siri Availability Updates from the Device 190
42.3 Initiating a Siri Session 191
42.3.1 Initiating a Session from the Accessory 191
42.3.2 Initiating a Session from the Device 192
42.3.3 Ending a Session from the Accessory 193
42.4 Siri Eyes Free Mode 193
42.4.1 HFP Command AT+APLEFM 194
42.5 Improving Voice Recognition 194
42.5.1 Wide Band Speech Support 195
42.6 Optimizing the Siri Experience 195
42.7 Common Siri Applications 196
42.7.1 Initialization Procedure After Connection is Established 196
42.7.2 Phone Dialing Using Siri 197
42.7.3 Audio Routing and Media Playback Using Siri 197
42.7.4 Turn-By-Turn Directions Using Siri 198 42.8 User Interaction with Siri Eyes Free in a Vehicle 198
42.0 OSCI IIILEI ACUOTI WILLI SIII EYES FIEE III A VEHILLE 130

42.9 Enabling/Disabling Siri from the Device 200 42.10 Test Procedures 201 42.10.1 Siri Eyes Free 201 43. Wi-Fi Information Sharing **Protocols** 207 44. USB Power Capability Vendor Request 45. USB D+/D- Resistor Networks 45.1 Declaring Power Source Capability 45.2 Identifying Power Source Current Limit 46. USB Power Delivery (PD) 212 47. USB Type-C Current 213 48. Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP) 48.1 Bluetooth A2DP Specification 48.1.1 AVDTP Transactions 48.2 SubBand Codec (SBC) 214 48.3 MPEG 2/4 AAC Codecs 215 48.4 Test Procedures 216 48.4.1 Audio Quality 216 48.4.2 Audio Switching 216 48.4.3 HFP Interaction 217 48.4.4 Siri 217 48.4.5 Video Playback 217 49. iAP2 218 50. Human Interface Device (HID) 50.1 Requirements 219 50.1.1 Report Descriptor 220 50.1.2 USB 220 50.2 Test Procedures 220 50.2.1 General 220

Transports 222

51. Bluetooth 223
51.1 Enhanced Data Rate 223
51.2 Adaptive Frequency Hopping 223
51.3 Sniff Mode for Low Power Consumption 223
51.4 Role and Topology Management 224
51.5 Extended Inquiry Response 225
51.6 Secure Simple Pairing 225
51.7 Pairing Button 225
51.8 Class of Device (CoD) 226
51.9 Link Supervision Timeout 226
51.10 Delay Reporting 226
51.11 Profiles 226
51.11.1 Device ID Profile (DID) 226
51.11.2 Service Discovery Protocol (SDP) 227
51.11.3 Hands-Free Profile (HFP) 227
51.11.4 Message Access Profile (MAP) 229
51.11.5 Audio/Video Remote Control Profile (AVRCP) 230
51.11.6 Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP) 232
51.12 Audio Routing 232
51.12.1 Audio Data Received using HFP Profile 232
51.12.2 Audio Data Received using A2DP Profile 232
51.13 HID 234
52. Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE) 235
52.1 Role 235
52.2 Advertising Channels 235
52.3 Advertising PDU 235
52.4 Advertising Data 235
52.5 Advertising Interval 236
52.6 Connection Parameters 237
52.7 Data Packet Length Extension 237
52.8 Privacy 238
52.9 Permissions 238
52.10 Pairing 238
52.11 MTU Size 239
52.12 Services 239
52.12.1 Generic Access Profile Service 239

52.12.2 Generic Attribute Profile Service					
52.12.3 Device Infor	mation Se	ervice	240		
52.12.4 Available Se	rvices	240			
52.13 GATT Server 2	40				

Modules 242

53. Apple USB-C Analog Headset Module 243

53.1 Overview 243 53.1.1 Additional Specifications & Support 244 244 53.1.2 Procurement 53.2 Mechanical 244 53.2.1 Shielding 244 53.3 Pad Assignments 245 53.4 Electrical 246 53.4.1 DAC Characteristics 246 53.5 C125 Dimensions 248 53.6 C125 Recommended Clamshell Shields 249 53.7 C125 Recommended Rear Shield

Components 251

54. Headset Remote and Microphone Transmitter 252

54.1 Overview 252 54.2 Requirements 252 54.3 Usage 257 54.3.1 Pin Assignments 258 54.3.2 Maximum Voltage and Current Ratings 258 54.3.3 Electrical Characteristics 259 54.3.4 Theory of Operation 260 54.3.5 Button Mode 261 54.3.6 Tone Mode 262 54.4 Button Detection Circuitry Usage 54.4.1 Button Detection Circuitry Adjustments 268

Connectors 269

55. USB-A Receptacle 55.1 Mechanical 270 55.2 Electrical 270 56. USB-C Plug 271 56.1 Overview 271 56.2 Mechanical 271 56.3 Electrical 272 56.3.1 Drawing Power 272 56.3.2 Providing Power 273 56.4 Test Procedures 273 56.4.1 Mechanical 273 56.4.2 Connector Test ID 273 56.4.3 Drawing Power 273 57. USB-C Receptacle 275 57.1 Overview 275 57.2 Mechanical 275 57.3 Electrical 275 57.3.1 Drawing Power 275 276 57.3.2 Providing Power 57.4 USB-C receptacle accessory keep-out 277 **57.5 Test Procedures** 278 57.5.1 Connector Test ID 278 57.5.2 Drawing Power 278 57.5.3 Providing Power 279 Tools 280 58. Accessory Developer Assistant (ADA) 58.1 Autofocus & Optical Image Stabilization Test Profile 281

270

References 283

59. Device Dimensional Drawings

59.1 iPhone 16 Pro Max, 1 of 4 292 59.2 iPhone 16 Pro Max, 2 of 4 293 59.3 iPhone 16 Pro Max, 3 of 4 294

```
295
59.4 iPhone 16 Pro Max, 4 of 4
59.5 iPhone 16 Pro, 1 of 4
                             296
59.6 iPhone 16 Pro, 2 of 4
                             297
59.7 iPhone 16 Pro, 3 of 4
                             298
59.8 iPhone 16 Pro, 4 of 4
                             299
59.9 iPhone 16 Plus, 1 of 4
                              300
59.10 iPhone 16 Plus, 2 of 4
                               301
59.11 iPhone 16 Plus, 3 of 4
                              302
59.12 iPhone 16 Plus, 4 of 4
                               303
59.13 iPhone 16, 1 of 4
                          304
59.14 iPhone 16, 2 of 4
                          305
59.15 iPhone 16, 3 of 4
                          306
59.16 iPhone 16, 4 of 4
                          307
59.17 iPhone 15 Pro Max, 1 of 3
                                  308
59.18 iPhone 15 Pro Max, 2 of 3
                                   309
59.19 iPhone 15 Pro Max, 3 of 3
                                   310
59.20 iPhone 15 Pro, 1 of 3
                              311
59.21 iPhone 15 Pro, 2 of 3
                              312
59.22 iPhone 15 Pro, 3 of 3
                              313
59.23 iPhone 15 Plus, 1 of 3
                               314
59.24 iPhone 15 Plus, 2 of 3
                               315
59.25 iPhone 15 Plus, 3 of 3
                               316
59.26 iPhone 15, 1 of 3
                          317
59.27 iPhone 15, 2 of 3
                          318
59.28 iPhone 15, 3 of 3
                          319
59.29 iPhone 14 Pro Max, 1 of 3
                                   320
59.30 iPhone 14 Pro Max, 2 of 3
                                   321
59.31 iPhone 14 Pro Max, 3 of 3
                                   322
59.32 iPhone 14 Pro, 1 of 3
                              323
59.33 iPhone 14 Pro, 2 of 3
                              324
59.34 iPhone 14 Pro, 3 of 3
                              325
59.35 iPhone 14 Plus, 1 of 3
                               326
59.36 iPhone 14 Plus, 2 of 3
                               327
59.37 iPhone 14 Plus, 3 of 3
                               328
59.38 iPhone 14, 1 of 3
                          329
59.39 iPhone 14, 2 of 3
                          330
59.40 iPhone 14, 3 of 3
                          331
59.41 iPhone 13 Pro Max, 1 of 2
                                  332
59.42 iPhone 13 Pro Max, 2 of 2
                                   333
```

```
59.43 iPhone 13 Pro, 1 of 2
                            334
59.44 iPhone 13 Pro, 2 of 2
                            335
59.45 iPhone 13, 1 of 2
                         336
59.46 iPhone 13, 2 of 2
                         337
59.47 iPhone 13 mini, 1 of 2
                             338
59.48 iPhone 13 mini, 2 of 2
                             339
59.49 iPhone 12 Pro Max, 1 of 2
                                 340
59.50 iPhone 12 Pro Max, 2 of 2
                                 341
59.51 iPhone 12 Pro, 1 of 2
                            342
59.52 iPhone 12 Pro, 2 of 2
                            343
59.53 iPhone 12, 1 of 2
59.54 iPhone 12, 2 of 2
59.55 iPhone 12 mini, 1 of 2
                             346
59.56 iPhone 12 mini, 2 of 2
                             347
59.57 iPhone SE (3rd generation) and iPhone SE (2nd generation)
                                                                348
59.58 iPhone 11 Pro Max
                          349
59.59 iPhone 11 Pro
                     350
59.60 iPhone 11
                  351
59.61 iPhone XS Max
                       352
59.62 iPhone XS
                   353
59.63 iPhone XR
                   354
59.64 iPhone X
                  355
59.65 iPhone 8 Plus
                      356
59.66 iPhone 8
                 357
59.67 iPhone 7 Plus
                     358
59.68 iPhone 7
                 359
59.69 iPhone 6s Plus
                       360
59.70 iPhone 6s
                  361
59.71 iPhone 6 Plus
                     362
59.72 iPhone 6
                 363
59.73 iPhone 5s and iPhone SE
                                364
59.74 iPhone 5c
                  365
59.75 iPhone 5
                 366
59.76 iPad Pro 13-inch (M4), 1 of 5
                                    367
59.77 iPad Pro 13-inch (M4), 2 of 5
                                    368
59.78 iPad Pro 13-inch (M4), 3 of 5
                                    369
59.79 iPad Pro 13-inch (M4), 4 of 5
                                    370
59.80 iPad Pro 13-inch (M4), 5 of 5
                                    371
59.81 iPad Pro 11-inch (M4), 1 of 5
                                   372
```

```
373
59.82 iPad Pro 11-inch (M4), 2 of 5
59.83 iPad Pro 11-inch (M4), 3 of 5
                                       374
59.84 iPad Pro 11-inch (M4), 4 of 5
                                       375
59.85 iPad Pro 11-inch (M4), 5 of 5
                                       376
59.86 iPad Air 13-inch (M2), 1 of 5
                                      377
                                      378
59.87 iPad Air 13-inch (M2), 2 of 5
                                      379
59.88 iPad Air 13-inch (M2), 3 of 5
59.89 iPad Air 13-inch (M2), 4 of 5
                                      380
59.90 iPad Air 13-inch (M2), 5 of 5
                                      381
                                     382
59.91 iPad Air 11-inch (M2), 1 of 5
59.92 iPad Air 11-inch (M2), 2 of 5
                                      383
59.93 iPad Air 11-inch (M2), 3 of 5
                                      384
59.94 iPad Air 11-inch (M2), 4 of 5
                                      385
59.95 iPad Air 11-inch (M2), 5 of 5
                                      386
59.96 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (6th generation), 1 of 5
                                                    387
59.97 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (6th generation), 2 of 5
                                                    388
59.98 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (6th generation), 3 of 5
                                                     389
                                                     390
59.99 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (6th generation), 4 of 5
59.100 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (6th generation), 5 of 5
                                                     391
59.101 iPad Pro 11-inch (4th generation), 1 of 5
                                                   392
59.102 iPad Pro 11-inch (4th generation), 2 of 5
                                                   393
59.103 iPad Pro 11-inch (4th generation), 3 of 5
                                                   394
59.104 iPad Pro 11-inch (4th generation), 4 of 5
                                                   395
59.105 iPad Pro 11-inch (4th generation), 5 of 5
                                                   396
59.106 iPad (10th generation), 1 of 6
                                        397
59.107 iPad (10th generation), 2 of 6
                                        398
59.108 iPad (10th generation), 3 of 6
                                         399
59.109 iPad (10th generation), 4 of 6
                                         400
59.110 iPad (10th generation), 5 of 6
                                        401
59.111 iPad (10th generation), 6 of 6
                                        402
59.112 iPad Air (5th generation) and iPad Air (4th generation), 1 of 5
                                                                        403
59.113 iPad Air (5th generation) and iPad Air (4th generation), 2 of 5
                                                                        404
59.114 iPad Air (5th generation) and iPad Air (4th generation), 3 of 5
                                                                        405
59.115 iPad Air (5th generation) and iPad Air (4th generation), 4 of 5
                                                                        406
59.116 iPad Air (5th generation) and iPad Air (4th generation), 5 of 5
                                                                        407
59.117 iPad mini (6th generation), 1 of 6
                                           408
59.118 iPad mini (6th generation), 2 of 6
                                            409
59.119 iPad mini (6th generation), 3 of 6
                                            410
59.120 iPad mini (6th generation), 4 of 6
                                            411
```

```
59.121 iPad mini (6th generation), 5 of 6
                                            412
59.122 iPad mini (6th generation), 6 of 6
                                            413
59.123 iPad (9th generation), iPad (8th generation) and iPad (7th generation), 1 of 4
                                                                                        414
59.124 iPad (9th generation), iPad (8th generation) and iPad (7th generation), 2 of 4
                                                                                        415
59.125 iPad (9th generation), iPad (8th generation) and iPad (7th generation), 3 of 4
                                                                                        416
59.126 iPad (9th generation), iPad (8th generation) and iPad (7th generation), 4 of 4
                                                                                        417
59.127 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (5th generation), 1 of 5
                                                     418
59.128 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (5th generation), 2 of 5
                                                      419
59.129 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (5th generation), 3 of 5
                                                      420
59.130 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (5th generation), 4 of 5
                                                      421
                                                     422
59.131 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (5th generation), 5 of 5
59.132 iPad Pro 11-inch (3rd generation), 1 of 5
                                                   423
59.133 iPad Pro 11-inch (3rd generation), 2 of 5
                                                    424
59.134 iPad Pro 11-inch (3rd generation), 3 of 5
                                                    425
59.135 iPad Pro 11-inch (3rd generation), 4 of 5
                                                    426
                                                    427
59.136 iPad Pro 11-inch (3rd generation), 5 of 5
59.137 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (4th generation), 1 of 5
                                                     428
59.138 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (4th generation), 2 of 5
                                                      429
59.139 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (4th generation), 3 of 5
                                                      430
                                                      431
59.140 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (4th generation), 4 of 5
59.141 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (4th generation), 5 of 5
                                                      432
59.142 iPad Pro 11-inch (2nd generation), 1 of 5
                                                    433
59.143 iPad Pro 11-inch (2nd generation), 2 of 5
                                                    434
59.144 iPad Pro 11-inch (2nd generation), 3 of 5
                                                    435
59.145 iPad Pro 11-inch (2nd generation), 4 of 5
                                                    436
59.146 iPad Pro 11-inch (2nd generation), 5 of 5
                                                    437
59.147 iPad Air (3rd generation) with Wi-Fi, 1 of 3
                                                     438
59.148 iPad Air (3rd generation) with Wi-Fi, 2 of 3
                                                      439
59.149 iPad Air (3rd generation) with Wi-Fi, 3 of 3
                                                      440
59.150 iPad Air (3rd generation) with Wi-Fi + Cellular, 1 of 3
                                                                441
59.151 iPad Air (3rd generation) with Wi-Fi + Cellular, 2 of 3
                                                                442
59.152 iPad Air (3rd generation) with Wi-Fi + Cellular, 3 of 3
                                                                443
59.153 iPad mini (5th generation) with Wi-Fi, 1 of 3
                                                       444
59.154 iPad mini (5th generation) with Wi-Fi, 2 of 3
                                                       445
59.155 iPad mini (5th generation) with Wi-Fi, 3 of 3
                                                       446
59.156 iPad mini (5th generation) with Wi-Fi + Cellular, 1 of 3
                                                                 447
59.157 iPad mini (5th generation) with Wi-Fi + Cellular, 2 of 3
                                                                 448
59.158 iPad mini (5th generation) with Wi-Fi + Cellular, 3 of 3
                                                                 449
59.159 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (3rd generation), 1 of 3
                                                      450
```

```
59.160 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (3rd generation), 2 of 3
                                                     451
59.161 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (3rd generation), 3 of 3
                                                     452
59.162 iPad Pro 11-inch (1st generation), 1 of 3
                                                  453
59.163 iPad Pro 11-inch (1st generation), 2 of 3
                                                  454
59.164 iPad Pro 11-inch (1st generation), 3 of 3
                                                  455
59.165 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (2nd generation) with Wi-Fi
                                                         456
59.166 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (2nd generation) with Wi-Fi + Cellular
                                                                   457
59.167 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (2nd generation) Magnet/Hall Effect Sensors, 1 of 2
                                                                                 458
59.168 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (2nd generation) Magnet/Hall Effect Sensors, 2 of 2
                                                                                 459
59.169 iPad Pro 10.5-inch with Wi-Fi
59.170 iPad Pro 10.5-inch with Wi-Fi + Cellular
59.171 iPad Pro 10.5-inch Magnet/Hall Effect Sensors, 1 of 2
                                                               462
59.172 iPad Pro 10.5-inch Magnet/Hall Effect Sensors, 2 of 2
                                                                463
59.173 iPad (5th and 6th generation) with Wi-Fi + Cellular
59.174 iPad (5th and 6th generation) Magnet/Hall Effect Sensors, 1 of 2
                                                                          465
59.175 iPad (5th and 6th generation) Magnet/Hall Effect Sensors, 2 of 2
                                                                           466
59.176 iPad Pro 9.7-inch with Wi-Fi
59.177 iPad Pro 9.7-inch with Wi-Fi + Cellular
                                                 468
59.178 iPad Pro 9.7-inch Magnet/Hall Effect Sensors, 1 of 2
                                                              469
59.179 iPad Pro 9.7-inch Magnet/Hall Effect Sensors, 2 of 2
                                                               470
59.180 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (1st generation) with Wi-Fi
                                                                  472
59.181 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (1st generation) with Wi-Fi + Cellular
59.182 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (1st generation) Magnet/Hall Effect Sensors, 1 of 2
                                                                                473
59.183 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (1st generation) Magnet/Hall Effect Sensors, 2 of 2
                                                                                474
59.184 iPad mini 4 with Wi-Fi
                                475
59.185 iPad mini 4 with Wi-Fi + Cellular
                                          476
59.186 iPad mini 4 Magnet/Hall Effect Sensors
                                                  477
59.187 iPad Air 2 with Wi-Fi
59.188 iPad Air 2 with Wi-Fi + Cellular
59.189 iPad mini 2 and iPad mini 3 with Wi-Fi
                                                480
59.190 iPad mini 2 and iPad mini 3 with Wi-Fi + Cellular
                                                          481
59.191 iPad Air with Wi-Fi
                             482
59.192 iPad Air with Wi-Fi + Cellular
                                       483
59.193 iPad mini with Wi-Fi
                              484
59.194 iPad mini with Wi-Fi + Cellular
                                        485
59.195 iPad (4th generation) with Wi-Fi
59.196 iPad (4th generation) with Wi-Fi + Cellular
                                                     487
59.197 iPod touch (6th generation) and iPod touch (7th generation)
                                                                      488
59.198 iPod touch (5th generation)
                                      489
```

```
490
59.199 Apple Watch Series 10, 46 mm
59.200 Apple Watch Series 10, 42 mm
                                       491
59.201 Apple Watch Ultra 2, 1 of 3
                                   492
59.202 Apple Watch Ultra 2, 2 of 3
                                    493
59.203 Apple Watch Ultra 2, 3 of 3
                                    494
59.204 Apple Watch Series 9, 45 mm
                                      495
                                      496
59.205 Apple Watch Series 9, 41 mm
59.206 Apple Watch Ultra, 1 of 3
                                  497
59.207 Apple Watch Ultra, 2 of 3
                                  498
59.208 Apple Watch Ultra, 3 of 3
                                  499
59.209 Apple Watch Series 8, 45 mm
                                      500
59.210 Apple Watch Series 8, 41 mm
                                      501
59.211 Apple Watch SE, 44 mm
                                 502
59.212 Apple Watch SE, 40 mm
                                 503
59.213 Apple Watch Series 7, 45 mm
                                      504
59.214 Apple Watch Series 7, 41 mm
                                      505
59.215 Apple Watch Series 6, 44 mm
                                      506
59.216 Apple Watch Series 6, 40 mm
                                      507
59.217 Apple Watch SE (1st generation), 44 mm
                                                508
59.218 Apple Watch SE (1st generation), 40 mm
                                                509
59.219 Apple Watch Series 5, 44 mm
                                      510
59.220 Apple Watch Series 5, 40 mm
                                      511
59.221 Apple Watch Series 5 Ceramic, 44 mm
                                              512
59.222 Apple Watch Series 5 Ceramic, 40 mm
                                              513
59.223 Apple Watch Series 4, 44 mm
                                      514
59.224 Apple Watch Series 4, 40 mm
                                      515
59.225 Apple Watch Series 3 Ceramic, 42 mm
                                               516
59.226 Apple Watch Series 3 Ceramic, 38 mm
                                               517
59.227 Apple Watch Series 3 Metal, 42 mm
                                            518
59.228 Apple Watch Series 3 Metal, 38 mm
                                            519
59.229 Apple Watch Series 2 Ceramic, 42 mm
                                              520
59.230 Apple Watch Series 2 Ceramic, 38 mm
                                               521
59.231 Apple Watch Series 2 Metal, 42 mm
                                            522
                                            523
59.232 Apple Watch Series 2 Metal, 38 mm
59.233 Apple Watch (1st generation) and Apple Watch Series 1, 42 mm
                                                                      524
59.234 Apple Watch (1st generation) and Apple Watch Series 1, 38 mm
                                                                      525
59.235 Apple Vision Pro, 1 of 6
                                526
59.236 Apple Vision Pro, 2 of 6
                                527
59.237 Apple Vision Pro, 3 of 6
                                528
```

```
529
59.238 Apple Vision Pro, 4 of 6
59.239 Apple Vision Pro, 5 of 6
                                 530
59.240 Apple Vision Pro, 6 of 6
                                 531
59.241 Apple Vision Pro Battery
                                 532
59.242 Apple Vision Pro Audio Strap
                                      533
59.243 ZEISS Optical Inserts, 1 of 4
                                     534
59.244 ZEISS Optical Inserts, 2 of 4
                                      535
59.245 ZEISS Optical Inserts, 3 of 4
                                      536
59.246 ZEISS Optical Inserts, 4 of 4
                                      537
59.247 Wireless Charging Case (USB-C) for AirPods 4, 1 of 3
                                                              538
59.248 Wireless Charging Case (USB-C) for AirPods 4, 2 of 3
                                                              539
59.249 Wireless Charging Case (USB-C) for AirPods 4, 3 of 3
                                                              540
59.250 AirPods 4
59.251 MagSafe Charging Case (USB-C) for AirPods Pro (2nd generation), 1 of 3
                                                                                542
59.252 MagSafe Charging Case (USB-C) for AirPods Pro (2nd generation), 2 of 3
                                                                                 543
59.253 MagSafe Charging Case (USB-C) for AirPods Pro (2nd generation), 3 of 3
                                                                                 544
59.254 MagSafe Charging Case for AirPods Pro (2nd generation), 1 of 3
59.255 MagSafe Charging Case for AirPods Pro (2nd generation), 2 of 3
                                                                        546
59.256 MagSafe Charging Case for AirPods Pro (2nd generation), 3 of 3
                                                                        547
59.257 AirPods Pro (2nd generation)
                                      548
59.258 MagSafe Charging Case for AirPods (3rd generation)
                                                             549
59.259 AirPods (3rd generation)
                                  550
59.260 AirPods Max, 1 of 5
                             551
59.261 AirPods Max, 2 of 5
                             552
59.262 AirPods Max, 3 of 5
                             553
59.263 AirPods Max, 4 of 5
                             554
59.264 AirPods Max, 5 of 5
                             555
59.265 Wireless Charging Case for AirPods Pro (1st generation)
                                                                556
59.266 AirPods Pro (1st generation)
59.267 Wireless Charging Case for AirPods
                                             558
59.268 AirPods (1st generation) and AirPods (2nd generation)
59.269 Apple MagSafe Charger (1 m) and Apple MagSafe Charger (2 m)
                                                                        560
59.270 Apple MagSafe Charger
                                 561
59.271 AirTag
                562
59.272 Apple TV 4K (3rd generation)
                                       563
59.273 Siri Remote (3rd generation)
                                      564
```

Revision History 565

Added Content 565

Updated Content 566

Overview

1. Introduction

Note:

These Accessory Design Guidelines for Apple Devices ('Guidelines') are subject to the terms and conditions set forth on the final page of this document. By downloading, accessing, or otherwise utilizing these Guidelines, you agree to be bound by, and only utilize the Guidelines in accordance with, such terms and conditions.

These guidelines address:

- Physical compatibility with iPhone, iPad, Apple Watch, AirPods, Apple TV, and Apple Vision Pro.
- Using USB-C to connect to iPhone, iPad, and AirPods.
- Using Bluetooth to connect to iPhone, iPad, Apple Watch, Apple TV, Apple Vision Pro, and Mac computers.
- AC power adapters and battery packs compatible with iPhone, iPad, and AirPods.
- Qi wireless transmitters compatible with iPhone and AirPods.

Some aspects of accessory interaction are not addressed in this document and may require access to the Apple MFi Program (page 26) and the Accessory Interface Specification (page 26).

2. Requirements

The use of the words *shall, shall not, required, prohibited, should, should not, recommended, not recommended, may, optional,* and *deprecated* in a statement have the following meanings:

- *shall*, or *required* means the statement is an absolute requirement.
- shall not or prohibited means the statement is an absolute prohibition.
- should or recommended means the full implications shall be understood before choosing a different course.
- should not or not recommended means the full implications shall be understood before choosing this course.
- may or optional means the statement is truly optional, and its presence or absence cannot be assumed.
- deprecated means the statement is provided for historical purposes only and is equivalent to 'shall not'.

3. Terminology

3.1 Device

Device refers to an iPhone, iPad, or iPod.

iOS device refers to an iPhone or iPod running iOS.

iPadOS device refers to an iPad running iPadOS.

watchOS device refers to an Apple Watch running watchOS.

tvOS device refers to an Apple TV running tvOS.

Where appropriate, specific Apple product and operating system references will also be used.

3.2 Accessory

Accessory refers to any product connecting to a *device* using the interfaces described in this specification.

3.3 Component

A *component* is a functional unit or a constituent part of an accessory. Components inter-connect and function as a part of a greater system. Examples include:

- Integrated circuits, micro-processors, flash memory, microphones, and speakers.
- Data transport interface, such as a Lightning connector, USB connector, or Bluetooth radio.
- Power sources, such as a battery or power supply.
- Human Interface Device (HID) Control Surface (page 25), such as a play/pause button.

A *component* may also refer to a group or collection, such as the keyboard portion of a keyboard/trackpad accessory.

3.4 Control Surface

A *control surface* is a human interface device (HID) component enabling user interaction with an accessory. Examples include:

- Connectors
- Buttons
- Switches
- Rotary knobs
- Joysticks
- Touchscreens or touch-sensitive surfaces
- Microphones
- Motion/presence sensors

References to specific types of control surfaces such as buttons or switches are only applicable to those control surface types. If a requirement calls for a physical button to be implemented, a physical button shall be present.

3.5 Direct User Action

A *direct user action* is defined as user interaction with an accessory using a Control Surface (page 25). Examples include:

- Physical gestures, such as:
 - · Attaching an accessory to a device.
 - Pressing a button.
 - Actuating a switch.
 - Turning a knob.
 - Interacting with a touchscreen.
 - Waving a hand.
 - Moving in/out of range (for wireless accessories).
- · Voice input.

Accessories shall not autonomously perform user inputs unless explicitly authorized by the user.

3.6 Built-In Cable

A built-in cable is a cable with one end permanently attached to the accessory enclosure.

3.7 Apple MFi Program

The Apple MFi Program provides access to specifications, components, connectors, and other resources to create accessories capable of communicating with devices.

See https://mfi.apple.com for more information.

3.8 Accessory Interface Specification

The Accessory Interface Specification is available through the Apple MFi Program (page 26).

Use of some features requires accessory developers to be a member of the program and to integrate specific MFi hardware into the accessory.

Accessories

4. All Accessories

Requirements in this section apply to all accessories regardless of their supported features.

4.1 Scratches and Damage

Accessories shall not scratch or damage any device.

Accessories with abrasive surfaces and sharp edges (such as hard plastic, metal, or glass) shall not contact the active area of the device display.

4.2 Compliance Testing

Accessories shall not assume evidence of functionality when attached to a device means the accessory is specification compliant. Such an approach does not account for future devices or software releases, and runs a high risk of dependence on un-documented device behavior which is subject to change at any time.

If available, accessories should validate their design and implementation using the recommended test procedures for all supported features.

4.3 Integrated USB Receptacles

Accessories incorporating a USB receptacle to draw power from external sources shall meet the following requirements:

- USB-B receptacles shall comply with the USB Battery Charging Specification Release 1.2.
- USB-C receptacles shall comply with the requirements in Drawing Power (page 275).

4.4 User Supplied Cables and AC Power Adapters

Accessories intended for use with user-supplied cables and/or AC power adapters shall be designed to work with any cables, AC Power Adapters (page 83), or Battery Packs (page 86) compliant with this specification, including Apple branded cables and AC power adapters. Such accessories shall not declare compatibility with only Apple branded USB cables or AC power adapters.

This compatibility requirement applies to all aspects of user-supplied cables and power adapters. For example:

- Connector receptacles on accessories shall accommodate all specification-compliant connector overmolds, and any accessory opening surrounding the device receptacle shall provide sufficient clearance for specification-compliant connector overmolds.
- Accessories shall work with all specification-compliant cables in regards to electrical DCR and SI.

Such accessories shall be tested with a wide variety of specification-compliant cables (including various lengths of the same cable if applicable) and AC power adapters during accessory development, in addition to Apple branded cables and AC power adapters.

4.5 TDMA Noise

GSM phones emit radiated and conducted RF noise, which can produce time division multiple access (TDMA) sounds from audio outputs. Accessories shall minimize coupling of audible interference from the device (commonly known as *TDMA noise* or *chopper noise*) into an accessory's electronics.

4.6 Attachments

Accessories shall remain compliant with the specification when connected to any attachments designed for the accessory.

Examples of accessory attachments include, but are not limited to:

- Car or desk mounts for a case.
- Wireless charging mats for a dongle or case.
- Detachable barcode scanners/credit card readers for a dock.

4.7 Magnetic Interference

Unless otherwise specified, Apple recommends avoiding the use of magnets and metal components in accessories.

Accessories claiming compatibility with a device with a digital compass (magnetometer) shall minimize interference with the digital compass and shall not repeatedly trigger compass recalibration.

Accessories claiming compatibility with a device with autofocus (AF) and/or optical image stabilization (OIS) shall not affect the operation of those features.

The following devices feature optical image stabilization:

- iPhone 16 Pro Max
- iPhone 16 Pro
- iPhone 16 Plus
- iPhone 16
- iPhone 15 Pro Max
- iPhone 15 Pro
- iPhone 15 Plus
- iPhone 15
- iPhone 14 Pro Max
- iPhone 14 Pro
- iPhone 14 Plus
- iPhone 14
- iPhone SE (3rd generation)
- iPhone 13 Pro Max
- iPhone 13 Pro
- iPhone 13
- iPhone 13 mini
- iPhone 12 Pro Max
- iPhone 12 Pro
- iPhone 12
- iPhone 12 mini
- iPhone SE (2nd generation)
- iPhone 11 Pro Max
- iPhone 11 Pro
- iPhone 11
- iPhone XS Max
- iPhone XS
- iPhone XR
- iPhone X
- iPhone 8 Plus
- iPhone 8
- iPhone 7 Plus
- iPhone 7
- iPhone 6s Plus

- iPhone 6 Plus
- iPad Pro 12.9-inch (2nd generation)
- iPad Pro 10.5-inch

4.8 Radio Frequency (RF) Performance

This section contains RF performance requirements and recommendations for accessories.

4.8.1 Materials and Coatings

Accessories should avoid use of:

- Metals
- Conductive materials or coatings
- Materials with high dielectric (permittivity >5 F/m)

Such materials absorb radio frequency energy and may impair or degrade the performance of antennas for cellular communication, GPS, Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, and NFC.

Examples include, but are not limited to:

- Steel, aluminum, magnesium, titanium, etc.
- Plastics with any carbon content, glass content, or metallic plating
- Metallic paints
- Black paints with high carbon loading
- White paints with high titanium dioxide loading
- Metallic Physical Vapor Deposition (PVD) coatings

4.8.2 Antenna Keep-Out

Antenna keep-out regions can be found in Device Dimensional Drawings (page 284).

Accessory Materials and Coatings (page 31) which absorb radio frequency energy located in the antenna keep-out region have a higher risk of degrading device's wireless performance.

4.8.3 Over The Air (OTA) Transmission/Reception

Accessories shall not excessively degrade device's RF transmission efficiency. This can be quantified by measuring Total Radiated Power (TRP) across all of the device's operating bands.

Accessories shall not excessively degrade device's RF reception sensitivity. This can be quantified by measuring Effective Isotropic Sensitivity (EIS) across all of the device's operating bands.

Accessories may have a higher risk of excessively degrading device's RF performance if they:

- Contain magnets.
- Intrude on device Antenna Keep-Out (page 31) zones.
- Contain active electronic circuitry, such as:
 - Bluetooth radios.
 - Switched-mode power supplies.
 - High speed data interfaces.

Accessory configurations shall be taken into account when designing for maximum RF compatibility. Examples include, but are not limited to:

- Accessory on/off.
- Accessory open/closed.
- Attachments (page 29) present/not present.

Good design practices shall be followed to minimize emissions and maximize RF compatibility. These include, but are not limited to:

- Shielding digital circuitry and clock signals.
- Minimizing radiation from digital interfaces.
- Decoupling high frequency signals and power supplies.
- Filtering off-board signals.
- Maintaining ground plane circuit board integrity.
- Minimizing current loop areas.
- Ensuring proper cable shielding terminations.

4.8.4 Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)

A list of labs performing SAR testing with devices is available through the Apple MFi Program (page 26).

4.8.5 Near Field Communication (NFC)

Accessories shall not degrade device's NFC transaction performance.

Accessories may have a higher risk of degrading device's NFC transaction performance if they intrude on device Antenna Keep-Out (page 31) zones.

The following devices are NFC enabled:

- iPhone 16 Pro Max
- iPhone 16 Pro
- iPhone 16 Plus
- iPhone 16
- iPhone 15 Pro Max
- iPhone 15 Pro

- iPhone 15 Plus
- iPhone 15
- iPhone 14 Pro Max
- iPhone 14 Pro
- iPhone 14 Plus
- iPhone 14
- iPhone SE (3rd generation)
- iPhone 13 Pro Max
- iPhone 13 Pro
- iPhone 13
- iPhone 13 mini
- iPhone 12 Pro Max
- iPhone 12 Pro
- iPhone 12
- iPhone 12 mini
- iPhone SE (2nd generation)
- iPhone 11 Pro Max
- iPhone 11 Pro
- iPhone 11
- iPhone XS Max
- iPhone XS
- iPhone XR
- iPhone X
- iPhone 8 Plus
- iPhone 8
- iPhone 7 Plus
- iPhone 7
- iPhone SE
- iPhone 6s Plus
- iPhone 6s
- iPhone 6 Plus
- iPhone 6

4.9 Thermal Management

The accessory's supported temperature range shall be greater than or equal to the published temperature ranges of every device it claims compatibility with.

4.10 Tripod Connections

Tripod connections shall comply with *ISO 1222:2010, Photography — Tripod connections*, see https://www.iso.org/standard/55918.html.

4.11 Anthropometric Considerations

Children and people with smaller hands (5th percentile), as well as people with larger hands (95th percentile) should all be considered during the accessory design process.

Apple recommends using design resources such as:

- AnthroKids (https://math.nist.gov/~SRessler/anthrokids/).
- U.S. Army Anthropometry Survey (http://mreed.umtri.umich.edu/mreed/downloads.html#ansur2).
- Civilian American and European Surface Anthropometry Resource (CAESAR).

5. Cases

Cases are accessories substantially enclosing devices.

Accessories substantially enclosing devices shall comply with the requirements stated in this chapter unless the accessory supports other features in this specification whose requirements conflict with the requirements in this chapter.

The requirements shall be applied to each component separately for cases with multiple user-detachable components substantially enclosing the device.

5.1 Product Design

A well-designed case will securely house a device without interfering with the device's operation. Significant factors in mechanical design include access to the device's sensors, controls, and connectors. See <u>Device Dimensional Drawings</u> (page 284).

5.1.1 Device Protection

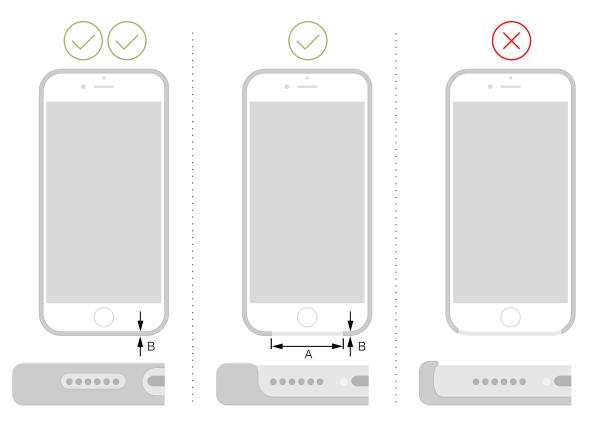
Cases shall protect the device from a 1 m drop onto a hard paved surface in any orientation.

Exposed glass on the device shall not come within 0.85 mm of a flat surface, such as a table or floor, in any orientation when the case is attached. Ideally the glass should not come within 1.00 mm. Device protection should be achieved by creating features around the exposed glass to keep it away from the flat surface.

Care should be given to the design of the bottom of the case to achieve both device protection and provide access to device speakers, microphones, and connectors. For example, the bottom of iPhone X cases should:

- Not have an opening wider than 50 mm, see dimension 'A' in Figure 5-1 (page 36).
- Be made of polycarbonate (PC) at least 1.15 mm thick, see dimension 'B' in Figure 5-1 (page 36).

Figure 5-1 Device protection



5.1.2 Access to Inputs and Interconnects

Cases shall readily permit user access to inputs and interconnects.

5.1.2.1 Access to Controls

Cases shall readily permit user access and operation of the device's mechanical controls, such as:

- Volume buttons.
- Camera Control.
- Side/Top button.
- Action button.
- Ring/Silent switch.
- Home button.
- Touch ID sensor.

5.1.2.2 Access to the Camera Control

This section applies to cases for devices with a Camera Control.

The case shall accommodate the following gestures across the entire surface of the Camera Control:

- Click.
- Light press.
- Slide.
- Swipe.

The case shall either:

- Have a keep-out defined in the Device Dimensional Drawings (page 284).
- Integrate a Camera Control Case Interface (page 37).

The keep-out shall be designed to accommodate various:

- Grip styles, including:
 - Portrait mode, when held with either the right hand or left hand.
 - Landscape mode, with the Camera Control at the top, when held with either one hand or two hands.
- Hand sizes, see Anthropometric Considerations (page 34).
- Finger nail lengths, including nails extending beyond the tip of the finger.

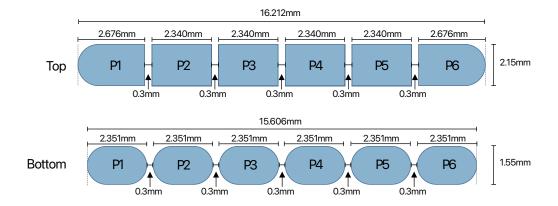
5.1.2.2.1 Camera Control Case Interface

Cases may integrate their own Camera Control case interface.

A Camera Control case interface shall have a:

- Bottom layer consisting of 6 copper pads connecting to the Camera Control, see Figure 5-2 (page 37).
- Top layer consisting of 6 copper pads, see Figure 5-2 (page 37).
- PCB-like material to connect the bottom and top layers and to achieve proper thickness for the case design.

Figure Camera Control case interface top and bottom layers **5-2**



Camera Control case interface shall:

- Have a top cap, such as a sapphire crystal.
- Have a flatness of less than 25 µm where it makes contact with the Camera Control.
- Have a tilt of less than 160 μm in all directions.
- Have a static (no user contact) misalignment center to center along:
 - The width of the Camera Control of less than 160 μm.
 - The length of the Camera Control of less than 190 μm.
- Have a dynamic (user contact) misalignment center to center in all directions of less than 130 μm.
- Have a maximum stiffness of 180 gf/mm.
 - Target stiffness should be 90 gf/mm throughout its range of travel.
- Be designed to maintain contact with the Camera Control across all copper pads and shall:
 - Have a preload force of 45 gf or less at maximum button offset.
 - Not trigger a light press when the area around the Camera Control is squeezed up to 1050 gf.
 - Not have an air gap greater than 50 μm to the Camera Control. Apple recommends no air gap.
- Have a capacitance greater than 0.362 pF for pads P1 and P6.
- Have a capacitance greater than 0.432 pF for pads P2, P3, P4, and P5.
- Have a sheet resistance for inks and coatings greater than 50 G- Ω /sq.

5.1.2.3 Access to the USB-C Connector

This section applies to accessories for devices with a USB-C receptacle.

The case opening (that is, keep-out area):

- Shall be at least 12.35 mm by 6.50 mm.
- Should be at least 12.45 mm by 6.60 mm with full radii rounded edges for the greatest compatibility with the widest variety of cables and docks, see USB-C receptacle accessory keep-out (page 277).

USB-C connector openings shall be designed with enough margin to compensate for shifting or dimensional changes of the case material.

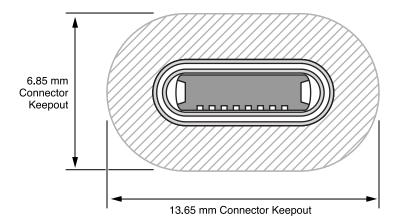
5.1.2.4 Access to the Lightning Connector

This section applies to accessories for devices with a Lightning receptacle.

The case opening (that is, keep-out area):

- Shall be at least 12.05 mm by 6.30 mm with full radii rounded edges.
- Should be at least 13.65 mm by 6.85 mm for the greatest compatibility with the widest variety of cables and docks, see Figure 5-3 (page 39).

Figure Lightning Receptacle (C37) keep-out **5-3**



Lightning connector openings shall be designed with enough margin to compensate for shifting or dimensional changes of the case material.

5.1.2.5 Access to the Headset Jack

Cases shall provide easy access to a device's headset jack, if present.

The headset jack opening (that is, keep-out area):

- Shall be at least 6.0 mm in diameter and at most 14.0 mm deep.
- Should be at least 6.5 mm in diameter and at most 10.0 mm deep for the best compatibility with a range of headsets.

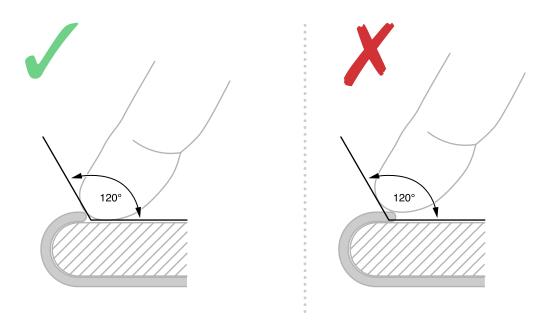
Headset jack openings shall be designed with enough margin to compensate for shifting or dimensional changes of the case material.

5.1.2.6 Touchscreen

Cases should not have any edges trapping water on the touchscreen when the device is held at a 30° angle relative to the horizon.

Cases shall allow a 120° opening, see Figure 5-4 (page 40), along the edges of a touchscreen's active area to ensure compatibility with touchscreen features. See Device Dimensional Drawings (page 284) for active areas.

Figure Touchscreen keep-out angle 5-4



5.1.2.7 Edge Swipe Gestures

Users shall be able to easily use edge swipe gestures.

Examples of such gestures include, but are not limited to:

- Swipe in from the top edge for Control Center or Notification Center.
- Swipe in from the bottom edge for Home, App Switcher, or Reachability.
- Swipe in from the left edge in Messages or Mail to go back from a conversation.

5.1.2.8 Cover Glass Contact

Cases claiming compatibility with the following devices should not contact the cover glass as defined in their Device Dimensional Drawings (page 284):

- iPhone SE (3rd generation)
- iPhone SE (2nd generation)
- iPhone 11 Pro Max
- iPhone 11 Pro
- iPhone 11
- iPhone XS Max
- iPhone XS
- iPhone XR
- iPhone X
- iPhone 8 Plus

- iPhone 8
- iPhone 7 Plus
- iPhone 7
- iPhone 6s Plus
- iPhone 6s
- iPhone 6 Plus
- iPhone 6

5.1.3 Dock Compatibility

The distance from bottom of the device to the outside of a case should not exceed 1.8 mm for compatibility with docks.

5.1.4 Wireless Power and Rear Pockets

Cases claiming compatibility with MagSafe or Qi wireless power, see Device Power (Inductive) (page 153), shall not have rear pockets or holders for credit cards, RFID cards, or other similar items. Cards may be damaged and/or impact wireless charging performance.

5.2 Acoustics

Cases shall not impair or degrade the acoustic performance of a device.

5.2.1 Call Quality

Cases shall not impair or degrade the user experience making and receiving audio calls over a cellular network or audio/video calls using FaceTime in both handset and speakerphone modes. Cases should not change the frequency response of the speakers or microphones. In addition, the user should not hear any distortion or echo resulting from using the case.

Cases shall not obstruct any microphones during a phone call. Occluding microphones can result in call quality degradation.

5.2.2 Speaker to Microphone Coupling

Cases shall not facilitate the conduction of sound from any speaker to any microphone. Such sound conduction may cause echoing in phone calls.

5.2.3 Speaker/Microphone Openings

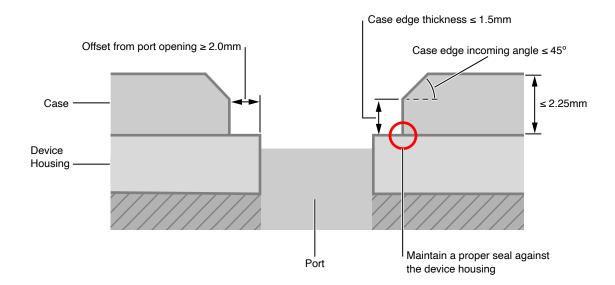
Device speaker/microphone port locations vary from model to model, see <u>Device Dimensional Drawings</u> (page 284).

5.2.3.1 Thin Cases (≤2.25 mm)

Microphone/speaker openings in thin cases should:

- Be offset at least 2.0 mm from the edge of any device speaker/microphone port.
- Be at most 1.5 mm thick along their inner diameter.
- Have a maximum 45° incoming angle to their inner diameter.
- Maintain a proper seal against the device between speaker/microphone ports.

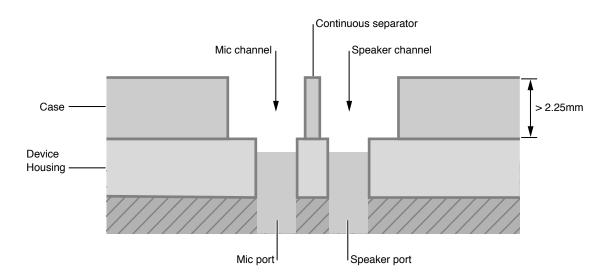
Figure Microphone/speaker opening recommendations for thin cases **5-5**



5.2.3.2 Thick Cases (>2.25 mm)

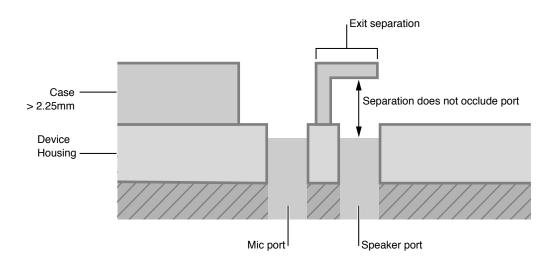
Speaker and microphone openings should be channeled independently and without interruption to/from the outside surface of a thick case.

Figure Thick case acoustic channels **5-6**



Thick cases should maximize exit separation between speaker and microphone channels.

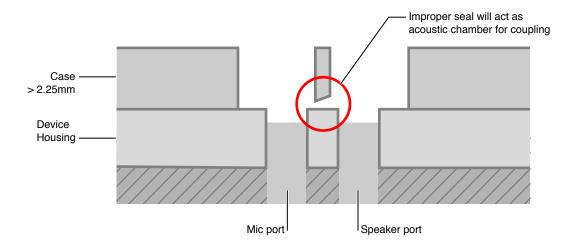
Figure Thick case microphone and speaker exit separation 5-7



Thick case channels may act as a resonance chamber and detune microphone/speaker frequency response. The resulting frequency response may vary according to channel size/shape.

If a thick case does not maintain a proper seal against the device between microphone/speaker channels, the case itself may become an acoustic chamber.

Figure Improper thick case seal 5-8



5.3 Ambient Light Sensor and Proximity Sensor

Ambient light sensor and proximity sensor locations for various devices are illustrated in the Device Dimensional Drawings (page 284). Some drawings indicate sensor keep-out areas.

5.4 Taptic Engine

Cases should not cause substantial change in the feel of the device's Taptic Engine.

The following devices contain a Taptic Engine:

- iPhone 16 Pro Max
- iPhone 16 Pro
- iPhone 16 Plus
- iPhone 16
- iPhone 15 Pro Max
- iPhone 15 Pro
- iPhone 15 Plus
- iPhone 15
- iPhone 14 Pro Max
- iPhone 14 Pro
- iPhone 14 Plus
- iPhone 14
- iPhone SE (3rd generation)

- iPhone 13 Pro Max
- iPhone 13 Pro
- iPhone 13
- iPhone 13 mini
- iPhone 12 Pro Max
- iPhone 12 Pro
- iPhone 12
- iPhone 12 mini
- iPhone SE (2nd generation)
- iPhone 11 Pro Max
- iPhone 11 Pro
- iPhone 11
- iPhone XS Max
- iPhone XS
- iPhone XR
- iPhone X
- iPhone 8 Plus
- iPhone 8
- iPhone 7 Plus
- iPhone 7
- iPhone 6s Plus
- iPhone 6s

5.5 Magnetic Interference

Cases shall not interfere with the device's:

- Magnetic compass.
- Rear camera autofocus (AF).
- Rear camera optical image stabilization (OIS), if present.
- · Front camera autofocus, if present.

See Magnetic Interference (page 29) for additional details.

5.6 Touch ID

Cases shall not inhibit use of the device's Touch ID sensor. Touch ID sensor keep-outs are indicated in the Device Dimensional Drawings (page 284).

Cases overlaying the sensor may cause users to have difficulty using Touch ID.

5.7 Camera

The camera field of view (FOV) and the illumination provided by the flash are designed for each devices' camera. It is exceptionally important manufacturers consult Device Dimensional Drawings (page 284) for each device, and shall not assume any parameters are shared between devices.

Images from the camera may be affected by the geometry, color, and surface finish of the case, particularly when using a flash. Camera opening trim should be designed to avoid reflecting light into the camera.

5.7.1 Geometry

The camera lens FOV shall not be blocked. Making opening dimensions too small around the camera and flash may block the lens FOV and the illumination from the flash. Blocking the FOV may cause vignetting in the image, where one or more corners of the image are darker than the center. Blocking marginal rays just outside the lens FOV may also reduce the sharpness and contrast of the image. Blocking flash illumination may cause haze in the image, resulting in reduced contrast. See Device Dimensional Drawings (page 284) for camera keep-outs.

Case openings shall not be designed in a manner directing stray light into the camera lens. If the opening is too narrow or too steep, it may reflect light into the camera lens washing out the image or adding unwanted color casting. Adding a chamfer to the opening trim near the camera may help direct stray light away from the camera lens. When the device includes a flash, a narrow or steep opening may reflect light from the camera and flash opening back into the camera lens. This may cause images to appear washed out or cause unwanted artifacts. Designers should also ensure mechanical keep-outs as outlined in the Device Dimensional Drawings (page 284) are maintained with worst-case X-Y placement tolerances to minimize the risk of image haze.

5.7.2 Color

Light reflected from a case may carry the color of the case. Black material or black coatings may help avoid color bleeding into the camera lens from an external light source or the flash. The darker the color the less likely light from a flash or external source may be reflected off the case and into the camera lens. Apple recommends a semi-gloss black material or coating around the camera and flash openings.

5.7.3 Surface Finish

Matte or diffuse materials scatter light in all directions increasing the likelihood light from the flash or other strong light sources may be reflected into camera lenses. Semi-gloss materials may direct light away from the camera lens.

5.7.4 Image Degradation Examples

Figure Sample image degradation by image blocking in an ambient condition **5-9**

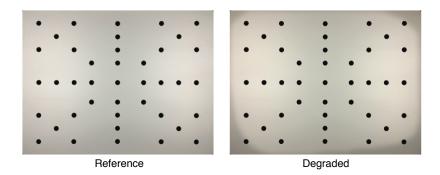


Figure Sample image degradation by color shift through accessory with strong color 5-10

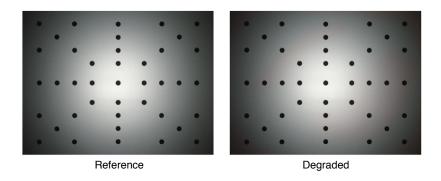
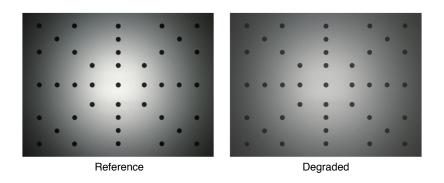


Figure Sample image degradation by flash interference **5-11**



5.8 Reliability

Cases shall be tested to verify they will withstand long-term use under typical use conditions, and will not impair, functionally degrade a device, cause Scratches and Damage (page 28) to the device or its immediate surroundings, or adversely affect the user.

5.8.1 Device Insertion and Removal

Cases shall hold the device securely while permitting easy insertion and removal. A case shall not cause Scratches and Damage (page 28) to the device by the repeated insertion and removal of the device from the case under conditions representative of long-term use in a variety of environments.

5.8.2 Colorfastness

Dyes, inks, or coatings in or on the case shall not transfer or bleed color onto either the device or user, particularly while the case is in contact with common substances such as water, hand sanitizer, sunscreen or lotions.

5.9 Environmental

Cases shall comply with applicable environmental regulations for the regions in which such accessories are to be sold, as well as applicable substance or material restrictions including:

- Organic tin compounds, PFOS, PFOA, phthalates, azo dyes, polybrominated biphenyls (PBBs) and PAHs, per requirements of the EU REACh regulation EC 1907/2006.
- Nickel leach rate on surfaces in prolonged skin contact, per requirements of the EU REACh regulation EC 1907/2006.
- Cadmium, lead, hexavalent chromium, and nickel, per requirements of EU Directive 2009/48/EC.
- Natural rubber latex, per requirements of EU Directive EC 93/42/EEC.
- Dimethylfumarate (DMFu), per requirements of EU Regulation 412/2012.
- pH and Formaldehyde, per requirements of China GB 18401 for textiles and China GB 20400 for leather.
- Endangered species of flora and fauna in products or packaging (US Lacey Act).
- Polybrominated diphenyl ethers (PBDE).
- Compliance with California proposition 65, as applicable.

5.10 Test Procedures

5.10.1 Device Models

Case testing procedures vary depending on the device they enclose.

5.10.1.1 iPhone 16 Pro Max

Table 5-1 iPhone 16 Pro Max case testing matrix

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPhone 16 Pro Max	
MagSafe Case Magnet Array (page 180)	iPhone 16 Pro Max	Cases supporting MagSafe only.
Taptic Engine (page 69)	iPhone 16 Pro Max	
Autofocus & Optical Image Stabilization (page 70)	iPhone 16 Pro Max	
Near-Field Communication (NFC) (page 71)	iPhone 16 Pro Max	
Acoustics (page 73)	iPhone 16 Pro Max	

5.10.1.2 iPhone 16 Pro

Table 5-2 iPhone 16 Pro case testing matrix

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPhone 16 Pro	
MagSafe Case Magnet Array (page 180)	iPhone 16 Pro	Cases supporting MagSafe only.
Taptic Engine (page 69)	iPhone 16 Pro	
Autofocus & Optical Image Stabilization (page 70)	iPhone 16 Pro	
Near-Field Communication (NFC) (page 71)	iPhone 16 Pro	
Acoustics (page 73)	iPhone 16 Pro	

5.10.1.3 iPhone 16 Plus

Table 5-3 iPhone 16 Plus case testing matrix

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPhone 16 Plus	
MagSafe Case Magnet Array (page 180)	iPhone 16 Plus	Cases supporting MagSafe only.
Taptic Engine (page 69)	iPhone 16 Plus	
Autofocus & Optical Image Stabilization (page 70)	iPhone 16 Plus	

Test	Using	Notes
Near-Field Communication (NFC) (page 71)	iPhone 16 Plus	
Acoustics (page 73)	iPhone 16 Plus	

5.10.1.4 iPhone 16

Table 5-4 iPhone 16 case testing matrix

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPhone 16	
MagSafe Case Magnet Array (page 180)	iPhone 16	Cases supporting MagSafe only.
Taptic Engine (page 69)	iPhone 16	
Autofocus & Optical Image Stabilization (page 70)	iPhone 16	
Near-Field Communication (NFC) (page 71)	iPhone 16	
Acoustics (page 73)	iPhone 16	

5.10.1.5 iPhone 15 Pro Max

Table 5-5 iPhone 15 Pro Max case testing matrix

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPhone 15 Pro Max	
MagSafe Case Magnet Array (page 180)	iPhone 15 Pro Max	Cases supporting MagSafe only.
Taptic Engine (page 69)	iPhone 15 Pro Max	
Autofocus & Optical Image Stabilization (page 70)	iPhone 15 Pro Max	
Near-Field Communication (NFC) (page 71)	iPhone 15 Pro Max	
Acoustics (page 73)	iPhone 15 Pro Max	

5.10.1.6 iPhone 15 Pro

Table 5-6 iPhone 15 Pro case testing matrix

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPhone 15 Pro	
MagSafe Case Magnet Array (page 180)	iPhone 15 Pro	Cases supporting MagSafe only.
Taptic Engine (page 69)	iPhone 15 Pro	
Autofocus & Optical Image Stabilization (page 70)	iPhone 15 Pro	
Near-Field Communication (NFC) (page 71)	iPhone 15 Pro	
Acoustics (page 73)	iPhone 15 Pro	

5.10.1.7 iPhone 15 Plus

Table 5-7 iPhone 15 Plus case testing matrix

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPhone 15 Plus	
MagSafe Case Magnet Array (page 180)	iPhone 15 Plus	Cases supporting MagSafe only.
Taptic Engine (page 69)	iPhone 15 Plus	
Autofocus & Optical Image Stabilization (page 70)	iPhone 15 Plus	
Near-Field Communication (NFC) (page 71)	iPhone 15 Plus	
Acoustics (page 73)	iPhone 15 Plus	

5.10.1.8 iPhone 15

Table 5-8 iPhone 15 case testing matrix

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPhone 15	
MagSafe Case Magnet Array (page 180)	iPhone 15	Cases supporting MagSafe only.
Taptic Engine (page 69)	iPhone 15	
Autofocus & Optical Image Stabilization (page 70)	iPhone 15	
Near-Field Communication (NFC) (page 71)	iPhone 15	
Acoustics (page 73)	iPhone 15	

5.10.1.9 iPhone 14 Pro Max

Table 5-9 iPhone 14 Pro Max case testing matrix

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPhone 14 Pro Max	
MagSafe Case Magnet Array (page 180)	iPhone 14 Pro Max	Cases supporting MagSafe only.
Taptic Engine (page 69)	iPhone 14 Pro Max	
Autofocus & Optical Image Stabilization (page 70)	iPhone 14 Pro Max	
Near-Field Communication (NFC) (page 71)	iPhone 14 Pro Max	
Acoustics (page 73)	iPhone 14 Pro Max	

5.10.1.10 iPhone 14 Pro

Table iPhone 14 Pro case testing matrix

5-10

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPhone 14 Pro	
MagSafe Case Magnet Array (page 180)	iPhone 14 Pro	Cases supporting MagSafe only.
Taptic Engine (page 69)	iPhone 14 Pro	
Autofocus & Optical Image Stabilization (page 70)	iPhone 14 Pro	
Near-Field Communication (NFC) (page 71)	iPhone 14 Pro	
Acoustics (page 73)	iPhone 14 Pro	

5.10.1.11 iPhone 14 Plus

Table iPhone 14 Plus case testing matrix

5-11

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPhone 14 Plus	
MagSafe Case Magnet Array (page 180)	iPhone 14 Plus	Cases supporting MagSafe only.
Taptic Engine (page 69)	iPhone 14 Plus	
Autofocus & Optical Image Stabilization (page 70)	iPhone 14 Plus	
Near-Field Communication (NFC) (page 71)	iPhone 14 Plus	
Acoustics (page 73)	iPhone 14 Plus	

5.10.1.12 iPhone 14

Table iPhone 14 case testing matrix

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPhone 14	
MagSafe Case Magnet Array (page 180)	iPhone 14	Cases supporting MagSafe only.
Taptic Engine (page 69)	iPhone 14	
Autofocus & Optical Image Stabilization (page 70)	iPhone 14	
Near-Field Communication (NFC) (page 71)	iPhone 14	
Acoustics (page 73)	iPhone 14	

5.10.1.13 iPhone 13 Pro Max

Table iPhone 13 Pro Max case testing matrix

5-13

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPhone 13 Pro Max	
MagSafe Case Magnet Array (page 180)	iPhone 13 Pro Max	Cases supporting MagSafe only.
Taptic Engine (page 69)	iPhone 13 Pro Max	
Autofocus & Optical Image Stabilization (page 70)	iPhone 13 Pro Max	
Near-Field Communication (NFC) (page 71)	iPhone 13 Pro Max	
Acoustics (page 73)	iPhone 13 Pro Max	

5.10.1.14 iPhone 13 Pro

Table iPhone 13 Pro case testing matrix

5-14

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPhone 13 Pro	
MagSafe Case Magnet Array (page 180)	iPhone 13 Pro	Cases supporting MagSafe only.
Taptic Engine (page 69)	iPhone 13 Pro	
Autofocus & Optical Image Stabilization (page 70)	iPhone 13 Pro	
Near-Field Communication (NFC) (page 71)	iPhone 13 Pro	
Acoustics (page 73)	iPhone 13 Pro	

5.10.1.15 iPhone 13

Table iPhone 13 case testing matrix

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPhone 13	
MagSafe Case Magnet Array (page 180)	iPhone 13	Cases supporting MagSafe only.
Taptic Engine (page 69)	iPhone 13	
Autofocus & Optical Image Stabilization (page 70)	iPhone 13	
Near-Field Communication (NFC) (page 71)	iPhone 13	
Acoustics (page 73)	iPhone 13	

5.10.1.16 iPhone 13 mini

Table iPhone 13 mini case testing matrix

5-16

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPhone 13 mini	
MagSafe Case Magnet Array (page 180)	iPhone 13 mini	Cases supporting MagSafe only.
Taptic Engine (page 69)	iPhone 13 mini	
Autofocus & Optical Image Stabilization (page 70)	iPhone 13 mini	
Near-Field Communication (NFC) (page 71)	iPhone 13 mini	
Acoustics (page 73)	iPhone 13 mini	

5.10.1.17 iPhone 12 Pro Max

Table iPhone 12 Pro Max case testing matrix

5-17

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPhone 12 Pro Max	
MagSafe Case Magnet Array (page 180)	iPhone 12 Pro Max	Cases supporting MagSafe only.
Taptic Engine (page 69)	iPhone 12 Pro Max	
Autofocus & Optical Image Stabilization (page 70)	iPhone 12 Pro Max	
Near-Field Communication (NFC) (page 71)	iPhone 12 Pro Max	
Acoustics (page 73)	iPhone 12 Pro Max	

5.10.1.18 iPhone 12 Pro

Table iPhone 12 Pro case testing matrix

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPhone 12 Pro	
MagSafe Case Magnet Array (page 180)	iPhone 12 Pro	Cases supporting MagSafe only.
Taptic Engine (page 69)	iPhone 12 Pro	
Autofocus & Optical Image Stabilization (page 70)	iPhone 12 Pro	
Near-Field Communication (NFC) (page 71)	iPhone 12 Pro	
Acoustics (page 73)	iPhone 12 Pro	

5.10.1.19 iPhone 12

Table iPhone 12 case testing matrix

5-19

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPhone 12	
MagSafe Case Magnet Array (page 180)	iPhone 12	Cases supporting MagSafe only.
Taptic Engine (page 69)	iPhone 12	
Autofocus & Optical Image Stabilization (page 70)	iPhone 12	
Near-Field Communication (NFC) (page 71)	iPhone 12	
Acoustics (page 73)	iPhone 12	

5.10.1.20 iPhone 12 mini

Table iPhone 12 mini case testing matrix

5-20

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPhone 12 mini	
MagSafe Case Magnet Array (page 180)	iPhone 12 mini	Cases supporting MagSafe only.
Taptic Engine (page 69)	iPhone 12 mini	
Autofocus & Optical Image Stabilization (page 70)	iPhone 12 mini	
Near-Field Communication (NFC) (page 71)	iPhone 12 mini	
Acoustics (page 73)	iPhone 12 mini	

5.10.1.21 iPhone 11 Pro Max

Table iPhone 11 Pro Max case testing matrix

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPhone 11 Pro Max	
Taptic Engine (page 69)	iPhone 11 Pro Max	
Autofocus & Optical Image Stabilization (page 70)	iPhone 11 Pro Max	
Near-Field Communication (NFC) (page 71)	iPhone 11 Pro Max	
Acoustics (page 73)	iPhone 11 Pro Max	

5.10.1.22 iPhone 11 Pro

Table iPhone 11 Pro case testing matrix

5-22

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPhone 11 Pro	
Taptic Engine (page 69)	iPhone 11 Pro	
Autofocus & Optical Image Stabilization (page 70)	iPhone 11 Pro	
Near-Field Communication (NFC) (page 71)	iPhone 11 Pro	
Acoustics (page 73)	iPhone 11 Pro	

5.10.1.23 iPhone 11

Table iPhone 11 case testing matrix

5-23

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPhone 11	
Taptic Engine (page 69)	iPhone 11	
Autofocus & Optical Image Stabilization (page 70)	iPhone 11	
Near-Field Communication (NFC) (page 71)	iPhone 11	
Acoustics (page 73)	iPhone 11	

5.10.1.24 iPhone XS Max

Table iPhone XS Max case testing matrix

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPhone XS Max	
Taptic Engine (page 69)	iPhone XS Max	
Autofocus & Optical Image Stabilization (page 70)	iPhone XS Max	
Near-Field Communication (NFC) (page 71)	iPhone XS Max	
Acoustics (page 73)	iPhone XS Max	

5.10.1.25 iPhone XS

Table iPhone XS case testing matrix

5-25

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPhone XS	
Taptic Engine (page 69)	iPhone XS	
Autofocus & Optical Image Stabilization (page 70)	iPhone XS	
Near-Field Communication (NFC) (page 71)	iPhone XS	
Acoustics (page 73)	iPhone XS	

5.10.1.26 iPhone XR

Table iPhone XR case testing matrix

5-26

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPhone XR	
Taptic Engine (page 69)	iPhone XR	
Autofocus & Optical Image Stabilization (page 70)	iPhone XR	
Near-Field Communication (NFC) (page 71)	iPhone XR	
Acoustics (page 73)	iPhone XR	

5.10.1.27 iPhone X

Table iPhone X case testing matrix

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPhone X	
Taptic Engine (page 69)	iPhone X	
Autofocus & Optical Image Stabilization (page 70)	iPhone X	
Near-Field Communication (NFC) (page 71)	iPhone X	
Acoustics (page 73)	iPhone X	

5.10.1.28 iPhone 8 Plus/iPhone 7 Plus

Table iPhone 8 Plus/iPhone 7 Plus case testing matrix

5-28

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPhone 8 Plus and iPhone 7 Plus	
Taptic Engine (page 69)	iPhone 8 Plus and iPhone 7 Plus	
Touch ID Sensor Overlays (page 69)	iPhone 8 Plus and iPhone 7 Plus	
Autofocus & Optical Image Stabilization (page 70)	iPhone 8 Plus	
Near-Field Communication (NFC) (page 71)	iPhone 8 Plus and iPhone 7 Plus	
Acoustics (page 73)	iPhone 8 Plus and iPhone 7 Plus	

It is not possible for a case to claim compatibility with only iPhone 8 Plus or only iPhone 7 Plus.

5.10.1.29 iPhone SE (3rd generation)/iPhone SE (2nd generation)/iPhone 8/iPhone 7

Table iPhone SE (3rd generation)/iPhone SE (2nd generation)/iPhone 8/iPhone 7 case testing

5-29 matrix

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPhone SE (3rd generation), iPhone SE (2nd generation), iPhone 8, and iPhone 7	
Taptic Engine (page 69)	iPhone SE (3rd generation), iPhone SE (2nd generation), iPhone 8, and iPhone 7	
Touch ID Sensor Overlays (page 69)	iPhone SE (3rd generation), iPhone SE (2nd generation), iPhone 8, and iPhone 7	
Autofocus & Optical Image Stabilization (page 70)	iPhone SE (3rd generation) and iPhone SE (2nd generation)	
Near-Field Communication (NFC) (page 71)	iPhone SE (3rd generation) and iPhone SE (2nd generation)	
Acoustics (page 73)	iPhone SE (3rd generation), iPhone SE (2nd generation), iPhone 8, and iPhone 7	

It is not possible for a case to claim compatibility with only iPhone SE (3rd generation), only iPhone SE (2nd generation), only iPhone 8, or only iPhone 7.

5.10.1.30 iPhone 6s Plus/iPhone 6 Plus

Table iPhone 6s Plus/iPhone 6 Plus case testing matrix

5-30

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPhone 6s Plus and iPhone 6 Plus	
Autofocus & Optical Image Stabilization (page 70)	iPhone 6s Plus	
Near-Field Communication (NFC) (page 71)	iPhone 6s Plus and iPhone 6 Plus	
Taptic Engine (page 69)	iPhone 6s Plus	

It is not possible for a case to claim compatibility with only iPhone 6s Plus or only iPhone 6 Plus.

5.10.1.31 iPhone 6s/iPhone 6

Table iPhone 6 s/iPhone 6 case testing matrix **5-31**

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPhone 6s and iPhone 6	
Near-Field Communication (NFC) (page 71)	iPhone 6s and iPhone 6	
Taptic Engine (page 69)	iPhone 6s	

It is not possible for a case to claim compatibility with only iPhone 6s or only iPhone 6.

5.10.1.32 iPhone 5/iPhone 5s/iPhone SE

Table iPhone 5/iPhone SE case testing matrix **5-32**

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPhone SE	

It is not possible for a case to claim compatibility with only iPhone 5 or only iPhone 5s or only iPhone SE.

5.10.1.33 iPhone 5c

Table iPhone 5c case testing matrix

5-33

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPhone 5c	
Compass (page 72)	iPhone 5c	

5.10.1.34 iPad Pro 13-inch (M4)

Table iPad Pro 13-inch (M4) case testing matrix **5-34**

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPad Pro 13-inch (M4)	
Compass (page 72)	iPad Pro 13-inch (M4)	

5.10.1.35 iPad Pro 11-inch (M4)

Table iPad Pro 11-inch (M4) case testing matrix **5-35**

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPad Pro 11-inch (M4)	
Compass (page 72)	iPad Pro 11-inch (M4)	

5.10.1.36 iPad Air 13-inch (M2)

Table iPad Air 13-inch (M2) case testing matrix **5-36**

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPad Air 13-inch (M2)	
Compass (page 72)	iPad Air 13-inch (M2)	

5.10.1.37 iPad Air 11-inch (M2)

TableiPad Air 11-inch (M2) case testing matrix

5-37

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPad Air 11-inch (M2)	
Compass (page 72)	iPad Air 11-inch (M2)	

5.10.1.38 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (6th generation) and iPad Pro 12.9-inch (5th generation)

Table iPad Pro 12.9-inch (6th generation) and iPad Pro 12.9-inch (5th generation) case testing

5-38 matrix

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPad Pro 12.9-inch (6th generation)	
Compass (page 72)	iPad Pro 12.9-inch (6th generation)	

It is not possible for a case to claim compatibility with only iPad Pro 12.9-inch (6th generation) or only iPad Pro 12.9-inch (5th generation).

5.10.1.39 iPad Pro 11-inch (4th generation) and iPad Pro 11-inch (3rd generation)

Table iPad Pro 11-inch (4th generation) and iPad Pro 11-inch (3rd generation) case testing matrix **5-39**

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPad Pro 11-inch (4th generation)	
Compass (page 72)	iPad Pro 11-inch (4th generation)	

It is not possible for a case to claim compatibility with only iPad Pro 11-inch (4th generation) or only iPad Pro 11-inch (3rd generation).

5.10.1.40 iPad (10th generation)

Table iPad (10th generation) case testing matrix **5-40**

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPad (10th generation)	
Compass (page 72)	iPad (10th generation)	

5.10.1.41 iPad mini (6th generation)

 Table
 iPad mini (6th generation) case testing matrix

5-41

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPad mini (6th generation)	
Compass (page 72)	iPad mini (6th generation)	

5.10.1.42 iPad (7th generation)/iPad (8th generation)/iPad (9th generation)

Table iPad (7th generation)/iPad (8th generation)/iPad (9th generation) case testing matrix **5-42**

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPad (7th generation), iPad (8th generation), and iPad (9th generation)	
Compass (page 72)	iPad (7th generation), iPad (8th generation), and iPad (9th generation)	

It is not possible for a case to claim compatibility with only iPad (7th generation) or only iPad (8th generation) or only iPad (9th generation).

5.10.1.43 iPad Air (5th generation)/iPad Air (4th generation)

Table iPad Air (5th generation)/iPad Air (4th generation) case testing matrix **5-43**

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPad Air (5th generation)	
Compass (page 72)	iPad Air (5th generation)	

5.10.1.44 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (4th generation)

Table iPad Pro 12.9-inch (4th generation) case testing matrix **5-44**

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPad Pro 12.9-inch (4th generation)	
Compass (page 72)	iPad Pro 12.9-inch (4th generation)	

5.10.1.45 iPad Pro 11-inch (2nd generation)

 Table
 iPad Pro 11-inch (2nd generation) case testing matrix

5-45

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPad Pro 11-inch (2nd generation)	
Compass (page 72)	iPad Pro 11-inch (2nd generation)	

5.10.1.46 iPad Air (3rd generation)

Table iPad Air (3rd generation) case testing matrix

5-46

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPad Air (3rd generation)	
Autofocus & Optical Image Stabilization (page 70)	iPad Air (3rd generation)	
Compass (page 72)	iPad Air (3rd generation)	

5.10.1.47 iPad mini (5th generation)

Table iPad mini (5th generation) case testing matrix

5-47

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPad mini (5th generation)	
Compass (page 72)	iPad mini (5th generation)	

5.10.1.48 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (3rd generation)

Table iPad Pro 12.9-inch (3rd generation) case testing matrix

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPad Pro 12.9-inch (3rd generation)	
Compass (page 72)	iPad Pro 12.9-inch (3rd generation)	

5.10.1.49 iPad Pro 11-inch (1st generation)

 Table
 iPad Pro 11-inch (1st generation) case testing matrix

5-49

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPad Pro 11-inch (1st generation)	
Compass (page 72)	iPad Pro 11-inch (1st generation)	

5.10.1.50 iPad Pro 10.5-inch

Table iPad Pro 10.5-inch case testing matrix

5-50

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPad Pro 10.5-inch	
Autofocus & Optical Image Stabilization (page 70)	iPad Pro 10.5-inch	
Compass (page 72)	iPad Pro 10.5-inch	

5.10.1.51 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (2nd generation)

Table iPad Pro 12.9-inch (2nd generation) case testing matrix

5-51

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPad Pro 12.9-inch (2nd generation)	
Autofocus & Optical Image Stabilization (page 70)	iPad Pro 12.9-inch (2nd generation)	
Compass (page 72)	iPad Pro 12.9-inch (2nd generation)	

5.10.1.52 iPad (5th and 6th generation)

Table iPad (5th and 6th generation) case testing matrix

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPad (5th generation) or iPad (6th generation)	
Compass (page 72)	iPad (5th generation) or iPad (6th generation)	

5.10.1.53 iPad Pro 9.7-inch

Table iPad Pro 9.7-inch case testing matrix **5-53**

Test Using

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPad Pro 9.7-inch	
Compass (page 72)	iPad Pro 9.7-inch	

5.10.1.54 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (1st generation)

 Table
 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (1st generation) case testing matrix

5-54

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPad Pro 12.9-inch (1st generation)	
Compass (page 72)	iPad Pro 12.9-inch (1st generation)	

5.10.1.55 iPad mini 4

Table iPad mini 4 case testing matrix

5-55

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPad mini 4	
Compass (page 72)	iPad mini 4	

5.10.1.56 iPad mini/iPad mini 2/iPad mini 3

Table iPad mini/iPad mini 2/iPad mini 3 case testing matrix

5-56

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPad mini 3	
Compass (page 72)	iPad mini 2 and iPad mini 3	

It is not possible for a case to claim compatibility with only iPad mini or only iPad mini 2 or only iPad mini 3.

5.10.1.57 iPad Air 2

Table iPad Air 2 case testing matrix

5-57

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPad Air 2	
Compass (page 72)	iPad Air 2	

5.10.1.58 iPad Air

Table iPad Air case testing matrix

5-58

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPad Air	
Compass (page 72)	iPad Air	

5.10.1.59 iPad (4th generation)

Table iPad (4th generation) case testing matrix

5-59

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPad (4th generation)	
Compass (page 72)	iPad (4th generation)	

5.10.1.60 iPod touch (5th generation)/iPod touch (6th generation)/iPod touch (7th generation)

 Table
 iPod touch (5th generation)/iPod touch (6th generation)/iPod touch (7th generation)

5-60 Testing Matrix

Test	Using	Notes
Product Design (page 67)	iPod touch (7th generation)	

It is not possible for a case to claim compatibility with only iPod touch (5th generation), iPod touch (6th generation) or iPod touch (7th generation).

5.10.2 Product Design

5.10.2.1 Equipment

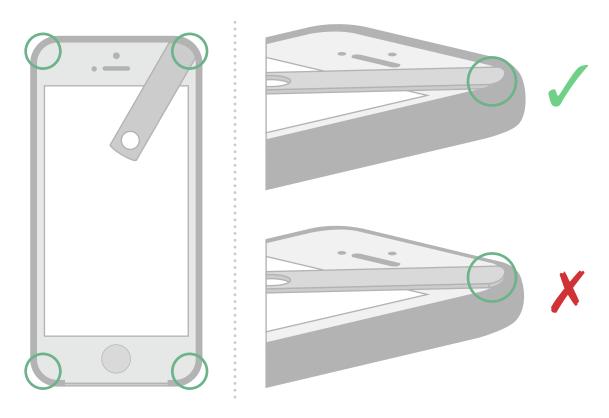
- Device
- Apple Lightning Digital AV Adapter for devices with a Lightning receptacle.
- Apple USB-C Digital AV Multiport Adapter for devices with a USB-C receptacle.
- EarPods with 3.5 mm Headphone Plug for devices with a 3.5 mm headset jack.
- Vernier calipers
- 0.85 mm plastic feeler gauge

5.10.2.2 Procedure

- 1. Insert the device into the case.
- 2. Verify the device completely fits inside the case.
- 3. Verify the device is not loose.
- 4. Verify all buttons are accessible.
- 5. Inspect for button feel. Verify all buttons are not too hard to press or take a lot of effort to press.
- 6. Verify speaker/microphone ports are not occluded.
- 7. If the device has an Apple Lightning receptacle:
 - a. Insert the Apple Lightning Digital AV Adapter into the receptacle and verify it fits.
 - **b.** Using vernier calipers, measure the Lightning connector opening on the case. Verify the opening is measured to be at least 12.05 mm by 6.30 mm.
- 8. If the device has a USB-C receptacle:
 - a. Insert the Apple USB-C Digital AV Multiport Adapter into the receptacle and verify it fits.
 - **b.** Using vernier calipers, measure the USB-C connector opening on the case. Verify the opening is measured to be at least 12.35 mm by 6.50 mm.
- **9.** If the device has a 3.5 mm headset jack:
 - a. Insert EarPods with 3.5 mm Headphone Plug into the headset jack and verify it fits.
 - **b.** Using vernier calipers, measure the headset jack opening on the case. Verify the opening is measured to be at least 6 mm in diameter and no more than 14 mm deep.
- **10.** If the device has a Touch ID sensor integrated with the Home button, use vernier calipers to verify the case is at least 2 mm away from the Touch ID sensor.
- 11. If the device has a Touch ID sensor integrated with the Top button, use vernier calipers to verify the case meets the keep-out defined for each device the accessory claims compatibility with. See Device Dimensional Drawings (page 284).

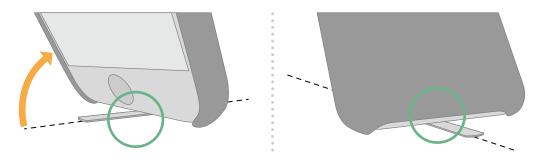
12. Verify the case is always proud of the feeler gauge when the gauge is placed at each corner of the device. See Figure 5-12 (page 68).

Figure Device proudness test 5-12



- 13. Set the device flat on its face (screen facing down).
- **14.** Roll the device towards any side not enclosed by the case until the gap between the device's exposed glass and flat surface is smallest.
- 15. Verify the feeler gauge fits into the gap between the device's exposed glass and flat surface.





16. If the case has an overlay, verify there are no air gaps introduced between it and the touchscreen.

5.10.3 Taptic Engine

5.10.3.1 Equipment

- Two devices A and B, same model
- Table

5.10.3.2 Procedure

- 1. Attach the case to device B.
- 2. Place device A on top of the table.
- 3. Place device B on top of the table next to device A.
- 4. Open Settings > Sound & Haptics > Haptics, select Always Play.
- **5.** Compare the Taptic Engine feedback between device A and device B for each of the following tasks:
 - a. Toggle the Ring/Silent switch or use the Action button.
 - **b.** Connect a charger, wait a few seconds, then disconnect the charger.
 - **c.** Open Settings > Notifications > Phone > Sounds, select Reflection (Default).
 - d. Open Settings > Notifications > Messages > Sounds, select Note (Default).
 - e. Go to the Home Screen.
 - f. Long press the Settings app to show the Quick Actions menu, then slide a finger across the menu while maintaining contact with the screen, release to select Wi-Fi.
 - g. Go to the Home Screen.
 - **h.** Long press the Home app to show the Quick Actions menu. Release, then tap away from the menu to return to the Home Screen.
 - i. Open the Clock app, select Timers (lower right corner), then scroll through the hours, minutes, and seconds.
- 6. If the device has a Home button:
 - **a.** Open Settings > General > Home Button, select option 2.
 - **b.** Press the Home button.
- 7. Repeat the above tasks while holding device A in the left hand and device B in the right hand.

5.10.3.3 Pass/Fail Criteria

The case does not cause substantial change in the feel of the device's Taptic Engine.

5.10.4 Touch ID Sensor Overlays

This test procedure applies to accessories overlaying the Touch ID sensor.

5.10.4.1 Equipment

- Nitrile gloves (for example, Ansell TNT Blue)
- Ethyl alcohol hand sanitizer (for example, Purell)
- Scissors

5.10.4.2 Procedure

- 1. Cut off a square of material from the nitrile glove's wrist portion.
- 2. Install the accessory onto the device.
- 3. Press the Side/Top button to place the device into a sleep state (display off).
- **4.** Place the square of nitrile glove material over the Touch ID sensor with the glove's outer side facing away from the device.
- 5. Apply a small amount of hand sanitizer (approximately 2 cm in diameter) to the glove over the Touch ID sensor.
- 6. Repeat the following steps 10 times:
 - a. Press the Touch ID sensor with a thumb.
 - **b.** Verify the device wakes (display on).
 - c. Place the device into a sleep state (display off).
- **7.** Repeat the following steps 10 times:
 - a. Press the Touch ID sensor with an index finger.
 - **b.** Verify the device wakes (display on).
 - c. Place the device into a sleep state (display off).

5.10.4.3 Pass/Fail Criteria

Verify the device wakes every time the Touch ID sensor is pressed.

5.10.5 Camera

5.10.5.1 Autofocus & Optical Image Stabilization

This test applies to devices equipped with Autofocus (AF) and/or Optical Image Stabilization (OIS).

5.10.5.1.1 Equipment

- Device running iOS 18.0 or later or iPadOS 18.0 or later. See Device Models (page 49).
- A flat level non-ferrous test surface away from magnetic fields.
- Accessory Developer Assistant (ADA) (page 281) installed on the device.
- Autofocus & Optical Image Stabilization Test Profile (page 281) installed on the device.

5.10.5.1.2 Procedure

- 1. Launch the Accessory Developer Assistant app and sign in.
- 2. Select Case, Autofocus and Optical Image Stabilization.
- 3. Allow ADA to access the device camera, if prompted.
- 4. Set the device on the test surface.
- 5. Follow the on-screen instructions.
- 6. Select Measure Baseline and wait for the measurement to complete.
- 7. Attach the case being tested on the device.
- 8. Set the device back on the test surface.
- 9. Select Measure Attached and wait for the measurement to complete.
- 10. Verify all tests pass and note the results.

5.10.6 Near-Field Communication (NFC)

This test applies to devices equipped with NFC.

5.10.6.1 Equipment

The following equipment is necessary:

- Device running iOS 18.0 or later.
- Accessory Developer Assistant (ADA) (page 281) installed on the device.
- An NFC tag.
- An NFC transmitter.
 - A separate device with the ADA app may be used as an NFC transmitter.
- A flat level non-ferrous test surface away from magnetic fields.
- A straight edge non-metalic ruler.

5.10.6.2 Test Setup

- 1. Place the NFC tag or transmitter on the flat level non-ferrous test surface.
- 2. Position the ruler to measure the vertical distance from the NFC tag or transmitter to the device.

5.10.6.3 Procedure

This procedure establishes a detection baseline without a case attached and then tests are rerun with the case attached. The procedure is repeated for both NFC tag & transmitter modes.

- 1. Launch the Accessory Developer Assistant app and sign in.
- 2. Select Near Field Communication.
- 3. Select 'Test with NFC tag', and follow the on-screen instructions.
 - a. Measure baseline average distance with no case attached.
 - b. Attach case.

- c. Repeat measurements with case attached.
- d. Verify test passes.
- 4. Select 'Test with an NFC transmitter', and follow the on-screen instructions.
 - a. If using a second device as an NFC transmitter:
 - a. Open ADA app on the second device.
 - **b.** Select Apple Pay Detector.
 - c. Select Start Detector.
 - **b.** Measure baseline average distance with no case attached.
 - c. Attach case.
 - **d.** Repeat measurements with case attached.
 - e. Verify test passes.
- 5. Perform multi-angle detection.
- 6. Verify multi-angle detection test passes.

5.10.7 Compass

5.10.7.1 Equipment

The following equipment is necessary:

- Device running iPadOS 18.0 or later.
- Accessory Developer Assistant (ADA) (page 281) installed on the device.
- A flat level non-ferrous test surface away from magnetic fields.
- Magnetometer, such as the Meda FVM400.

5.10.7.2 Test Setup

- 1. Place a mark on the test surface with a 90° angle to use for repeated device alignment. For example, use two pieces of tape perpendicular to each other.
- 2. Use the magnetometer to verify the test surface has a consistent magnetic field, not affected by nearby electronics or magnets.

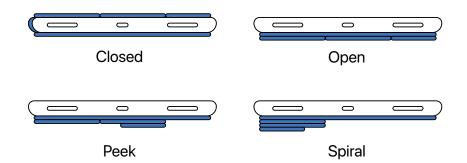
5.10.7.3 Procedure

Compass Test Procedures are outlined in this section.

- 1. Launch the Accessory Developer Assistant app and sign in.
- 2. Select Compass and the case type, such as: Folio, Keyboard Folio, or Shell.

3. Scroll down and select all supported case configurations, see Figure 5-14 (page 73).

Figure Case configurations **5-14**



- 4. Scroll down and select all included case materials.
- 5. Select Start Test.
- 6. If a closed case configuration is selected, connect an external display and mouse when prompted.
- 7. Place the device with no case attached on the test surface, aligned to the mark.
- 8. Select Measure Baseline to collect an initial measurement.
- **9.** Once the measurement is complete, follow the on-screen instructions to attach the case and collect a measurement for each supported case configuration.
- 10. Verify all tests pass and note the results.

5.10.8 Acoustics

The following test procedures apply to devices with a built in speaker and/or microphone.

5.10.8.1 Speakerphone Call

This procedure evaluates the impact of a case on the speakerphone performance of a device.

5.10.8.1.1 Equipment and Test Setup

This procedure needs two operators in separate quiet rooms.

Room A:

- Operator A.
- The device used to evaluate the case with cellular service and at least two out of five bars of cellular reception within the room.

Room B:

- Operator B.
- Landline speakerphone.

Digital audio recorder (for example, a device with the Voice Memo app).

5.10.8.1.2 Pass/Fail Criteria

There are two categories of failure for this procedure:

- Echo: If Operator B hears their own voice from the landline.
- Double talk: If Operator B hears Operator A inconsistently.

Establish the pass/fail threshold for these two categories by performing the test procedure using the device (without the case) as a reference. If there is no perceivable difference between the reference and the same procedure conducted with the case on the device, the test passes.

5.10.8.1.3 Procedure

- 1. Operator A: Use the device (without a case) in Room A to call the landline phone in Room B.
- 2. Operator A: Place the device in speakerphone mode.
- 3. Operator B: Answer the call with the landline phone in Room B.
- **4.** Operator B: Place the landline phone in speakerphone mode.
- 5. Operator A and B: Simultaneously recite the following phrases to evaluate the call quality:
 - a. The birch canoe slid on the smooth planks.
 - **b.** Glue the sheet to the dark blue background.
 - c. It's easy to tell the depth of a well.
 - **d.** These days a chicken leg is a rare dish.
 - e. Rice is often served in round bowls.
 - **f.** The juice of lemons makes fine punch.
 - **g.** The box was thrown beside the parked truck.
 - **h.** The hogs were fed chopped corn and garbage.
 - i. Four hours of steady work faced us.
 - j. Large size in stockings is hard to sell.
- **6.** Operator B: Evaluate the call. Ensure the call is audible and clear when there is no case on the device.
- 7. Operator A: Place the case on the device.
- 8. Operator B: Start audio recording using a digital audio recorder.
- **9.** Operator A: State the test date and identify the manufacturer name, product name, and a unique identifier (UID) for case (production run name, design version, etc.).
- **10.** Operator A and B: Simultaneously recite the same phrases as above.
- 11. Operator B: Stop audio recording.
- 12. Operator B: Evaluate the recording against the Pass/Fail Criteria (page 74).

The phrases used for this test procedure are from "IEEE Recommended Practice for Speech Quality Measurements," in *IEEE Transactions on Audio and Electroacoustics*, vol. 17, no. 3, pp. 225-246, September 1969.

6. Covers

This chapter is applicable to accessories covering device displays.

6.1 Device Protection

Covers shall not damage coatings on the display in any operating condition (for example, when closed, carrying in a backpack, or storing).

6.2 Magnetic Interference

Accessory covers shall not interfere with the device's:

- Magnetic compass.
- Rear camera autofocus (AF).
- Rear camera optical image stabilization (OIS), if present.
- Front camera autofocus, if present.

See Magnetic Interference (page 29) for additional details.

6.3 Smart Covers

Dimensional drawings indicating magnet and Hall effect sensor locations are available for the following devices:

- iPad Pro 13-inch (M4), 3 of 5 (page 369)
- iPad Pro 11-inch (M4), 3 of 5 (page 374)
- iPad Air 13-inch (M2), 3 of 5 (page 379)
- iPad Air 11-inch (M2), 3 of 5 (page 384)
- iPad Pro 12.9-inch (6th generation), 3 of 5 (page 389)
- iPad Pro 11-inch (4th generation), 3 of 5 (page 394)
- iPad (10th generation), 4 of 6 (page 400)
- iPad Air (5th generation) and iPad Air (4th generation), 3 of 5 (page 405)
- iPad mini (6th generation), 3 of 6 (page 410)
- iPad mini (6th generation), 4 of 6 (page 411)

- iPad (9th generation), iPad (8th generation) and iPad (7th generation), 2 of 4 (page 415)
- iPad Pro 12.9-inch (5th generation), 3 of 5 (page 420)
- iPad Pro 11-inch (3rd generation), 3 of 5 (page 425)
- iPad Pro 12.9-inch (4th generation), 3 of 5 (page 430)
- iPad Pro 11-inch (2nd generation), 3 of 5 (page 435)
- iPad Air (3rd generation) with Wi-Fi, 2 of 3 (page 439)
- iPad Air (3rd generation) with Wi-Fi + Cellular, 2 of 3 (page 442)
- iPad mini (5th generation) with Wi-Fi, 2 of 3 (page 445)
- iPad mini (5th generation) with Wi-Fi + Cellular, 2 of 3 (page 448)
- iPad Pro 12.9-inch (3rd generation), 2 of 3 (page 451)
- iPad Pro 11-inch (1st generation), 2 of 3 (page 454)
- iPad Pro 12.9-inch (2nd generation) Magnet/Hall Effect Sensors, 1 of 2 (page 458)
- iPad Pro 12.9-inch (2nd generation) Magnet/Hall Effect Sensors, 2 of 2 (page 459)
- iPad Pro 10.5-inch Magnet/Hall Effect Sensors, 1 of 2 (page 462)
- iPad Pro 10.5-inch Magnet/Hall Effect Sensors, 2 of 2 (page 463)
- iPad (5th and 6th generation) Magnet/Hall Effect Sensors, 1 of 2 (page 465)
- iPad (5th and 6th generation) Magnet/Hall Effect Sensors, 2 of 2 (page 466)
- iPad Pro 9.7-inch Magnet/Hall Effect Sensors, 1 of 2 (page 469)
- iPad Pro 9.7-inch Magnet/Hall Effect Sensors, 2 of 2 (page 470)
- iPad Pro 12.9-inch (1st generation) Magnet/Hall Effect Sensors, 1 of 2 (page 473)
- iPad Pro 12.9-inch (1st generation) Magnet/Hall Effect Sensors, 2 of 2 (page 474)
- iPad mini 4 Magnet/Hall Effect Sensors (page 477)

7. Screen Overlays

The displays on Apple products have been carefully engineered and tested to deliver exacting visual performance. Many products also feature Multi-Touch technology to support user interactions. Any material overlaying the screen or between the surface and users' fingers (or writing instruments on iPad) may impact the visual, touch, or sensor performance.

7.1 Product Design

A screen overlay shall not:

- Degrade the performance of Multi-Touch, Apple Pencil, or sensors.
- Introduce air gaps between the touchscreen and overlay.
- Be electrically conductive.
- Cause any color tinge to cool white light sources.

A screen overlay should have a relative permittivity (dielectric) of 3.1 to 3.2.

A screen overlay should not:

- Exceed 0.3 mm in thickness.
- Exceed 0.095 mm in thickness to support Apple Pencil.
- Have a water contact angle <110°.

Note:

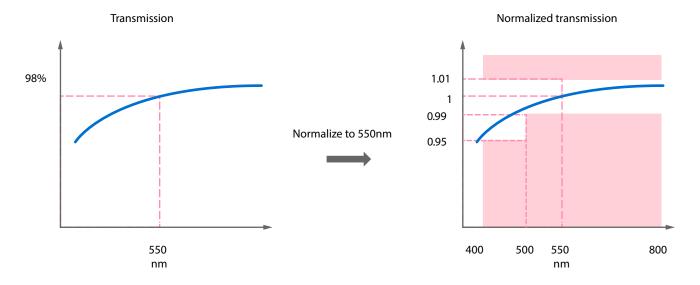
Non-glossy surfaces may accelerate Apple Pencil tip wear.

7.1.1 Optical Transmission

Optical transmission of screen overlays should:

- Be greater than 90% relative to clear glass for any viewing angle across the active display area, see Device Dimensional Drawings (page 284).
- Remain flat as defined in Figure 7-1 (page 78). Upon normalizing the transmission spectrum to the value at 550 nm, the normalized spectrum should fall in the range of [0.99, 1.01] from 500-800 nm and [0.95, 1.01] from 400-500 nm.

Figure 7-1 Transmission spectrum



7.1.2 Infrared Transmission

Infrared transmission variance shall not exceed 1.5%. The infrared transmission in the 1200 nm - 1500 nm range relative to light source should be greater than:

- 90% for an angle of incidence between 0° and 45°.
- 84% for an angle of incidence between 45° and 60°.

7.1.3 Transmission Haze

Transmission haze is the percentage of visible and infrared light scattered at more than 2.5° from the normal transmission. Transmission haze should:

- Not exceed 0.3% for the following devices:
 - iPhone 16 Pro Max
 - iPhone 16 Pro
 - iPhone 16 Plus
 - iPhone 16
 - iPhone 15 Pro Max
 - iPhone 15 Pro
 - iPhone 15 Plus
 - iPhone 15
 - iPhone 14 Pro Max
 - iPhone 14 Pro
- Not exceed 13% for all other devices.
- Be measured with a haze meter, per ASTM D1003.

7.1.4 Dynamic Island

Screen overlays shall not have a punch-out for the Dynamic Island.

7.2 Edge Swipe Gestures

See Edge Swipe Gestures (page 40).

8. Camera Attachments

This chapter is applicable to accessories intentionally altering images captured by device cameras.

8.1 Magnetic Interference

Accessory camera attachments shall not interfere with the device's:

- Magnetic compass.
- Rear camera autofocus (AF).
- Rear camera optical image stabilization (OIS), if present.
- Front camera autofocus, if present.

See Magnetic Interference (page 29) for additional details.

9. Adapters

An adapter accessory is a dongle or a Built-In Cable (page 25) enabling connections between physically incompatible devices and accessories.

Unless otherwise specified, accessories may integrate one or more adapter components as well as other accessory features to create more advanced multi-port adapters. For example, a Lightning or USB-C adapter may support audio, power, external storage, media controls, app communication, and more.

See the Accessory Interface Specification (page 26) for more information.

9.1 Headset Adapters (Lightning to 3.5 mm)

Lightning to 3.5 mm headset adapters are accessories enabling 3.5 mm audio connections.

See the Accessory Interface Specification (page 26) for more information.

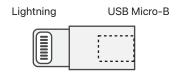
9.2 USB-A/USB-C to Lightning Headset Adapters

USB-A to Lightning or USB-C to Lightning headset adapters are accessories integrating a Lightning Receptacle (C37) to support Lightning headsets, speakers, and microphones.

See the Accessory Interface Specification (page 26) for more information.

9.3 Lightning to USB Micro-B Adapters

Figure 9-1 Lightning to USB Micro-B adapter



Lightning to USB Micro-B adapters are Lightning dongle accessories functioning exactly like the Apple Lightning to USB Micro-B Adapter and shall consist of:

- Lightning connector.
- USB Micro-B receptacle.

See the Accessory Interface Specification (page 26) for more information.

10. AC Power Adapters

AC power adapters convert AC "mains" power to DC to provide power to a device. They may provide power using one or more of the following:

- Device Power (Inductive) (page 153).
- Device Power (USB-C) (page 146).
- Device Power (Lightning) (page 148).

10.1 Converter Switching Frequencies

Device touchscreen or audio functionality may be degraded if converter switching frequencies do not meet the following requirements:

- Under loads greater than 5 mA, converter switching frequencies shall be above 22 kHz.
- Under loads greater than 20 mA, converter switching frequencies shall be above 60 kHz and should be above 450 kHz.

10.2 YCAP AC Capacitor

AC power adapters should include a YCAP AC capacitor (up to 1000 pF) between the primary and secondary sections of the adapter's transformer to reduce common-mode noise at switching frequencies. These frequencies or their harmonics can interfere with device touchscreen sensors.

10.3 Impedance Stability

AC power adapter series impedance should not change abruptly. Sudden changes in impedance may cause touchscreen sensor output oscillations.

Bridge diodes used in full-wave bridge rectifiers can be a major source of abrupt changes in the series impedance. If the bridge diodes have large inherent reverse capacitance (greater than 100 pF), then the net impedance change due to diode switching may be acceptably small. However, diode reverse capacitance may decrease in more compact IC designs due to decreased chip area.

Impedance of bridge diodes with unacceptably low reverse capacitance can be stabilized using the example circuit shown in Figure 10-1 (page 84) and Table 10-1 (page 84). In this example, capacitors C1, C2, C3, and C4 have been placed in parallel with diodes D1, D2, D3, and D4 to stabilize the bridge impedance. Their values are larger than the inherent reverse capacitances of the diodes.

Resistors R1, R2, R3, and R4 are optional; if included, they can block noise at very high frequencies, which can help with EMI compatibility. The recommended values of R1, R2, R3, and R4 in Table 10-1 (page 84) were chosen to have trivial levels of impedance relative to the impedances of C1, C2, C3, and C4 at power line frequencies.

Figure Typical AC power adapter diode bridge circuit 10-1

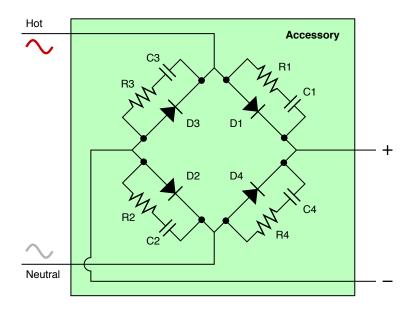


Table Typical component values for an AC power adapter diode bridge circuit **10-1**

Component	Value
C1, C2, C3, C4	47 pF
R1, R2, R3, R4	2 kΩ

10.4 Fuse Protection

A fuse should be present at the input of the AC power adapter to protect it under any fault condition.

10.5 Short Circuit Response

The output of the AC power adapter should drop or fold back without any resulting damage if its output is shorted to the secondary common (less than 10 m Ω).

11. Battery Packs

A battery pack is an accessory designed to provide power to the device.

The battery pack may provide power using one or more of the following:

- Device Power (Inductive) (page 153).
- Device Power (USB-C) (page 146).
- Device Power (Lightning) (page 148).

12. Headsets

Headsets provide users with personal audio experiences. Devices treat headsets differently from accessories with speakers.

Headsets shall comply with:

- TDMA Noise (page 29) requirements.
- Applicable volume limit regulations in the regions in which they are sold.

Wired headsets should support Apple Music Lossless or Hi-Res Lossless. See https://support.apple.com/en-us/118295.

12.1 Product Design

Headsets shall have:

- Drivers positioned at user's ears.
- Microphone(s) positioned to record user's voice.

12.2 Audio Interface

Headsets shall establish audio connections to devices using one of the following interfaces:

- USB-C Plug (page 271), including the Apple USB-C Analog Headset Module (page 243).
- Bluetooth (page 223):
 - Hands-Free Profile (HFP) (page 227)
 - Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP) (page 232)

If connected using the USB-C Plug (page 271), headsets shall integrate one of the following:

- Apple USB-C Analog Headset Module (page 243) (recommended for standard headsets).
- USB Audio Device Class 2.0 or 4.0 compliant codec.

12.3 Remote Controls

Controls shall be implemented using one of the following:

- Direct electrical connections to the Headset Remote and Microphone Transmitter (page 252) when integrating an Apple USB-C Analog Headset Module (page 243).
- HID Headset Remote (page 159) when using one of the following:
 - USB-C Plug (page 271) with a USB Audio Device Class 2.0 or 4.0 compliant codec.
 - Bluetooth (page 223).
- Bluetooth Audio/Video Remote Control Profile (AVRCP) (page 230).

Bluetooth headsets should implement controls identical to an Apple wired headset.

12.4 USB-C Headset Identification

This section applies to headsets integrating a USB-C connector.

Headsets shall:

- Set the idVendor, idProduct, iManufacturer, iProduct, and iSerialNumber in the Standard Device Descriptor to reflect the accessory markings and packaging.
- Set the Output Terminal Type to 0x0302 (Headphones) if the headset does not integrate a microphone.
- Set the Output Terminal Type and Input Terminal Type to 0×0402 (Headset) if the headset integrates a microphone.
- Set the Audio Function Category to 0x04 (Headset).

Headsets should:

- Set the ilnterface Playback and ilnterface Record strings to reflect the accessory markings and packaging.
- Set a unique iSerialNumber in the Standard Device Descriptor.

Note:

C125 has its Output Terminal Type and Input Terminal Type set to 0×0402 (Headset) and Audio Function Category set to 0×04 (Headset). These configurations cannot be overwritten.

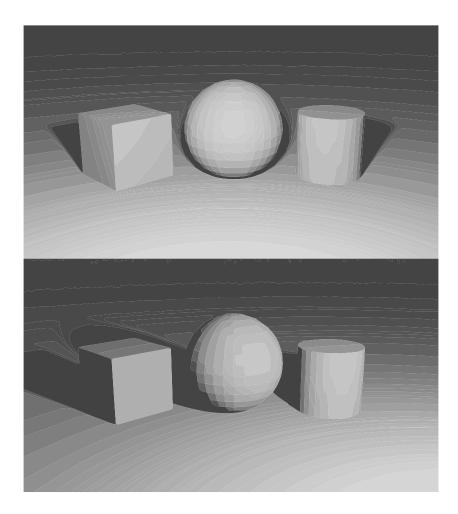
13. Strobes

Strobe accessories replace a device's integrated flash when capturing a still image from either the front or rear-facing cameras. Photographers can use such accessories to control scene lighting for creative purposes.

Strobes are:

- Compatible with all iOS camera applications.
- Synchronized with iPhone camera using the Lightning connector.

Figure Example of integrated flash (top) vs. external strobe (bottom) **13-1**



The following devices support strobe accessories:

- iPhone 14 Pro Max
- iPhone 14 Pro
- iPhone 14 Plus
- iPhone 14
- iPhone SE (3rd generation)
- iPhone 13 Pro Max
- iPhone 13 Pro
- iPhone 13
- iPhone 13 mini
- iPhone 12 Pro Max
- iPhone 12 Pro
- iPhone 12
- iPhone 12 mini
- iPhone SE (2nd generation)
- iPhone 11 Pro Max
- iPhone 11 Pro
- iPhone 11

This feature is supported on iOS 14.0 or later.

See the Accessory Interface Specification (page 26) for more information.

14. Keyboards

Devices may accept user input from accessory keyboards in place of the onscreen keyboard.

14.1 Requirements

Accessory keyboards shall:

- Support the Human Interface Device (HID) (page 219) protocol.
- Not identify themselves as Apple-branded accessories, for example, using the Apple Vendor ID and/or Product IDs.

Keyboard keys exhibiting any of the following behaviors are explicitly prohibited:

- Send anything other than 'key pressed' or 'key released' for key(s) physically pressed/released.
- Emulate combinations or sequences of keys (for example, a Copy button sending #-C or macros generating a timed sequence of events).
- Emulate timed user actions, such as 'press-and-hold'.
- Send different HID usages depending on the state of another control surface.

HID reports sent from the keyboard shall only occur in response to a Direct User Action (page 25).

Keyboards may integrate LEDs to indicate the:

- Caps Lock status of the device.
- · Connection status, such as Bluetooth state.
- Battery status of the accessory, if applicable.

Keyboards shall not incorporate any other status LEDs not supported by devices.

Keyboards should be integrated with Trackpads (page 97) when possible to provide an enhanced user experience.

Mechanical key layout shall be based on the *ISO/IEC 9995-2*, *ANSI-INCITS 154-1988*, or *JIS X 6002-1980* standards. Keyboard HID descriptors shall set the Keyboard Physical Layout usage to the appropriate layout code as defined in Table 14-5 (page 95).

Keyboard HID descriptors shall set the bCountryCode field to the appropriate country code as defined in *Device Class Definition for Human Interface Devices (HID) – Version 1.11, Section 6.2.1 HID Descriptor.*

Keyboard HID descriptors shall declare support for the HID Keyboard/Keypad Page. HID report descriptors may declare a input usage minimum of 0 and maximum of 255 as shown in Example HID Report Descriptor (page 96) for efficiency. Otherwise, the descriptor shall individually enumerate each HID Keyboard/Keypad page usage the keyboard is capable of sending.

Keyboards shall implement individual keys emitting the following HID Keyboard/Keypad page usages:

Table Required HID Keyboard/Keypad Page (0x07) controls for use by keyboards **14-1**

Usage ID	Usage Name	Apple Function
0x0004	a and A	a and A
0x0005	b and B	b and B
0x0006	c and C	c and C
0x0007	d and D	d and D
0x0008	e and E	e and E
0x0009	f and F	f and F
0x000A	g and G	g and G
0x000B	h and H	h and H
0x000C	i and I	i and I
0x000D	j and J	j and J
0x000E	k and K	k and K
0x000F	I and L	I and L
0x0010	m and M	m and M
0x0011	n and N	n and N
0x0012	o and O	o and O
0x0013	p and P	p and P
0x0014	q and Q	q and Q
0x0015	r and R	r and R
0x0016	s and S	s and S
0x0017	t and T	t and T
0x0018	u and U	u and U
0x0019	v and V	v and V
0x001A	w and W	w and W
0x001B	x and X	x and X
0x001C	y and Y	y and Y
0x001D	z and Z	z and Z
0x001E	1 and !	1 and !
0x001F	2 and @	2 and @
0x0020	3 and #	3 and #

Usage ID	Usage Name	Apple Function
0x0021	4 and \$	4 and \$
0x0022	5 and %	5 and %
0x0023	6 and ^	6 and ^
0x0024	7 and &	7 and &
0x0025	8 and *	8 and *
0x0026	9 and (9 and (
0x0027	0 and)	0 and)
0x0028	Return/Enter	Return
0x002A	Delete/Backspace	Delete
0x002B	Tab	Tab
0x002C	Spacebar	Spacebar
0x002D	- and _	- and _
0x002E	= and +	= and +
0x002F	[and {	[and {
0x0030] and }] and }
0x0031	\ and	\ and
0x0033	; and :	; and :
0x0034	' and "	' and "
0x0035	Grave Accent and Tilde	`and ~
0x0036	, and <	, and <
0x0037	. and >	. and >
0x0038	/ and ?	/ and ?
0x0039	CapsLock	Caps Lock
0x004F	RightArrow	Right Arrow
0x0050	LeftArrow	Left Arrow
0x0051	DownArrow	Down Arrow
0x0052	UpArrow	Up Arrow
0x00E1	LeftShift	Left Shift
0x00E2	LeftAlt	Left Option / Alt
0x00E3	LeftGUI	Left Command / %
0x00E5	RightShift	Right Shift
0x00E6	RightAlt	Right Option / Alt
0x00E7	RightGUI	Right Command / 光

Keyboards may implement individual keys emitting the following HID Keyboard/Keypad page usages:

Table Optional HID Keyboard/Keypad Page (0x07) controls for use by keyboards **14-2**

Usage ID	Usage Name	Apple Function
0x0029	Escape	Escape
0x00E0	LeftControl	Left Control
0x00E4	RightControl	Right Control
0x004A	Home	Home
0x004D	End	End
0x0054	Keypad /	Keypad /
0x0055	Keypad *	Keypad *
0x0056	Keypad -	Keypad -
0x0057	Keypad +	Keypad +
0x0058	Keypad Enter	Keypad Enter
0x0059	Keypad 1 and End	Keypad 1
0x005A	Keypad 2 and Down Arrow	Keypad 2
0x005B	Keypad 3 and PageDn	Keypad 3
0x005C	Keypad 4 and Left Arrow	Keypad 4
0x005D	Keypad 5	Keypad 5
0x005E	Keypad 6 and Right Arrow	Keypad 6
0x005F	Keypad 7 and Home	Keypad 7
0x0060	Keypad 8 and Up Arrow	Keypad 8
0x0061	Keypad 9 and PageUp	Keypad 9
0x0062	Keypad 0 and Insert	Keypad 0
0x0063	Keypad . and Delete	Keypad .
0x0067	Keypad =	Keypad =

Keyboards may implement individual keys emitting the following HID Consumer page usages:

Table HID Consumer Page ($0 \times 0 C$) controls for use by keyboards **14-3**

Usage ID	Usage Name	Apple Function
0x0030	Power	Lock
0x0040	Menu	Home Button
0x006F	Display Brightness Increment	Brighter
0x0070	Display Brightness Decrement	Dimmer
0x00B5	Scan Next Track	Transport Right
0x00B6	Scan Previous Track	Transport Left
0x00CD	Play/Pause	Play/Pause

Usage ID	Usage Name	Apple Function
0x00E2	Mute	Mute
0x00E9	Volume Increment	Louder
0x00EA	Volume Decrement	Softer
0x01AE	AL Keyboard Layout	Toggle Onscreen Keyboard
0x029D	AC Keyboard Layout Select	Globe Key
0x0221	AC Search	Spotlight
0x025B	Promote	Play More Like This
0x025C	Demote	Play Less Like This
0x0262	Add to Cart	Add to Wish List
0x02C3	Keyboard Physical Layout	Keyboard Physical Layout, see Table 14-5 (page 95).

Keyboards may implement individual keys emitting the following HID Generic Desktop page usages:

Table HID Generic Desktop Page (0x01) controls for use by keyboards **14-4**

Usage ID	Usage Name	Apple Function	
0x009B	System Do Not Disturb	Toggle Focus Mode	

Table Keyboard Physical Layout codes **14-5**

Value	Description
1	101 (for example, US) - ANSI
3	102 (for example, German) - ISO
5	106 (DOS/V Japan) - JIS

JIS keyboards shall also implement additional keys found on the Japanese Apple Magic Keyboard. Non-JIS keyboards shall not implement the Japanese keys.

Table Required HID Keyboard/Keypad Page (0x07) controls for use by JIS keyboards **14-6**

Usage ID	Usage Name	Apple Function
0x0087	Keyboard International1	_
0x0089	Keyboard International3	¥
0x0090	LANG1	Switch to Previous Language
0x0091	LANG2	Switch to Next Language

14.2 Examples

14.2.1 Example HID Report Descriptor

```
USAGE PAGE (Generic Desktop)
                                         05 01
                                         09 06
USAGE (Keyboard)
COLLECTION (Application)
                                         A1 01
 USAGE PAGE (LEDs)
                                         05 08
 LOGICAL MINIMUM (0)
                                         15 00
 LOGICAL MAXIMUM (1)
                                         25 01
 USAGE (Caps Lock)
                                         09 02
 REPORT SIZE (1)
                                         75 01
 REPORT COUNT (1)
                                         95 01
 OUTPUT (Data, Var, Abs)
                                        91 02
                                        75 07
 REPORT SIZE (7)
 REPORT COUNT (1)
                                         95 01
                                       91 03
 OUTPUT (Cnst, Var, Abs)
 USAGE PAGE (Keyboard)
                                        05 07
 USAGE MINIMUM (Keyboard Left Control) 19 E0
 USAGE MAXIMUM (Keyboard Right GUI)
                                         29 E7
                                         75 01
 REPORT SIZE (1)
 REPORT COUNT (8)
                                         95 08
 INPUT (Data, Var, Abs)
                                        81 02
                                        15 00
 LOGICAL MINIMUM (0)
 LOGICAL MAXIMUM (255)
                                       26 FF 00
                                       19 00
 USAGE MINIMUM (0)
 USAGE MAXIMUM (255)
                                         2A FF 00
                                       75 08
 REPORT SIZE (8)
 REPORT COUNT (5)
                                       95 05
                                        81 00
 INPUT (Data, Ary, Abs)
 USAGE PAGE (Consumer Devices)
                                      05 OC
 LOGICAL MINIMUM (0)
                                        15 00
 LOGICAL MAXIMUM (1)
                                        25 01
 USAGE (Menu)
                                        09 40
                                       0A 21 02
 USAGE (AC Search)
 USAGE (AL Keyboard Layout)
                                       0A AE 01
 USAGE (Scan Previous Track)
                                       09 B6
 USAGE (Play/Pause)
                                         09 CD
                                        09 B5
 USAGE (Scan Next Track)
 USAGE (Mute)
                                         09 E2
 USAGE (Volume Down)
                                         09 EA
 USAGE (Volume Up)
                                         09 E9
 USAGE (Power)
                                         09 30
 REPORT SIZE (1)
                                         75 01
                                         95 0A
 REPORT COUNT (10)
                                         81 02
 INPUT (Data, Var, Abs)
 REPORT SIZE (6)
                                         75 06
 REPORT COUNT (1)
                                         95 01
 INPUT (Cnst, Var, Abs)
                                         81 03
END COLLECTION
                                         CO
```

15. Trackpads

Devices may accept user input from accessory trackpads.

This feature is supported on iPadOS 14.5 or later.

15.1 Requirements

Accessory trackpads shall:

- Support the Human Interface Device (HID) (page 219) protocol.
- Not identify themselves as Apple-branded accessories, for example, using the Apple Vendor ID (VID).

Accessory trackpads exhibiting any of the following behaviors are explicitly prohibited:

- Emulate combinations of touch gestures.
- Emulate timed user actions, such as 'click and hold', drag, and zoom gestures.
- Send different HID usages depending on the state of another control surface.

HID reports sent from the accessory trackpad shall only occur in response to a Direct User Action (page 25).

Trackpads shall support 2-5 simultaneous contacts on the digitizer surface.

15.1.1 Integration with Keyboards

Accessory trackpads shall be integrated with Keyboards (page 91) and simultaneously support both input methods. The following are examples of interactions involving both keyboard and trackpad input:

- Rapidly transitioning between cursor movement and keyboard entry.
- Pressing and holding modifier keys while performing a drag.
- Pressing \(\mathbb{H}\)-Tab to see the app switcher, then using the cursor to switch apps.
- Dragging an item using the trackpad, followed by pressing 第-Tab to switch apps.

15.1.2 HID Report Descriptor

HID report descriptors for an accessory trackpad shall declare support for the HID Digitizer Page.

Accessory trackpads shall implement the following HID Digitizer page usages:

Table Required HID Digitizer Page (0x0D) controls for use by accessory trackpads **15-1**

Usage ID	Usage Name	Apple Function
0x01	Button 1	Primary button state
0x05	Report ID	Feature Report ID
0x22	Finger	Number of contact collection points
0x30	X	X coordinate of contact position
0x31	Υ	Y coordinate of contact position
0x38 or 0x51	Transducer Index or Contact ID	Index (from 0-4) uniquely identifying the finger/contact
0x42	Tip Switch	Contact is on the surface of the digitizer
0x47	Confidence	Touch is an intended, valid contact
0x57	Surface Switch	Digitizer surface on/off

Accessory trackpads may implement the following HID Digitizer page usages. These HID usages are recommended:

Table Recommended HID Digitizer Page $(0 \times 0 D)$ controls for use by accessory trackpads **15-2**

Usage ID	Usage Name	Apple Function
0x02	Button 2	Secondary button state
0x56	Scan Time	Relative scan time
0xA1	Report Rate	Report rate (Hz)

15.1.3 Coexistence

Accessory trackpads shall:

- Not degrade the performance of Multi-Touch or Apple Pencil.
- Not support a drive voltage greater than 6 V_{pp} .
- Not support drive frequencies less than 500 kHz.
- Support 3 or more drive frequencies, separated by at least 50 kHz each.
- Dynamically switch between drive frequencies whenever effective resolution drops below 120 DPI.
 For example, effective resolution may drop in the presence of 50 mV RMS noise from external power sources.

Accessory trackpads should support a sine wave narrow band drive frequency.

15.1.4 Performance

Accessory trackpads shall:

- Behave uniformly across the digitizer surface.
- Uniquely detect contact points as close as 8 mm center to center.
- Detect contact sizes of at least 5 mm.
- Differentiate between multi-finger taps and single-finger drags.
- Maintain an effective input resolution less than 20 µm and immediately report positional updates greater than or equal to the effective input resolution.
- Maintain an effective resolution more than 600 DPI.
- Maintain the highest possible report rate to the device. Apple recommends 60 Hz or higher.
- Maintain a panning latency less than or equal to 23 ms.
- Maintain a touch down latency less than or equal to 35 ms.
- Maintain a positional accuracy less than or equal to 500 μm.
- Maintain a stationary contact jitter less than or equal to 210 μm.
- Not deviate more than 250 μm from an ideal line.

15.1.5 Input Confidence

Accessory trackpads shall:

- Set the Confidence usage when an input transitions from valid to invalid. Contact transitions should be quick, accurate, and stable to achieve the best user experience. Incorrect or fluctuating classification of contacts may result in recognition of unintended gestures, interruption, or cancelation of intended gestures.
- Detect and reject unintended/invalid inputs, such as palms, while continuing to report valid inputs to the device, such as multiple contacts.
- Distinguish between a valid large thumb and an invalid lightly resting palm.
- Reject inputs ≥1 mm from the tracking surface.

15.1.6 Click to Wake

Devices use Report ID usage to indicate to the trackpad whether surface contacts shall be reported or not. Devices will use the Surface Switch usage to tell the accessory to go into Click to Wake mode where only button clicks are accepted. Trackpads may use this opportunity to go into a low power mode where the digitizer surface does not have to be constantly scanned.

This feature report also doubles as an informational report. Devices may query the accessory trackpad at any time after enumeration to obtain the current state of the Surface Switch, and also to get the accessory's Report Rate.

15.2 Examples

15.2.1 Example HID Report Descriptor

The following descriptor is for a 92.10 mm x 50.60 mm trackpad with two buttons supporting up to five simultaneous contacts.

Additional modifications may be necessary in order to implement this HID report descriptor in the accessory trackpad firmware, specifically:

- Modify physical maximum values for X (0x30) and Y (0x31) positions of each finger to match the
 physical size of the accessory trackpad. Units are in tenths of a mm (0.1 mm). In the example, X
 goes from 0x0 to 0x0399 (92.10 mm) and Y goes from 0x0 to 0x01FA (50.60 mm).
- Modify logical maximum values for the X (0x30) and Y (0x31) of each finger positions to match the resolution of the accessory trackpad. In the example, X (0x30) goes from 0 to 0x0451 (for a resolution of $92.10/1105 = \sim 0.083$ mm) and Y (0x31) goes from 0 to 0x025F (for the same resolution of $50.60/607 = \sim 0.083$ mm).

```
USAGE PAGE (Digitizer Device Page)
                                                     95 9D
USAGE (Touch Pad)
                                                     09 05
COLLECTION (Application)
                                                     A1 01
 REPORT_ID (3)
                                                     85 03
                                                     27 FF FF 00 00
 LOGICAL MAXIMUM (65535)
 USAGE (Relative Scan Time (DV=Dynamic Value))
                                                     99 56
 REPORT SIZE (16)
                                                     75 10
 REPORT COUNT (1)
                                                     95 01
 INPUT (Data, Var, Abs)
                                                     81 92
 LOGICAL MAXIMUM (1)
                                                     25 01
 REPORT SIZE (1)
                                                     75 01
                                                     09 57
 USAGE (Surface Switch)
 FEATURE (Data, Var, Abs)
                                                     B1 02
                                                     26 FF 7F
 LOGICAL MAXIMUM (32767)
 REPORT SIZE (15)
                                                     75 0F
 USAGE (Report Rate)
                                                     09 A1
 FEATURE (Data, Var, Abs)
                                                     B1 02
 USAGE PAGE (Button Page)
                                                     05 09
 LOGICAL MAXIMUM (1)
                                                     25 01
 USAGE MINIMUM (Button 1)
                                                     19 01
                                                     29 02
 USAGE MAXIMUM (Button 2)
 REPORT COUNT (2)
                                                     95 92
 REPORT SIZE (1)
                                                     75 01
 INPUT (Data, Var, Abs)
                                                     81 02
 REPORT COUNT (6)
                                                     95 06
 INPUT (Cost, Ary, Abs)
                                                     81 01
 USAGE PAGE (Digitizer Device Page)
                                                     05 0D
                                                     09 22
 USAGE (Finger)
 COLLECTION (Physical)
                                                     A1 00
 USAGE (Tip Switch)
                                                     09 42
 USAGE (Confidence)
                                                     09 47
```

REPORT COUNT (2)	95 02
INPUT (Data, Var, Abs)	81 02
LOGICAL MAXIMUM (5)	25 05
USAGE (Transducer Index)	09 38
REPORT SIZE (6)	75 06
REPORT COUNT (1)	95 01
INPUT (Data, Var, Abs)	81 02
USAGE PAGE (Generic Desktop Page)	05 01
PHYSICAL MAXIMUM (921) PHYSICAL MINIMUM (0)	46 99 03 35 00
LOGICAL MAXIMUM (1105) REPORT SIZE (12)	26 51 04 75 0C
UNIT EXPONENT (Unit Value x .01)	55 0E
GLOBAL UNIT (Distance in centimeters)	65 11
USAGE (X)	09 30
INPUT (Data, Var, Abs)	81 02
PHYSICAL MAXIMUM (506)	46 FA 01
LOGICAL MAXIMUM (607)	26 5F 02
USAGE (Y)	09 31
INPUT (Data, Var, Abs)	81 02
END COLLECTION (Physical)	C0
USAGE PAGE (Digitizer Device Page)	05 0D
USAGE (Finger)	09 22
COLLECTION (PHYSICAL)	A1 00
LOGICAL MAXIMUM (1)	25 01
USAGE (Tip Switch)	09 42
USAGE (Confidence)	09 47
REPORT SIZE (1)	75 01
REPORT COUNT (2)	95 02
INPUT (Data, Var, Abs)	81 02
USAGE (Transducer Index)	09 38
LOGICAL MAXIMUM (5)	25 05
REPORT SIZE (6)	75 06
REPORT COUNT (1)	95 01
INPUT (Data, Var, Abs)	81 02
USAGE PAGE (Generic Desktop Page)	05 01
PHYSICAL MAXIMUM (921)	46 99 03
LOGICAL MAXIMUM (1105)	26 51 04
REPORT SIZE (12)	75 0C
USAGE (X)	09 30
INPUT (Data, Var, Abs)	81 02
PHYSICAL MAXIMUM (506)	46 FA 01
LOGICAL MAXIMUM (607)	26 5F 02
USAGE (Y)	09 31
INPUT (Data, Var, Abs)	81 02
END COLLECTION (Physical)	C0
USAGE PAGE (Digitizer Device Page)	05 0D
USAGE (Finger)	09 22
COLLECTION (Physical)	A1 00
LOGICAL MAXIMUM (1)	25 01
USAGE (Tip Switch)	09 42
USAGE (Confidence)	09 47
REPORT SIZE (1)	75 01

15.2 Examples

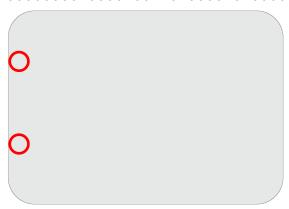
REPORT COUNT (2)	95	02	
INPUT (Data, Var, Abs)	81	02	
USAGE (Transducer Index)	09	38	
LOGICAL MAXIMUM (5)	25	05	
REPORT SIZE (6)	75	06	
REPORT COUNT (1)	95	01	
INPUT (Data, Var, Abs)	81	02	
USAGE PAGE (Generic Desktop Page)	05	01	
PHYSICAL MAXIMUM (921)	46	99	03
LOGICAL MAXIMUM (1105)	26	51	04
REPORT SIZE (12)	75	0C	
USAGE (X)	09	30	
INPUT (Data, Var, Abs)		02	
PHYSICAL MAXIMUM (506)		FA	
LOGICAL MAXIMUM (607)	26	5F	02
USAGE (Y)		31	
INPUT (Data, Var, Abs)	81	02	
END COLLECTION (PHYSICAL)	C0		
USAGE PAGE (Digitizer Device Page)	05		
USAGE (Finger)	09		
COLLECTION (PHYSICAL)	A1		
LOGICAL MAXIMUM (1)		01	
USAGE (Tip Switch)		42	
USAGE (Confidence)		47	
REPORT SIZE (1)	75		
REPORT COUNT (2)	95		
INPUT (Data, Var, Abs)	81		
USAGE (Transducer Index)		38	
LOGICAL MAXIMUM (5)	25		
REPORT SIZE (6)		96	
REPORT COUNT (1)		01	
INPUT (Data, Var, Abs)		02	
USAGE PAGE (Generic Desktop Page)	05		00
PHYSICAL MAXIMUM (921)		99	
LOGICAL MAXIMUM (1105)		51	04
REPORT SIZE (12)	75		
USAGE (X)		30	
INPUT (Data, Var, Abs)		02	01
PHYSICAL MAXIMUM (506)		FA 5F	
LOGICAL MAXIMUM (607) USAGE (Y)		31	02
	81		
INPUT (Data, Var, Abs) END COLLECTION (Physical)	C0	02	
USAGE PAGE (Digitizer Device Page)	05	۵D	
USAGE (Finger)		22	
COLLECTION (PHYSICAL)	A1		
LOGICAL MAXIMUM (1)		01	
USAGE (Tip Switch)	09		
USAGE (Confidence)	09		
REPORT SIZE (1)	75		
REPORT COUNT (2)		02	
INPUT (Data, Var, Abs)		02	
USAGE (Transducer Index)		38	
CONST (ITAIISAGOT TIMON)	0 /	00	

```
LOGICAL MAXIMUM (5)
                                                     25 05
 REPORT SIZE (6)
                                                     75 06
 REPORT COUNT (1)
                                                     95 01
 INPUT (Data, Var, Abs)
                                                     81 02
 USAGE PAGE (Generic Desktop Page)
                                                     05 01
 PHYSICAL MAXIMUM (921)
                                                    46 99 03
 LOGICAL MAXIMUM (1105)
                                                     26 51 04
 REPORT SIZE (12)
                                                     75 0C
 USAGE (X)
                                                     09 30
 INPUT (Data, Var, Abs)
                                                     81 02
 PHYSICAL MAXIMUM (506)
                                                     46 FA 01
                                                     26 5F 02
 LOGICAL MAXIMUM (607)
 USAGE (Y)
                                                     09 31
 INPUT (Data, Var, Abs)
                                                     81 02
 END COLLECTION (Physical)
                                                     C0
END COLLECTION (Application)
                                                     C0
```

15.2.2 Example Trackpad

The following HID reports are for a 60 Hz accessory trackpad using the Example HID Report Descriptor (page 100):

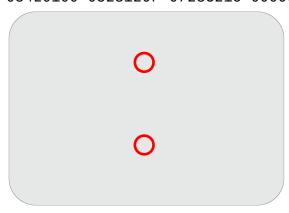
1. Two contacts are made on the surface of the accessory trackpad. 03000000 0300100F 0700C016 00000000 00000000 00000000



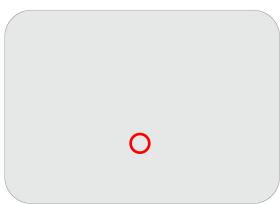
2. Two contacts move simultaneously along the X axis. 03A70000 0314110F 0714C116 00000000 00000000 00000000



3. Two contacts continue moving until they reach the center of the digitizer surface. 034E0100 0328120F 0728C216 00000000 00000000 00000000



4. One contact is removed. Confidence for removed contact is still 1 and its coordinates are unchanged. 03F50100 0328120F 0628C216 00000000 00000000 00000000



5. Remaining contact moves to the exact center of the digitizer surface. Confidence and coordinates of the removed contact are now 0.

039C0200 0328F212 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000



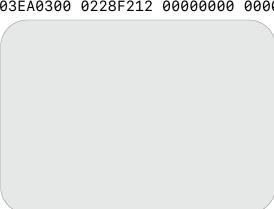
6. Button 1 is clicked.

03430301 0328F212 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000



7. Button 1 is un-clicked and contact is removed. Confidence for removed contact is still 1 and its coordinates are unchanged.

03EA0300 0228F212 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000



16. External Storage

Devices support external storage, such as USB drives and SD card readers, to:

- · Store and access files.
- Import and export photos.
- Record video.

16.1 Overview

Accessories may support moving data to or from a device using:

- *USB Mass Storage Class Specification Overview Version 1.4*, see https://www.usb.org/document-library/mass-storage-class-specification-overview-14.
- External Accessory Protocol (page 158).

16.2 Apple ProRes 4K

To support Apple ProRes capture at 4K, external storage shall:

- Be ExFAT formatted.
- Sustain a write speed of incompressible data, sampled every second, across the entire storage capacity, of at least:
 - 440 MiB/s for 4K at 120 fps.
 - 220 MiB/s for 4K at 60 fps.
- Not exceed 900 mA of current draw at any point in time. See Accessory Power (USB-C) (page 135).

For more information on Apple ProRes, including specific device support, see https://support.apple.com/en-us/109041.

16.3 Test Procedures

16.3.1 Apple ProRes 4K

16.3.1.1 Equipment

The following equipment is necessary:

Device supporting external Apple ProRes 4K capture running iOS 18.0 or later, see https://sup-port.apple.com/en-us/109041.

16.3.1.2 Setup

- 1. Fully charge the device.
- 2. Attach the external storage.
- 3. Erase and format the external storage as ExFAT:
 - a. Open Files and browse to the top level.
 - **b.** Long press the external storage entry and select Erase.
 - **c.** Verify the external storage is empty.
- **4.** Open Settings > Camera > Formats and enable Apple ProRes under Video Capture.
- **5.** Verify ProRes encoding is set to HDR.

16.3.1.3 Procedure

- 1. Attach the external storage to the device.
- 2. Open Camera, select Video and enable ProRes HDR from the Camera header.
- 3. Select the resolution indicator until it displays 4K.
- 4. Select the fps indicator until it displays:
 - 120 for devices and accessories supporting 4K at 120 fps.
 - 60 for devices and accessories supporting 4K at 60 fps.
- **5.** Verify the Max Time indicator is displayed.
- 6. Verify the 'USB-C' indicator is displayed near the USB-C port.
- 7. Record video including motion (camera pan/tilt, people, vehicles) for at least 10 minutes.
- 8. Stop recording and wait for all data to be written to external storage.
- 9. Verify no error messages are displayed.
- 10. Attach the external storage to a Mac and play the video.
- 11. Verify the video playback is smooth, with no choppiness or missing frames.
- **12.** Repeat the procedure, recording video until the drive is full, and verify all video is smooth, with no choppiness or missing frames.

17. AirPods Accessories

Accessories shall not interfere with AirPods operation. Keep-out regions may be found in the device dimensional drawings, see:

- AirPods 4 (page 541).
- AirPods Pro (2nd generation) (page 548).
- AirPods (3rd generation) (page 550).
- AirPods Max, 1 of 5 (page 551).
- AirPods Pro (1st generation) (page 557).
- AirPods (1st generation) and AirPods (2nd generation) (page 559).

17.1 Charging Case Covers

Charging case covers shall:

- Not interfere with AirPods charging case operation.
- Have a uniform thickness across the metal keep-out region.
- Not exceed 2.5 mm in thickness. Apple recommends 1.0 mm for maximum compatibility with inductive transmitters.

Keep-out regions may be found in the device dimensional drawings, see:

- Wireless Charging Case (USB-C) for AirPods 4, 1 of 3 (page 538).
- MagSafe Charging Case (USB-C) for AirPods Pro (2nd generation), 1 of 3 (page 542).
- MagSafe Charging Case for AirPods Pro (2nd generation), 1 of 3 (page 545).
- MagSafe Charging Case for AirPods (3rd generation) (page 549).
- Wireless Charging Case for AirPods Pro (1st generation) (page 556).
- Wireless Charging Case for AirPods (page 558).

Case covers claiming compatibility with Apple Watch chargers shall not obstruct the Apple Watch charger keep-out region, see:

- Wireless Charging Case (USB-C) for AirPods 4, 2 of 3 (page 539).
- MagSafe Charging Case (USB-C) for AirPods Pro (2nd generation), 2 of 3 (page 543).
- MagSafe Charging Case for AirPods Pro (2nd generation), 2 of 3 (page 546).

17.2 Chargers

Wired charging accessories shall:

- Provide 5 W (1.0 A at 5 V) at all times using:
 - USB Battery Charging Specification Release 1.2.
 - USB enumeration.
 - USB Power Delivery (PD) (page 212).
 - USB Type-C Current (page 213).

Wireless charging accessories shall meet the requirements in Device Power (Inductive) (page 153).

17.3 AirPods Max Accessories

Accessories shall not stretch the headband or canopy. Accessories should use soft, compliant materials such as microfiber or silicone.

If the accessory is a case for AirPods Max (USB-C), the keep-out for the USB-C connector:

- Shall be at least 12.35 mm by 6.50 mm.
- Should be at least 12.45 mm by 6.60 mm with full radii rounded edges for the greatest compatibility with the widest variety of cables and docks, see USB-C receptacle accessory keep-out (page 277).

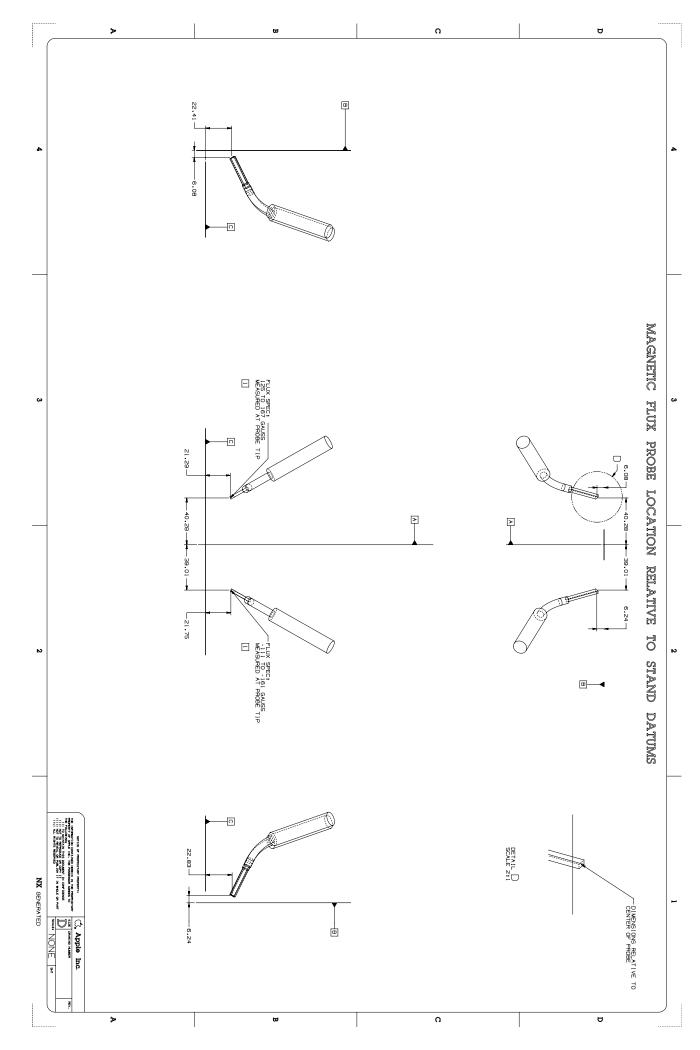
17.3.1 Sleep Mode

Accessories may enable sleep mode to help maintain the battery charge. Sleep mode is activated when AirPods Max:

- Is not charging.
- Magnetic flux at the:
 - Right earcup is 125 to 167 gauss.
 - Left earcup is -111 to -161 gauss.

See Magnetic Flux Probe (page 110) for the precise measuring point, and AirPods Max, 2 of 5 (page 552) for datums.

17.4 Magnetic Flux Probe



17.5 Test Procedures

Test procedures for AirPods accessories.

17.5.1 Power

Power test procedures for AirPods charging case covers.

17.5.1.1 Equipment

Equipment necessary to perform the power test procedure:

- AirPods.
- AirPods charging case.
- AirPods charging case cover.
- Apple MagSafe Charger.
- Device running iOS 18.0 or later.

17.5.1.2 Setup

- 1. Insert AirPods into charging case.
- 2. Unlock the device and open the charging case lid.
- 3. Pair AirPods with the device, if necessary.
- **4.** Using the device, verify the state of charge for:
 - a. Charging case is less than 80%.
 - **b.** AirPods is less than 50%.
- 5. Close the charging case lid.
- **6.** Verify the MagSafe charger is plugged into a functional power source.
- 7. Place the charging case onto the MagSafe charger on a flat surface.
- 8. Verify the charging case LED turns on momentarily.
- 9. Monitor the charging case LED for 30 seconds and verify the LED turns off.
- 10. Tap the charging case and verify the LED turns on momentarily.

17.5.1.3 MagSafe Charging

- 1. Attach the accessory to the AirPods charging case.
- 2. Place the charging case and attached accessory onto a MagSafe charger on a flat surface.
- 3. Verify the charging case LED turns on momentarily.
- 4. Monitor the charging case LED for 30 seconds and verify the LED turns off.
- 5. Tap the charging case and verify the LED turns on momentarily.

18. Apple Vision Pro Accessories

Accessories shall not interfere with Apple Vision Pro operation. Keep-out regions may be found in the device dimensional drawings, see:

- Apple Vision Pro, 1 of 6 (page 526)
- Apple Vision Pro, 2 of 6 (page 527)
- Apple Vision Pro, 3 of 6 (page 528)
- Apple Vision Pro, 4 of 6 (page 529)
- Apple Vision Pro, 5 of 6 (page 530)
- Apple Vision Pro, 6 of 6 (page 531)
- Apple Vision Pro Battery (page 532)
- Apple Vision Pro Audio Strap (page 533)
- ZEISS Optical Inserts, 1 of 4 (page 534)
- ZEISS Optical Inserts, 2 of 4 (page 535)
- ZEISS Optical Inserts, 3 of 4 (page 536)
- ZEISS Optical Inserts, 4 of 4 (page 537)

18.1 Apple Vision Pro Storage Cases

Storage cases shall:

- Not interfere with the click or rotation function of the top button, digital crown, and fit dial.
- Not apply force on the top button, digital crown, and fit dial.
- Minimize contact with all glass surfaces, including the display and optics. When necessary, use a soft non-abrasive material.
- Maintain a power cable bend radius of at least 13 mm at the Apple Vision Pro Battery.

18.2 Apple Vision Pro Battery Holders

Battery holders should maintain at least 25% surface exposure for heat dissipation, see Apple Vision Pro Battery (page 532).

18.3 Apple Vision Pro Bands

Bands attaching to the Apple Vision Pro Audio Strap connector shall:

- Be designed to prevent hair snag between the connector and mating parts, particularly in small spaces and between hard materials.
- Not detach with a peel force less than 100 N at 12 mm from the connector.
- Have a maximum insertion force of 18.3 N.
- Not have metal contact with the elastomer portion of Apple Vision Pro Audio Strap.
- Not have a material hardness exceeding 320 HV for portions contacting the Apple Vision Pro Audio Strap connector.
- Have a maximum normal pull force of 300 N on the Apple Vision Pro Audio Strap connector.

18.4 Test Procedures

Test procedures for Apple Vision Pro accessories.

18.4.1 Equipment

The following equipment is necessary to perform the tests in this procedure:

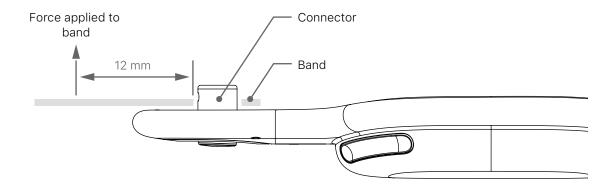
- Apple Vision Pro Audio Strap.
- Digital force gauge, such as the Chatillon DFX II.
- Hook attachment for digital force gauge.
- Clamps, or a vice, to securely hold the Apple Vision Pro Audio Strap on a flat level surface.

18.4.2 Peel Force Test

Peel force test procedure for Apple Vision Pro Bands.

- 1. Clamp the Apple Vision Pro Audio Strap as close to the connector as possible.
- 2. Apply ramping force to the band at 12 mm from the connector until 100 N of force is reached, see Figure 18-1 (page 114).
- 3. Verify the band is still attached to the Apple Vision Pro Audio Strap. Material failure on the band is allowed.

Figure Peel force test setup 18-1



19. Watch Bands

A well-designed watch band will securely attach to Apple Watch without interfering with Apple Watch operation. See <u>Device Dimensional Drawings</u> (page 284) for Apple Watch keep-out zones.

19.1 Requirements

Watch bands for Apple Watch shall integrate two lugs to mate with the Apple Watch Band Interface (page 117). Apple Watch uses a high precision interface profile, see https://developer.apple.com/accessories/apple-watch-lug-profile.zip for a sample 2D lug profile. Lugs should lock into the watch band mating slot with a 'lug latch' feature to prevent accidental removal of the watch band.

Exposed edges of watch bands and lugs shall pass *UL 1439, Tests for Sharpness of Edges on Equipment* and *BS EN 71-1:2014, Safety of toys - Part 1: Mechanical and physical properties.*

The lug latch shall never become jammed in the extended position.

Watch bands shall not integrate magnetic chargers.

Watch bands and lugs should:

- Pass a 72 hour salt mist test as specified in ASTM B117 with no visible corrosion.
- Resist a 5-20 kgf lateral slide-out force when installed in Apple Watch.
- Resist a 20 kgf or greater pull force as specified in *ISO-6245:1996, Specifications for Diver's Watches Section 7.3.*
- Detach easily from Apple Watch when the watch band release buttons are pressed.
- Take into account the weight of Apple Watch.

Watch bands shall enable the user to maintain direct skin contact with Apple Watch heart sensors and the back of Apple Watch, and shall incorporate sufficient margin to compensate for shifting or dimensional changes of the watch band material. Failure to do so may interfere with Apple Watch wrist detect and Apple Pay features. Watch bands should:

- Have length sizing adjustment pitch of less than 7 mm (center to center).
- Provide sufficient adjustability for the user to achieve a snug, yet comfortable fit preventing movement of Apple Watch relative to the wearer's skin.

Watch bands intended for use during exercise should maintain a snug fit through a full range of motion to maintain compatibility with Apple Watch heart sensors.

Apple recommends the following materials for lug bodies:

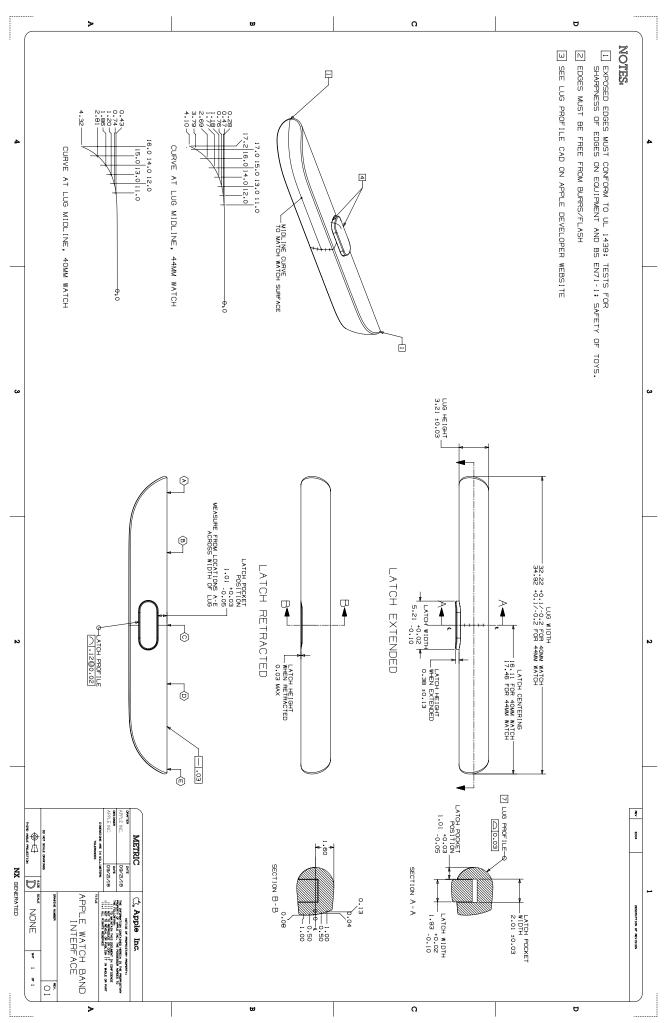
- 75 Shore A silicone.
- 50-55% glass-filled nylon.
- 240-270HV 316L / EN 1.4435 stainless steel.

Apple recommends the following materials for lug latches:

- 50-55% glass-filled nylon.
- 240-270HV 316L / EN 1.4435 stainless steel.

Watch bands for Apple Watch shall comply with applicable environmental regulations for the regions in which the watch bands are to be sold, and any applicable substance or material restrictions, including applicable restrictions on:

- Organic tin compounds, PFOS, PFOA, phthalates, azo dyes, polybrominated biphenyls (PBBs) and PAHs, per requirements of the EU REACh regulation EC 1907/2006.
- Nickel leach rate on surfaces in prolonged skin contact, per requirements of the EU REACh regulation EC 1907/2006.
- Cadmium, lead, hexavalent chromium, and nickel, per requirements of EU Directive 2009/48/EC.
- Natural rubber latex, per requirements of EU Directive EC 93/42/EEC.
- Dimethylfumarate (DMFu), per requirements of EU Regulation 412/2012.
- pH and Formaldehyde, per requirements of China GB 18401 for textiles and China GB 20400 for leather.
- Endangered species of flora and fauna in products or packaging (US Lacey Act).
- Polybrominated diphenyl ethers (PBDE).



19.3 Example Apple Watch Lug Assembly

Assembly instructions are based on Example Apple Watch Lug (page 120) and an assembly fixture with a clamping mechanism.

Proper assembly of the lug is critical to ensure the watch band securely attaches to Apple Watch. Improper assembly may result in damage to Apple Watch and/or the watch band.

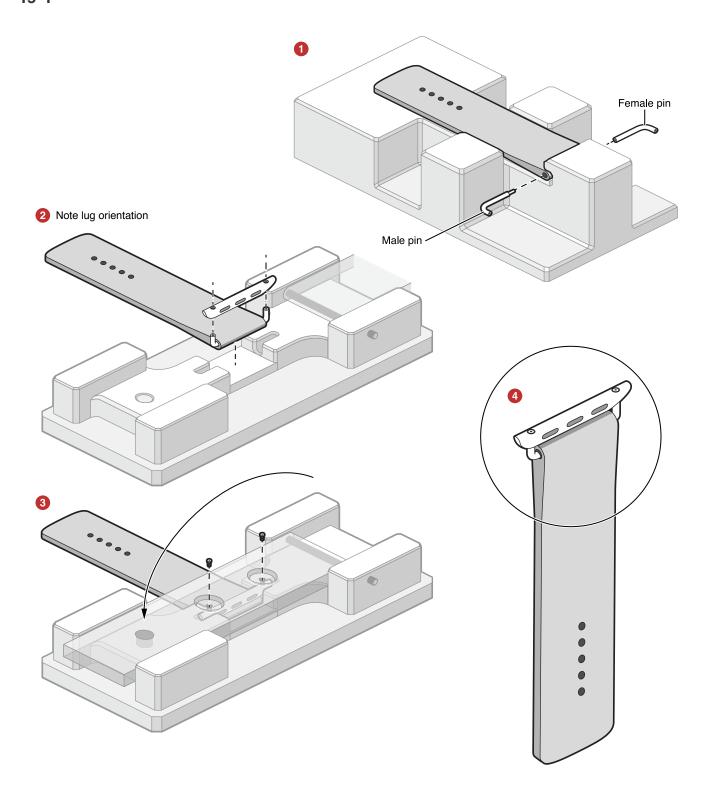
Screw threads should be secured with Loctite 435. Previously installed/used screws should not be reused.

The assembly fixture should hold the lug assembly in place and a clamping mechanism should compress the lug during screw insertion.

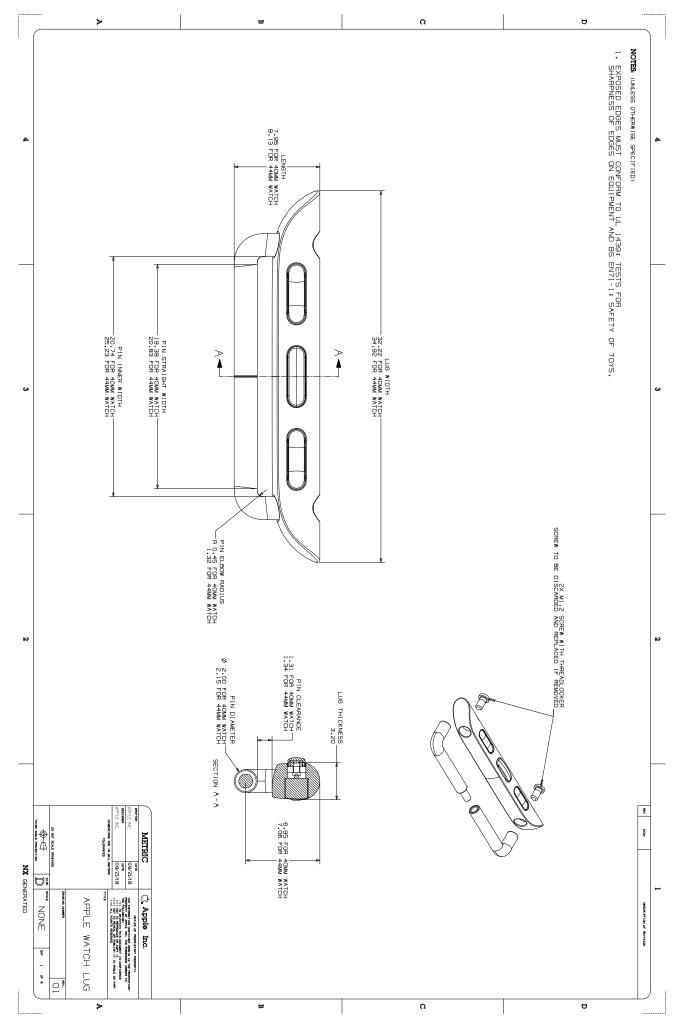
Assemble the watch band and lug as follows, see Figure 19-1 (page 119).

- 1. Lightly insert the long end of the female pin in the watch band until hard stop. Ensure there is no warping or damage in the watch band.
- 2. Lightly insert the long end of the male pin in the other side of the band until it interlocks with the female pin and both pins are seated together. Ensure there is no warping or damage in the watch band.
- 3. Align the holes on the bottom of the lug with the exposed ends of the female and male pins. Note lug latch top/bottom orientation relative to the watch band. Latch shall be on the side of the watch band against the wrist.
- 4. Apply Loctite 435 to screw threads.
- **5.** Install both screws using the following specification:
 - Torque: 1.1 kgf-cm ±10%
 - RPM: 120 ±10%
- 6. Visually inspect at 1200-1400 lux for screw proudness and cross-threading.
- 7. Ensure screws are just sub-flush to the lowest part of the counterbore and appear parallel to the long axis of the lug.
- 8. Ensure screws are undamaged, flat, and concentric with the counterbore.

Figure Apple Watch lug assembly fixture 19-1



19.4 Example Apple Watch Lug



20. Apple MagSafe Charger Mounts

Apple MagSafe Charger mounts (stands, docks, and other holders) provide a means to hold and position the charger and may support StandBy, see StandBy Mounts (page 122).

20.1 Mechanical

Mounts shall be compatible with:

- Apple MagSafe Charger (1 m) and Apple MagSafe Charger (2 m) (page 560)
- Apple MagSafe Charger (page 561)

Mounts should keep the Apple MagSafe Charger secure when attaching, detaching, or rotating a device.

Mounts shall not interfere with or cause Scratches and Damage (page 28) to the device.

To avoid interference with devices, mounts shall:

- Not exceed 30 mm from the center of the Apple MagSafe Charger surface towards the top edge
 of the device for all supported device orientations. If the device can be attached in any orientation,
 the accessory shall not exceed 30 mm in radius around the center of the Apple MagSafe Charger
 surface.
- Maintain a clearance of 5 mm from the back of the device (mating surface) for any part of the accessory past the 30 mm keep-in constraint.
- Stay within the MagSafe Accessory Enclosure Geometry (page 179).

21. StandBy Mounts

StandBy provides iPhone users a full-screen experience with glanceable information designed to be viewed from a distance when iPhone is in landscape orientation, locked, and charging. StandBy can be personalized to display a range of widgets and supports Live Activities, Siri, incoming calls, and notifications. StandBy remembers user's preferred views when using MagSafe.

Figure MagSafe example **21-1**

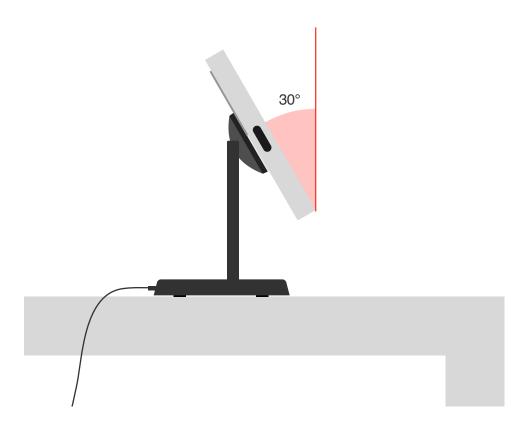


This feature is supported on iOS 17.0 or later.

21.1 Product Design

Figure StandBy mount example

21-2



Mounts supporting StandBy shall:

- Support landscape orientation.
- Support inductive or wired device charging.
- Not obstruct or touch the device cover glass or any device sensors.
- Not cause Scratches and Damage (page 28).

Mounts may be Apple MagSafe Charger Mounts (page 121).

The mounts should:

- Prevent free rotation of the device.
- Enable an adjustable backward tilt of at least 30° for optimal visibility.

- Be stable to prevent unintentionally exiting StandBy.
- Not obstruct Access to Controls (page 36).
- Implement the MagSafe Accessory Magnet Array (page 172).

21.2 Test Procedures

21.2.1 Equipment

The following equipment is necessary:

- Supported device running iOS 17.0 or later.
- A charger, if not integrated in accessory.

21.2.2 Enable StandBy

- 1. Attach locked device in landscape orientation to the accessory.
- 2. Attach a charger if the accessory does not integrate inductive or wired charging.
- 3. Verify device enters StandBy within a few seconds.

21.2.3 Product Design

Verify the StandBy Mount:

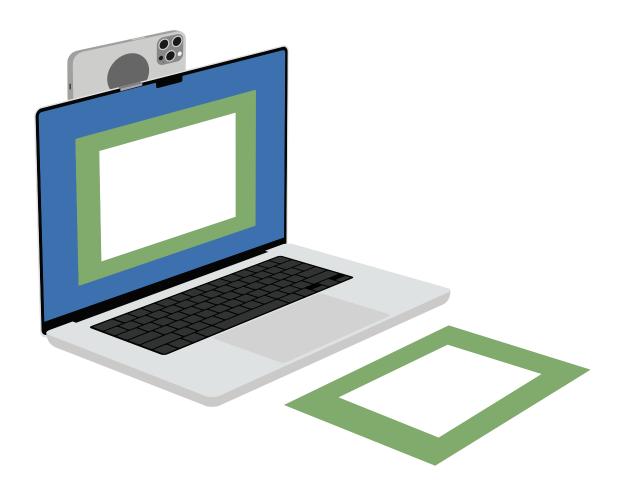
- 1. Supports landscape orientation.
- 2. Does not obstruct or touch the device cover glass or any device sensors.
- 3. Does not scratch or damage device.

22. Continuity Camera Mounts

Continuity Camera enables device cameras to be used with Apple TV or Mac and supports Portrait, Studio Light, Center Stage, Reactions, and Desk View video effects. System requirements for Continuity Camera are available at https://support.apple.com/en-us/108046#camera.

Mounts supporting Continuity Camera securely hold a device at the optimal height and angle to use with FaceTime and other apps.

Figure MacBook Desk View example 22-1



22.1 Product Design

Mounts supporting Continuity Camera shall:

- Support devices in portrait and landscape orientations.
- Enable use of a USB-C cable or USB to Lightning charge cable.
- Not touch the device cover glass, block any device camera field of view, or obstruct any ambient light sensors, see Device Dimensional Drawings (page 284).
- Not cause Scratches and Damage (page 28).

The mounts should:

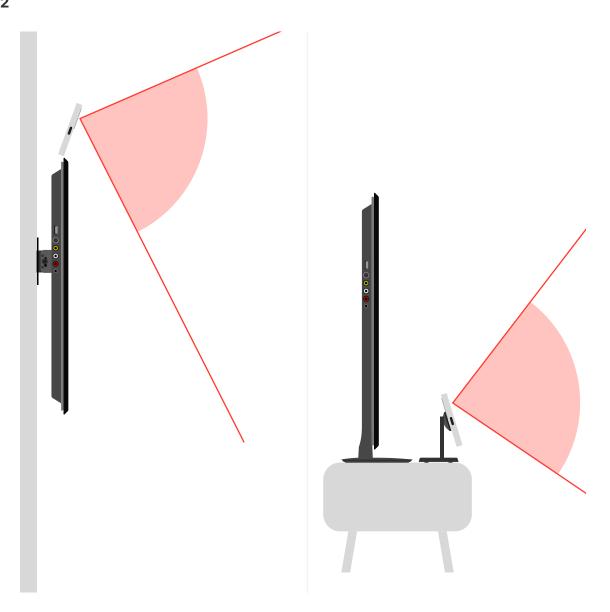
- Prevent free rotation of the device.
- Enable a device camera lens height of at least 228 mm to support Desk View.
- Not obstruct Access to Controls (page 36).
- Implement the MagSafe Accessory Magnet Array (page 172).
- Support Tripod Connections (page 34).

Additional requirements apply to mounts used in the following scenerios:

- Apple TV Mount (page 127)
- MacBook Mount (page 128)
- iMac or Display Mount (page 129)

22.2 Apple TV Mount

Figure Apple TV mount example **22-2**



A mount designed for Apple TV shall:

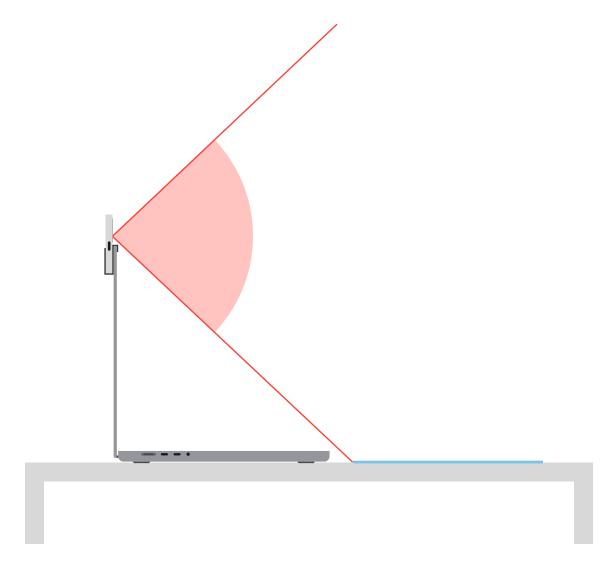
- Be stable when placed on top, or in front of a TV.
- Not touch the display glass (active and non-active areas).
- Not sandwich or squeeze the TV and device together.

The mount should enable upward and downward tilt.

22.3 MacBook Mount

Figure MacBook mount example

22-3



A mount designed for MacBook, MacBook Air, and MacBook Pro shall:

- Not scratch or damage the MacBook.
- Not touch the MacBook display glass (active and non-active areas).
- Not interfere with or prevent fully closing the MacBook.
- Not sandwich or squeeze the MacBook and device together.

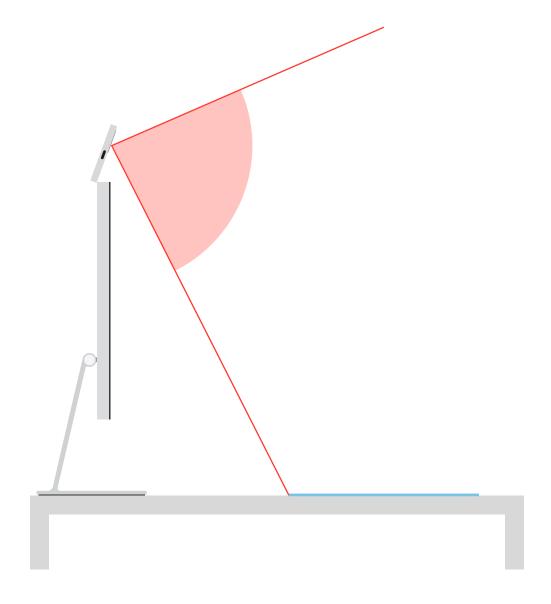
The mount should:

- Not cover or touch any portion of the MacBook display glass, camera, or other sensors.
- Enable a downward tilt in portrait orientation from 0° to 12° to support Desk View.

• Minimize the mass to maintain stability of the display.

22.4 iMac or Display Mount

Figure Display mount example 22-4



A mount designed for iMac or displays shall:

- Not scratch or damage the iMac or display.
- Not touch the display glass (active and non-active areas).
- Not sandwich or squeeze the iMac or display and device together.

The mount should:

- Not cover or touch any portion of the display glass, camera, microphones, or other sensors.
- Enable a downward tilt from 0° to 30° to support Desk View.

22.5 Test Procedures

22.5.1 Equipment

The following equipment is necessary to perform the tests in this procedure:

- If the mount is designed for Apple TV:
 - Supported devices running iOS 17.0 or later.
 - An Apple TV 4K (2nd generation) or later running tvOS 17.0 or later, connected to a TV.
- If the mount is designed for Mac:
 - Supported devices running iOS 16.0 or later.
 - A Mac computer running macOS 13.0 Ventura or later.
 - A MacBook, MacBook Air, and MacBook Pro if the mount is designed for MacBook.
 - An iMac if the mount is designed for iMac.
 - A variety of displays if the mount is designed for external displays.
 - A USB-C cable.
 - A USB to Lightning charge cable.
- An Apple Account with two-factor authentication enabled and used on devices, Apple TV, and all Mac computers.
- A tripod, if the mount is designed for tripod connections.

22.5.2 Test Setup

22.5.2.1 Enable Continuity Camera on Apple TV

Configure an Apple TV and a device to enable Continuity Camera:

- 1. Open FaceTime on the Apple TV.
- 2. Select the user matching the device Apple Account.
- 3. Using the device, select the Continuity Camera notification and select Accept.
- **4.** Attach the device to mount and orient it as prompted.
- 5. Verify Continuity Camera view displays full screen in FaceTime.

22.5.2.2 Enable Continuity Camera on Mac

Configure a Mac and a device to enable Continuity Camera:

1. Connect the device to the Mac using a cable.

- 2. If the Mac is not a trusted computer, select Trust on the Trust This Computer alert on the device.
- 3. To use Continuity Camera wirelessly, disconnect the cable.
- 4. Attach the device to mount.
- 5. Open FaceTime on the Mac.
- 6. If the 'Use your iPhone as a Camera for your Mac' alert appears, select Continue.
- 7. Select the Continuity Camera option from the Video menu.
- 8. Verify Continuity Camera view displays in FaceTime.

Reconnect after the Mac and/or device are in sleep mode:

- 1. Wake the device and the Mac.
- 2. Connect the device to the Mac using a cable for a wired connection or disconnect the cable for a wireless connection.
- 3. Attach the device to the mount.
- 4. Open FaceTime on the Mac and select Continuity Camera from the Video menu.
- 5. Verify Continuity Camera view displays in FaceTime.

22.5.3 Product Design

Verify the mount:

- 1. Supports portrait and landscape orientations.
- 2. Does not touch the device cover glass or block any device camera field of view.
- 3. Does not scratch or damage the device.
- 4. When designed for tripods, complies with ISO 1222:2010.

If the mount is designed for Apple TV, verify the mount:

- 1. Is stable when placed on top, or in front of a TV.
- 2. Does not touch the display glass.
- 3. Does not sandwich or squeeze the TV and device together.

If the mount is designed for MacBook, iMac, or displays, verify the mount:

- 1. Does not touch the display glass.
- 2. Does not block any MacBook, iMac, or display camera field of view.
- 3. Does not sandwich or squeeze the device, MacBook, iMac, or display together.
- 4. Does not scratch or damage the device, MacBook, iMac, or display.
- 5. Enables use of USB-C cables or USB to Lightning charge cables.

22.5.4 Center Stage

Center Stage is a video effect available on Apple TV and in the Mac Control Center. Enabling Center Stage on Apple TV, or selecting it in the Control Center Video Effects causes the video to follow people's faces as they move within the Continuity Camera field of view. The video will zoom (in and out) and pan (left to right, right to left, up and down), to keep people's faces in the video frame.

22.5.4.1 Center Stage on Apple TV

Perform mount testing using the FaceTime app on Apple TV to ensure the mount is not visible in the field of view:

- 1. Observe the Continuity Camera video from different positions using Center Stage face tracking, from the most extreme visible positions (left, right, top, bottom, and all four corners).
- 2. Verify there are no visual anomalies caused by the mount in any position.

22.5.4.2 Center Stage on Mac

Perform mount testing using the Photo Booth app on the Mac, with and without Center Stage enabled, to ensure the mount is not visible in the field of view:

- 1. Open the Photo Booth app on the Mac:
 - a. Use the Camera menu to select Continuity Camera.
 - **b.** Use the still photo mode.
- 2. Use the Mac Control Center menu to select Video Effects, and enable Center Stage.
- 3. Capture photos from different positions using Center Stage face tracking, in portrait and landscape orientation from the most extreme visible positions (left, right, top, bottom, and all four corners), waiting 5 seconds between each photo.
- 4. Use the Mac Control Center menu to select Video Effects, and disable Center Stage.
- 5. Capture photos in portrait and landscape orientation, waiting 5 seconds between each photo.
- **6.** Using the Photo Booth film strip feature, verify all photos taken during the test:
 - a. Are saved to the computer.
 - **b.** Are clearly displayed when viewed.
 - c. Have no visual anomalies caused by the mount in either portrait and landscape orientation.

22.5.5 Desk View

Desk View is a video effect available in the Mac Control Center. Selecting Video Effects and enabling Desk View causes a confirmation dialog box to appear, then a separate Desk View window opens. The tilt angle of the mount and its position determines the Desk View field of view. Adjust the tilt angle as necessary to display the desktop subject matter. Remote viewers will see the subject matter from the presenters perspective. Closing the Desk View window disables Desk View.

- 1. Ensure the device is logged into the same Apple Account used on the Mac.
- 2. Place the device in the mount and on the MacBook, iMac, display, tripod or free-standing support.
- 3. Perform mount testing using the FaceTime app with the Desk View video effect enabled.
 - a. Open the FaceTime app on the Mac, and use the Video menu to select the Continuity Camera.
 - b. Use the Mac Control Center menu to select Video Effects, and enable Desk View.
 - **c.** Verify the Desk View window is displayed.
- 4. In both landscape and portrait orientation:
 - a. Adjust the tilt angle of the mount to display the desktop subject matter in the Desk View window.

- **b.** Verify the desktop subject matter is visible in the Desk View window, and clearly displayed.
- c. Verify there are no visible anomalies caused by the mount in the Desk View window.
- **d.** Verify the user's face is still visible in FaceTime while Desk View is showing the desktop subject matter.

Features

23. Accessory Power (USB-C)

This chapter applies to devices integrating a USB-C connector.

Accessory power enables accessories to draw a limited amount of power from a device, thereby avoiding the need to integrate a battery or connect to an external power source. This eliminates the need for users to monitor and charge the accessory and enables the accessory to function as long as the device has power. Accessories designed to temporarily connect to the device are good candidates for using accessory power.

Accessories drawing power from the device shall comply with *USB Type-C Cable and Connector Specification – Release 2.3.* Accessories should also support USB Power Delivery (PD) (page 212).

Accessories benefitting from accessory power include:

- Headsets (page 87).
- Adapters (page 81).
- Keyboards (page 91).
- External Storage (page 106).

23.1 Available Current

The following table lists the current available to an accessory.

Table Available current **23-1**

Device	Default	USB Type-C Current (page 213)	USB Power Delivery (PD) (page 212)
iPhone 16 Pro Max	900 mA	900 mA	900 mA (4.5 W)
iPhone 16 Pro	900 mA	900 mA	900 mA (4.5 W)
iPhone 16 Plus	500 mA	500 mA	900 mA (4.5 W)
iPhone 16	500 mA	500 mA	900 mA (4.5 W)
iPhone 15 Pro Max	900 mA	900 mA	900 mA (4.5 W)
iPhone 15 Pro	900 mA	900 mA	900 mA (4.5 W)
iPhone 15 Plus	500 mA	500 mA	900 mA (4.5 W)
iPhone 15	500 mA	500 mA	900 mA (4.5 W)

Device	Default	USB Type-C Current (page 213)	USB Power Delivery (PD) (page 212)
iPad Pro 13-inch (M4)	900 mA	3.0 A	3.0 A (15 W)
iPad Pro 11-inch (M4)	900 mA	3.0 A	3.0 A (15 W)
iPad Air 13-inch (M2)	900 mA	1.5 A	1.5 A (7.5 W)
iPad Air 11-inch (M2)	900 mA	1.5 A	1.5 A (7.5 W)
iPad Pro 12.9-inch (6th generation)	900 mA	3.0 A	3.0 A (15 W)
iPad Pro 12.9-inch (5th generation)	900 mA	3.0 A	3.0 A (15 W)
iPad Pro 12.9-inch (4th generation)	900 mA	1.5 A	1.5 A (7.5 W)
iPad Pro 12.9-inch (3rd generation)	900 mA	1.5 A	1.5 A (7.5 W)
iPad Pro 11-inch (4th generation)	900 mA	3.0 A	3.0 A (15 W)
iPad Pro 11-inch (3rd generation)	900 mA	3.0 A	3.0 A (15 W)
iPad Pro 11-inch (2nd generation)	900 mA	1.5 A	1.5 A (7.5 W)
iPad Pro 11-inch (1st generation)	900 mA	1.5 A	1.5 A (7.5 W)
iPad Air (5th generation)	900 mA	1.5 A	1.5 A (7.5 W)
iPad Air (4th generation)	900 mA	1.5 A	1.5 A (7.5 W)
iPad mini (6th generation)	900 mA	1.5 A	1.5 A (7.5 W)
iPad (10th generation)	500 mA	1.5 A	1.5 A (7.5 W)

23.2 Fast Role Swap (FRS)

iPads with a USB-C connector support USB Power Delivery (PD) (page 212) Fast Role Swap (FRS).

23.3 Test Procedures

23.3.1 Maximum Accessory Power

This test procedure applies to accessories drawing power from the device. The accessory needs to be exercised to its full capability.

The example accessory in this test procedure is an external USB 3 drive claiming to draw up to 900 mA from the USB 3 host. The accessory is exercised by reading and writing a large file. Adapt this procedure as needed for different accessory types.

23.3.1.1 Equipment

The following equipment is necessary:

An external USB drive in APFS format (the example accessory).

- A Mac with USB-C.
- A USB-IF certified USB-C to USB-C Full-Featured cable.
- A USB-C breakout board or USB-IF approved test fixture, such as:
 - FS-HUCP available at https://fixturesolution.com/product/usb2-0-type-c-signal-quality-test-fixture/.
 - FS-HUCR available at https://fixturesolution.com/product/usb-type-c-high-speed-signal-quality-test-fixture/.
- An oscilloscope with a current probe.

23.3.1.2 Setup

- Using the current probe attach the oscilloscope to the current loop circuit of the accessory, or the USB-C breakout board.
- 2. Verify the oscilloscope configuration settings match the following:
 - a. Acquisition: >5 M samples/s.
 - **b.** Current Channel: 200 mA/div.
 - c. Horizontal Channel: 100 µs/div.
 - d. Voltage Channel: 1 V/div, bandwidth limited.
 - e. Infinite persistence (reset before each test case).
 - f. Adjust offset down, to be able see 7 divisions.
 - g. Adjust offset towards the left, to maximize the window.
 - h. Trigger: Current Channel, Positive Threshold, 900 mA, Normal Mode.
- 3. Connect the Mac to the external USB drive using the USB-C cable.
- 4. Launch Terminal on the Mac, and enter the following command:
 - dd if=/dev/random of=~/Desktop/testfile.dat count=1024 bs=78643200
- 5. The new file ~/Desktop/testfile.dat is the file to use for testing.

23.3.1.3 Test Cases

23.3.1.3.1 Enumeration

- 1. Verify the external USB drive fully enumerates in the Mac System Report:
 - a. Select Apple Menu **€** > 'About this Mac'.
 - **b.** Select 'More Info...'.
 - c. Select 'System Report...'.
 - d. Select USB from the sidebar.
- 2. Verify the accessory is displayed in the USB Device Tree.
- 3. Verify the speed displayed is one of the following:
 - a. Up to 5 Gb/s.
 - **b.** Up to 10 Gb/s.

23.3.1.3.2 Idle

- 1. Record the maximum current while idle.
- 2. Verify the maximum current does not exceed 900 mA.

23.3.1.3.3 Write to USB Drive

- 1. Use Finder to copy the testfile.dat from the Mac to the USB drive.
- 2. Record the maximum current.
- 3. Verify the maximum current does not exceed 900 mA.

23.3.1.3.4 Read from USB Drive

- 1. Use Finder to copy the testfile.dat from the USB drive to the Mac.
- 2. Record the maximum current.
- 3. Verify the maximum current does not exceed 900 mA.

24. Accessory Power (Lightning)

Accessory power enables accessories to draw a limited amount of power from a device, thereby avoiding the need to integrate a battery or connect to an external power source. This eliminates the need for users to monitor and charge the accessory and enables the accessory to function as long as the device has power. Accessories designed to temporarily connect to the device are good candidates for using accessory power.

25. App Discovery

The App Discovery feature enables accessories to retrieve a list of installed apps on the device capable
of communicating with the accessory. See App Launch (page 141) to make use of the list.

26. App Launch

Accessories supporting the App Launch feature can request a device launch an app on its behalf.

Figure App Launch alert **26-1**



27. App Match

The App Match feature enables accessories supporting an External Accessory Protocol to match with compatible apps on the App Store.

When connected for the first time, the device asks the user if they would like to visit the App Store and view compatible apps. Subsequently, this action may be repeated using Settings > General > About > '[Accessory name]' > 'Find App for Accessory'.

Figure App Match alert **27-1**



28. Bluetooth Accessory Identification

This chapter describes Apple-specific Bluetooth commands extending accessory capabilities beyond those supported by standard Bluetooth profiles.

To enable Apple-specific features, the accessory shall support HFP Command AT+XAPL (page 143), which provides accurate information about the accessory's supported features. The device will use the information sent by this command to enable and disable custom commands.

The accessory shall send the following AT+XAPL command after making a successful HFP Service Level Connection (SLC) to the device. The accessory should send an AT+XAPL command first, before sending any additional Apple-specific commands. See Siri (page 189) and Bluetooth Headset Battery Level Indication (page 145).

28.1 HFP Command AT+XAPL

Description: Enables custom AT commands from an accessory.

Initiator: Bluetooth accessory

Format: AT+XAPL=vendorlD-productlD-version,features

Parameters:

- *vendorID*: A string representation of the hex value of the vendor ID from the manufacturer, without the 0x prefix.
- productID: A string representation of the hex value of the product ID from the manufacturer, without the 0x prefix.
- version: The software version.
- features: A base-10 representation of a bit field. Available features are:
 - Bit 0 = reserved
 - Bit 1 = The accessory supports battery reporting (reserved only for battery operated accessories).
 - Bit 2 = The accessory is docked or powered (reserved only for battery operated accessories).
 - Bit 3 = The accessory supports Siri status reporting.
 - Bit 4 = the accessory supports noise reduction (NR) status reporting.
 - All other values are reserved.

Example: AT+XAPL=ABCD-1234-0100,10 (Supports battery reporting and Siri status)

Response: +XAPL=iPhone, *features*

29. Bluetooth Headset Battery Level Indication

Any Hands-Free Bluetooth headset accessory may display its battery level to the user as an indicator icon in the device status bar. This feature is supported on all devices supporting the Hands-Free Profile, including iPhone, iPod touch, and iPad.

Headset battery indication is implemented by two Apple-specific Bluetooth HFP AT commands, HFP Command AT+XAPL (page 143) and HFP Command AT+IPHONEACCEV (page 145)

29.1 HFP Command AT+IPHONEACCEV

Description: Reports a headset state change.

Initiator: Headset accessory

Format: AT+IPHONEACCEV=Number of key/value pairs, key1, val1, key2, val2, ...

Parameters:

• Number of key/value pairs: The number of parameters coming next.

- *key*: the type of change being reported:
 - 1 = Battery Level
 - 2 = Dock State
- val: the value of the change:
 - Battery Level: string value between '0' and '9'
 - Dock State: 0 = undocked, 1 = docked

Example: AT+IPHONEACCEV=1,1,3

30. Device Power (USB-C)

Accessories may provide power to devices using USB-C.

Apple recommends providing power to the device whenever possible for the best user experience.

Accessories providing power to a device shall:

- Connect to the device either through an integrated USB-C Plug (page 271) or a USB-C cable.
- Use USB Type-C Current (page 213) to identify their power capability and should use USB Power Delivery (PD) (page 212) to provide higher power, see https://support.apple.com/en-us/102574.
- Provide power at all times unless a direct user action is taken turning the accessory 'off'. Failure to
 provide power at all times may result in the accessory being unable to charge a device whose
 battery level is too low to boot.

Accessories may use the iAP2 (page 218) protocol in conjunction with USB Type-C Current (page 213) to allow for more granular control of the available current after the initial connection. Accessories shall not use iAP2 (page 218) to adjust available current in conjunction with USB Power Delivery (PD) (page 212).

Accessories providing power from a USB-C receptacle, see Providing Power (page 276).

30.1 External Power Source

Accessories drawing power from external power sources and providing all or a portion of their power to the device shall:

- Identify the power source's capability and report accordingly to the device.
- Not manipulate a device into drawing more power from the external power source than the device would normally draw when directly connected to the external power source.
- Derate the available power by the amount of power consumed by the accessory, if applicable.

Accessories drawing power from external power sources may inform the device when power is not available or only available at a reduced level (for example, from an internal battery) or when the user unplugs the accessory from the external power source (for example, an AC power adapter or AC "mains" power outlet). Power to the device shall be restored and the updated power providing capability change shall be communicated to the device when the user re-connects the external power source.

See AC Power Adapters (page 83), Integrated USB Receptacles (page 28), and User Supplied Cables and AC Power Adapters (page 29) for additional requirements specific to external USB power supplies/cables.

30.2 Power State Changes

Accessories shall not change the amount of power provided to a device unless:

- Direct user action is taken to turn the accessory on or off.
- An external power source (for example, mains electricity or battery) is connected to or disconnected from the accessory.
- The accessory's internal power source (for example, a battery) is depleted or loaded to the point where it is no longer capable of supplying its declared power providing capability or is now capable of supplying more power than previously declared.

31. Device Power (Lightning)

Accessories may provide power to devices using Lightning.

Apple recommends providing power to the device whenever possible for the best user experience.

Accessories providing power to a device shall connect to the device either through an integrated Lightning connector or a USB to Lightning cable. To incorporate an integrated Lightning connector, the accessory developer shall be a member of the Apple MFi Program (page 26).

Accessories providing power to a device shall either:

- Provide direct power, see <u>Direct Power Source</u> (page 148).
- Manage power from external sources, see External Power Source (page 148).

Accessories without the potential for data communication with the device shall provide direct power to the device, see Direct Power Source (page 148).

31.1 Direct Power Source

Accessories providing power directly shall provide power at all times unless disabled by a direct user action. Failure to provide power at all times may result in the accessory being unable to charge a device whose battery level is too low to boot.

Accessory power source testing shall be performed with programmable loads, not devices. Device power draw varies with environmental factors.

31.2 External Power Source

Accessories drawing power from external power sources and providing all or a portion of their power to the device:

- Shall identify the power source's capability and report accordingly to the device.
- Shall not manipulate a device into drawing more power from the external power source than the device would normally draw when directly connected to the external power source.
- Shall not manipulate a device into drawing less than the minimum power required by the accessory compatibility claims if it is available from the external source, see Providing Power using USB Connectors (page 149).

Accessories drawing power from external power sources may inform the device when power is not available or only available at a reduced level (for example, from an internal battery) or when the user unplugs the accessory from the external power source (for example, an AC power adapter or AC "mains" power outlet). Power to the device shall be restored and the updated power providing capability change shall be communicated to the device when the user re-connects the external power source.

See AC Power Adapters (page 83), Integrated USB Receptacles (page 28), and User Supplied Cables and AC Power Adapters (page 29) for additional requirements specific to external USB power supplies/cables.

31.3 Declaring Capability

If the accessory provides power using a:

- USB-A receptacle, it shall use one of the following to declare its power providing capability:
 - USB Power Capability Vendor Request (page 208).
 - USB D+/D- Resistor Networks (page 209).
- USB-C receptacle, then:
 - It shall use one of the following to declare its power providing capability:
 - USB Type-C Current (page 213).
 - USB Power Delivery (PD) (page 212).
 - If the accessory does not have the potential for data communication with the device, it shall also support the USB Battery Charging Specification Release 1.2.

31.4 Providing Power using USB Connectors

Accessories providing power from:

- A USB-C receptacle, see USB-C Receptacle (page 275).
- A USB-A receptacle, see USB-A Receptacle (page 270).

31.5 Labeling Multiple Connectors

If the accessory has multiple connectors with different device compatibilities, iPad-compatible connectors shall be labeled with the text 'iPad' unless it is physically impossible to connect an iPad to iPhone/iPod compatible connectors.

31.6 Fast Charge for iPhone (20 W)

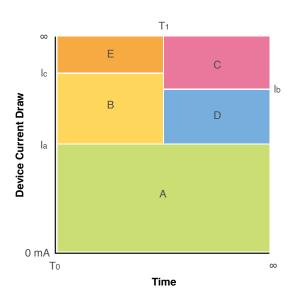
Accessories advertising "fast charge" for iPhone (https://support.apple.com/en-us/102574) shall:

- Support USB Power Delivery (PD) (page 212).
- Supply at least 20 W (2.22 A at 9 V) using USB PD.
- Claim compatibility with at least one of the following iPhone models:
 - iPhone 14 Pro Max
 - iPhone 14 Pro
 - iPhone 14 Plus
 - iPhone 14
 - iPhone SE (3rd generation)
 - iPhone 13 Pro Max
 - iPhone 13 Pro
 - iPhone 13
 - iPhone 13 mini
 - iPhone 12 Pro Max
 - iPhone 12 Pro
 - iPhone 12
 - iPhone 12 mini
 - iPhone SE (2nd generation)
 - iPhone 11 Pro Max
 - iPhone 11 Pro
 - iPhone 11
 - iPhone XS Max
 - iPhone XS
 - iPhone XR
 - iPhone X
 - iPhone 8 Plus
 - iPhone 8

Accessories such as charging cables should be capable of supporting up to 60 W (3 A at 20 V) to provide compatibility with a variety of sources and devices.

31.7 Overcurrent and Short Circuit Protection

Figure Overcurrent and short circuit protection 31-1



Power-providing accessories shall implement overcurrent and short circuit protection for each region in Figure 31-1 (page 151) according to Table 31-1 (page 151), Table 31-2 (page 151), and Table 31-3 (page 152).

Table Overcurrent / short circuit protection current thresholds **31-1**

Threshold	Definition
la	Nominal accessory output current (for example, 1000 mA, 2100 mA, 2400 mA, 3000 mA).
I _b	I _a + 60%.
l _c	Lowest device current draw causing accessory output voltage (measured at Lightning Device Power) to drop below 2 V.

Table Overcurrent / short circuit protection time thresholds **31-2**

Threshold	Definition
T ₀	Start of any device current draw transient.
T ₁	Accessory overcurrent/short circuit deglitch/debounce time, shall $\geq T_0 + 1$ ms.

Table Overcurrent / short circuit protection behaviors **31-3**

Region	Name	Accessory Behavior
Α	Normal Operation	Accessory shall not limit or shutdown output current.
В	Overcurrent Transient	Accessory shall not shutdown output current. Accessory may limit output current to $\rm I_a$ or higher.
С	Overcurrent	Accessory shall shutdown output current.
D	Potential Overcurrent	Accessory may shutdown output current.
Е	Potential Short Circuit	If Lightning Device Power voltage drops below 2 V, the accessory may trigger short circuit protection. Accessories shall not trigger short circuit protection on device current draw.

31.8 Overcurrent and Short Circuit Protection Resets

Accessory overcurrent and short circuit protection shall reset without mechanical intervention.

31.9 Power State Changes

Accessories shall not change the amount of power provided to a device unless:

- Direct user action is taken to turn the accessory on or off.
- An external power source (for example, mains electricity or battery) is connected to or disconnected from the accessory.
- The accessory's internal power source (for example, a battery) is depleted or loaded to the point where it is no longer capable of supplying its declared power providing capability or is now capable of supplying more power than previously declared.

32. Device Power (Inductive)

Accessories may provide power to devices using inductive power transmitters, specifically:

- Qi Wireless Power (page 153)
- MagSafe (page 154)

32.1 Qi Wireless Power

The following devices support Qi:

- iPhone 16 Pro Max
- iPhone 16 Pro
- iPhone 16 Plus
- iPhone 16
- iPhone 15 Pro Max
- iPhone 15 Pro
- iPhone 15 Plus
- iPhone 15
- iPhone 14 Pro Max
- iPhone 14 Pro
- iPhone 14 Plus
- iPhone 14
- iPhone SE (3rd generation)
- iPhone 13 Pro Max
- iPhone 13 Pro
- iPhone 13
- iPhone 13 mini
- iPhone 12 Pro Max
- iPhone 12 Pro
- iPhone 12
- iPhone 12 mini
- iPhone SE (2nd generation)
- iPhone 11 Pro Max
- iPhone 11 Pro
- iPhone 11
- iPhone XS Max

- iPhone XS
- iPhone XR
- iPhone X
- iPhone 8 Plus
- iPhone 8
- Wireless Charging Case (USB-C) for AirPods 4
- MagSafe Charging Case (USB-C) for AirPods Pro (2nd generation)
- MagSafe Charging Case for AirPods Pro (2nd generation)
- MagSafe Charging Case for AirPods (3rd generation)
- Wireless Charging Case for AirPods

Accessories incorporating a Qi transmitter shall use an embedded Qi Certified subsystem or shall be Qi Certified according to *The Qi Wireless Power Transfer System, Power Class 0 Specification – Version 2.0 or later*, see https://www.wirelesspowerconsortium.com.

32.2 MagSafe

The following devices support MagSafe:

- iPhone 16 Pro Max
- iPhone 16 Pro
- iPhone 16 Plus
- iPhone 16
- iPhone 15 Pro Max
- iPhone 15 Pro
- iPhone 15 Plus
- iPhone 15
- iPhone 14 Pro Max
- iPhone 14 Pro
- iPhone 14 Plus
- iPhone 14
- iPhone 13 Pro Max
- iPhone 13 Pro
- iPhone 13
- iPhone 13 mini
- iPhone 12 Pro Max
- iPhone 12 Pro
- iPhone 12
- iPhone 12 mini
- MagSafe Charging Case (USB-C) for AirPods Pro (2nd generation)

- MagSafe Charging Case for AirPods Pro (2nd generation)
- MagSafe Charging Case for AirPods (3rd generation)

See the Accessory Interface Specification (page 26) for information on MagSafe.

32.3 Electromagnetic Compatibility (EMC)

Accessories providing inductive device power should be designed for electromagnetic compatibility.

Apple recommends shielding the magnetic field from the charging coil and maintaining a low impedance shield termination for cables to comply with regulatory EMC requirements for the completed product. Implementation, final compliance testing, report preparation, and labeling are the responsibilities of the company marketing and producing the product.

Cable termination is critical for reduced emissions. Cable termination and connectors should be kept away from the charging soil and cables should be routed away from the charging surface.

If emissions are present, adding clamp-on ferrites/absorbers to the cable can help reduce emissions. Selected ferrite/absorber materials should be rated for the failing frequencies.

Depending on the accessory's supported use cases, testing should be performed with the following power supplies:

- Apple USB-C Power Adapters:
 - Apple 140W USB-C Power Adapter
 - Apple 96W USB-C Power Adapter
 - Apple 70W USB-C Power Adapter
 - Apple 67W USB-C Power Adapter
 - Apple 30W USB-C Power Adapter
 - Apple 20W USB-C Power Adapter
 - Apple 35W Dual USB-C Port Compact Power Adapter
 - Apple 35W Dual USB-C Port Power Adapter
- Apple USB-A Power Adapters:
 - Apple 12W USB Power Adapter
 - Apple 5W USB Power Adapter
 - Model A1385 (US)
 - Model A1400 (Int.)
 - Model A1552 (UK)
 - Model A1443 (China)
 - Model A1444 (Australia)
 - Model A1486 (Brazil)
 - Model A1487 (Korea)

- Model A1501 (Argentina)
- Apple Mac computers:
 - Apple MacBook Pro
 - Apple MacBook Air

If power sources are used differing from those listed above, emission testing should be performed while the power sources are on.

In addition to the use cases above, charging devices should be tested in idle mode for emissions.

Emissions tests should be conducted in accordance with standards referenced in the following:

- FCC CFR 47, Part 15
- ICES-003, Issue 5, CAN/CSA-CEI/IEC CISPR 22-10
- CISPR 22: 2008
- EN 55022: 2010
- AS/NZS CISPR 22:2009, TCVN 7189:2009
- VCCI V-3/2013.04
- GB 9254-2008, GB 17625.1-2012, GB 17625.2-2007, CNS 13438-2006
- CISPR 24: 2010
- EN 55024: 2010

Once the highest emitting combination is identified, complete testing should be performed on the configuration. Some regulatory domains may require EMC certification.

33. Ethernet over USB

Accessories may support Ethernet over USB using the Network Control Model (NCM) protocol to enable a device to access a wired network.

Accessories shall comply with the *Network Control Model Devices Specification – Revision 1.0*, see https://www.usb.org/document-library/network-control-model-devices-specification-v10-and-errata-and-adopters-agreement.

34. External Accessory Protocol

The External Accessory (EA) framework provides accessories the means to communicate with one or more apps using EA sessions, providing a read/write bytestream interface. Accessory developers specify a custom protocol between the application and the accessory. The design and maintenance of communication protocols between accessories and applications are entirely the responsibility of the accessory and app developers. External Accessory framework documentation can be found at https://developer.apple.com/documentation/externalaccessory.

See the Accessory Interface Specification (page 26) for more information.

35. HID Headset Remote

Devices may accept user input from headsets to control audio volume and media playback.

35.1 Requirements

Accessories implementing HID headset remote controls shall:

- Connect to the device using one of the following:
 - USB-C Plug (page 271).
 - Bluetooth (page 223).

HID headset remotes shall support the Human Interface Device (HID) (page 219) protocol.

The HID report descriptor for a headset remote shall declare support for the HID Consumer and/or Telephony pages and only send usages from Table 35-1 (page 159) and Table 35-2 (page 159).

Table HID Consumer Page $(0 \times 0 \text{C})$ controls for use by headset remotes **35-1**

Usage ID	Usage Name	Apple Function
0x00B5	Scan Next Track	Transport Right
0x00B6	Scan Previous Track	Transport Left
0x00B9	Random Play	Shuffle
0x00BC	Repeat	Repeat
0x00E2	Mute	Mute
0x00E9	Volume Increment	Volume Up
0x00EA	Volume Decrement	Volume Down
0x025B	Promote	Play More Like This
0x025C	Demote	Play Less Like This

Table HID Telephony Page (0x0B) controls for use by headset remotes **35-2**

Usage ID	Usage Name	Apple Function
0x0021	Flash	Center

If a user presses and holds the accessory control surface corresponding to the 'Transport Right' or 'Transport Left' function, devices may scrub forwards or backwards within the current playing media item. Accessories shall not present a separate 'Fast-Forward' or 'Reverse' control surface to the user for the same feature.

35.2 Examples

35.2.1 Headset Remote Example HID Report Descriptor (Telephony)

The following sample HID descriptor demonstrates how to implement telephony and volume controls.

```
USAGE_PAGE (Consumer Devices) 05 0C
USAGE (Consumer Control)
                          99 91
COLLECTION (Application)
                           A1 01
 LOGICAL_MINIMUM (0)
                          15 00
 LOGICAL_MAXIMUM (1)
                          25 01
 REPORT_SIZE (1) 75 01
REPORT_COUNT (2) 95 02
 USAGE (Volume Increment) 09 E9 // Volume Up
 USAGE (Volume Decrement) 09 EA // Volume Down
                         81 02
 INPUT (Data,Var,Abs)
 USAGE_PAGE (Telephony) 05 0B
REPORT_COUNT (1) 95 01
 REPORT_COUNT (1)
                          09 21 // Center
 USAGE (Flash)
 INPUT (Data, Var, Abs) 81 02
 REPORT_SIZE (5)
REPORT_COUNT (1)
                          75 05
                          95 01
 INPUT (Cnst, Var, Abs)
                            81 03
END COLLECTION
```

Each report is one byte, and each bit corresponds to one of the functions. For example, the following sample reports communicate the referenced button having been pressed:

- Volume Up is 0x01
- Volume Down is 0x02
- Center is 0x04

35.2.2 Headset Remote Example HID Report Descriptor (Media Playback)

The following sample HID descriptor demonstrates how to implement media playback controls.

```
USAGE PAGE (Consumer Devices) 05 0C
USAGE (Consumer Control) 09 01
COLLECTION (Application) A1 01
LOGICAL MINIMUM (0) 15 00
```

```
LOGICAL MAXIMUM (1) 25 01
REPORT SIZE (1) 75 01
REPORT COUNT (7) 95 07
USAGE (Scan Next Track) 09 B5 // Transport Right
USAGE (Scan Previous Track) 09 B6 // Transport Left
USAGE (Mute) 09 E2 // Mute
USAGE (Shuffle) 09 B9 // Shuffle
USAGE (Repeat) 09 BC // Repeat
USAGE (Promote) 0A 5B 02 // Play More Like This
USAGE (Demote) 0A 5C 02 // Play Less Like This
INPUT (Data, Var, Abs) 81 02
END COLLECTION C0
```

Each report is one byte, and each bit corresponds to one of the functions. For example, the following sample reports communicate the referenced button having been pressed:

- Transport Right is 0x01
- Transport Left is 0x02
- Mute is 0x04

35.2.3 Headset Remote Example HID Report Descriptor (Telephony and Media Playback)

The following sample HID descriptor demonstrates how to implement all possible media playback controls along with the same controls found on the Apple headset remote.

```
USAGE_PAGE (Consumer Devices) 05 0C
USAGE (Consumer Control) 09 01
COLLECTION (Application) A1 01
LOGICAL_MINIMUM (0) 15 00
LOGICAL_MAXIMUM (1) 25 01
REPORT_SIZE (1) 75 01
REPORT_COUNT (9) 95 09
  USAGE (Scan Next Track) 09 B5 // Transport Right
   USAGE (Scan Previous Track) 09 B6 // Transport Left
  USAGE (Mute) 09 E2 // Mute
  USAGE (Shuffle)

USAGE (Repeat)

USAGE (Promote)

USAGE (Demote)

09 B9 // Shuffle

// Repeat

// Repeat

USAGE (Demote)

04 5B 02 // Play More Like This

USAGE (Demote)

04 5C 02 // Play Less Like This
  USAGE (Volume Increment) 09 E9 // Volume Up
  USAGE (Volume Decrement) 09 EA // Volume Down
  INPUT (Data, Var, Abs) 81 02
USAGE_PAGE (Telephony) 05 0B
REPORT_COUNT (1) 95 01
USAGE (Flash) 09 21
                                     09 21
81 02
  USAGE (Flash)
                                                      // Center
  INPUT (Data, Var, Abs)
  REPORT_SIZE (5)
REPORT_COUNT (1)
                                        75 05
                                         95 01
   INPUT (Cnst, Var, Abs) 81 03
```

END COLLECTION C0

Each report is two bytes. The bits are assigned top-to-bottom (from 'Transport Right' to 'Center'). For example, the following sample reports communicate the referenced button having been pressed:

- Transport Right is 0x0100
- Transport Left is 0x0200
- Mute is 0x0400
- Volume Up is 0x8000
- Volume Down is 0x0001
- Center is 0x0002

36. Location Information

Location features enable accessories to provide Global Navigation Satellite System (GNSS) and sensor data (for example, speed) to devices in the form of National Marine Electronics Association (NMEA) sentences. Devices can use the additional information to augment built-in location services. For example, some external accessories provide more accurate or more frequent position updates. Additionally, devices can conserve power by using location information from a self-powered external accessory.

See the Accessory Interface Specification (page 26) for more information.

37. MagSafe Attach

The following devices support MagSafe Attach:

- iPhone 16 Pro Max
- iPhone 16 Pro
- iPhone 16 Plus
- iPhone 16
- iPhone 15 Pro Max
- iPhone 15 Pro
- iPhone 15 Plus
- iPhone 15
- iPhone 14 Pro Max
- iPhone 14 Pro
- iPhone 14 Plus
- iPhone 14
- iPhone 13 Pro Max
- iPhone 13 Pro
- iPhone 13
- iPhone 13 mini
- iPhone 12 Pro Max
- iPhone 12 Pro
- iPhone 12
- iPhone 12 mini

MagSafe Cases (page 35) shall:

- Claim compatibility with a MagSafe-capable device.
- Integrate a MagSafe Case Magnet Array (page 165).

Other MagSafe accessories shall:

- Claim compatibility with a MagSafe-capable device.
- Integrate a MagSafe Accessory Magnet Array (page 172).

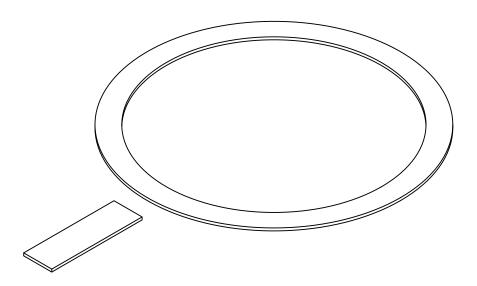
Apple recommends the following magnet array vendors:

- Baotou INST Magnetic New Materials Co., Ltd. (https://www.instmagnets.com)
- Ningbo Sanhuan Magsound Industry & Trade Co., Ltd. (https://www.magsound.com)
- Quadrant Solutions, Inc. (https://www.quadrant.us)

37.1 MagSafe Case Magnet Array

Figure MagSafe case magnet array

37-1



37.1.1 Product Design

Cases integrating a MagSafe case magnet array shall:

- · Enclose the device.
- Have a uniform thickness no greater than 2.1 mm; Apple recommends 2.0 mm.
- Firmly attach to the device without relying on the magnets.
- Not integrate magnets on the back of the case other than the MagSafe magnets.
- Comply with requirements for Cases (page 35).
- Work with:
 - Apple MagSafe Charger.
 - Apple MagSafe Battery Pack.
 - iPhone Leather Wallet with MagSafe.

37.1.2 Mechanical

Magnets in the MagSafe case magnet array shall be positioned in the same plane.

The case and MagSafe case magnet array shall enable MagSafe accessories to magnetically self align within a 1.55 mm radial maximum.

37.1.2.1 Magnets

MagSafe case magnets shall be N45SH NdFeB with a 7 μm - 13 μm NiCuNi plating finish (or similar) and shall meet the requirements in Table 37-1 (page 166).

Table Magnet properties **37-1**

Property	Minimum	Maximum
Br	13.2 kGs	13.6 kGs
Hcb	12.75 kOe	
Hcj	20.50 kOe	
BHmax	43 MGOe	46 MGOe

37.1.2.2 Magnet Array

The magnets shall be positioned in the case following the dimensions and polarity shown in Figure 37-2 (page 167), Figure 37-3 (page 168) and Figure 37-4 (page 168).

Figure MagSafe magnet array dimensions **37-2**

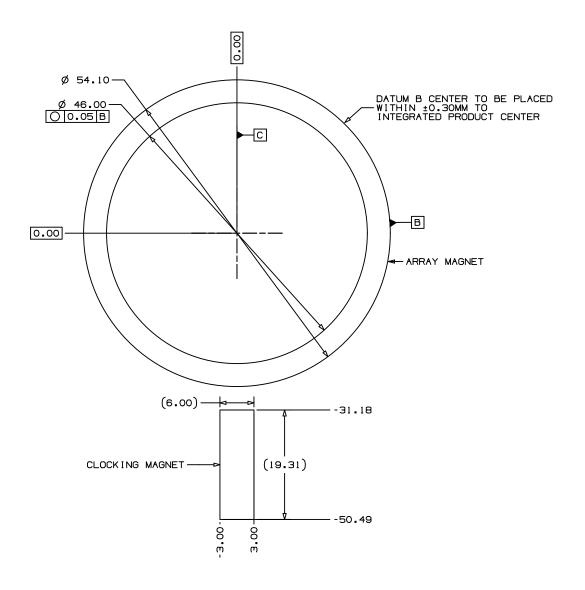


Figure MagSafe magnet ring dimensions and polarity **37-3**

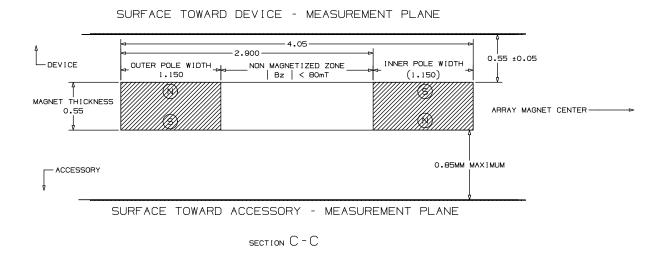
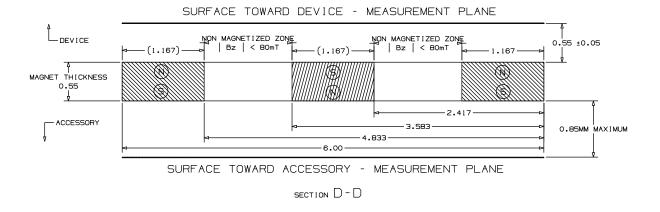


Figure MagSafe orientation magnet dimensions and polarity **37-4**



The flux density of a MagSafe case magnet ring shall comply with Table 37-2 (page 169) and Table 37-3 (page 170) across the 8 lines (S1 - S8) in Figure 37-5 (page 169).

Figure MagSafe flux density measurement plane **37-5**

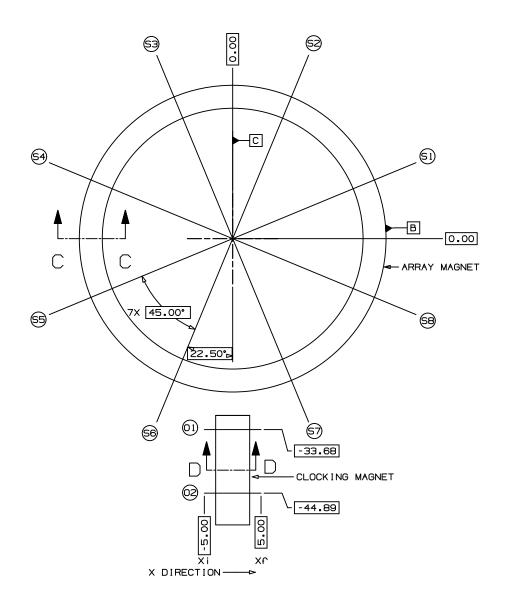


Table Device side flux density at 0.55 mm from magnet ring surface **37-2**

Minimum	Maximum	Minimum	Maximum	Minimum	Maximum
r	r	Bz	Bz	Вху	Вху
	19.5 mm	-0.020 T	0.020 T		0.025 T
19.5 mm	23 mm				0.075 T
23 mm	24 mm	-0.170 T	-0.125 T		
24 mm	26 mm			0.095 T	0.1325 T

Minimum	Maximum	Minimum	Maximum	Minimum	Maximum
r	r	Bz	Bz	Вху	Вху
26 mm	27 mm	0.125 T	0.170 T		
27 mm	30 mm				0.075 T
30 mm		-0.020 T	0.000 T		0.025 T

Table Accessory side flux density at 0.80 mm from magnet ring surface **37-3**

	Maximum	Minimum Bz	Maximum Bz		Maximum
r	I	DZ	DZ	Вху	Вху
	19.5 mm	-0.020 T	0.020 T		0.025 T
19.5 mm	23 mm				0.065 T
23 mm	24 mm	-0.120 T	-0.085 T		
24 mm	26 mm			0.070 T	0.100 T
26 mm	27 mm	0.85 T	0.120 T		
27 mm	30 mm				0.065 T
30 mm		-0.020 T	0.000 T		0.025 T

The flux density of a MagSafe case orientation magnet shall comply with Table 37-4 (page 170) and Table 37-5 (page 171) across the 2 lines (O1 and O2) in Figure 37-5 (page 169).

Table Device side flux density at 0.55 mm from orientation magnet surface **37-4**

Minimum x	Maximum x	Minimum Bz	Maximum Bz	Minimum Bxy	Maximum Bxv
	-5.0 mm	-0.020 T	0.020 T		0.025 T
-5.0 mm	-4.5 mm	-0.020 T	0.020 T		
-4.5 mm	-2.75 mm			0.080 T	0.110 T
-2.75 mm	-2.0 mm	0.125 T	0.175 T		
-2.0 mm	-0.5 mm			0.110 T	0.155 T
-0.5 mm	0.5 mm	-0.1925 T	-0.140 T		
0.5 mm	2.0 mm			0.110 T	0.155 T
2.0 mm	2.75 mm	0.125 T	0.175 T		
2.75 mm	4.0 mm			0.080 T	0.110 T
4.0 mm	5.0 mm	-0.020 T	0.020 T		
5.0 mm		-0.020 T	0.020 T		0.025 T

Table Accessory side flux density at 0.80 mm from orientation magnet surface **37-5**

Minimum	Maximum	Minimum	Maximum	Minimum	Maximum
X	x	Bz	Bz	Вху	Вху
	-5.0 mm	-0.020 T	0.020 T		0.025 T
-5.0 mm	-4.5 mm	-0.020 T	0.020 T		
-4.5 mm	-2.75 mm			0.050 T	0.070 T
-2.75 mm	-2.0 mm	0.085 T	0.120 T		
-2.0 mm	-0.5 mm			0.0825 T	0.115 T
-0.5 mm	0.5 mm	-0.140 T	-0.0975 T		
0.5 mm	2.0 mm			0.0825 T	0.115 T
2.0 mm	2.75 mm	0.085 T	0.120 T		
2.75 mm	4.0 mm			0.050 T	0.070 T
4.0 mm	5.0 mm	-0.020 T	0.020 T		
5.0 mm		-0.020 T	0.020 T		0.025 T

37.1.2.3 Magnetic Force

The force normal to the back of the case needed to dislodge a MagSafe accessory, such as the Apple MagSafe Charger, shall meet the requirements in Table 37-6 (page 171).

Table Magnetic force **37-6**

Scenario	Minimum	Maximum
Case attached to device	800 gf	1100 gf
Case only	600 gf	900 gf

37.1.3 Magnetic Interference

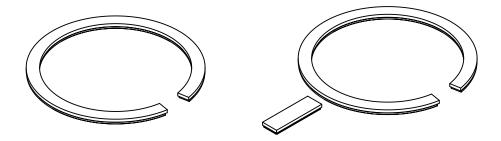
Cases with an integrated MagSafe magnet array shall not interfere with:

- Inductive charging.
- Magnetic stripe cards in an attached iPhone Leather Wallet with MagSafe.

37.2 MagSafe Accessory Magnet Array

Figure MagSafe accessory magnet array options

37-6



The MagSafe accessory magnet array shall be implemented as a Magnet Ring (page 174). The magnet ring enables the device and accessory to be attached in any orientation. To support a specific orientation, the accessory may include an Orientation Magnet (page 175) as part of the array.

37.2.1 Product Design

Accessories integrating the MagSafe accessory magnet array shall not enclose the device.

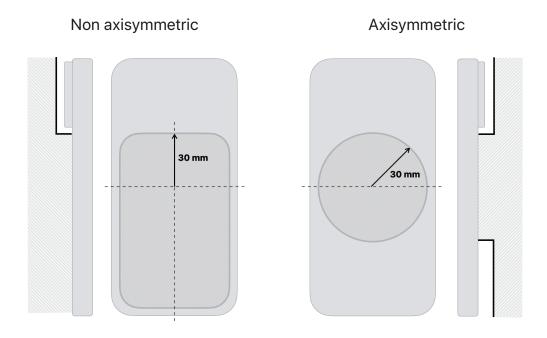
37.2.2 Mechanical

The accessory shall not interfere with or cause Scratches and Damage (page 28) to the device.

To avoid interference with devices, accessories shall:

- Not exceed 30 mm from the center of the magnet ring surface towards the top edge of the device for all supported device orientations. If the device can be attached in any orientation, the accessory shall not exceed 30 mm in radius around the center of the magnet ring surface.
- Maintain a clearance of 5 mm from the back of the device (mating surface) for any part of the accessory past the 30 mm keep-in constraint.
- Stay within the MagSafe Accessory Enclosure Geometry (page 179).

Figure MagSafe accessory clearance **37-7**



Magnets in the MagSafe accessory magnet array shall be positioned in the same plane.

The MagSafe accessory's Magnet Ring (page 174) shall magnetically self align to the device's magnet ring within a 1.55 mm radial maximum.

37.2.2.1 Magnets

MagSafe accessory magnets shall be N48H NdFeB with a 7 μ m - 13 μ m NiCuNi plating finish (or similar) and shall meet the requirements in Table 37-7 (page 173).

Table Magnet properties **37-7**

Property	Minimum	Maximum
Br	13.7 kGs	14.1 kGs
Hcb	13.25 kOe	
Hcj	17 kOe	
BHmax	45 MGOe	48 MGOe

37.2.2.2 Magnet Ring

The magnet ring shall be positioned in the accessory in compliance with the dimensions and polarity requirements in Figure 37-8 (page 174) and Figure 37-9 (page 175).

Figure MagSafe magnet ring dimensions **37-8**

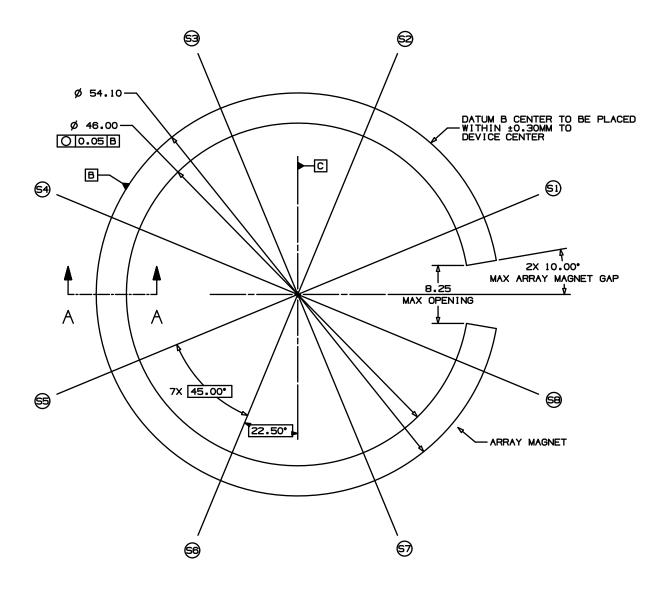
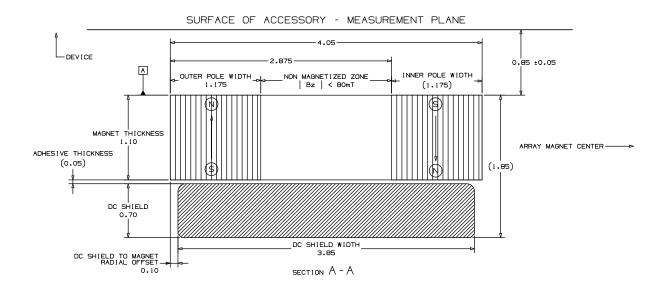


Figure MagSafe magnet ring dimensions and polarity **37-9**



See DC Shield (page 178) for additional requirements of the DC shield specified in Figure 37-9 (page 175).

The flux density of a MagSafe accessory magnet ring shall comply with Table 37-8 (page 175) across the 8 lines (S1 - S8) in Figure 37-8 (page 174).

Table Flux density at 0.85 mm from magnet ring surface **37-8**

Minimum	Maximum	Minimum	Maximum	Minimum	Maximum
r	r	Bz	Bz	Вху	Вху
0 mm	19.5 mm	-0.025 T	0.025 T		0.025 T
19.5 mm	23 mm				0.075 T
23 mm	24.5 mm	-0.215 T	-0.155 T		
24.5 mm	25.5 mm			0.170 T	0.215 T
25.5 mm	27 mm	0.155 T	0.215 T		
27 mm	30 mm				0.075 T
30 mm		-0.025 T	0.025 T		0.025 T

37.2.2.3 Orientation Magnet

If orientation magnets are included, the magnets shall be positioned according to Figure 37-10 (page 176) and Figure 37-11 (page 177).

Figure MagSafe orientation magnet dimensions **37-10**

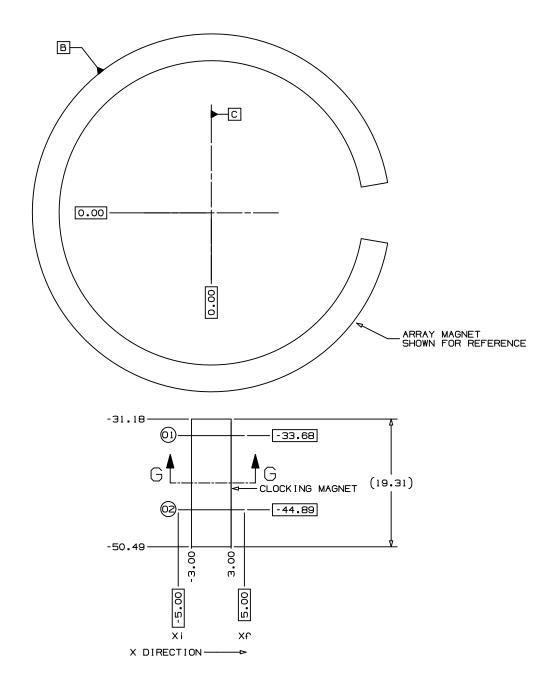
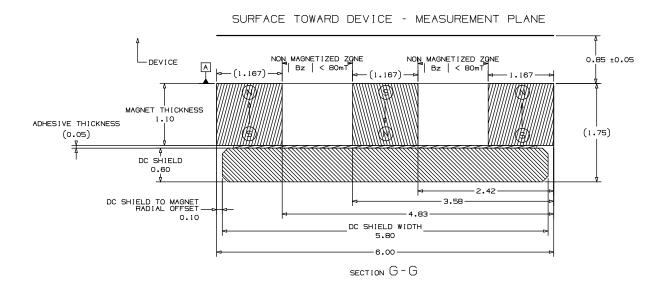


Figure MagSafe orientation magnet dimensions and polarity **37-11**



See DC Shield (page 178) for additional requirements of the DC shield specified in Figure 37-11 (page 177).

The flux density of a MagSafe accessory orientation magnet shall comply with Table 37-9 (page 177) across the 2 lines (O1 and O2) in Figure 37-10 (page 176).

Table Flux density at 0.85 mm from orientation magnet surface **37-9**

Minimum x	Maximum x	Minimum Bz	Maximum Bz	Minimum Bxy	Maximum Bxy
	-5.0 mm	-0.025 T	0.025 T		0.025 T
-5.0 mm	-4.5 mm	-0.025 T	0.025 T		
-4.5 mm	-3.0 mm			0.0625 T	0.0875 T
-3.0 mm	-2.0 mm	0.145 T	0.195 T		
-2.0 mm	-0.5 mm			0.165 T	0.215 T
-0.5 mm	0.5 mm	-0.250 T	-0.185 T		
0.5 mm	2.0 mm			0.165 T	0.215 T
2.0 mm	3.0 mm	0.145 T	0.195 T		
3.0 mm	4.0 mm			0.0625 T	0.0875 T
4.0 mm	5.0 mm	-0.025 T	0.025 T		
5.0 mm		-0.025 T	0.025 T		0.025 T

37.2.2.4 Magnetic Force

The force normal to the back of the device needed to dislodge the MagSafe accessory shall meet the requirements in Table 37-10 (page 178).

Table Magnetic force **37-10**

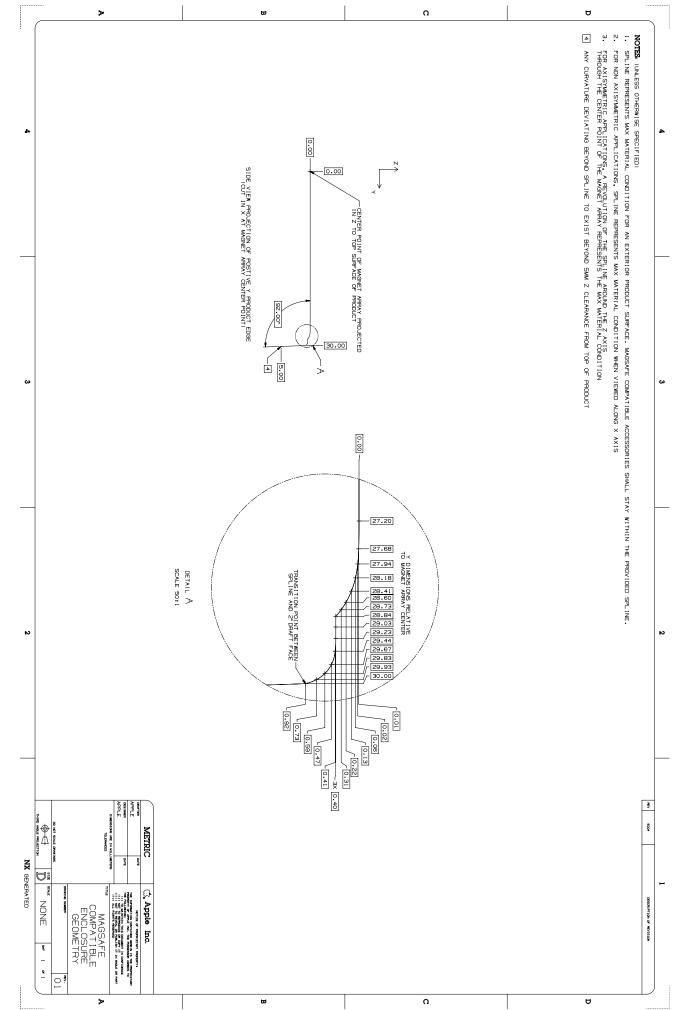
Scenario	Minimum	Maximum
Accessory attached to device	650 gf	900 gf

37.2.2.5 DC Shield

The DC shield shall be low carbon steel (1010, DT4 or similar), per ASTM848, with a 5 μ m - 10 μ m Ni plating finish or similar.

The DC shield shall have a saturation flux density (B $_{\rm sat}$) of at least 2.0 T.

37.3 MagSafe Accessory Enclosure Geometry



37.4 Test Procedures

37.4.1 MagSafe Case Magnet Array

37.4.1.1 Case Thickness

37.4.1.1.1 Equipment

Digital thickness gauge, such as the Mitutoyo 547-520S.

37.4.1.1.2 Procedure

- 1. Using the digital thickness gauge, verify the thickness is less than or equal to 2.1 mm at:
 - Four points along the magnet ring.
 - Two points along the orientation magnet.

37.4.1.2 Accessory Clearance

37.4.1.2.1 Equipment

- MagSafe-capable device.
- Apple MagSafe Battery Pack.

37.4.1.2.2 Procedure

- 1. Attach the case to the device.
- 2. Attach the Apple MagSafe Battery Pack to the back of the case.
- 3. Verify the case does not interfere with the Apple MagSafe Battery Pack and only the mating surface is in contact.

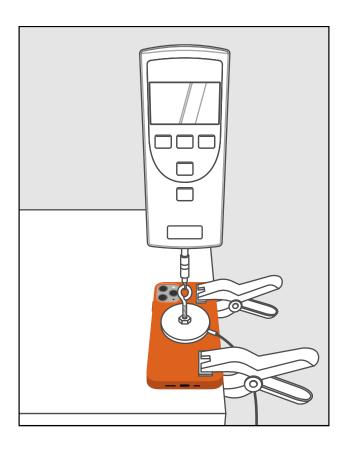
37.4.1.3 Magnetic Force

37.4.1.3.1 Equipment

- MagSafe-capable device.
- Apple MagSafe Charger.
- Non-magnetic eyelet screw.
- Digital force gauge capable of capturing peak values, such as the Chatillon DFX II.
- · Hook attachment for digital force gauge.
- Clamps to securely hold the device on a flat level surface.

37.4.1.3.2 Test Setup

Figure Magnetic force test setup 37-12



- 1. Attach the case to the device.
- 2. Place the device on a flat level surface with the display facing down and clamp it firmly in place.
- 3. Glue the non-magnetic eyelet to the center of the back of the Apple MagSafe Charger so pulling on the eyelet exerts a force on the center of the charger.

37.4.1.3.3 Procedure

- 1. Repeat the following steps 5 times:
 - **a.** Attach the Apple MagSafe Charger and eyelet assembly to the back of the case, allowing them to magnetically align.
 - **b.** Connect the force gauge hook to the eyelet.
 - c. Reset the force gauge's peak force value.
 - **d.** Pull the force gauge vertically until the Apple MagSafe Charger and eyelet assembly dislodge from the case.
 - e. Note the peak value from the force gauge.

- 2. Calculate the average of the 5 peak force measurements.
- **3.** Verify the average force is within the range of 800 gf to 1100 gf when removing the mass of the Apple MagSafe Charger and eyelet assembly.

37.4.1.4 iPhone Leather Wallet with MagSafe Detection

37.4.1.4.1 Equipment

- MagSafe-capable device.
- iPhone Leather Wallet with MagSafe.

37.4.1.4.2 Procedure

- 1. Attach the case to the device.
- 2. Attach the wallet to the back of the case.
- 3. Verify the device displays the wallet animation.

37.4.1.5 Magnetic Stripe Cards in iPhone Leather Wallet with MagSafe

37.4.1.5.1 Equipment

- MagSafe-capable device.
- iPhone Leather Wallet with MagSafe.
- Low Coercivity Magnetic stripe (LoCo) cards, such as cards from the following vendors:
 - American Card Service.
 - Allsafe.
 - Cl Solutions.
 - PSA.
- LoCo card reader/writer, such as:
 - Q-card Mag3x.
 - Magtek InSpec 9000.
 - Misiri X6BT.
 - Deftun MSR605X.

37.4.1.5.2 Procedure

- **1.** Attach the accessory to the device.
- 2. Repeat this procedure for three different brands of LoCo cards:
 - a. Write to the LoCo card.
 - **b.** Read from the LoCo card and verify it was written successfully.
 - c. Insert the LoCo card into the wallet with the magnetic stripe facing the magnets.

- **d.** Place additional cards into the wallet to ensure a LoCo card is in contact with the magnetic side of the wallet.
- e. Attach the wallet to the accessory (attached to the device).
- f. Wait 10 seconds.
- **g.** Remove the wallet from the accessory.
- **h.** Remove the LoCo card from the wallet.
- i. Verify the LoCo card is readable and its contents have not changed.

37.4.2 MagSafe Accessory Magnet Array

37.4.2.1 Orientation Magnet

If the accessory includes an orientation magnet:

- 1. Use a straight edge to verify the device contact surfaces of the magnet ring and orientation magnet are coplanar (aligned in the same plane).
- 2. Attach a MagSafe-capable device to the accessory and align it with the orientation magnet. Verify there are no gaps between the:
 - MagSafe magnet ring and device.
 - MagSafe orientation magnet and device.

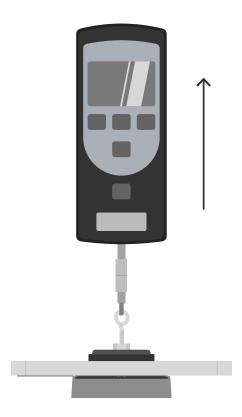
37.4.2.2 Magnetic Force

37.4.2.2.1 Equipment

- MagSafe-capable device.
- Non-magnetic eyelet to attach to the device.
- Digital force gauge capable of capturing peak values, such as the Chatillon DFX II.
- Hook attachment for digital force gauge.
- Clamps, or a vice, to securely hold the accessory on a flat level surface.

37.4.2.2.2 Test Setup

Figure Magnetic force test setup **37-13**



- 1. Clamp the accessory in place so the MagSafe surface is level.
- 2. Attach the non-magnetic eyelet to the MagSafe-capable device so pulling on the eyelet exerts a force on the center of the back of the device. A bracket, strong suction cup, or glue may be used.

37.4.2.2.3 Procedure

- 1. Repeat the following steps 5 times:
 - a. Attach the device and eyelet assembly to the accessory, allowing them to magnetically align.
 - **b.** Connect the force gauge hook to the eyelet.
 - **c.** Reset the force gauge's peak force value.
 - **d.** Pull the force gauge vertically until the device and eyelet assembly dislodge from the accessory.
 - e. Note the peak value from the force gauge.
- 2. Calculate the average of the 5 peak force measurements.
- **3.** Verify the average force is within the range of 650 gf to 900 gf when removing the mass of the device and eyelet assembly.

38. Media Library Access

The Media Library feature allows accessories to download the metadata contents of a device's media libraries (not the media items themselves) and request playback of media items. The feature is divided into the following sub-features:

- Media Library Information informs the accessory about media libraries available on the device.
- Media Library Updates provide an accessory with an updated view of the contents of a particular media library.
- Media Library Playback allows the accessory to request playback of one or more items from a media library.

See the Accessory Interface Specification (page 26) for more information.

39. Musical Instrument Digital Interface (MIDI)

Compatible USB and Bluetooth Low Energy MIDI accessories can interface directly with iOS 17.0, iPadOS 17.0, and macOS 14.0 Sonoma apps making use of the Core MIDI framework, see https://developer.apple.com/documentation/coremidi.

39.1 Requirements

Accessories supporting MIDI as a USB device shall implement a MIDI Streaming IN endpoint and shall support either of the following:

- *USB Device Class Definition for MIDI Devices Version 2.0*, see https://www.usb.org/document-library/usb-class-definition-midi-devices-v20.
- USB Device Class Definition for MIDI Devices Release 1.0, see https://www.usb.org/document-library/usb-midi-devices-10.

Accessories supporting MIDI over Bluetooth Low Energy shall support the following:

• *MIDI Association MIDI over Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE-MIDI) – Version 1.0a*, see https://midi.org/midi-over-bluetooth-low-energy-ble-midi.

39.2 Test Procedures

Developers should test accessory designs against macOS 15.0 Sequoia using the Audio MIDI Setup app and its MIDI Studio and Test MIDI Setup features. See the user guide at https://support.apple.com/guide/audio-midi-setup/welcome/mac.

40. Now Playing Updates

The Now Playing feature enables an accessory to display information about the current "Now Playing" media source and media item on a device. Media sources include both the built-in Apple Music and Apple Video apps on devices and certain third-party iOS apps supporting the generation of Now Playing metadata, see *MPNowPlayingInfoCenter* in the iOS SDK documentation. Accessories shall be prepared for the Now Playing media source and media item to change at any time, whether the accessory requested the change or not.

See the Accessory Interface Specification (page 26) for more information.

41. Out-of-Band Bluetooth Pairing

Accessories with the ability to connect to a device using Bluetooth and a wired transport should use the Out-of-Band Bluetooth Pairing feature to simplify Bluetooth connection setup.

For example, USB to Lightning charge cables or Lightning to USB accessory cables can be used to exchange Bluetooth pairing information upon initial connection. This may reduce or eliminate the need for instruction manuals to describe how to:

- Put the accessory into a discoverable and pairable mode.
- Initiate Bluetooth pairing on the device using the Settings app.
- Download the accessory's companion app and initiate pairing from the app.

See the Accessory Interface Specification (page 26) for more information.

42. Siri

Siri enables a user to have rich interactions with a device by primarily using their voice.

Accessories supporting Siri shall not use an icon resembling the Siri microphone icon.

The rest of this chapter is applicable to accessories supporting Siri over Bluetooth using HFP commands.

To support Siri using other transports and protocols, the accessory developer shall be a member of the Apple MFi Program (page 26).

42.1 Enabling Custom Siri Commands

Accessories supporting Siri over Bluetooth using HFP commands shall support HFP Command AT+XAPL (page 143). The device will use the information sent by this command to enable and disable custom commands related to Siri.

To receive Siri status events, the accessory shall send the AT+XAPL command after making a successful HFP Service Level Connection (SLC) to the device. The accessory should send an AT+XAPL command first, before sending any of the additional Siri-specific commands described below.

42.2 Obtaining Siri Availability Information

After establishing an HFP profile connection, an accessory can determine if Siri is available and enabled on a device. It can also receive notifications of changes in Siri status. If Siri is disabled, Voice Control will be activated instead.

42.2.1 Obtaining Status Information at Connection

The accessory should send the following command after making a successful HFP profile (SLC) connection and sending an AT+XAPL command.

42.2.1.1 HFP Command AT+API SIRI?

Description: AT command to retrieve Siri status information.

Initiator: Accessory

Format: AT+APLSIRI?

Response: +APLSIRI: value

Defined Values:

- 0 = Siri is not available on this platform.
- 1 = Siri is available and enabled.
- 2 = Siri is available but not enabled.

Example: +APLSIRI:1 (Siri is available and enabled)

42.2.2 Receiving Siri Availability Updates from the Device

After initialization has been completed, the device will send the accessory the following notification if there is a change in Siri status. This notification will be provided only if the accessory has requested Siri status (by sending AT+APLSIRI?) at least once after connection and if the device has reported Siri is available and enabled.

42.2.2.1 HFP Command +APLSIRI

Description: Unsolicited event indicating a change in Siri status.

Initiator: Device

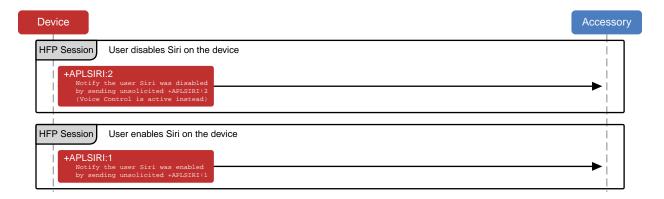
Format: +APLSIRI: value

Defined Values:

- 1 = Siri is available and enabled.
- 2 = Siri is available but not enabled.

Example: +APLSIRI: 2 (Siri is available but not enabled)

Figure Siri is Disabled/Enabled from the Device's Settings **42-1**



42.3 Initiating a Siri Session

Once support for Siri is established on both the accessory and the device, a Siri session can be started from either one.

42.3.1 Initiating a Session from the Accessory

The accessory should only initiate a Siri session as a result of a direct user action.

The accessory shall use the voice recognition command AT+BVRA defined in the *Bluetooth Hands-Free Profile Specification – Version 1.6, Section 4.25* to initiate a Siri session.

The HFP profile shall be connected and SLC shall exist.

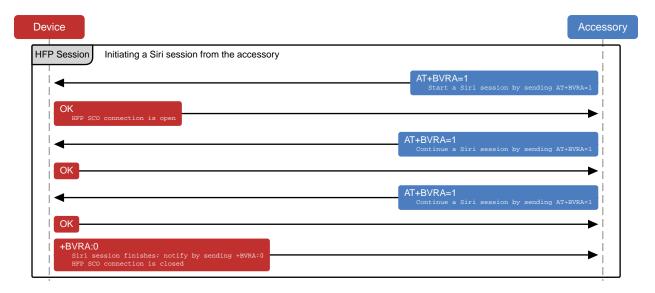
The accessory should use the following command sequence:

- The accessory sends an AT+BVRA=1 command to the device.
- The device sends an OK response.
- The device activates a Siri session and creates a Synchronous Connection (SCO) for the audio.
- If the Siri session is not finished, the accessory shall send AT+BVRA=1 to continue the conversation. This may need to happen multiple times.
- When the Siri session is finished, the device sends a +BVRA: 0 result code to the accessory.
- The device disconnects the SCO connection.

While a Siri session is active, the accessory shall let the user continue the conversation and ask follow up questions within the current context. In order to do so, the accessory shall be able to send an AT+BVRA=1 command to the device even after Siri has been already activated and before +BVRA:0

is received. Figure 42-2 (page 192) shows an overview of the interaction when Siri is triggered from the accessory, the running session was continued twice and once Siri was finished, the device dismissed the session.

Figure Initiating a Siri Session from the Accessory 42-2



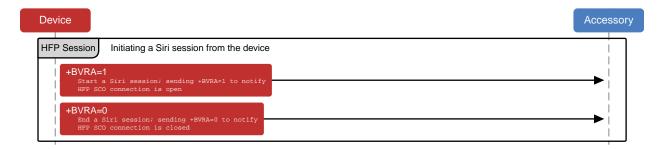
42.3.2 Initiating a Session from the Device

If the accessory supports voice recognition commands, the device sends a +BVRA event to indicate the start of a Siri session. The accessory shall enable support for voice recognition and indicate it in its feature response as described in the *Bluetooth Hands-Free Profile Specification-Version 1.6*, *Section 4.34.1*. Specifically, the HFP profile shall be connected, SLC shall exist, and voice recognition activation (bit 3) shall be enabled in the AT+BRSF command. The device will not use virtual call functionality for the Siri session if voice recognition activation is supported by the accessory.

The accessory should expect the following command sequence:

- The device sends a +BVRA:1 event to the accessory.
- The device activates a Siri session and creates a SCO connection for the audio.
- When the Siri session is finished, the device sends a +BVRA: 0 result code to the accessory.
- The device disconnects the SCO connection.

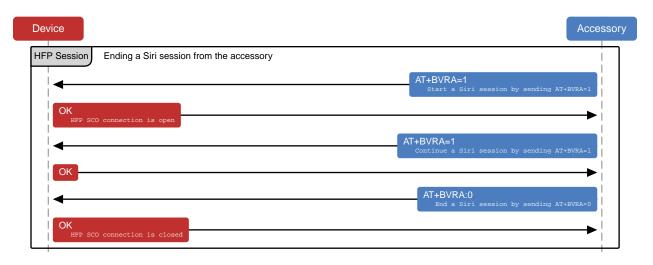
Figure Initiating a Siri Session from the Device 42-3



42.3.3 Ending a Session from the Accessory

Once a Siri session is running the accessory shall be capable of ending the session by sending an AT+BVRA=0 command to the device. Figure 42-4 (page 193) shows an example of ending a running Siri session from the accessory. The accessory should only end an active session as a result of a direct user action.

Figure Ending a Siri Session from the Accessory 42-4



42.4 Siri Eyes Free Mode

Siri Eyes Free mode is a feature to control Siri responses including display information and can be enabled or disabled as needed. In Siri Eyes Free mode, the user experience is tailored towards a driving scenario and interactions with Siri are done primarily using voice to minimize the need for the user to

look at a screen. Siri Eyes Free mode is supported only for Bluetooth-enabled vehicle entertainment systems and should not be used by any other accessories. Siri Eyes Free should not be triggered using a voice command.

The device will listen for the HFP AT command AT+APLEFM to enable or disable Siri Eyes Free mode.

This command is used by the device to modify Siri responses containing visual information or requiring user interaction. Suitable audio feedback and voice commands will be available to the user based on the initiated Siri use case.

Siri Eyes Free mode is disabled by default. Once the accessory has enabled Siri Eyes Free mode, it remains enabled for all subsequent Siri sessions initiated from the accessory until the accessory disables it or the Bluetooth connection is disconnected.

42.4.1 HFP Command AT+APLEFM

Description: An accessory sends this command to notify a device of the preferred state of Siri Eyes Free mode.

Initiator: Accessory

Format: AT+APLEFM=value

Response: OK

Defined Values:

- $0 \times 00 = Disable Siri Eyes Free mode.$
- 0x01 = Enable Siri Eyes Free mode.
- 0x02-0xFF = reserved

Example: AT+APLEFM=1

42.5 Improving Voice Recognition

The microphone audio an accessory sends to the device during a Siri session should be suitable for voice recognition. Audio requirements for optimal voice recognition may differ from requirements for optimal human perception (for example, during a cellular phone call).

Filtering of the audio signal to remove echoes or feedback noise is acceptable.

To provide the best possible audio quality as Siri input, the accessory shall observe the following recommendations:

- Echo cancellation and noise suppression (EC/NR): Directional microphones and linear beamforming with microphone arrays giving improved SNR are recommended. Linear echo cancellation for reducing unwanted audio sources (such as audio output from the system) without having any other effect on the speech signal are also recommended. However, single channel noise reduction methods (such as spectrum subtraction) shall not be applied, as they will be detrimental to the speech recognition accuracy. Similarly, automatic gain control, residual echo suppression and attempts to blank out non-speech periods in the waveform shall not be applied.
- **Signal gain**: When adjusting signal levels, the accessory shall avoid artifacts, dropouts, and clipping in all circumstances. Automatic Gain Control is not recommended. If the accessory adjusts signal gain, the gain should be held constant across each spoken utterance. The nominal level measured at the uplink output of the accessory should be A-weighted -30 dB ±2 dB root-mean-square (RMS), expressed in units relative to full-scale (dBFS(A)). Alternatively, the nominal level may be 13 dB ±2 dB SLR if using the ITU measurement procedure.
- Signal-to-noise ratio (SNR): The average SNR should be greater than 20 dB. Below 20 dB, recognition rates will be impacted.
- Reverberation: An RT60 time less than 200 ms should be maintained.

42.5.1 Wide Band Speech Support

An accessory using Siri should support 16 kHz wide band speech audio for better audio quality and voice recognition performance. See the *Bluetooth Hands-Free Profile Specification – Version 1.6* for details about wide band speech audio. Narrow band audio signal (8 kHz) is supported but not recommended.

42.6 Optimizing the Siri Experience

The start of a Siri session should not be accompanied by local beeps or verbal indications (such as an announcement of "...voice dialing...") from the accessory. When a Siri session becomes active, the device sends two beeps indicating Siri is ready to receive instructions. Adding extra audible notifications only inserts delays in the system.

The accessory should wait for the device to end each Siri session.

The accessory should not send an AT+BVRA=0 command unless it is prompted to do so by user interaction.

The accessory should be capable of rendering audio within 200 ms of SCO connection activation to ensure the user always hears the Siri introductory beeps.

42.7 Common Siri Applications

Siri can send messages, find points of interests, place phone calls, and much more. As Siri capabilities are constantly growing, additional use cases may become available after the initial integration. In Siri Eyes Free mode, some of these use cases may not be accessible as the user experience is tailored towards a driving scenario.

42.7.1 Initialization Procedure After Connection is Established

Figure 42-5 (page 196) outlines the sequence the accessory has to trigger to be able to use Siri on a device. After establishing an HFP profile connection, the accessory shall first enable the custom Siri commands by sending AT+XAPL and provide the features it supports. After a confirmation is received from the device, the accessory should determine Siri's availability with AT+APLSIRI?.

Vehicles with Bluetooth-enabled infotainment systems can also enable Siri Eyes Free Mode during initialization. This is detailed in Figure 42-6 (page 197).

Figure Siri Initialization Procedure **42-5**

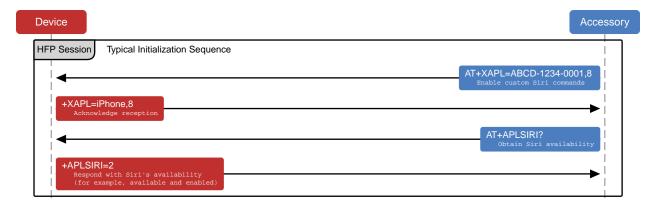


Figure Siri Initialization Procedure with Siri Eyes Free 42-6



42.7.2 Phone Dialing Using Siri

Upon user request, Siri can initiate an outgoing phone call. The device will initiate HFP call signaling to establish a phone call as described in Bluetooth (page 223). The accessory shall be able to transition to Hands-Free dialing at any time during or after a Siri session when signaled by the device.

42.7.3 Audio Routing and Media Playback Using Siri

Siri can control the media playback on a device, and if Siri determines the user wants to play or pause music, Siri will either start, pause or resume media playback. The device will send a notification to the accessory indicating a change in playback state and any associated track information. The accessory shall respond to the notifications, start or stop the music playback as requested, as well as update the correct playback state (for example, shuffle, repeat).

The accessory shall not force a change in the playback state after a Siri session is ended. If music was playing before Siri was started, it shall continue playing, if it was paused, it shall remain paused.

After Siri starts music playback the accessory shall set its current audio route to match the audio source, depending on how audio is being received from the device (using Bluetooth or by a wired connection).

The available media playback notifications depend on the audio route being used:

- Bluetooth audio routes shall use the approach described in Notifications (page 230) and Audio Data Received using A2DP Profile (page 232).
- Wired audio routes shall use iAP2.

42.7.4 Turn-By-Turn Directions Using Siri

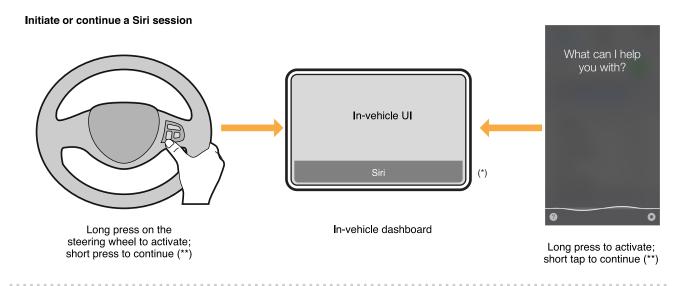
Siri can initiate active route guidance to provide turn-by-turn directions. In case the device is the active source and is already playing music, turn-by-turn directions will be mixed in as part of the audio stream. In case the device is not playing music, the accessory should be able to mix in turn-by-turn directions with the active audio source.

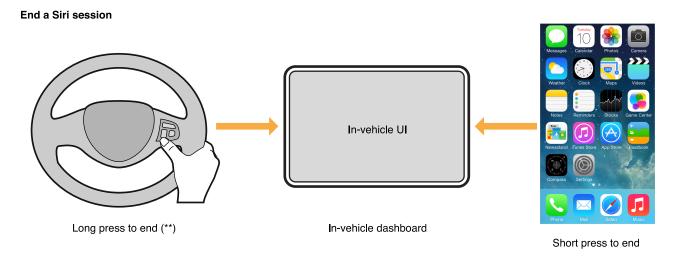
The device will notify the accessory to play turn-by-turn directions only over Bluetooth. Detailed information on how to distinguish between music playback and turn-by-turn notifications is available in Notifications (page 230).

42.8 User Interaction with Siri Eyes Free in a Vehicle

A vehicle using Siri Eyes Free mode shall integrate the Siri experience with the existing in-vehicle entertainment system and controls. The vehicle should provide a convenient interface to initiate, continue, and end a Siri session. Once a Siri session is running, the vehicle shall display a visual cue indicating voice recognition is in use. Figure 42-7 (page 199) outlines how a Siri interaction should be designed.

Figure Siri Eyes Free user interaction 42-7





As shown in Figure 42-7 (page 199):

- (*) If the accessory wishes to indicate Siri is active, it shall do one of the following:
 - Display the word 'Siri' (as capitalized) with no additional text or icon.
 - Use generic text or icon not resembling the Siri microphone icon.
- (**) If the vehicle is equipped with steering wheel controls, the steering wheel shall have a dedicated button or a long-press action on a button to start, continue and end a Siri session. The button long-press shall be 600 ms or less. If no steering wheel controls are available, a soft button shall be available within the in-vehicle user interface to start, continue or end a Siri session.

When a vehicle enables Siri Eyes Free mode, the device will not display any onscreen Siri content. If the device was locked at the time the Siri session was activated from the vehicle, it will remain locked and the screen will not wake. If the user unlocks or manually activates the device while in an Eyes Free Session there will be a notification the device is in an active Siri session but there will be no visual Siri content displayed.

42.9 Enabling/Disabling Siri from the Device

The user has the ability to disable or enable Siri from the Settings menu on the device. When Siri is disabled, Voice Control becomes the recognition engine on the device and will be triggered by default. The accessory may choose to either:

- Activate Voice Control (in the same way Siri is activated) as in Figure 42-8 (page 200).
- Display a warning message and not send an activation command to the device as in Figure 42-9 (page 201).

Figure Siri is disabled - activating Voice Control 42-8

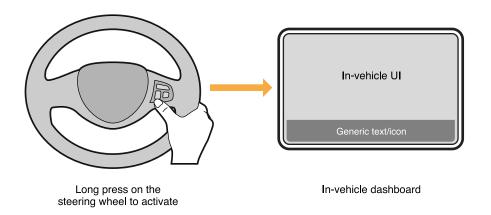
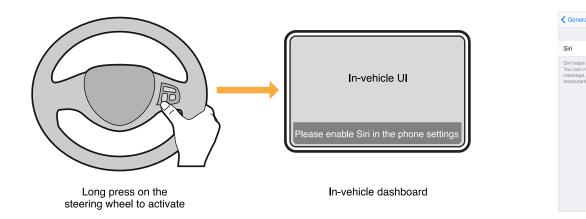




Figure Siri is disabled - displaying a warning message **42-9**



42.10 Test Procedures

42.10.1 Siri Eyes Free

The following test procedures are applicable to accessories interacting with Siri Eyes Free.

The ideal test operator is a native speaker of North American English. If the operator's native language is not North American English, set Siri to the operator's native language and translate the provided phrases into their native language.

42.10.1.1 General

- 1. Pair and establish a Bluetooth Hands-Free Profile (HFP) connection between the device and the head unit. Activate Siri from the vehicle steering wheel button (for example, by pressing and holding):
 - **a.** Observe the device screen remains inactive after a Siri session has started (a visual indicator will be visible on the device if the screen is activated manually).
 - **b.** Ensure Siri's opening chime is heard completely through the vehicle speakers.
 - c. Observe a visual notification in the in-car User Interface (UI) indicating a Siri session is active (for example, text notification, on-screen UI).
- 2. Activate Siri from the vehicle steering wheel button and say "Send a message to Peter. How are you?". While still saying the message, press the vehicle steering wheel button to cancel Siri:
 - **a.** Ensure the device screen remains inactive (if manually activated, the visual indicator on the phone will disappear).
 - **b.** Verify the in-car Siri UI interaction is dismissed and the head unit returns to its prior state before the Siri interaction.

- 3. Activate Siri from the vehicle steering wheel button and say "How is the weather in San Francisco?". Wait for Siri to respond with the weather forecast. Once the weather forecast is complete, resume Siri from the vehicle steering wheel button and say "What about New York?":
 - a. Confirm the visual indicator is still active on the phone.
 - **b.** Listen for the Siri opening chime.
 - **c.** Verify the vehicle UI indicates a Siri session is active.
 - **d.** Verify Siri responds with the weather forecast for New York.
- 4. In case the vehicle UI offers on-screen controls to activate/cancel/resume Siri, repeat steps (1) to (3) for all on-screen controls.
- **5.** Activate Siri from the steering wheel button and say "What's the time?". Listen to the current time and do not interact with Siri or the device. After 5 seconds have expired:
 - **a.** Observe the visual Siri session indicator on the phone is no longer visible.
 - **b.** Verify the in-car UI for Siri interaction was dismissed.
 - **c.** Verify the head unit returned to its prior state before the Siri interaction.
- **6.** Listen to FM radio from the car speakers (for example, no A2DP streaming active). Press and hold the device Side/Top/Home button to activate Siri:
 - **a.** Observe a visual notification in the in-car UI indicating a Siri session is active (textual notification, on-screen UI, etc.).
 - b. Observe Siri's interaction on the device screen and ask "What's the time?".
 - **c.** After Siri has responded, lock the device again to dismiss the Siri session by pressing the device Side/Top/Home button.
- 7. Open Settings and turn Siri off. Activate Siri from the head unit. Observe one of the following depending on the actual implementation (a) Voice Control starts instead of Siri (b) The head unit displays a warning indicating Siri Eyes Free is not available.
- **8.** Open Settings and turn Siri back on. Verify Siri can be activated/cancelled from the head unit and from the device Side/Top/Home button.
- 9. Open Settings and turn Bluetooth off. Verify Siri cannot be started.
- **10.** Open Settings and turn Bluetooth back on. Verify Bluetooth HFP profile reconnects and Siri can be activated/cancelled from the head unit and from the device Side/Top/Home button.
- 11. Confirm there is no accessory battery status level indicator icon displayed on the device status bar.

42.10.1.2 Siri Dialog

1. Activate Siri from the vehicle's steering wheel button and say "Send a text message to insert contact name". When Siri prompts "What would you like it to say?", dictate a short message. After Siri has read back the dictated message, say "Review it". After Siri has read back the message again, say "Review it" again. Repeat this cycle ~5 times to ensure the head unit is able to handle a long interaction with Siri. At the end say "Send it" and verify the message is sent. Verify the opening

- chime is audible and the message is sent. After the Siri session is closed, verify the audio playback went back to the audio state it was in before Siri was activated (that is, if audio was paused it remains paused, if it was playing it resumes playing).
- 2. Start Siri from the vehicle's steering wheel button and ask for directions. Follow up through the dialog until the navigation is started. Verify the Siri session is closed and the audio playback returns to the audio state it was in before Siri was activated (that is, if audio was paused it remains paused, if it was playing it resumes playing).
- 3. Start Siri from the vehicle's steering wheel button and say "Search the web for polar bears". Verify Siri Eyes Free mode is on and this use case is blocked by Siri. In some implementations the vehicle has to be in motion before Siri Eyes Free is activated by the car kit.
- 4. Start Siri from the vehicle's steering wheel button and say "What is the current time in Munich?". After Siri answers but before ~5 seconds have elapsed, resume Siri (for example, using a short press on the steering wheel button) and verify Siri is activated again. Say "What about San Francisco?". Repeat (with a different city) and verify this can continue indefinitely as long as there is a short press on the steering wheel button within 5 seconds of the last response.

42.10.1.3 Bluetooth HFP A2DP Music

- 1. Establish a Bluetooth A2DP connection and switch to Bluetooth audio source on the head unit. Activate Siri and say "Next track". Verify the track advances and audio is played through the vehicle speakers. Verify the Siri in-car UI is dismissed and the head unit returns to its initial audio state.
- 2. Activate Siri and say "Pause the music". Verify audio remains paused after Siri has been dismissed. Verify the Siri in-car UI is dismissed and the head unit returns to its initial audio state.
- 3. Pause music playback on the head unit (using AVRCP command). Activate Siri and ask "What time is it?". Verify the music playback remains paused after the Siri session has been dismissed. Verify the Siri in-car UI is dismissed and the head unit returns to its initial audio state.
- **4.** Switch to FM radio on the head unit. Activate Siri and say "Play me a song". Verify the head unit is able to automatically switch to Bluetooth audio and music starts playing. Verify the beginning of the selected track is heard (for example, there is no skipping of audio packets). Verify the Siri in-car UI is dismissed and the head unit returns to its initial audio state.
- 5. Activate Siri and say "Shuffle all songs". Verify the head unit correctly updates the NowPlaying track information. Verify the Siri in-car UI is dismissed and the head unit returns to its initial audio state.
- **6.** Activate Siri and ask to play a specific artist or title. Verify the Siri session is dismissed after the music starts. Confirm the correct metadata is displayed on the screen. Verify the Siri in-car UI is dismissed and the head unit returns to its initial audio state.

42.10.1.4 Call

- 1. Activate Siri and call a contact with more than one phone number (for example, home and mobile). Wait for Siri's response asking which phone number to call. Answer with "home". Verify call transition is handled correctly by the head unit and any Siri UI displayed on the vehicle screen is dismissed.
- 2. While device music is playing, activate Siri and say "Call (insert contact to call)". Verify call transition is handled correctly by the head unit. Verify device music playback resumes after the call has been answered and terminated on the far end. Verify the Siri in-car UI is dismissed and the head unit returns to its initial audio state.
- 3. While device music is playing, start Siri and say "Call (insert contact to call)". Verify call transition is handled correctly by the head unit. Verify device music playback resumes after the call has been answered and terminated on the near end (that is, on the head unit). Verify the Siri in-car UI is dismissed and the head unit returns to its initial audio state.
- **4.** While in a Siri session, receive an incoming call on the head unit. Verify the head unit handles call-signaling correctly and transitions to the phone UI once the call has been accepted. Verify the Siri in-car UI is dismissed and the head unit returns to its initial audio state.

42.10.1.5 Bluetooth + Wired iAP2

- 1. Connect the device to the head unit. Switch to device audio and verify audio is playing. Activate Siri and say "Next track". Verify the track advances and the head unit displays the track metadata correctly. Verify the Siri in-car UI is dismissed and the head unit returns to its initial audio state.
- 2. From the head unit UI, select a playlist with a single song and start playing it. Start Siri from the vehicle steering wheel and say "Play make sure to select a song to play (a) not in the same album as the single-track playlist and (b) not song track index 0 of its album". Verify the new song starts playing and the head unit correctly displays the track metadata for the new song. Verify the Siri in-car UI is dismissed and the head unit returns to its initial audio state.
- 3. Turn Shuffle off on the head unit UI. Then start Siri and say "Shuffle all songs". Verify the shuffle indicator on the head unit UI is updated and the correct track metadata for the new now playing song is displayed correctly. Verify the Siri in-car UI is dismissed and the head unit returns to its initial audio state.
- 4. Switch to FM radio on the head unit. Activate Siri and say "Play me a song". Verify the head unit is able to automatically switch to device audio source and music starts playing through the speakers. Verify there is no skipping of audio at the beginning of the selected track. Verify the Siri in-car UI is dismissed and the head unit returns to its initial audio state.
- 5. Pause music playback on the head unit (using iAP2 commands). Activate Siri and ask "What time is it?". Verify music playback remains paused after the Siri session has been dismissed. Verify the Siri in-car UI is dismissed and the head unit returns to its initial audio state.

- 6. While device music is playing, start Siri and say "Call (insert contact to call)". Verify call transition is handled correctly by the head unit. Verify device music playback resumes after the call has been answered and terminated on the far end. Verify the Siri in-car UI is dismissed and the head unit returns to its initial audio state.
- 7. While device music is playing, start Siri and say "Call (insert contact to call)". Verify call transition is handled correctly by the head unit. Verify device music playback resumes after the call has been answered and terminated on the near end (for example, on the head unit). Verify the Siri in-car UI is dismissed and the head unit returns to its initial audio state.
- **8.** Pause music playback on the head unit (using iAP2 commands). Start Siri and say "Call *insert contact name to call*". Verify call transition is handled correctly by the head unit. Verify device music playback remains paused after the call has been answered and terminated on the far end. Verify the Siri in-car UI is dismissed and the head unit returns to its initial audio state.

43. Wi-Fi Information Sharing

Wi-Fi configuration information can be exchanged between devices and accessories.

Devices can share Wi-Fi configuration information with an accessory. The accessory can initiate this process, but the user shall grant permission for the device to share this information. The device can only share information about the currently connected Wi-Fi network, and this feature will not account for other router-configured access control mechanisms, such as RADIUS or MAC address filtering.

Figure Wi-Fi information sharing alert **43-1**



See the Accessory Interface Specification (page 26) for more information.

Protocols

44. USB Power Capability Vendor Request

If the accessory is a USB host, and it does not implement iAP2 (page 218), then it may send an Apple-specific USB vendor request communicating how much power is available to the device. In this case, the accessory shall enumerate and identify the presence of a device, then send the vendor request. The vendor request shall be sent every time the device is enumerated by the accessory.

Table USB Vendor Request for non-iAP2 accessory USB Embedded Host **44-1**

Field	Value	Comments
bmRequestType	0x40	Device-to-host request, vendor-defined type, device is recipient.
bRequest	0x40	Vendor-defined USB get enabled capabilities request.
wValue	See comments.	Charging current available, expressed as an offset from 500 mA. Shall be 500 (1000 mA charging current available), 1000 (1500 mA charging current available), 1600 (2100 mA charging current available), 1900 (2400 mA charging current available), or 2500 (3000 mA charging current available).
wIndex	See comments.	Shall be the same as wValue.
wLength	0	0 bytes expected.

45. USB D+/D- Resistor Networks

Accessories not implementing any of the following may use USB resistor networks to identify their current capability:

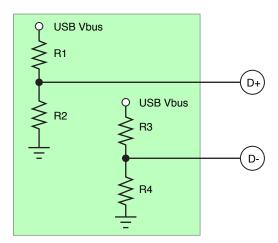
- iAP2 (page 218).
- USB Power Capability Vendor Request (page 208).
- USB Type-C Current (page 213).
- USB Power Delivery (PD) (page 212).

Device power draw varies with environmental factors. Accessory power source testing shall be performed with programmable loads, not devices.

45.1 Declaring Power Source Capability

Accessories shall connect the USB D+ and USB D- pins to resistor networks as shown in Figure 45-1 (page 209).

Figure USB D+/D- resistor networks **45-1**



Every iOS device-compatible connector on an accessory using a USB resistor network shall have its own set of resistors. The accessory shall be capable of supplying the total current required when all connectors are in use, regardless of whether the connectors are compatible with devices or not.

The resistor network shall be connected at all times unless the accessory uses one of the following methods to enable charging or detect the presence of a device. In these cases, it shall immediately present the resistor network. The accessory:

- Uses a direct user action to enable charging.
- Senses the attachment of the device using electromechanical means such as a contact switch.

The accessory shall not monitor the USB D+ and USB D- pins to detect the presence of a device.

Resistors used to implement the networks specified in Figure 45-1 (page 209) shall have a tolerance of 1% or better. The resistor network shall not be emulated by driving the voltage of the USB D+/D- pins using some other means.

Table USB D+/D- resistor values **45-1**

Max Current	R1	R2	R3	R4
3000 mA	43.2 kΩ	49.9 kΩ	24.9 kΩ	49.9 kΩ
2400 mA	43.2 kΩ	49.9 kΩ	43.2 kΩ	49.9 kΩ
2100 mA	43.2 kΩ	49.9 kΩ	75.0 kΩ	49.9 kΩ
1000 mA	75.0 kΩ	49.9 kΩ	43.2 kΩ	49.9 kΩ

45.2 Identifying Power Source Current Limit

Accessories shall take into account the variation of USB VBUS voltage and resistor tolerances.

The resistor network values and corresponding current source limits should be identified using the following procedures:

- 1. Read the VBUS voltage using an ADC. If value is less than 4.5 V, return no resistors detected.
- 2. Pull-down the D+ and D- lines and read the voltage using an ADC. If either voltage value is less than 1 V, return no resistors detected.
- 3. Disable the D+ and D- pull-downs and allow the voltage to return to normal.
- 4. Read the D+ and D- voltages using an ADC (to determine the value for R1 and R3 respectively):
 - If voltage is >2.995 V (based on 1 M Ω load impedance), assume a resistor value of 24.9 k Ω .
 - If voltage is between 2.320 V and 2.995 V (based on 1 M Ω load impedance), assume a resistor value of 43.2 k Ω .
 - If voltage is < 2.320 V (based on 1 M Ω load impedance), assume a resistor value of 75.0 k Ω .
- 5. Determine the max current based on Table 45-2 (page 211).
- **6.** If resistor values could not be identified, proceed to identify the power available based on the *USB Battery Charging Specification Release 1.2*.

Table USB D+/D- resistor values **45-2**

Max Current	R1	R2	R3	R4
1000 mA	24.9 kΩ	49.9 kΩ	24.9 kΩ	49.9 kΩ
1000 mA	24.9 kΩ	49.9 kΩ	43.2 kΩ	49.9 kΩ
1000 mA	24.9 kΩ	49.9 kΩ	75.0 kΩ	49.9 kΩ
3000 mA	43.2 kΩ	49.9 kΩ	24.9 kΩ	49.9 kΩ
2400 mA	43.2 kΩ	49.9 kΩ	43.2 kΩ	49.9 kΩ
2100 mA	43.2 kΩ	49.9 kΩ	75.0 kΩ	49.9 kΩ
1000 mA	75.0 kΩ	49.9 kΩ	24.9 kΩ	49.9 kΩ
1000 mA	75.0 kΩ	49.9 kΩ	43.2 kΩ	49.9 kΩ
500 mA	75.0 kΩ	49.9 kΩ	75.0 kΩ	49.9 kΩ

46. USB Power Delivery (PD)

Accessories providing direct power using USB Power Delivery (PD) or drawing power from USB PD sources shall comply with the *USB Power Delivery Specification – Revision 3.1, Version 1.3*, see https://www.usb.org/document-library/usb-power-delivery.

Accessories implementing USB PD shall incorporate a USB-IF certified PD controller with a *Silicon* Test ID from the USB-IF, see https://www.usb.org/products.

Apple recommends the GRL-USB-PD-C2 (see https://www.graniteriverlabs.com/en-us/test-solutions/protocol-power-test-solutions/usb-pd-c2) for USB PD testing and compliance verification.

47. USB Type-C Current

Accessories providing direct power using USB Type-C Current or drawing power from USB Type-C Current sources shall comply with the *USB Type-C Cable and Connector Specification –Release 2.3, Section 4.6.2.*

Apple recommends the GRL-USB-PD-C2 (see https://www.graniteriverlabs.com/en-us/test-solutions/protocol-power-test-solutions/usb-pd-c2) for USB Type-C Current testing and compliance verification.

48. Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP)

Accessories may implement the Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP) over Bluetooth (page 223) to receive audio from iPhone, iPad, Apple Watch, Apple TV, Mac, and Apple Vision Pro.

The audio content from the device can be broadly classified into two categories:

- Audio content from music, video, or gaming applications.
- System-generated sounds for alerts and notifications.

A2DP is often implemented in speakers and headsets.

Accessories implementing A2DP shall satisfy all requirements stated in Bluetooth (page 223).

48.1 Bluetooth A2DP Specification

Accessories implementing the Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP) shall meet the requirements of the Bluetooth *Advanced Audio Distribution Profile Specification – Version 1.2*.

48.1.1 AVDTP Transactions

Accessories shall respond to Audio/Video Distribution Transport Protocol (AVDTP) signaling transactions before the device's five second RTX_SIG_TIMER expires or the device will terminate the signaling channel. See Bluetooth *Audio/Video Distribution Transport Protocol-Version 1.3, Section 6.2 Transaction Model and Section 6.4 Signal Command Set*.

48.2 SubBand Codec (SBC)

The SBC Codec Specific Information Elements, defined in *Advanced Audio Distribution Profile Specification – Version 1.2, Section 4.3.2*, applicable to iOS devices and Mac computers are listed in Table 48-1 (page 215).

Table SubBand Codec Information Elements for iOS devices and Mac computers **48-1**

Element	Value
Sampling Frequency	44,100 Hz
Channel Mode	Stereo
Block Length	16
Subbands	8
Allocation Method	Loudness
Bitpool range	2 to 53. Accessories for iOS devices and Mac computers should support 53.

48.3 MPEG 2/4 AAC Codecs

Devices support the non-mandatory codec MPEG-2/4 AAC, as defined in *Advanced Audio Distribution Profile Specification – Version 1.2, Section 4.5.* Accessories should use the AAC codec in addition to SBC, because AAC provides higher audio quality for a given bit rate.

Note:

The following specifications provide details of Apple's implementation of the MPEG-2/4 AAC codec. In case of conflicts, the A2DP specification governs.

The MPEG 2/4 AAC Codec Specific Information Elements, defined in *Advanced Audio Distribution Profile Specification – Version 1.2, Section 4.5*, applicable to devices are listed in Table 48-2 (page 215).

Table MPEG-2/4 AAC Codec Information Elements for devices **48-2**

Element	Value	
Object Type	MPEG-2 AAC LC	
Sampling Frequency	44,100 Hz	
Channels	2	
Bit rate	264,630 bps	
VBR	0	

AAC audio stream packets in devices have the structure shown in Table 48-3 (page 216).

Table AAC audio packet for devices **48-3**

L2CAPAVDTPMPEG-4 LATMMPEG-4 AACHeaderHeaderAudioMuxElementAudio Payload

The AAC Media Payload Format, as defined in *Advanced Audio Distribution Profile Specification – Version 1.2, Section 4.5.4*, is formatted using LATM as defined in *IETF RFC 3016 – Section 4*. The following notes apply to the packet fields shown in Table 48–3 (page 216).

- The recommended L2CAP MTU value for each device's AAC streaming channel is 885 bytes.
- The AVDTP Header is shown as the RTP header in *RFC 3016 Figure 4*, defined in Bluetooth *Audio/Video Distribution Transport Protocol Version 1.2, Section 7.2.1*.
- The AudioMuxElement is the same as the RFC 3016-RTP payload, defined in ISO/IEC 14496-3:2009-Subpart 1, Section 1.7.3, Table 1.41. The muxConfigPresent argument to the AudioMuxElement is set to 1 (in-band mode), as recommended in RFC 3016-Section 4.1. As recommended in RFC 3016-Section 4.3, only one AudioMuxElement is put into each AVDTP packet.
- The audio payload is encoded using MPEG-4, as recommended in *Advanced Audio Distribution Profile Specification Version 1.2, Section 4.5.4*.
- The accessory should support AAC-LC VBR and handle bit rate changes without audio gaps.
 Devices will vary AAC bit rate depending on the content.

48.4 Test Procedures

48.4.1 Audio Quality

Verify there are no audio quality issues in each of the following scenarios:

- 1. Stream music from the Apple Music app.
- 2. Stream music from a radio station within the Apple Music app.
- 3. Stream audio using the Apple Podcasts app.

48.4.2 Audio Switching

- 1. During A2DP streaming, switch audio back to device and switch back to accessory.
- 2. Verify audio was routed to the intended source, and audio quality was good switching back to Bluetooth.

48.4.3 HFP Interaction

- 1. Make incoming/outgoing call during A2DP.
- 2. Verify audio was suspended during the call and resumed after the call.

48.4.4 Siri

- 1. Trigger Siri during A2DP.
- 2. Verify audio resumed after the Siri session.

48.4.5 Video Playback

- 1. Stream A2DP while watching a video.
- 2. Verify audio/video synchronization and quality is good.

49. iAP2

Accessories may use the iAP2 protocol to access advanced device features, such as:

- Communicating securely with third-party iOS/iPadOS apps using the External Accessory Protocol (page 158).
- Accessing the media library and retrieving album artwork using Media Library Access (page 185) and Now Playing Updates (page 187).
- Launching apps using App Launch (page 141).
- Discovering compatible apps using App Discovery (page 140).
- Helping users find compatible apps in the App Store using App Match (page 142).
- Providing GNSS location data using Location Information (page 163).
- Supporting connectivity with Out-of-Band Bluetooth Pairing (page 188) and Wi-Fi Information Sharing (page 206).

See the Accessory Interface Specification (page 26) for more information.

50. Human Interface Device (HID)

Devices can accept input from and send output to Human Interface Device (HID) accessories, such as external keyboards, trackpads, mice, and game controllers. This capability is made available system-wide for all apps on the device as well as to support features built into iOS, iPadOS, and tvOS. If an accessory is designed to provide human input events to a specific third-party app, the accessory should use the External Accessory Protocol feature instead; see the Accessory Interface Specification (page 26) for more information.

The HID protocol can be implemented over:

- USB
- Bluetooth

50.1 Requirements

Accessories supporting the HID protocol shall comply with the following requirements:

- Accessories shall only send HID reports for changes in physical or virtual control surfaces declared in the corresponding HID descriptor.
- Accessories shall not send a HID report if there has not been any change in the state of the corresponding physical or virtual control surface. For example, the accessory shall never generate a "Play/Pause" event without the user pressing a dedicated "Play/Pause" button.
- Each HID report shall contain the correct number of bytes as described in its corresponding HID descriptor.
- The accessory shall not anticipate or assume corresponding state changes in the device after sending HID reports.
- Unless otherwise specified:
 - The accessory shall be capable of generating and receiving all HID usages declared in its HID descriptor.
 - The accessory's declared HID usages shall map directly to physical or virtual control surfaces on a 1:1 basis. For example, a button labeled "Play/Pause" shall send a Play/Pause HID usage and not "Play" or "Pause" usages. Compound controls such as knobs, joysticks, and directional pads may be considered multiple control surfaces. For example, clockwise and counterclockwise rotation may map to separate HID usages.

- Physical or virtual control surfaces generating HID reports shall be labeled with appropriate iconography or text corresponding to the resulting device behavior. For example, a Play/Pause button shall be labeled with the text 'Play/Pause' or a Play/Pause icon.
- The accessory shall send one HID report in response to each direct user action on the corresponding physical or virtual control surface. For example:
 - When the user presses a button, one 'button pressed' HID report shall be sent to the device.
 - When the user releases the button, one 'button released' HID report shall be sent to the device.

50.1.1 Report Descriptor

When padding packets to align within a byte boundary, each Main item tag (Input, Output, or Feature) shall be marked constant. Padding bits should be set to 0.

When defining Variable type Input/Output fields, either:

- Report Count number shall correspond to the number of Usages specified.
- Report Size shall be 8 and the Report Count shall correspond to the size of a multi-byte blob.

50.1.2 USB

If implementing HID over USB, the accessory shall comply with the *Device Class Definition for Human Interface Devices (HID) –Version 1.11*, see https://www.usb.org/hid.

50.2 Test Procedures

50.2.1 General

- Verify the accessory generates and receives all HID usages declared in the component's HID descriptor.
- 2. Verify the accessory does not send a HID report if there has not been any change in the state of the control surfaces (that is, no polling of HID reports).
- 3. Verify if any accessory has physical or virtual control surfaces generating accessory HID usages, the controls are labeled with appropriate iconography or text corresponding to the resulting device behavior (for example, a Play/Pause button is labeled with the text "Play/Pause" or a Play/Pause icon).
- **4.** Verify HID usages map to physical or virtual controls on a 1:1 basis (for example, Play button only sends Play usages, not Play/Pause).

5.	Verify one accessory HID report is sent in response to each direct user action on the corresponding
	physical or virtual control surface. For example, when the user presses a button, one 'button pressed'
	usage report is sent, and a separate 'button released' usage report is sent when the user releases
	the button.

Transports

51. Bluetooth

Accessories integrating Bluetooth technology shall comply with the requirements stated in this chapter.

Accessories shall support the Bluetooth Core Specification – Version 2.1+EDR or later.

51.1 Enhanced Data Rate

The Enhanced Data Rate (EDR) feature introduced in the *Bluetooth 2.0 Specification* enables accessories to communicate more efficiently. Accessories shall use EDR for the following reasons:

- EDR provides higher data rates compared to Basic Data Rate (BDR).
- EDR communicates more efficiently, transferring more data bits in less time.
- EDR reduces power consumption per bit transferred.
- EDR improves coexistence with Wi-Fi and other Bluetooth accessories by using less airtime.
- EDR improves performance in multipoint configurations.

51.2 Adaptive Frequency Hopping

Adaptive Frequency Hopping (AFH) introduced in the *Bluetooth 1.2 Specification* improves coexistence with Wi-Fi and other connected Bluetooth accessories. Accessories shall use AFH.

51.3 Sniff Mode for Low Power Consumption

Minimizing power consumption is critical for all mobile devices, therefore accessories shall:

- Support and should request Bluetooth sniff mode.
- Accept sniff mode requests and support valid parameters from the Bluetooth specification.
- Support a sniff interval of 15 ms.
- Support sniff subrating.
- Not renegotiate sniff mode after it is established.

Accessories should use sniff mode values of:

Max Interval: 15 msMin Interval: 15 ms

Sniff Attempt: 1Sniff Timeout: 0

Accessories compatible with iOS devices and Mac computers should use sniff mode as often as possible, especially when there is little or no data being transmitted over the Bluetooth link. Sniff mode enables better antenna sharing with Wi-Fi, in addition to the power consumption advantages.

Sniff mode parameters are specific to the usage model and Bluetooth profile. Accessories should request sniff mode with appropriate parameters for specific usage models. If the accessory does not send a sniff mode request, the device may send a sniff mode request. When the device sends a sniff mode request, the accessory shall accept the request and parameters without negotiation.

If the accessory requests sniff mode, the accessory shall set the sniff interval to less than a third of the Bluetooth baseband Link Supervision Timeout (page 226), to make the Bluetooth link less susceptible to interference. To improve link robustness, the accessory should use a shorter sniff interval instead of multiple sniff attempts.

Links with a sniff interval of 1 second or more require a large correlation window, which has to be taken into account when calculating the number of sniff attempts. With sniff intervals shorter than 1 second, multiple sniff attempts can improve link robustness, but will increase power consumption.

51.4 Role and Topology Management

Accessories shall:

- Accept device Role Switch requests.
- Continue with the connection when the device rejects a request for Role Switch.

In a Bluetooth connection, there are two entities:

- The Central entity establishes a common clock and frequency hopping synchronization reference.
- The Peripheral entity synchronizes with the Central entity.

The Central entity can be synchronized with multiple Peripheral entities, thus forming a piconet. The Central entity can also be a Peripheral entity to another Central entity, creating a scatternet.

Accessories simultaneously connecting to multiple iOS devices or Mac computers shall support creating a scatternet.

Scatternets create complications since the device has to alternate between piconets, wasting valuable bandwidth. Efficiently managing network topology is important to maximize performance. The device may request a Role Switch, depending on its current topology, and the accessory shall accept the request. The device may also reject a Role Switch request due to topology concerns, as suboptimal topologies may degrade audio quality and the user experience.

Accessories should avoid requesting to be the Central entity, as in more frequently occurring scenarios the device needs to be the Central entity. Accessories insisting on being the Central entity may negatively impact the overall user experience.

51.5 Extended Inquiry Response

Accessories shall provide the following information in their Extended Inquiry Response packet:

- Local Name of the accessory (Complete or Shortened).
- TX Power Level.

During Bluetooth discovery, devices display accessories Friendly Names when available. Extended Inquiry Response enables accessories to proactively send their Local Name, and other information, as part of an Inquiry Response to increase the speed and efficiency of the discovery process.

Accessory Local Name should match the accessory's labeling and packaging without colons ':' or semi-colons ';'. Accessories may append up to six differentiating characters to their Local Name, such as the last few digits of a serial number or MAC address, if users are likely to encounter multiple accessories at the same time using the same name. If the accessory allows a user to customize the Local Name parameter, the accessory should provide a means to restore the factory default name.

51.6 Secure Simple Pairing

Accessories shall:

- Use Secure Simple Pairing.
- Use the Numerical Comparison method, if it has a display and input device supporting it.

Secure Simple Pairing greatly increases security, and is a mandatory security feature in the *Bluetooth 2.1 Specification*. To protect against a 'man-in-the-middle' attack, the Numerical Comparison association model should be used whenever feasible. See *Bluetooth 2.1+EDR Specification – Volume 1, Section 5.4*.

51.7 Pairing Button

If the accessory has a labeled dedicated pairing control, it should use official Bluetooth branding. See https://www.bluetooth.com/develop-with-bluetooth/marketing-branding/.

51.8 Class of Device (CoD)

iOS devices and Mac computers use the accessory's Class of Device for UI purposes or to configure specific features. Accessories shall accurately set their Class of Device using the Bluetooth SIG defined Major Device Class and Minor Device Class. See *Bluetooth 5.0 Specification–Volume 3, Part C, Section 3.2.4*. For example, an audio/video accessory intended to operate in a vehicle should set Major Device Class to 'audio/video' and Minor Device Class to 'car-audio'.

51.9 Link Supervision Timeout

Link supervision timeout is used to detect link loss between an accessory and a device. An accessory shall set the link supervision timeout to 2 seconds or greater when it is the Central entity, to account for the unpredictable nature of RF signals, as well as the device's need to service other concurrent wireless systems.

51.10 Delay Reporting

As of iOS 8.2, devices support Delay Reporting commands as specified in the Bluetooth *Audio/Video Distribution Transport Protocol – Version 1.3.* Accessories should provide this information to improve audio/video synchronization for video playback. Accessories should not report a delay of more than 1000 ms, and should not update the delay more than 1 time per second.

51.11 Profiles

The Apple Bluetooth profiles knowledge base article https://support.apple.com/kb/ht3647 provides a complete list of the profiles supported by devices. Bluetooth specifications are the starting point for designing accessories compatible with these devices. The following sections provide additional information and requirements for common profiles to help accessory developers achieve superior results.

51.11.1 Device ID Profile (DID)

Accessories shall:

Support Bluetooth Device ID Profile, Version 1.3 or later.

- Use their Company Identifier from the Assigned Numbers specification assigned by the Bluetooth SIG as the Vendor ID value (VID), see https://www.bluetooth.com/specifications/assigned-numbers/.
 Bluetooth HID Profile accessories may use a VID assigned by the USB Implementers Forum (USB-IF), see https://www.usb.org/getting-vendor-id, if the manufacturer does not have a Bluetooth SIG Company Identifier.
- Use its VID value for the end product manufacturer.
- Not use the Company ID assigned to Apple by the Bluetooth SIG, or the Vendor ID assigned to Apple by the USB Implementers Forum.
- Use the Vendor ID Source field to identify which organization assigned the value used in the Vendor ID field. See *Bluetooth Device ID Profile Specification Section 5.6.*
- Use a ProductID value uniquely identifying the product.
- Use a Version value uniquely identifying the software version.

The Device ID record enables devices to identify the implementation of the remote accessory, which is used to bridge alternate interpretations of the Bluetooth specification when communicating with a remote accessory. It is important the information in the Device ID record uniquely identify the implementation in use.

In the case of Bluetooth car kit devices, the same car kit may be present in different car models. Ideally, the two car kits should have different ProductIDs. However, it is acceptable for them to have the same ProductID as long as they have identical hardware, software, and features. If the implementations differ at all, they should have different ProductIDs. The accessory can also use a secondary Device ID record to uniquely identify the product ID, or model number.

51.11.2 Service Discovery Protocol (SDP)

To facilitate caching Service Discovery Protocol service records, accessories shall:

- Support the ServiceDiscoveryServer Service Class.
- Support the ServiceDatabaseState attribute.
 - Attribute's value shall change whenever any SDP service record or attributes within a record are added, removed, or modified.
 - Attribute's value shall not change based on RFCOMM channel protocol parameters. Devices query these values separately at connection time.

51.11.3 Hands-Free Profile (HFP)

Accessories supporting Hands-Free Profile should meet the requirements of the *Bluetooth Hands-Free Profile Specification – Version 1.5 or later.* Additional Apple requirements are specified in this section.

Remote accessories can use the Bluetooth Hands-Free Profile for phone communications. To achieve the best user experience, the remote accessory should support the following features, which are optional in the Bluetooth specification.

51.11.3.1 Remote Audio Volume Control

Accessories supporting HFP should:

- Support Remote Audio Volume Control, so speaker volume on the hands-free accessory can be controlled from the device as described in *Bluetooth Hands-Free Profile Specification – Version 1.5*, Section 4.28.
- Set the Remote volume control bit in the Supported Features bitmap sent with the AT+BRSF= command.

In some situations it is easier for the user to control the output volume through the device, instead of directly on the remote accessory. For example, a car passenger (or if the car is parked, the driver) could use the volume slider on the phone to control audio volume. Volume control synchronization is outlined in *Bluetooth Hands-Free Profile Specification – Version 1.5, Section 4.48.2*.

51.11.3.2 Indicator Event Reporting

Accessories supporting HFP should use Indicator Event Reporting, and not perform repetitive status polling.

iOS devices and Mac computers support all mandatory and optional indicators specified in HFP version 1.5 (service, call, callsetup, callheld, signal, roam, battchg). To minimize unnecessary status polling using the AT+CIND? command, the remote accessory should enable Indicator Event Reporting by sending an AT+CMER command. The device will then send a +CIEV event when there is a status change. The remote accessory should request initial status using the AT+CIND=? and AT+CIND? commands, according to the HFP specification.

51.11.3.3 Voice Recognition Activation

Accessories supporting HFP shall:

- Support Voice Recognition Activation, both AG and HF, initiated as described in *Bluetooth Hands-Free Profile Specification Version 1.5, Section 4.25*.
- Set the Voice Recognition Activation bit in the "SupportedFeatures" bitmap sent with the AT+BRSF= command.

iOS devices and Mac computers support voice recognition initiated by remote (Hands-Free) accessories, and iOS (Audio Gateway) accessories.

51.11.3.4 Echo Cancellation and Noise Reduction

When echo cancellation and noise reduction are performed locally on a hands-free accessory, the accessory should disable echo cancellation and noise reduction on the device by sending an AT+NREC command, as described in *Bluetooth Hands-Free Profile Specification –Version 1.5, Section 4.24*.

iOS devices and Mac computers support echo cancellation and noise reduction by default. If a hands-free accessory performs echo cancellation and noise reduction, the accessory needs to turn these features off on the device (the Audio Gateway), to avoid unnecessary audio quality degradation due to duplicate audio processing.

51.11.3.5 In-Band Ringing

Accessories supporting HFP should also support In-Band Ringing as specified in *Bluetooth Hands-Free Profile Specification – Version 1.5, Section 4.13.1*. If the user sets a ring tone on the device, the same ring tone should sound on the hands-free accessory.

51.11.3.6 Synchronous Connection

Accessories supporting HFP shall:

- Support eSCO parameter set S2 and S3 and accept requests for these settings. See *Bluetooth Hands-Free Profile Specification Version 1.5, Section 5.6*.
- Request eSCO parameter set S2 or S3 when setting up a Synchronous Connection. eSCO parameter set S1 should not be requested.
- Render audio within 40 ms after the SCO/eSCO connection has been set up.

eSCO packet types offer packet retransmission, whereas traditional SCO packets are not retransmitted. This improves audio quality and the user experience. eSCO packet types 2-EV3 and 3-EV3 offer a greater time interval between packets, which can improve Wi-Fi performance and allow time for other concurrent Bluetooth connections to send data.

Apple strongly recommends the use of 2-EV3 and 3-EV3 packets for SCO connections. Using HV3 packets is highly discouraged. HV3 packets require more link time and do not allow audio packet retransmission, which impacts audio performance in the presence of RF interference.

51.11.3.7 Wide Band Speech

Accessories supporting HFP should support Wide Band Speech as described in the *Bluetooth Hands-Free Profile Specification – Version 1.6, Section 5.7.4*. If Wide Band Speech is supported, the accessory should support the T2 link parameter settings.

Devices running iOS 5 or later support Wide Band Speech. If both the device and the accessory support Wide Band Speech, the device will use it for eSCO connection scenarios such as cellular calls, FaceTime, and Siri.

51.11.4 Message Access Profile (MAP)

Accessories supporting Message Access Profile shall:

- Support Message Notification, as described in Bluetooth Message Access Profile Specification
 –Version 1.1, Section 4.1
- Register for notifications immediately after the connection is established, as described in *Message Access Profile Specification Version 1.1, Section 4.5*.

Devices running iOS 13.0 or later support MAP 1.1.

51.11.5 Audio/Video Remote Control Profile (AVRCP)

Accessories supporting Audio/Video Remote Control Profile should meet the requirements of the *Bluetooth Audio/Video Remote Control Profile Specification – Version 1.4*. Additional Apple requirements are specified in this section.

51.11.5.1 Supported Operations

iOS devices and Mac computers support the following operation_IDs in passthrough commands:

- Play
- Stop
- Pause
- Fast Forward
- Rewind
- Forward
- Backward

51.11.5.2 Repeat and Shuffle Modes

Every device in the role of an AVRCP target supports Repeat and Shuffle modes. An AVRCP controller may use SetPlayerApplicationSettingValue to set a value on the device and GetPlayerApplicationSettingValue to read a value, as described in *Bluetooth Audio/Video Remote Control Profile Specification - Version 1.4*, Sections 6.5.4 and 6.4.3.

51.11.5.3 Notifications

Accessories supporting AVRCP shall:

- Register for notifications.
- Not perform repetitive device status polling.

Every device in the role of an AVRCP Target supports registering for notifications, as described in Bluetooth Audio/Video Remote Control Profile Specification – Version 1.4, Section 6.7. The commands RegisterNotification and GetPlayStatus are supported for these notifications:

- EVENT_PLAYBACK_STATUS_CHANGED
- EVENT_TRACK_CHANGED

- EVENT_NOW_PLAYING_CONTENT_CHANGED
- EVENT_AVAILABLE_PLAYERS_CHANGED
- EVENT_ADDRESSED_PLAYER_CHANGED
- EVENT_VOLUME_CHANGED

51.11.5.4 Play/Pause Button

Accessories supporting AVRCP implementing a Play/Pause control surface shall confirm the playback status of the device using AVRCP Notifications (page 230), before sending a Play or Pause command. See Supported Operations (page 230). Specifically:

- If a device notifies the accessory it is paused, pressing the accessory's Play/Pause control surface should send a Play command.
- If a device notifies the accessory it is playing, pressing the accessory's Play/Pause control surface should send a Pause command.
- The accessory should not infer device playback status based on the number of times the Play/Pause control surface has been pressed.

51.11.5.5 Volume Handling

Accessories supporting AVRCP should support Absolute Volume, as described in *Bluetooth Audio/Video Remote Control Profile Specification – Version 1.4, Section 6.13*.

Every device in the role of AVRCP Controller supports volume handling.

51.11.5.6 Browsing

Accessories supporting Browsing (in controller role) as part of AVRCP shall:

- Not try to index or cache the entire library upon connection. The device may contain tens of thousands of media items, and each may be present multiple times in the hierarchy.
- Not fetch all items when browsing a folder; only fetch items displayed to the user. The accessory may prefetch a few items to improve the responsiveness of the user interface.
- Not reorder items (for example, alphabetically).
- Not assume UIDs to be statically defined, especially in the root folder. The ordering and UIDs of folders and items may change at any point in future releases.
- Send the SetBrowsedPlayer command after receiving an EVENT_UIDS_CHANGED notification.
- Not assume the UID passed to the PlayItem command will result in the media player playing the UID.

Currently only the built-in Music app supports browsing. When switching between players, an EVENT_AVAILABLE_PLAYERS_CHANGED notification, and an EVENT_ADDRESSED_PLAYER_CHANGED notification will be generated. The UI needs to look at the feature bit mask of the listed player to determine whether browsing is currently available.

Devices running iOS 6.0 or later support AVRCP Browsing.

51.11.5.7 iOS App-Provided Metadata

An audio app running on a device may use the iOS Media Player Framework to provide metadata about the current audio stream to the accessory using AVRCP. Requirements and usage for these messages may be found in the MPNowPlayingInfoCenter class in Apple Media Player Framework documentation.

51.11.6 Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP)

See Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP) (page 214).

51.12 Audio Routing

Accessories can differentiate between various audio content provided by a device, and determine playback behavior.

An accessory can receive audio data from the device using either of two Bluetooth profiles:

- HFP using eSCO channel.
- A2DP using ACL channel.

The device determines which channel to use, depending on how the audio content is used. An audio path created for two-way communication (for example, phone calls or FaceTime) always uses the HFP (eSCO) route for sending audio data. Music and similar content uses the A2DP channel route. In the absence of a defined route, audio playback defaults to the device.

51.12.1 Audio Data Received using HFP Profile

Most of the audio content sent using HFP (eSCO) route requires two-way communication. Scenarios where HFP (eSCO) is used include, but are not limited to: cellular calls, FaceTime, and voice mail.

The accessory speaker and microphone should be dedicated to the HFP (eSCO) route, and not mixed/muxed with any other audio sources.

51.12.2 Audio Data Received using A2DP Profile

Audio content transferred using A2DP profiles can be broadly classified into two categories:

- Audio content from music, video, or game-like applications.
- System-generated sounds used for alerts and notifications.

51.12.2.1 Differentiating Audio Content from System Sounds

Music-like content can be differentiated from system sounds by adding support for Audio/Video Remote Control Profile (AVRCP) version 1.3 or later. The AVRCP profile allows an accessory to be aware of the audio playback device state, using notifications. See Audio/Video Remote Control Profile (AVRCP) (page 230).

When a device initiates audio playback over an A2DP channel for playing music content, an AVRCP notification EVENT_PLAYBACK_STATUS_CHANGED is sent to indicate playback status has changed to the play state. See *Bluetooth Audio/Video Remote Control Profile Specification—Version 1.4, Section 6.7.2*. This indicates audio data using the A2DP profile contains music. When a device initiates audio playback over an A2DP channel for playing system sounds, no AVRCP notifications are sent.

Figure 51-1 (page 233) and Figure 51-2 (page 234) show the difference between notifications for music playback, and system sounds.

Figure Initiate Audio Playback (for example, music) 51-1

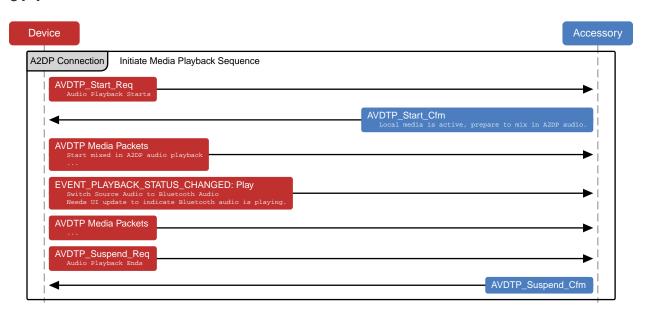
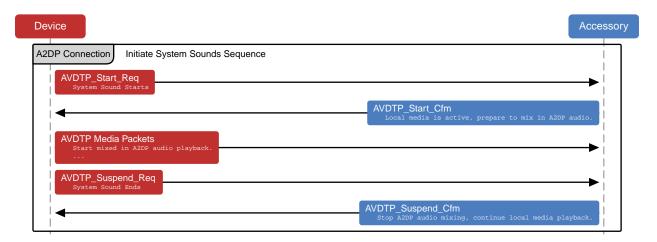


Figure Initiate System Sound (such as turn-by-turn directions) **51-2**



51.12.2.2 Expected Audio Routing Behavior for A2DP

The accessory should tune its audio routing behavior based on audio content over the A2DP channel.

If audio data contains music, accessory speakers are expected to be dedicated to audio data using the Bluetooth link, and any other audio playback is paused. If audio data contains system sounds, it is expected the accessory can render audio as desired. If the accessory is playing audio from a different source, it is not necessary to pause existing audio playback on the device, and system sound data can be mixed with the existing track for playback.

51.13 HID

When implementing HID over Bluetooth, the accessory should:

- Support Bluetooth HID Profile 1.1.
- Support Sniff Mode for Low Power Consumption (page 223).

The accessory should:

- Use the following parameters in SDP for sniff subrating:
 - HIDSSRHostMaxLatency 450 ms (720 slots)
 - HIDSSRHostMinTimeout 45 ms (72 slots)
- Use a typical report packet of 22 bytes or less. This is small enough to fit into a DH1 packet with L2CAP and HID header.

52. Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE)

The *Bluetooth 4.0 Specification* introduces Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE), a wireless technology targeted for accessories with limited battery resources. If Bluetooth Low Energy is supported, the accessory should follow the guidelines in this section.

52.1 Role

The accessory should implement either the Peripheral role or the Broadcaster role as defined in the Bluetooth 4.0 Specification – Volume 3, Part C, Section 2.2.2.3 and Section 2.2.2.1.

52.2 Advertising Channels

The accessory should advertise on all three advertising channels (37, 38, and 39) at each advertising event. See the *Bluetooth 4.0 Specification –Volume 6, Part B, Section 4.4.2.1*.

52.3 Advertising PDU

The accessory should use one of the following advertising PDUs:

- ADV_IND
- ADV_NOCONN_IND
- ADV_SCAN_IND

ADV_DIRECT_IND should not be used. See the *Bluetooth 4.0 Specification – Volume 6, Part B, Section 2.3.1*.

52.4 Advertising Data

The advertising data sent by the accessory should contain at least the following information as described in the *Bluetooth Core Specification Supplement –Part A*:

- Flags
- TX Power Level

- Local Name
- Services

The Local Name should match the accessory's markings and packaging and not contain a colon ':' or semi-colon ';'.

The accessory may put the Local Name and the TX Power Level data in the SCAN_RSP PDU if, for example, it needs to reduce power consumption or not all of the advertising data fit into the advertising PDU. Depending on its state, the device may not always perform active scanning.

The primary services should always be advertised in the advertising PDU. Secondary services should not be advertised. Services not significant to the primary use case of the accessory may be omitted if space is limited in the Advertising PDU.

The advertising data and the scan response data in the SCAN_RSP PDU should comply with the formatting guidelines in the *Bluetooth 4.0 Specification – Volume 3, Part C, Section 18*: it starts with a length field, followed by AD Type and AD Data.

52.5 Advertising Interval

The accessory should first use the recommended advertising interval of 20 ms for at least 30 seconds.

If it is not discovered within the initial 30 seconds, Apple recommends using one of the following longer intervals to increase chances of discovery by the device:

- 152.5 ms
- 211.25 ms
- 318.75 ms
- 417.5 ms
- 546.25 ms
- 760 ms
- 852.5 ms
- 1022.5 ms
- 1285 ms

Note:

Longer advertising intervals usually result in longer discovery and connect times, but may lower accessory power consumption.

52.6 Connection Parameters

If both the Central and Peripheral support the Connection Parameters Request procedure, then either shall use the procedure. The device will not read or use the parameters in the Peripheral Preferred Connection Parameters characteristic. See *Bluetooth 5.3 Specification–Volume 6, Part B, Section 5.1.1 Connection Update*.

Connection parameter requests may be rejected if they do not meet the guidelines in this section.

General connection parameter request guidelines:

- Peripheral Latency ≤ 30 connection intervals.
- Supervision Timeout from 6 seconds to 18 seconds.
- Interval Min ≥ 15 ms.
- Interval Min ≤ 2 seconds.
- Interval Min is a multiple of 15 ms.
- One of the following:
 - Interval Max at least 15 ms greater than Interval Min.
 - Interval Max and Interval Min are both 15 ms.
- Interval Max * (Peripheral Latency + 1) of 6 seconds or less.
- Supervision Timeout greater than Interval Max * (Peripheral Latency + 1) * 3.

If Bluetooth Low Energy HID is one of the connected services of an accessory, a connection interval down to 11.25 ms may be accepted by some devices.

Note:

When Interval Max and Interval Min are both 15 ms, some devices (such as Apple Watch) will offer a 30 ms interval to better balance power and performance constraints.

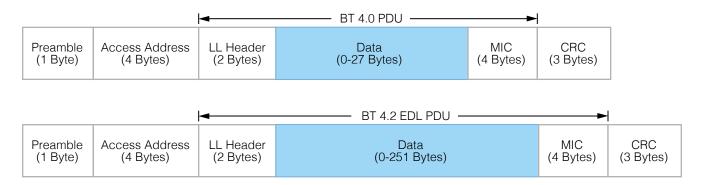
Apple Watch connection parameter request guidelines:

- Interval Min ≥ 30 ms.
- Interval Min is a multiple of 30 ms.
- One of the following:
 - Interval Max at least 30 ms greater than Interval Min.
 - Interval Max and Interval Min are both 30 ms.

52.7 Data Packet Length Extension

Data Packet Length Extension increases the maximum data length from 27 to 251. Using larger per-packet data lengths improves radio efficiency, greatly increasing application data rates and boosting battery life. See *Bluetooth 5.0 Specification – Volume 6, Part B, Section 4.6.6*.

Figure Data Packet Length Extension 52-1



Accessories should support Data Packet Length Extension for best performance with devices.

iOS devices and Mac computers operating as the Central will negotiate optimal data packet lengths based on various factors, such as connection event length, system topology, and protocol.

52.8 Privacy

The accessory should be able to resolve a Resolvable Private Address in all situations. Due to privacy concerns, the device will use a Random Device Address as defined in the *Bluetooth 4.0 Specification –Volume 3, Part C, Section 10.8*.

52.9 Permissions

The accessory should not require special permissions, such as pairing, authentication, or encryption to discover services and characteristics. It may require special permissions only for access to a characteristic value or a descriptor value. See the *Bluetooth 4.0 Specification – Volume 3, Part G, Section 8.1*, fifth paragraph.

52.10 Pairing

The accessory should not request pairing until an ATT request is rejected using the Insufficient Authentication error code. See *Bluetooth 4.0 Specification – Volume 3, Part F, Section 4*.

If, for security reasons, the accessory requires a bonded relationship with the Central, the Peripheral should reject the ATT request using the Insufficient Authentication error code, as appropriate. As a result, the device may proceed with the necessary security procedures.

Similarly, if the device acts as a Central and a GATT server, it may reject an ATT request using the Insufficient Authentication error code. The accessory should initiate the security procedure for pairing in response.

Pairing may require user authorization depending on device. Once an accessory is paired with a device, the accessory shall retain the distributed keys of both central and peripheral for future use. If the pairing is no longer required, the accessory shall delete both sets of keys.

52.11 MTU Size

An accessory supporting packet length extension shall perform the packet length update procedure before performing the Exchange MTU Request handshake, see Data Packet Length Extension (page 237).

Devices will support and request an MTU size larger than the default during the Exchange MTU Request handshake. See the *Bluetooth 4.0 Specification – Volume 3, Part F, Section 3.2.8*.

When operating as ATT client, the device will request the optimal MTU size based on factors such as the Bluetooth topology, connection event length, maximum data length, and protocol (GATT or connection-oriented L2CAP).

An accessory operating as ATT server should select an MTU equal to or greater than the device's MTU request.

52.12 Services

52.12.1 Generic Access Profile Service

The accessory should implement the Device Name characteristic per the *Bluetooth 4.0 Specification –Volume 3, Part C, Section 12.1.* The Device Name characteristic should be writeable.

52.12.2 Generic Attribute Profile Service

The accessory shall implement the Service Changed characteristic only if the accessory has the ability to change its services during its lifetime.

The device may use the Service Changed characteristic to determine if it can rely on previously read (cached) information from the device. See the *Bluetooth 4.0 Specification – Volume 3, Part G, Section 7.1*.

52.12.3 Device Information Service

The accessory shall implement the Device Information Service. The service UUID for this service should not be advertised in the Advertising Data. The following characteristics should be supported:

- Manufacturer Name String (26 characters maximum).
- Model Number String (26 characters maximum).
- Firmware Revision String
- Software Revision String

52.12.4 Available Services

With iOS 7.0, any device makes Battery Service, Current Time Service and Apple Notification Center Service (ANCS) available to an accessory. The Current Time Service supports the current time and local time information characteristics. The service does not provide an "Adjust Reason" when the current time changes. ANCS uses 7905F431–B5CE–4E99–A40F–4B1E122D00D0 as its UUID.

These services are not guaranteed to be available immediately after connection and the accessory shall support Characteristic Value Indication of the Service Changed characteristic (see *Bluetooth 4.0 Specification – Volume 3, Part G, Section 7.1*) to be notified when the services become available. The device will maintain a connection to an accessory as long as it is paired and uses one of the available services.

52.13 GATT Server

With iOS 6.0, applications may contribute services and characteristics to the GATT server the device makes available to the accessory. The recommendations in this section apply to the accessory in this case.

The following services are implemented internally by iOS and shall not be published by third-party iOS applications:

- Generic Attribute Profile Service
- Generic Access Profile Service
- Bluetooth Low Energy HID Service
- Battery Service
- Current Time Service
- Apple Notification Center Service

The device implements the GAP Service Changed characteristic, because the database contents can change at any time. The accessory should therefore support the Characteristic Value Indication of this characteristic and, upon receiving indications, invalidate its database cache accordingly. See the Bluetooth 4.0 Specification – Volume 3, Part G, Section 7.1.

The accessory should minimize the use of ATT/GATT requests and commands and only send what is necessary. For example, do not use GATT Discover All Services when the accessory is looking for specific services. Use Discover Primary Service By Service UUID instead. Less airtime equals less power consumption and better performance for both the accessory and the device.

When third-party iOS applications discover services on the accessory, the following services are used internally by iOS and are filtered out from the list of discovered services:

- Generic Attribute Profile Service
- Generic Access Profile Service
- Bluetooth Low Energy HID Service
- Apple Notification Center Service

The accessory should be robust enough to handle any error gracefully. Pairing and Characteristic Value reads/writes may fail if the application owning the service is not in the foreground and is not entitled to run in the background.

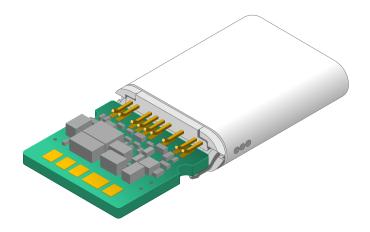
If an ATT Prepare Write Request is used, all queued attributes are contained within the same GATT Service.

Modules

53. Apple USB-C Analog Headset Module

The Apple USB-C Analog Headset Module (C125) may be used to create USB-IF compliant Headsets (page 87) supporting up to 24-bit/384 kHz stereo and up to 24-bit/48 kHz mono (microphone) audio. C125 supports Apple Music Lossless and Hi-Res Lossless.

Figure USB-C Analog Headset Module (C125) **53-1**



53.1 Overview

C125 is a USB-IF compliant USB Audio Device Class 2.0 and 3.0 codec with an integrated USB-IF certified USB-C plug (Test ID: 11559).

C125 supports:

- 16-bit and 24-bit samples.
- 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz stereo headphone-level output.
- Optional:
 - 176.4 kHz, 192 kHz, 384 kHz stereo headphone-level output.
 - 7-band output EQ.
- 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz mono microphone input.
- Optional:
 - 7-band microphone input EQ.
 - 3-band sidetone EQ.

• Volume Up, Volume Down, and Center buttons.

C125 does not support USB-C to 3.5 mm headset jack adapters.

53.1.1 Additional Specifications & Support

Additional software and support for C125 is available from Cirrus Logic, Inc.

Get started at https://www.cirrus.com/support/c125/.

53.1.2 Procurement

The C125 is available at https://c125.proscalnext.com/:

Variant	Part Number
C125	AB23169-1A033-AH

53.2 Mechanical

C125 has the following mechanical characteristics:

- Integrated USB-C connector.
- Not encapsulated.
- -20 °C to 65 °C working temperature range.

See C125 Dimensions (page 248) for dimensional drawing.

C125 headsets shall:

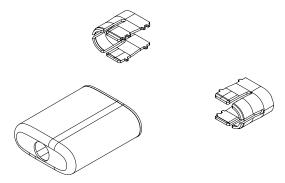
- Meet the requirements for USB-C connector integration, see Mechanical (page 271).
- Encapsulate both sides of C125.

53.2.1 Shielding

C125 headsets shall:

- Protect the C125 electronic components with a SUS shield.
- Laser weld the SUS shield to the C125 ground ring.

Figure C125 recommended three-part shield design **53-2**



Apple recommends the following three-part shield design as shown in Figure 53-2 (page 245) for C125:

- C125 Recommended Clamshell Shields (page 249)
- C125 Recommended Rear Shield (page 250)

53.3 Pad Assignments

Figure 53-3 (page 245) and Table 53-1 (page 246) detail the layout, names, description, and assignments of the C125 pads.

Figure C125 pads 53-3

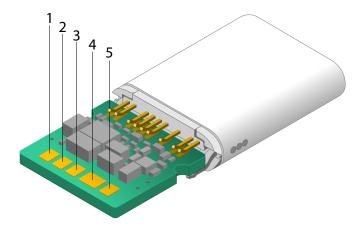


Table C125 pad assignments

53-1

Pad	Name	Assignments
1	Left Driver	Left Driver
2	Microphone Bias	Microphone Bias
3	Reserved	NC
4	Ground	Right Return, Left Return, Microphone Return
5	Right Driver	Right Driver

53.4 Electrical

C125 headsets shall incorporate the Headset Remote and Microphone Transmitter (page 252) using Tone Mode (page 262).

The C125 shield may be treated as an electrical ground.

53.4.1 DAC Characteristics

The C125 DAC receives lossless 24-bit stereo audio from the device.

Table C125 DAC characteristics, 24-bit/96 kHz mode **53-2**

Driver	Parameter	Typical
	Dynamic range (A-weighted)	117 dB
	THD+N (FS = 48 kHz, BW = 20 kHz)	-91 dB
32 Ω, 1 nF	Full-scale output voltage	$2.4 \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{PP}}$
	Output power	22.6 mW
	Dynamic range (A-weighted)	112 dB
	THD+N (FS = 48 kHz, BW = 20 kHz)	-83 dB
16 Ω, 1 nF	Full-scale output voltage	1.3 V _{PP}
	Output power	14.2 mW

Table C125 DAC characteristics, 24-bit/384 kHz mode **53-3**

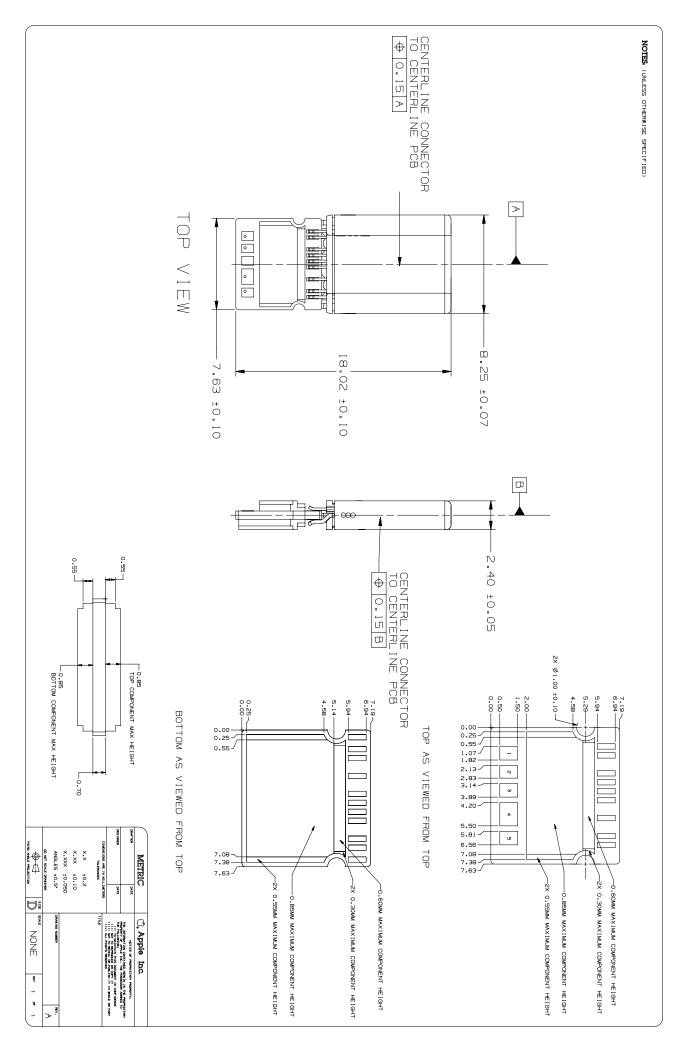
Driver	Parameter	Typical
32 Ω, 500 pF	Dynamic range (A-weighted)	117 dB

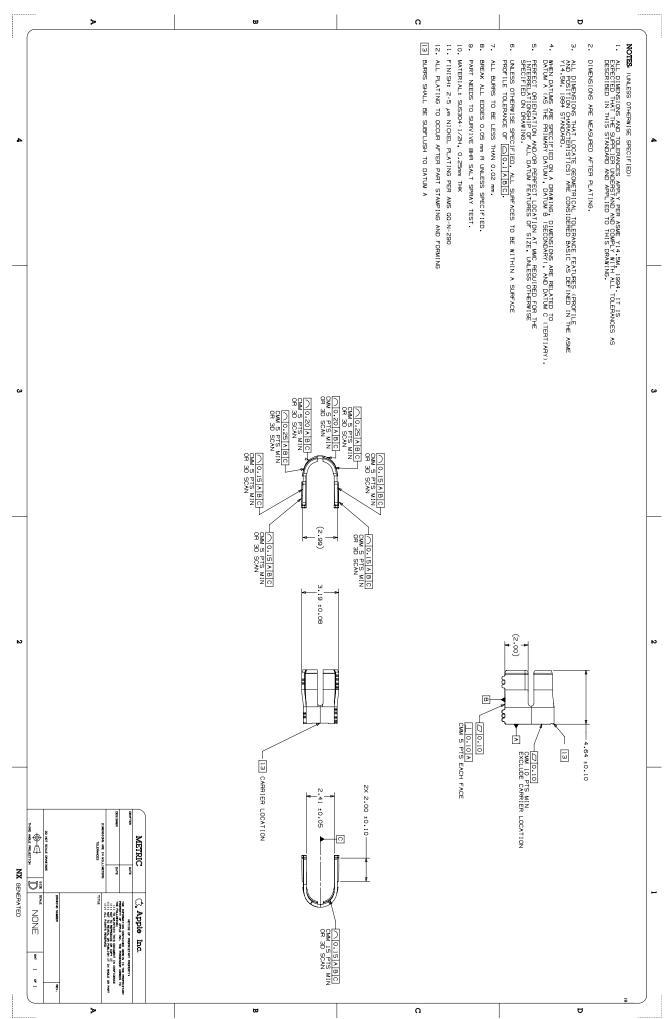
	Driver	Parameter	Typical
		THD+N (FS = 48 kHz, BW = 20 kHz)	-91 dB
		THD+N (FS = 192 kHz, BW = 80 kHz)	-90 dB
		Full-scale output voltage	$2.4~\mathrm{V}_\mathrm{pp}$
		Output power	22.6 mW
	16 Ω, 500 pF	Dynamic range (A-weighted)	112 dB
		THD+N (FS = 48 kHz, BW = 20 kHz)	-84 dB
		THD+N (FS = 192 kHz, BW = 80 kHz)	-83 dB
		Full-scale output voltage	1.3 V _{PP}
		Output power	14.2 mW

The characteristics in Table 53-2 (page 246) and Table 53-3 (page 246) were measured under the following conditions:

- Left Driver, Right Driver, and Ground pads on C125 connected to a load and an audio analyzer, such as the Audio Precision APx series.
- Microphone Bias pad connected to the Ground pad.
- Full-scale 1 kHz sine wave input test signal.

53.5 C125 Dimensions





Components

54. Headset Remote and Microphone Transmitter

Devices can receive button press information from Headsets (page 87) incorporating a Headset Remote and Microphone Transmitter using the Apple USB-C Analog Headset Module (page 243).

54.1 Overview

A Headset Remote and Microphone Transmitter is a component transmitting Volume Up, Volume Down, and Center button controls over the microphone bias to a C125. This chapter defines how the component shall behave.

Subjective listening tests with the latest devices are recommended to determine which part produces the best user experience.

54.2 Requirements

Accessories implementing the Headset Remote and Microphone Transmitter shall comply with the following requirements:

- Headsets shall integrate a MEMS analog microphone.
- The remote microphone shall be located 120-160 mm from the center of a headset driver when worn by the user.
- There shall be six wires originating from the plug attaching the device to the headset, carrying the corresponding signals:
 - Right Driver
 - Right Return
 - Left Driver
 - Left Return
 - Microphone Bias
 - Microphone Return
- Signals shall run independently to their respective components.
- There shall be three physical remote buttons for Volume Up, Volume Down, and Center button functions.

Headset drivers shall have:

• A minimum load impedance of 16 Ω .

• A maximum load capacitance of 150 pF.

Headsets shall implement one of the following configurations. The microphone and remote buttons may be located on either the left or right side of the headset.

Figure USB-C Analog Headset Module (C125) example A **54-1**

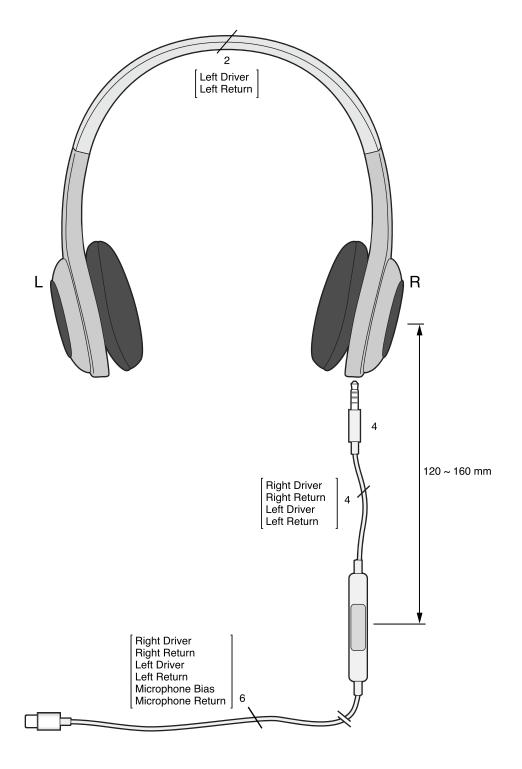


Figure USB-C Analog Headset Module (C125) example B **54-2**

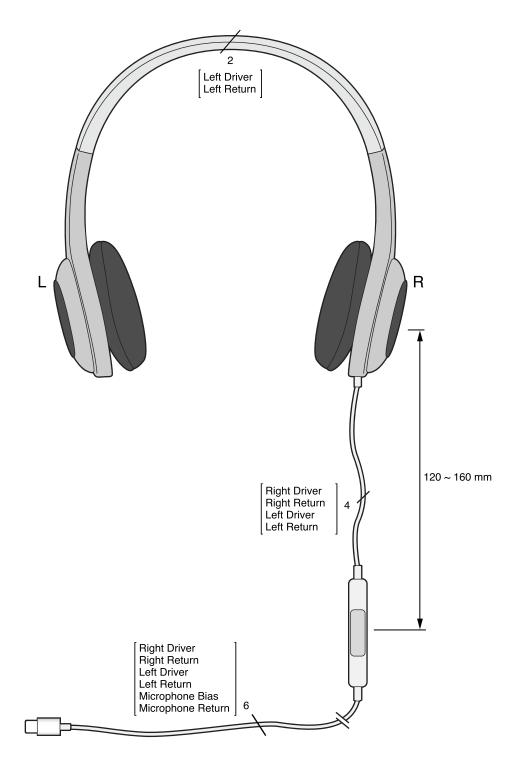


Figure USB-C Analog Headset Module (C125) example C **54-3**

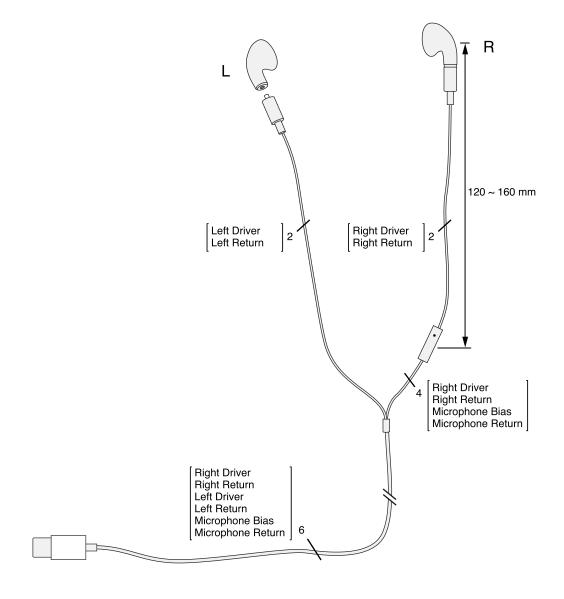
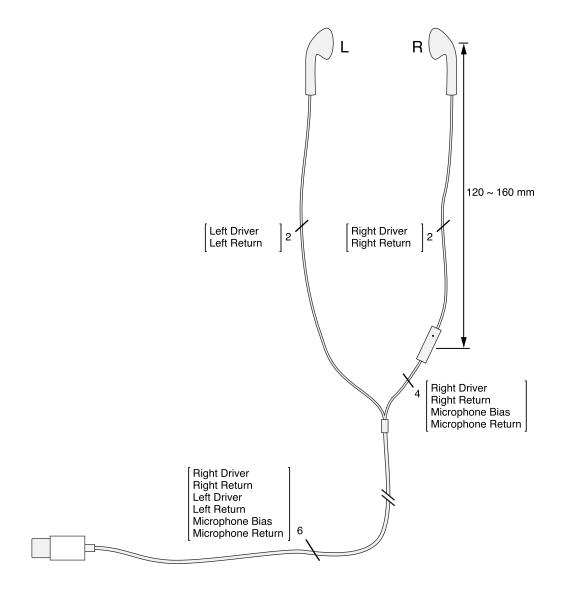


Figure USB-C Analog Headset Module (C125) example D **54-4**



54.3 Usage

The transmitter operates with a receiver in C125 to enable remote button press detection using the microphone bias line. The C125 provides regulated downstream power (nominally 2.7 V or 2.0 V) to the transmitter and MEMS microphone through the microphone bias line, and the C125 decodes the button information from the transmitter.

The transmitter sends button press state over the microphone bias line in either:

- Button mode.
- Tone mode.

If the voltage on the microphone bias line is less than 2.35 V, the microphone is not in use. The transmitter enters button mode and sends button-press information as discrete voltage levels.

If the voltage on the microphone bias line greater than 2.35 V, the microphone is in use. The transmitter enters tone mode and sends button-press information as ultrasonic tone sequences in the range of 99 kHz to 300 kHz.

54.3.1 Pin Assignments

Table Headset Remote and Microphone Transmitter pin assignments **54-1**

Name	1/0	Description
TONE	Output	Tone generator output
GND	Power	Audio return
MIC	Input	Microphone bias
REM	Input/output	Remote switch network
VSHUNT	Input	Shunt regulator supply
MICPWR	Output	Microphone power

54.3.2 Maximum Voltage and Current Ratings

Table 54-2 (page 258) lists the transmitter's maximum voltage and current ratings while operating over a free-air temperature range (T_{Δ}) of -40 °C to +85 °C.

Voltages are measured with respect to ground. Input and output clamp-current ratings shall be observed.

Table Maximum voltage and current ratings54-2

Symbol	Description	Minimum	Maximum
V _{SUPPLY}	Supply voltage, VSHUNT, MIC	-0.5 V	4.6 V
V _I	Input voltage, REM	-0.5 V	4.6 V
V _O	Output voltage, MICPWR, TONE	-0.5 V	4.6 V
I _{IK}	Input clamp current, REM (V _I < 0)	-20 mA	
I _{OK}	Output clamp current, MICPWR, TONE $(V_O < 0)$	-20 mA	
I _{SUPPLY} , I _{GND}	Continuous current through VSHUNT, MIC, or GND	-50 mA	50 mA

54.3.3 Electrical Characteristics

Table 54-3 (page 259), Table 54-4 (page 260), and Table 54-5 (page 260) list the transmitter's electrical and timing characteristics under the following conditions:

- Operating temperature = -40 °C to +85 °C.
- MIC is connected to V_{MICBIAS} through a 2.21 k Ω ±1% resistor.
- Button mode, $V_{MICBIAS} = 1.8 \text{ to } 2.1 \text{ V}.$
- Tone mode, $V_{MICBIAS} = 2.56 \text{ to } 2.84 \text{ V}.$

The values in the Typical column of the tables are measured at 25 $^{\circ}$ C.

Table Electrical characteristics (general) **54-3**

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions	Minimum	Typical	Maximum
I _{MICBIAS-B}	Quiescent current into MIC+VSHUNT	Button mode, V _{MICBIAS} = 2.1 V		3 μΑ	6 μΑ
I _{MICBIAS-B}	Quiescent current into MIC+VSHUNT	Button mode, V _{MICBIAS} = 1.5 V		3 μΑ	6 μΑ
I _{MIC-T}	Quiescent current into MIC	Tone mode		34 μΑ	46 μΑ
I _{VSHUNT-T}	Quiescent current into VSHUNT	Tone mode (see note below)		60 μΑ	70 μΑ
I _{MIC-TA}	Active current into MIC	Tone mode		35 μΑ	45 μΑ
I _{VSHUNT-TA}	Active current into VSHUNT	(see note below)		104 μΑ	118 μΑ
V_{TR}	Tone mode threshold voltage	MIC rising (Microphone enable), V _{MICPWR} = 1.0 V	2.20 V	2.35 V	2.50 V
V _{TF}	Tone mode threshold voltage	MIC falling (Microphone disable), V _{MICPWR} = 400 mV	0.55 V	0.8 V	1 V
V _{MICPWR}	MICPWR output voltage	I _{MICPWR} = 120 - 150 μA	1.51 V	1.56 V	1.61 V
R _{SO}	Shunt regulator output impedance	Freq = 100 Hz	5 Ω	18 Ω	25 Ω
R _{SO}	Shunt regulator output impedance	Freq = 20 Hz	12 Ω	21 Ω	35 Ω
R _{ONA}	Switch A, R _{DSON}	Tone mode, $I_{MICPWR} = 1 \text{ mA}$, $V_{MICBIAS} = 2.56 \text{ V}$		40 Ω	55 Ω
R _{ONB}	Switch B, R _{DSON}	V _{MIC} = 1.2 V, I _{REM} = 1 mA		22 Ω	30.5 Ω

Note:

This current is pulled through R_{VSHUNT} between MIC and VSHUNT and is the minimum current to keep VSHUNT regulated at 1.56 V. Excess current through R_{VSHUNT} is available to the load at MICPWR. Excess current not used by the load at MICPWR is internally shunted to GND.

Table Electrical characteristics (tone mode) **54-4**

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions	Minimum	Typical	Maximum
e _{n-mic100}	MIC integrated noise	100 Hz to 20 kHz		1.5 μVrms	2 μVrms
f _{TONE1}	Button 1 frequency	$R_{REM} = 6.81 k\Omega$	109 kHz	130 kHz	159 kHz
f _{TONE2}	Button 2 frequency	$R_{REM} = 9.42 \text{ k}\Omega$	138 kHz	165 kHz	200 kHz
f _{REL}	Button released frequency		81 kHz	97 kHz	117 kHz
R _{BT1}	Button 1 boundary		6.61 kΩ	6.81 kΩ	7.01 kΩ
R _{BT2}	Button 2 boundary		9.33 kΩ	9.42 kΩ	9.51 kΩ
V _{TA}	Tone amplitude	$R_{TONE} = 1 M\Omega$	350 mV	550 mV	720 mV
V _{TA}	Tone amplitude	$R_{TONE} = 100 \text{ k}\Omega$	300 mV	515 mV	710 mV

Table Electrical characteristics (button mode) **54-5**

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions	Minimum	Typical	Maximum
t _{ONA}	Switch A enable time		0.8 ms	1.2 ms	2 ms
t _{OFFB}	Switch B disable time		0.7 ms	1 ms	2 ms
t _{REG}	Shunt regulator enable time	Time from MIC = 2.3 V to MICPWR = 1.56 V	1 ms	2.5 ms	3.5 ms

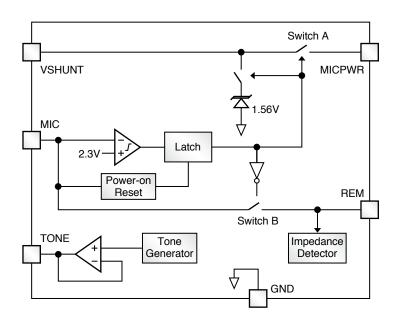
54.3.4 Theory of Operation

The transmitter provides:

- An interface to a button switch-resistor network.
- Power for a colocated microphone.
- A tone generator for sending discrete frequency tones on the microphone bias line corresponding to button events.

The receiver provides regulated downstream power (nominally 2.7 or 2.0 V) to the transmitter and microphone through the microphone bias line. Figure 54-5 (page 261) illustrates the functional components of the transmitter. In this diagram, a latch drives the configuration of switches A and B. The power-on reset monitors voltage on the MIC pin to ensure there is a enough power before initiating the turn-on sequence; it shuts the transmitter down if there is insufficient voltage.

Figure Block diagram **54-5**



Button events are sent from the transmitter to the receiver in one of two modes, button mode or tone mode. When a microphone is not present or is not in use, the transmitter is put in button mode by the receiver, and button events are detected using discrete voltage levels. These discrete voltage levels are a percentage of a regulated output voltage on the microphone bias line. When a microphone is in use, the receiver puts the transmitter into tone mode by placing more than 2.35 V on the microphone bias line, and the transmitter then sends button events using tone sequences of discrete frequencies in the range 99 kHz to 300 kHz.

54.3.5 Button Mode

In button mode, the transmitter operates as a passthrough element switching a button switch-resistor network onto the bias line. Each switch represents a unique button. When a button is pressed, the DC level on the bias line is changed and detected by the receiver. Table 54-6 (page 262) shows the DETECT pin voltages with $V_{\text{MICRIAS}} = 2.0 \text{ V}$.

Table DETECT pin voltages **54-6**

Switch Closed	Voltage
S0	0.000 V ±1%
S1	1.510 V ±1%
S2	1.603 V ±1%

When the transmitter is in button mode (V_{MIC} has never reached 2.35 V), it shorts the MIC and REM pins together and disables all other inputs and outputs. When a button event occurs, the DC voltage on the microphone bias line changes. Table 54-6 (page 262) shows the DC voltage corresponding to a given button press when using the R1 and R4 resistor values listed in Table 54-7 (page 267). This DC level is then detected by the receiver. Switch S0 is a unique switch shorting the V_{MIC} line to ground.

When the V_{MIC} line is shorted to ground, power is removed from the transmitter. When power recovers, the transmitter enters button mode or tone mode, depending on the voltage detected at the MIC pin.

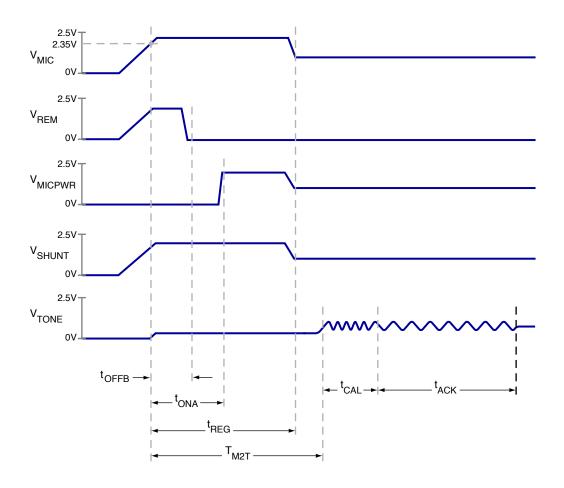
54.3.6 Tone Mode

When the transmitter detects a voltage greater than 2.35 V at the MIC pin, it enters tone mode. With a microphone biased and in use, the switch-resistor network used for button mode would cause large DC level shifts in the bias voltage. Such shifts would result in unwanted audible clicks or pops or would cause de-biasing of the microphone. To prevent this problem, when the transmitter enters tone mode it disconnects the switch-resistor network from the microphone bias line, enables the microphone using the FET switch, and engages the tone generation circuit shown in Figure 54-5 (page 261).

In tone mode the transmitter has two functions. First, it turns on the MEMS microphone by forcing a FET switch to ground. Second, it detects button events and places a discrete tone sequence onto the microphone bias line. The tone frequencies in each sequence are unique to each button press. The receiver detects the tones on the bias line and determines the corresponding button event.

The transmitter's startup timing when it enters tone mode is shown in Figure 54-6 (page 263). Values for the timing parameters are given in Table 54-4 (page 260).

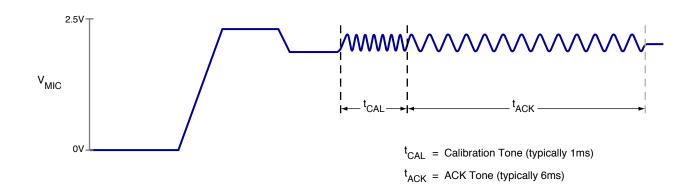
Figure Startup timing **54-6**



The tone mode startup sequence is as follows:

- 1. Upon detecting $V_{MIC} > 2.35 \text{ V}$, the switch connecting the MIC and REM pins together is opened after time t_{OFFR} , see Figure 54-6 (page 263) and Table 54-4 (page 260).
- 2. After a delay of t_{REG} after $V_{MIC} > 2.35$ V, the SHUNT pin and the MICPWR pins are shorted. The microphone is enabled by turning on the FET switch through the MICPWR pin.
- 3. Once the noise prevention process has settled, the transmitter sends a preset acknowledge (ACK) tone sequence.
- **4.** The receiver detects the ACK sequence, see Figure 54-7 (page 264), and authenticates the presence of the transmitter.

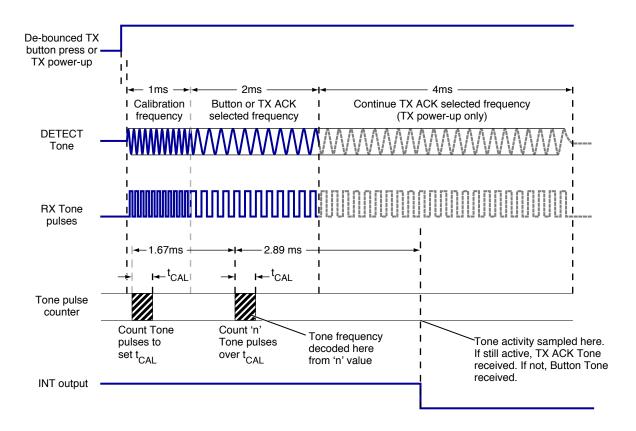
Figure Tone mode ACK sequence **54-7**



The tone generation circuit of the transmitter internally detects each button press and sends a high frequency tone sequence between 99 kHz and 300 kHz. The high frequency tone sequence is unique to each button. The receiver detects the frequency of each tone and translates it into a predetermined button event. A button release has a different frequency than a button press.

The transmitter sends two tones for each button press as shown in Figure 54-8 (page 265) to improve accuracy. The first tone, lasting 1 ms, is a calibration frequency and the second, lasting 2 ms, is the unique frequency for the selected button. The ratio of these two frequencies is calculated and translated into button press information. This provides a very accurate result independent of clock frequency variation.

Figure Tone transmit/decode method **54-8**



The transmitter remains in tone mode until the MIC pin is pulled below 0.8 V. When power recovers, the transmitter enters button mode or tone mode depending on the voltage detected at the MIC pin.

54.4 Button Detection Circuitry Usage

The circuits in the accessory supporting these components shall be those shown in Figure 54-9 (page 266) and Figure 54-10 (page 267). The nominal values of the components shown in these schematics are given in Table 54-7 (page 267).

These circuits are designed to produce a tone amplitude between the microphone bias line and the microphone return, at the end of a cable 1 meter long, of at least 30 mV peak-to-peak into a 2 k Ω load. If necessary, the value of R3 shall be adjusted to achieve this result. Figure 54-10 (page 267) shows how a voltage on the Microphone Power line from the transmitter enables the MEMS microphone chip through Q1. It also shows components R7, C4, and R8, which control the microphone frequency response. The equation determines the values of these components is given in Button Detection Circuitry Adjustments (page 268).

Figure 54-9 (page 266) and Figure 54-10 (page 267) are two parts of one circuit:

- The two microphone return lines shown in these sub-circuits shall be connected at the component locations.
- Their common return line and the return lines for each of the two drivers shall then be routed separately through the cable going to the device. The return lines shall be tied together only at the headset connector.

The above configuration minimizes crosstalk between the separate driver channels and the microphone.

Figure Transmitter circuit **54-9**

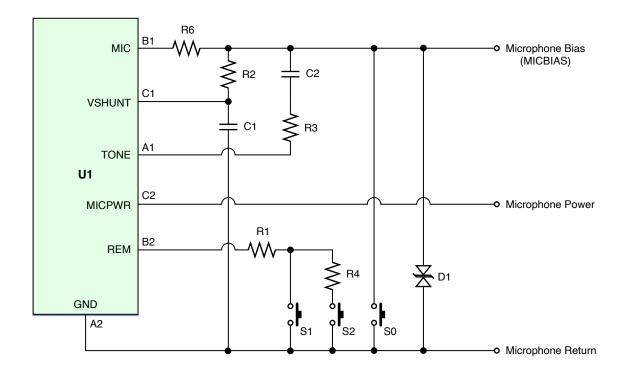


Figure Microphone circuit **54-10**

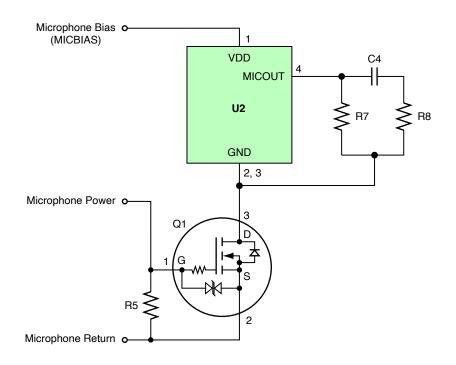


Table Transmitter circuit components **54-7**

Symbol	Description	Notes
C1	Capacitor, 0.1 μF ±10%, 6.3 V	
C2	Capacitor, 220 pF ±5%, 25 V	Ceramic
C4	Capacitor, 2.2 μF ±10%, 6.3 V	
D1	ESD protection diode, 5 pF, 6.1 V	ST Micro ESDALC6V1-1BU2; install as close to transmitter pin B1 as possible.
Q1	MOS field-effect transistor	CEDM 7001
R1	Resistor, 6.81 k Ω ±0.5%, 1/20 W	
R2	Resistor, 2 kΩ ±1%, 1/20 W	
R3	Resistor, 1.2 k Ω ±0.5%, 1/20 W	
R4	Resistor, 2.61 k Ω ±0.5%, 1/20 W	
R5	Resistor, 887 k Ω ±1%, 1/20 W	
R6	Resistor, 49.9 Ω +0.2%/-1%, 1/20 W	Shall not exceed 50 Ω .
R7	Resistor, 17.4 k Ω ±1%, 1/20 W	
R8	Resistor, value depends on U2.	See Additional Specifications & Support (page 244).
S0	Dome switch	Center button; shall not exceed 20 Ω when closed.
S1	Dome switch	Volume down; shall not exceed 20 Ω when closed.

Symbol	Description	Notes
S2	Dome switch	Volume up; shall not exceed 20 Ω when closed.
U1	Headset interface transmitter	Headset Remote and Microphone Transmitter
U2	MEMS analog microphone	See Additional Specifications & Support (page 244).

54.4.1 Button Detection Circuitry Adjustments

The values of some of the components listed in Table 54-7 (page 267) may be adjusted to optimize the performance of the headset accessory, using these formulas:

- **High-pass filter corner frequency in Hertz** $\approx 1/(2\pi \cdot R_8 \cdot C_4)$, where R_8 is the value of resistor R8 in ohms and C_4 is the value of capacitor C4 in Farads. This formula assumes the value of R7 is greater than the value of R8.
- System sensitivity at 1 Pascal in Volts = $(M_0/R_8) \cdot R_2$, where M_0 is the microphone sensitivity in Volts per Pascal, R_8 is the value of resistor R8 in ohms, and R_2 is the value of resistor R2 in ohms in parallel with 1.05 k Ω .
- Maximum excursion of the microphone in Volts = $(1/R_7) \cdot R_2$, where R_7 is the value of resistor R7 in ohms, and R_2 is the value of resistor R2 in ohms in parallel with 1.05 k Ω .

Note:

If the microphone bias voltage drops below 1.6 V, the transmitter will begin to fail and the microphone chip may produce indeterminate outputs.

Connectors

55. USB-A Receptacle

Accessories may incorporate a USB-A receptacle to:

• Provide power to a device.

55.1 Mechanical

The USB-A receptacle shall meet or exceed all applicable USB-IF mechanical specifications.

55.2 Electrical

The USB-A receptacle shall meet or exceed all applicable USB-IF electrical specifications.

56. USB-C Plug

Accessories incorporating a USB-C plug shall comply with the *USB Type-C Cable and Connector Specification – Release 2.3*.

Accessories may incorporate a USB-C plug to:

- Provide power to device.
- Draw power from USB Type-C Current sources.
- Draw power from USB Power Delivery sources.
- Draw power from USB Dedicated Charging Ports and USB hosts.

Accessories benefiting from integrating a USB-C plug include cables, headsets, battery packs, and adapters.

56.1 Overview

The USB-C plug shall have an assigned *Connector* Test ID from the USB-IF, see https://www.usb.org/products.

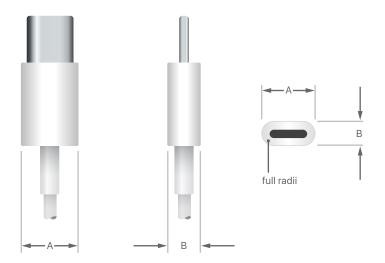
56.2 Mechanical

Accessories incorporating a USB-C plug shall comply with USB-C plug interface dimensions as specified in *USB Type-C Cable and Connector Specification—Release 2.3.*

USB-C plug enclosures shall not exceed the following dimensions as shown in Figure 56-1 (page 272):

- $'A' \le 12.35 \text{ mm}$.
- $'B' \le 6.50 \text{ mm}$.

Figure USB-C plug example **56-1**



USB-C plug enclosures should have full radii rounded edges for the greatest compatibility with the widest variety of cases, see USB-C receptacle accessory keep-out (page 277).

56.3 Electrical

56.3.1 Drawing Power

Accessories drawing power from the USB-C plug shall:

- Correctly identify all USB Type-C Current (page 213) sources.
- Correctly identify all USB Dedicated Charging Ports (DCP) as defined in the USB Battery Charging Specification – Release 1.2.
- Enumerate as a USB device when connected to a USB host and:
 - Not draw more than 100 mA of current until they have been successfully enumerated.
 - Request no more than 500 mA of charging current in their USB device descriptor.
- Not draw more power than the USB power source claims it is capable of providing using one of the above methods.

Accessories may also correctly identify all USB Power Delivery (PD) (page 212) sources.

Accessories drawing power from a device may do so using one of the following protocols:

- USB Type-C Current (page 213)
- USB Power Delivery (PD) (page 212)

56.3.2 Providing Power

Accessories providing power to a device using a USB-C plug shall:

- Provide at least 15 W (3 A at 5.0 V) of power.
- Support USB Type-C Current (page 213).

The accessories should:

- Support USB Power Delivery (PD) (page 212).
- Label the receptacle indicating how much power is supplied in watts.

56.4 Test Procedures

USB-C plug test procedures are outlined in this section.

56.4.1 Mechanical

Verify the dimensions of the USB-C plug comply with interface dimensions.

56.4.2 Connector Test ID

Verify the accessory's USB-C plug has an assigned *Connector* Test ID from the USB-IF, see https://www.usb.org/products.

56.4.3 Drawing Power

This procedure applies to accessories drawing power using the USB-C plug.

The following equipment is necessary:

- Apple 140W USB-C Power Adapter
- Apple 96W USB-C Power Adapter
- Apple 70W USB-C Power Adapter
- Apple 67W USB-C Power Adapter
- Apple 30W USB-C Power Adapter
- Apple 20W USB-C Power Adapter
- Apple 35W Dual USB-C Port Compact Power Adapter
- Apple 35W Dual USB-C Port Power Adapter
- Bundled USB-C power adapter (if applicable)

The following test cases apply to power source identification:

- 1. Verify the accessory correctly identifies all Apple branded or bundled power sources:
 - a. Verify each USB-C power adapter is correctly identified and provides power.

- 2. Verify the accessory correctly identifies a Mac and iPad:
 - a. Verify the Mac is correctly identified and provides power.
 - **b.** Verify the iPad is correctly identified and provides power.

57. USB-C Receptacle

Accessories incorporating a USB-C receptacle shall comply with the *USB Type-C Cable and Connector Specification – Release 2.3*.

Accessories may incorporate a USB-C receptacle to:

- Provide power to device.
- Draw power from Apple branded power sources.
- Draw power from USB Type-C Current sources.
- Draw power from USB Power Delivery sources.
- Draw power from USB Dedicated Charging Ports and USB hosts.

Accessories benefiting from incorporating a USB-C receptacle include AC Power Adapters (page 83), Battery Packs (page 86), and speakers.

57.1 Overview

The USB-C receptacle shall be USB-IF certified and have a *Connector* Test ID from the USB-IF, see https://www.usb.org/products.

57.2 Mechanical

Accessories incorporating a USB-C receptacle shall comply with USB-C receptacle interface dimensions as specified in *USB Type-C Cable and Connector Specification – Release 2.3.*

See the recommended minimum USB-C receptacle accessory keep-out (page 277).

57.3 Electrical

57.3.1 Drawing Power

Accessories drawing power from the USB-C receptacle shall:

Correctly identify all Apple branded power sources.

- Correctly identify all USB Type-C Current (page 213) sources.
- Enumerate as a USB device when connected to a USB host and:
 - Not draw more than 100 mA of current until they have been successfully enumerated.
 - Request no more than 500 mA of charging current in their USB device descriptor.
- Correctly identify all USB Dedicated Charging Ports (DCP) as defined in the *USB Battery Charging Specification Release 1.2*.
- Not draw more power than the USB power source claims it is capable of providing using one of the above methods.

Accessories may also correctly identify all USB Power Delivery (PD) (page 212) sources.

57.3.2 Providing Power

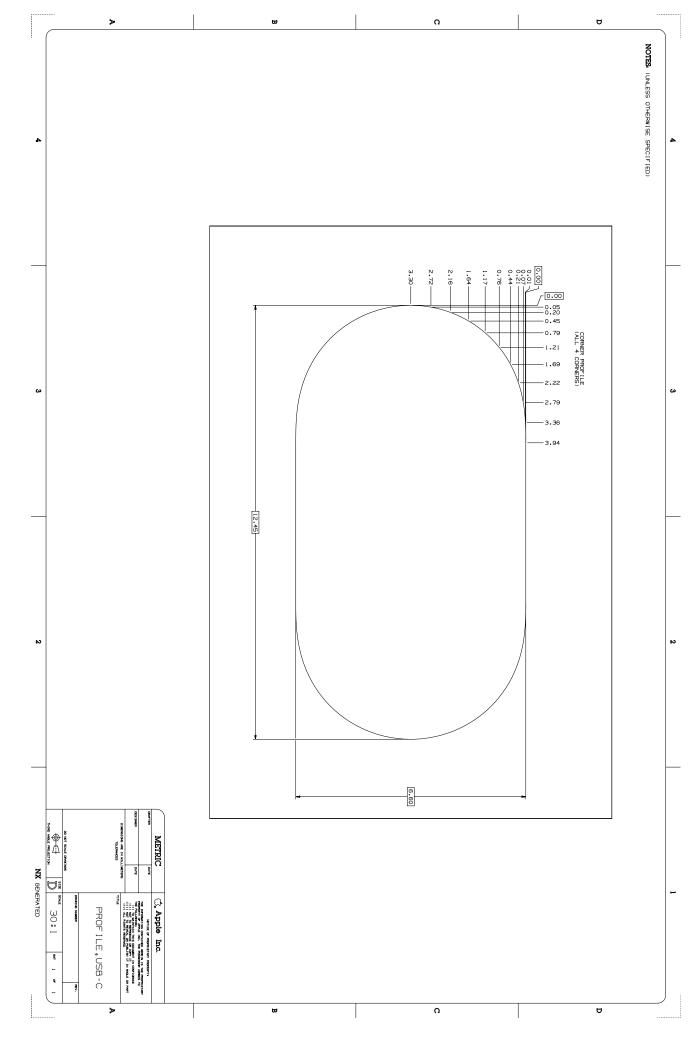
Accessories providing power to a device using a USB-C receptacle shall:

- Provide at least 15 W (3 A at 5.0 V) of power.
- Support USB Type-C Current (page 213).

The accessories should:

- Support USB Power Delivery (PD) (page 212).
- Label the receptacle indicating how much power is supplied in watts.

57.4 USB-C receptacle accessory keep-out



57.5 Test Procedures

USB-C receptacle test procedures are outlined in this section.

57.5.1 Connector Test ID

Verify the accessory's USB-C receptacle has an assigned *Connector* Test ID from the USB-IF, see https://www.usb.org/products.

57.5.2 Drawing Power

This procedure applies to accessories drawing power using the USB-C receptacle.

57.5.2.1 Equipment

The following equipment is necessary:

- Apple USB-C Charge Cable (1 m)
- Apple USB-C Charge Cable (2 m)
- Bundled USB-C to USB-C cable (if applicable)
- Bundled USB-A to USB-C cable (if applicable)
- 3rd-party USB-A to USB-C cable
- Apple 140W USB-C Power Adapter
- Apple 96W USB-C Power Adapter
- Apple 70W USB-C Power Adapter
- Apple 67W USB-C Power Adapter
- Apple 30W USB-C Power Adapter
- Apple 20W USB-C Power Adapter
- Apple 35W Dual USB-C Port Compact Power Adapter
- Apple 35W Dual USB-C Port Power Adapter
- Apple 12W USB Power Adapter
- Apple 5W USB Power Adapter
- Bundled USB-C power adapter (if applicable)
- Bundled USB-A power adapter (if applicable)

57.5.2.2 Test Cases

The following test cases apply to power source identification:

- 1. Verify the accessory correctly identifies all Apple branded or bundled power adapters:
 - **a.** Using each USB-A to USB-C cable, verify each USB-A power adapter is correctly identified and provides power.

- **b.** Using each USB-C to USB-C cable, verify each USB-C power adapter is correctly identified and provides power.
- 2. Verify the accessory correctly identifies a Mac and iPad:
 - **a.** Using each USB-A to USB-C cable and USB-C to USB-C cable, verify the Mac is correctly identified and provides power.
 - **b.** Using each USB-A to USB-C cable and USB-C to USB-C cable, verify the iPad is correctly identified and provides power.

57.5.3 Providing Power

This procedure applies to accessories providing power using the USB-C receptacle.

57.5.3.1 Equipment

The following equipment is necessary:

- Apple USB-C to Lightning Cable (1 m)
- Apple USB-C to Lightning Cable (2 m)
- Apple USB-C Charge Cable (1 m)
- Apple USB-C Charge Cable (2 m)
- Bundled USB-C to USB-C cable (if applicable)

57.5.3.2 Test Cases

The following test cases apply to power providing devices:

- 1. Verify the accessory correctly provides power to devices:
 - a. Using each USB-C to Lightning cable, verify the accessory uses USB Type-C Current or USB PD to identify at least 15 W of power providing capability.
 - b. Using each USB-C to Lightning cable, verify the accessory provides power to the device.
- 2. Verify the accessory correctly identifies a Mac and iPad:
 - **a.** Using each USB-C to USB-C cable, verify the accessory is correctly identified and provides power to the Mac.
 - **b.** Using each USB-C to USB-C cable, verify the accessory is correctly identified and provides power to the iPad.

Tools

58. Accessory Developer Assistant (ADA)



Some test procedures in this specification require use of the Accessory Developer Assistant app, available from the App Store at https://apps.apple.com/us/app/accessory-developer-assistant/id1635862694.

The Accessory Developer Assistant app is a set of utilities designed to help accessory makers test new accessories. Use the Accessory Developer Assistant app to ensure iPhone and iPad performance for features such as:

- Autofocus & Optical Image Stabilization (page 70)
- Image Quality
- Compass (page 72)
- Near-Field Communication (NFC) (page 71)

58.1 Autofocus & Optical Image Stabilization Test Profile

The Autofocus & Optical Image Stabilization (page 70) test procedure requires an additional profile to be installed:

- 1. Use the device to access the ADA Camera Test profile at https://download.developer.apple.com/Developer_Tools/Accessory_Developer_Assistant_Camera_Test_Profile/ADACamera.mobileconfig.
- 2. Install the profile to the device.
- **3.** Open Settings > Profile Downloaded and complete the installation.
- 4. Reboot the device.

References

59. Device Dimensional Drawings

This chapter contains the following iPhone dimensional drawings:

- iPhone 16 Pro Max, 1 of 4 (page 292)
- iPhone 16 Pro Max, 2 of 4 (page 293)
- iPhone 16 Pro Max, 3 of 4 (page 294)
- iPhone 16 Pro Max, 4 of 4 (page 295)
- iPhone 16 Pro, 1 of 4 (page 296)
- iPhone 16 Pro, 2 of 4 (page 297)
- iPhone 16 Pro, 3 of 4 (page 298)
- iPhone 16 Pro, 4 of 4 (page 299)
- iPhone 16 Plus, 1 of 4 (page 300)
- iPhone 16 Plus, 2 of 4 (page 301)
- iPhone 16 Plus, 3 of 4 (page 302)
- iPhone 16 Plus, 4 of 4 (page 303)
- iPhone 16, 1 of 4 (page 304)
- iPhone 16, 2 of 4 (page 305)
- iPhone 16, 3 of 4 (page 306)
- iPhone 16, 4 of 4 (page 307)
- iPhone 15 Pro Max, 1 of 3 (page 308)
- iPhone 15 Pro Max, 2 of 3 (page 309)
- iPhone 15 Pro Max, 3 of 3 (page 310)
- iPhone 15 Pro, 1 of 3 (page 311)
- iPhone 15 Pro, 2 of 3 (page 312)
- iPhone 15 Pro, 3 of 3 (page 313)
- iPhone 15 Plus, 1 of 3 (page 314)
- iPhone 15 Plus, 2 of 3 (page 315)
- iPhone 15 Plus, 3 of 3 (page 316)
- iPhone 15, 1 of 3 (page 317)
- iPhone 15, 2 of 3 (page 318)
- iPhone 15, 3 of 3 (page 319)
- iPhone 14 Pro Max, 1 of 3 (page 320)
- iPhone 14 Pro Max, 2 of 3 (page 321)
- iPhone 14 Pro Max, 3 of 3 (page 322)
- iPhone 14 Pro, 1 of 3 (page 323)
- iPhone 14 Pro, 2 of 3 (page 324)

- iPhone 14 Pro, 3 of 3 (page 325)
- iPhone 14 Plus, 1 of 3 (page 326)
- iPhone 14 Plus, 2 of 3 (page 327)
- iPhone 14 Plus, 3 of 3 (page 328)
- iPhone 14, 1 of 3 (page 329)
- iPhone 14, 2 of 3 (page 330)
- iPhone 14, 3 of 3 (page 331)
- iPhone SE (3rd generation) and iPhone SE (2nd generation) (page 348)
- iPhone 13 Pro Max, 1 of 2 (page 332)
- iPhone 13 Pro Max, 2 of 2 (page 333)
- iPhone 13 Pro, 1 of 2 (page 334)
- iPhone 13 Pro, 2 of 2 (page 335)
- iPhone 13, 1 of 2 (page 336)
- iPhone 13, 2 of 2 (page 337)
- iPhone 13 mini, 1 of 2 (page 338)
- iPhone 13 mini, 2 of 2 (page 339)
- iPhone 12 Pro Max, 1 of 2 (page 340)
- iPhone 12 Pro Max, 2 of 2 (page 341)
- iPhone 12 Pro, 1 of 2 (page 342)
- iPhone 12 Pro, 2 of 2 (page 343)
- iPhone 12, 1 of 2 (page 344)
- iPhone 12, 2 of 2 (page 345)
- iPhone 12 mini, 1 of 2 (page 346)
- iPhone 12 mini, 2 of 2 (page 347)
- iPhone 11 Pro Max (page 349)
- iPhone 11 Pro (page 350)
- iPhone 11 (page 351)
- iPhone XS Max (page 352)
- iPhone XS (page 353)
- iPhone XR (page 354)
- iPhone X (page 355)
- iPhone 8 Plus (page 356)
- iPhone 8 (page 357)
- iPhone 7 Plus (page 358)
- iPhone 7 (page 359)
- iPhone 6s Plus (page 360)
- iPhone 6s (page 361)
- iPhone 6 Plus (page 362)
- iPhone 6 (page 363)
- iPhone 5s and iPhone SE (page 364)

- iPhone 5c (page 365)
- iPhone 5 (page 366)

This chapter contains the following iPad dimensional drawings:

- iPad Pro 13-inch (M4), 1 of 5 (page 367)
- iPad Pro 13-inch (M4), 2 of 5 (page 368)
- iPad Pro 13-inch (M4), 3 of 5 (page 369)
- iPad Pro 13-inch (M4), 4 of 5 (page 370)
- iPad Pro 13-inch (M4), 5 of 5 (page 371)
- iPad Pro 11-inch (M4), 1 of 5 (page 372)
- iPad Pro 11-inch (M4), 2 of 5 (page 373)
- iPad Pro 11-inch (M4), 3 of 5 (page 374)
- iPad Pro 11-inch (M4), 4 of 5 (page 375)
- iPad Pro 11-inch (M4), 5 of 5 (page 376)
- iPad Air 13-inch (M2), 1 of 5 (page 377)
- iPad Air 13-inch (M2), 2 of 5 (page 378)
- iPad Air 13-inch (M2), 3 of 5 (page 379)
- iPad Air 13-inch (M2), 4 of 5 (page 380)
- iPad Air 13-inch (M2), 5 of 5 (page 381)
- iPad Air 11-inch (M2), 1 of 5 (page 382)
- iPad Air 11-inch (M2), 2 of 5 (page 383)
- iPad Air 11-inch (M2), 3 of 5 (page 384)
- iPad Air 11-inch (M2), 4 of 5 (page 385)
- iPad Air 11-inch (M2), 5 of 5 (page 386)
- iPad Pro 12.9-inch (6th generation), 1 of 5 (page 387)
- iPad Pro 12.9-inch (6th generation), 2 of 5 (page 388)
- iPad Pro 12.9-inch (6th generation), 3 of 5 (page 389)
- iPad Pro 12.9-inch (6th generation), 4 of 5 (page 390)
- iPad Pro 12.9-inch (6th generation), 5 of 5 (page 391)
- iPad Pro 11-inch (4th generation), 1 of 5 (page 392)
- iPad Pro 11-inch (4th generation), 2 of 5 (page 393)
- iPad Pro 11-inch (4th generation), 3 of 5 (page 394)
- iPad Pro 11-inch (4th generation), 4 of 5 (page 395)
- iPad Pro 11-inch (4th generation), 5 of 5 (page 396)
- iPad (10th generation), 1 of 6 (page 397)
- iPad (10th generation), 2 of 6 (page 398)
- iPad (10th generation), 3 of 6 (page 399)
- iPad (10th generation), 4 of 6 (page 400)
- iPad (10th generation), 5 of 6 (page 401)
- iPad (10th generation), 6 of 6 (page 402)

- iPad Air (5th generation) and iPad Air (4th generation), 1 of 5 (page 403)
- iPad Air (5th generation) and iPad Air (4th generation), 2 of 5 (page 404)
- iPad Air (5th generation) and iPad Air (4th generation), 3 of 5 (page 405)
- iPad Air (5th generation) and iPad Air (4th generation), 4 of 5 (page 406)
- iPad Air (5th generation) and iPad Air (4th generation), 5 of 5 (page 407)
- iPad mini (6th generation), 1 of 6 (page 408)
- iPad mini (6th generation), 2 of 6 (page 409)
- iPad mini (6th generation), 3 of 6 (page 410)
- iPad mini (6th generation), 4 of 6 (page 411)
- iPad mini (6th generation), 5 of 6 (page 412)
- iPad mini (6th generation), 6 of 6 (page 413)
- iPad (9th generation), iPad (8th generation) and iPad (7th generation), 1 of 4 (page 414)
- iPad (9th generation), iPad (8th generation) and iPad (7th generation), 2 of 4 (page 415)
- iPad (9th generation), iPad (8th generation) and iPad (7th generation), 3 of 4 (page 416)
- iPad (9th generation), iPad (8th generation) and iPad (7th generation), 4 of 4 (page 417)
- iPad Pro 12.9-inch (5th generation), 1 of 5 (page 418)
- iPad Pro 12.9-inch (5th generation), 2 of 5 (page 419)
- iPad Pro 12.9-inch (5th generation), 3 of 5 (page 420)
- iPad Pro 12.9-inch (5th generation), 4 of 5 (page 421)
- iPad Pro 12.9-inch (5th generation), 5 of 5 (page 422)
- iPad Pro 11-inch (3rd generation), 1 of 5 (page 423)
- iPad Pro 11-inch (3rd generation), 2 of 5 (page 424)
- iPad Pro 11-inch (3rd generation), 3 of 5 (page 425)
- iPad Pro 11-inch (3rd generation), 4 of 5 (page 426)
- iPad Pro 11-inch (3rd generation), 5 of 5 (page 427)
- iPad Pro 12.9-inch (4th generation), 1 of 5 (page 428)
- iPad Pro 12.9-inch (4th generation), 2 of 5 (page 429)
- iPad Pro 12.9-inch (4th generation), 3 of 5 (page 430)
- iPad Pro 12.9-inch (4th generation), 4 of 5 (page 431)
- iPad Pro 12.9-inch (4th generation), 5 of 5 (page 432)
- iPad Pro 11-inch (2nd generation), 1 of 5 (page 433)
- iPad Pro 11-inch (2nd generation), 2 of 5 (page 434)
- iPad Pro 11-inch (2nd generation), 3 of 5 (page 435)
- iPad Pro 11-inch (2nd generation), 4 of 5 (page 436)
- iPad Pro 11-inch (2nd generation), 5 of 5 (page 437)
- iPad Air (3rd generation) with Wi-Fi, 1 of 3 (page 438)
- iPad Air (3rd generation) with Wi-Fi, 2 of 3 (page 439)
- iPad Air (3rd generation) with Wi-Fi, 3 of 3 (page 440)
- iPad Air (3rd generation) with Wi-Fi + Cellular, 1 of 3 (page 441)
- iPad Air (3rd generation) with Wi-Fi + Cellular, 2 of 3 (page 442)

- iPad Air (3rd generation) with Wi-Fi + Cellular, 3 of 3 (page 443)
- iPad mini (5th generation) with Wi-Fi, 1 of 3 (page 444)
- iPad mini (5th generation) with Wi-Fi, 2 of 3 (page 445)
- iPad mini (5th generation) with Wi-Fi, 3 of 3 (page 446)
- iPad mini (5th generation) with Wi-Fi + Cellular, 1 of 3 (page 447)
- iPad mini (5th generation) with Wi-Fi + Cellular, 2 of 3 (page 448)
- iPad mini (5th generation) with Wi-Fi + Cellular, 3 of 3 (page 449)
- iPad Pro 12.9-inch (3rd generation), 1 of 3 (page 450)
- iPad Pro 12.9-inch (3rd generation), 2 of 3 (page 451)
- iPad Pro 12.9-inch (3rd generation), 3 of 3 (page 452)
- iPad Pro 11-inch (1st generation), 1 of 3 (page 453)
- iPad Pro 11-inch (1st generation), 2 of 3 (page 454)
- iPad Pro 11-inch (1st generation), 3 of 3 (page 455)
- iPad Pro 12.9-inch (2nd generation) with Wi-Fi (page 456)
- iPad Pro 12.9-inch (2nd generation) with Wi-Fi + Cellular (page 457)
- iPad Pro 12.9-inch (2nd generation) Magnet/Hall Effect Sensors, 1 of 2 (page 458)
- iPad Pro 12.9-inch (2nd generation) Magnet/Hall Effect Sensors, 2 of 2 (page 459)
- iPad Pro 10.5-inch with Wi-Fi (page 460)
- iPad Pro 10.5-inch with Wi-Fi + Cellular (page 461)
- iPad Pro 10.5-inch Magnet/Hall Effect Sensors, 1 of 2 (page 462)
- iPad Pro 10.5-inch Magnet/Hall Effect Sensors, 2 of 2 (page 463)
- iPad (5th and 6th generation) with Wi-Fi + Cellular (page 464)
- iPad (5th and 6th generation) Magnet/Hall Effect Sensors, 1 of 2 (page 465)
- iPad (5th and 6th generation) Magnet/Hall Effect Sensors, 2 of 2 (page 466)
- iPad Pro 9.7-inch with Wi-Fi (page 467)
- iPad Pro 9.7-inch with Wi-Fi + Cellular (page 468)
- iPad Pro 9.7-inch Magnet/Hall Effect Sensors, 1 of 2 (page 469)
- iPad Pro 9.7-inch Magnet/Hall Effect Sensors, 2 of 2 (page 470)
- iPad Pro 12.9-inch (1st generation) with Wi-Fi (page 471)
- iPad Pro 12.9-inch (1st generation) with Wi-Fi + Cellular (page 472)
- iPad Pro 12.9-inch (1st generation) Magnet/Hall Effect Sensors, 1 of 2 (page 473)
- iPad Pro 12.9-inch (1st generation) Magnet/Hall Effect Sensors, 2 of 2 (page 474)
- iPad mini 4 with Wi-Fi (page 475)
- iPad mini 4 with Wi-Fi + Cellular (page 476)
- iPad mini 4 Magnet/Hall Effect Sensors (page 477)
- iPad Air 2 with Wi-Fi (page 478)
- iPad Air 2 with Wi-Fi + Cellular (page 479)
- iPad mini 2 and iPad mini 3 with Wi-Fi (page 480)
- iPad mini 2 and iPad mini 3 with Wi-Fi + Cellular (page 481)
- iPad Air with Wi-Fi (page 482)

- iPad Air with Wi-Fi + Cellular (page 483)
- iPad mini with Wi-Fi (page 484)
- iPad mini with Wi-Fi + Cellular (page 485)
- iPad (4th generation) with Wi-Fi (page 486)
- iPad (4th generation) with Wi-Fi + Cellular (page 487)

This chapter contains the following iPod dimensional drawings:

- iPod touch (6th generation) and iPod touch (7th generation) (page 488)
- iPod touch (5th generation) (page 489)

This chapter contains the following Apple Watch dimensional drawings:

- Apple Watch Series 10, 46 mm (page 490)
- Apple Watch Series 10, 42 mm (page 491)
- Apple Watch Ultra 2, 1 of 3 (page 492)
- Apple Watch Ultra 2, 2 of 3 (page 493)
- Apple Watch Ultra 2, 3 of 3 (page 494)
- Apple Watch Series 9, 45 mm (page 495)
- Apple Watch Series 9, 41 mm (page 496)
- Apple Watch Ultra, 1 of 3 (page 497)
- Apple Watch Ultra, 2 of 3 (page 498)
- Apple Watch Ultra, 3 of 3 (page 499)
- Apple Watch Series 8, 45 mm (page 500)
- Apple Watch Series 8, 41 mm (page 501)
- Apple Watch SE, 44 mm (page 502)
- Apple Watch SE, 40 mm (page 503)
- Apple Watch Series 7, 45 mm (page 504)
- Apple Watch Series 7, 41 mm (page 505)
- Apple Watch Series 6, 44 mm (page 506)
- Apple Watch Series 6, 40 mm (page 507)
- Apple Watch SE (1st generation), 44 mm (page 508)
- Apple Watch SE (1st generation), 40 mm (page 509)
- Apple Watch Series 5, 44 mm (page 510)
- Apple Watch Series 5, 40 mm (page 511)
- Apple Watch Series 5 Ceramic, 44 mm (page 512)
- Apple Watch Series 5 Ceramic, 40 mm (page 513)
- Apple Watch Series 4, 44 mm (page 514)
- Apple Watch Series 4, 40 mm (page 515)
- Apple Watch Series 3 Ceramic, 42 mm (page 516)
- Apple Watch Series 3 Ceramic, 38 mm (page 517)
- Apple Watch Series 3 Metal, 42 mm (page 518)
- Apple Watch Series 3 Metal, 38 mm (page 519)

- Apple Watch Series 2 Ceramic, 42 mm (page 520)
- Apple Watch Series 2 Ceramic, 38 mm (page 521)
- Apple Watch Series 2 Metal, 42 mm (page 522)
- Apple Watch Series 2 Metal, 38 mm (page 523)
- Apple Watch (1st generation) and Apple Watch Series 1, 42 mm (page 524)
- Apple Watch (1st generation) and Apple Watch Series 1, 38 mm (page 525)

This chapter contains the following Apple Vision Pro dimensional drawings:

- Apple Vision Pro, 1 of 6 (page 526)
- Apple Vision Pro, 2 of 6 (page 527)
- Apple Vision Pro, 3 of 6 (page 528)
- Apple Vision Pro, 4 of 6 (page 529)
- Apple Vision Pro, 5 of 6 (page 530)
- Apple Vision Pro, 6 of 6 (page 531)
- Apple Vision Pro Battery (page 532)
- Apple Vision Pro Audio Strap (page 533)
- ZEISS Optical Inserts, 1 of 4 (page 534)
- ZEISS Optical Inserts, 2 of 4 (page 535)
- ZEISS Optical Inserts, 3 of 4 (page 536)
- ZEISS Optical Inserts, 4 of 4 (page 537)

This chapter contains the following AirPods dimensional drawings:

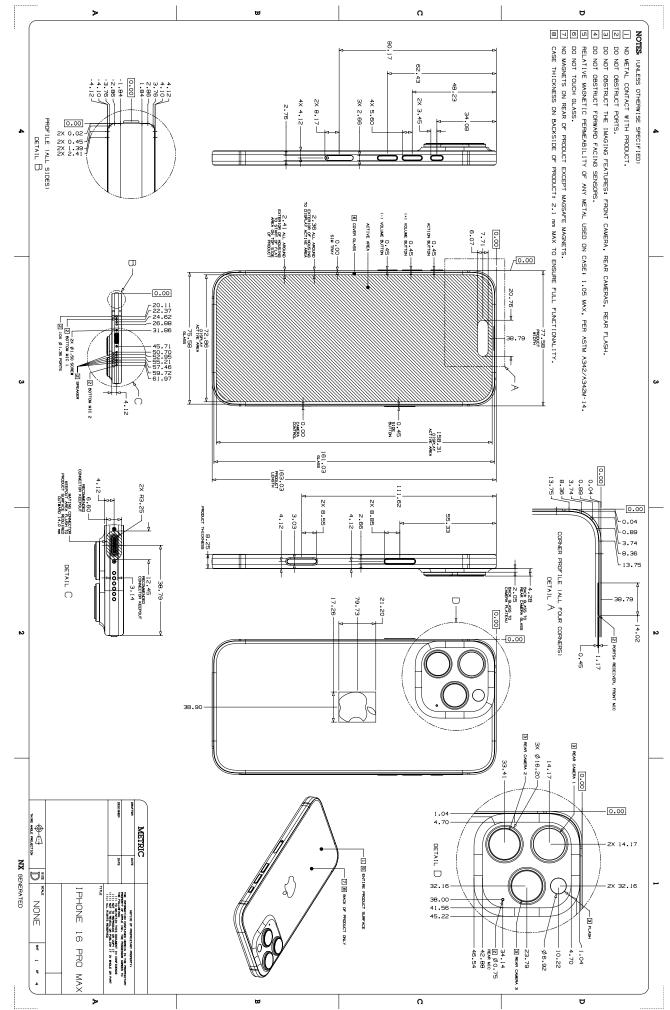
- Wireless Charging Case (USB-C) for AirPods 4, 1 of 3 (page 538).
- Wireless Charging Case (USB-C) for AirPods 4, 2 of 3 (page 539).
- Wireless Charging Case (USB-C) for AirPods 4, 3 of 3 (page 540).
- AirPods 4 (page 541).
- MagSafe Charging Case (USB-C) for AirPods Pro (2nd generation), 1 of 3 (page 542)
- MagSafe Charging Case (USB-C) for AirPods Pro (2nd generation), 2 of 3 (page 543)
- MagSafe Charging Case (USB-C) for AirPods Pro (2nd generation), 3 of 3 (page 544)
- MagSafe Charging Case for AirPods Pro (2nd generation), 1 of 3 (page 545)
- MagSafe Charging Case for AirPods Pro (2nd generation), 2 of 3 (page 546)
- MagSafe Charging Case for AirPods Pro (2nd generation), 3 of 3 (page 547)
- AirPods Pro (2nd generation) (page 548)
- MagSafe Charging Case for AirPods (3rd generation) (page 549)
- AirPods (3rd generation) (page 550)
- AirPods Max, 1 of 5 (page 551)
- AirPods Max, 2 of 5 (page 552)
- AirPods Max, 3 of 5 (page 553)
- AirPods Max, 4 of 5 (page 554)
- AirPods Max, 5 of 5 (page 555)
- Wireless Charging Case for AirPods Pro (1st generation) (page 556)

- AirPods Pro (1st generation) (page 557)
- Wireless Charging Case for AirPods (page 558)
- AirPods (1st generation) and AirPods (2nd generation) (page 559)

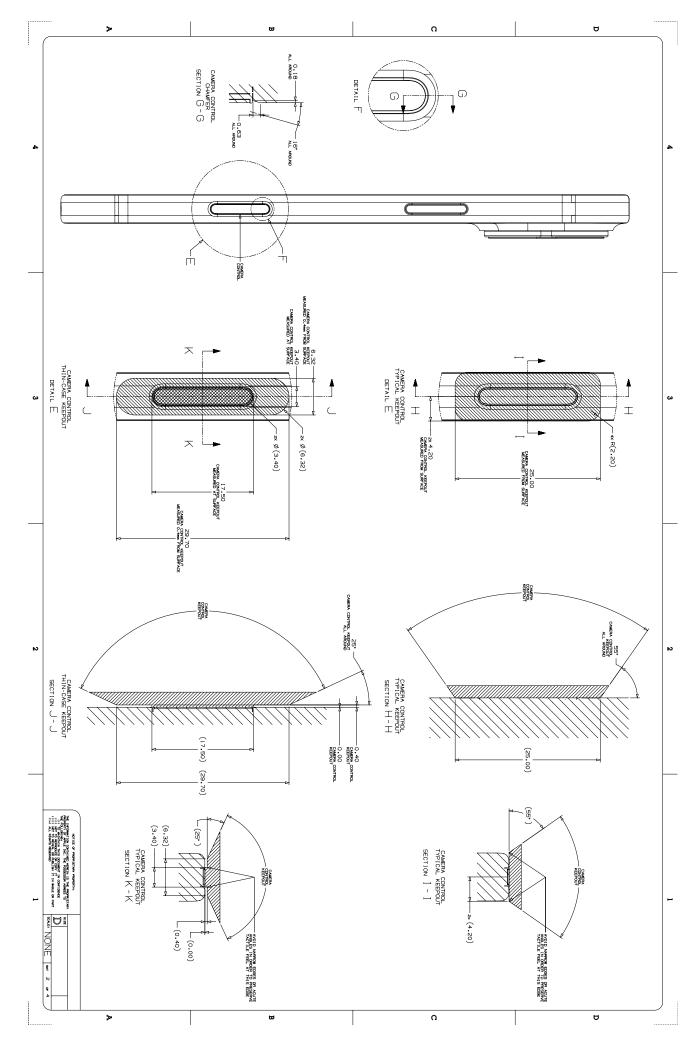
This chapter contains the following dimensional drawings:

- Apple MagSafe Charger (1 m) and Apple MagSafe Charger (2 m) (page 560)
- Apple MagSafe Charger (page 561)
- AirTag (page 562)
- Apple TV 4K (3rd generation) (page 563)
- Siri Remote (3rd generation) (page 564)

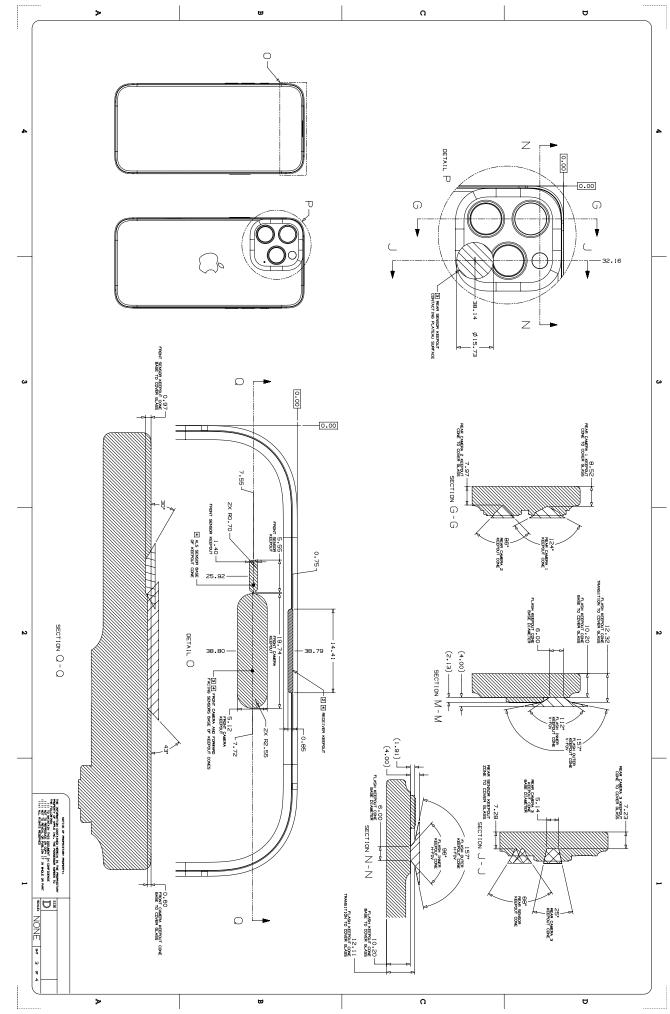
59.1 iPhone 16 Pro Max, 1 of 4



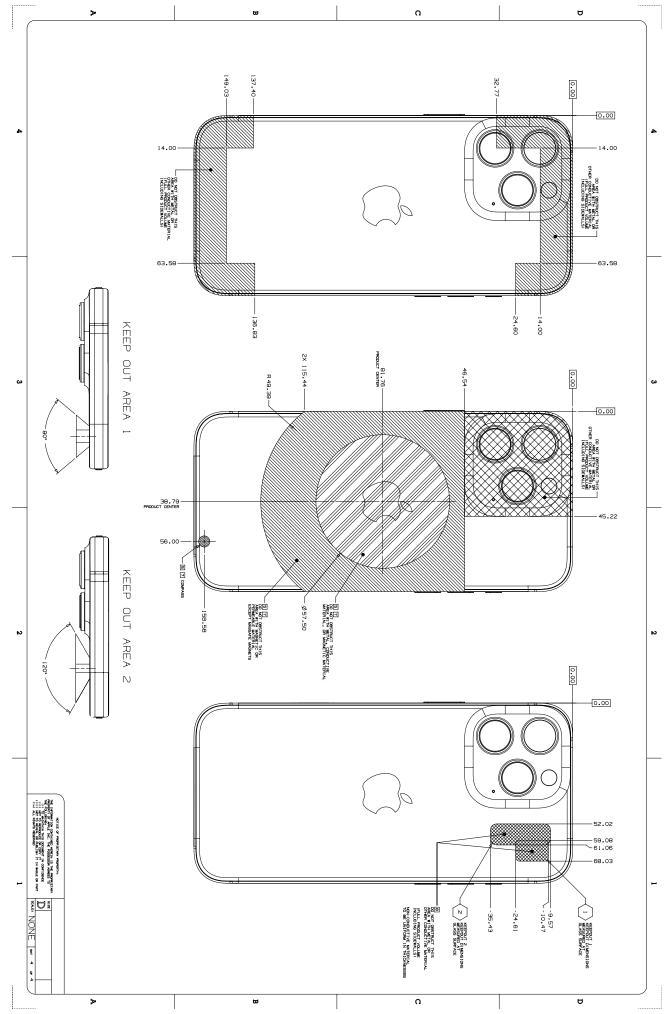
59.2 iPhone 16 Pro Max, 2 of 4



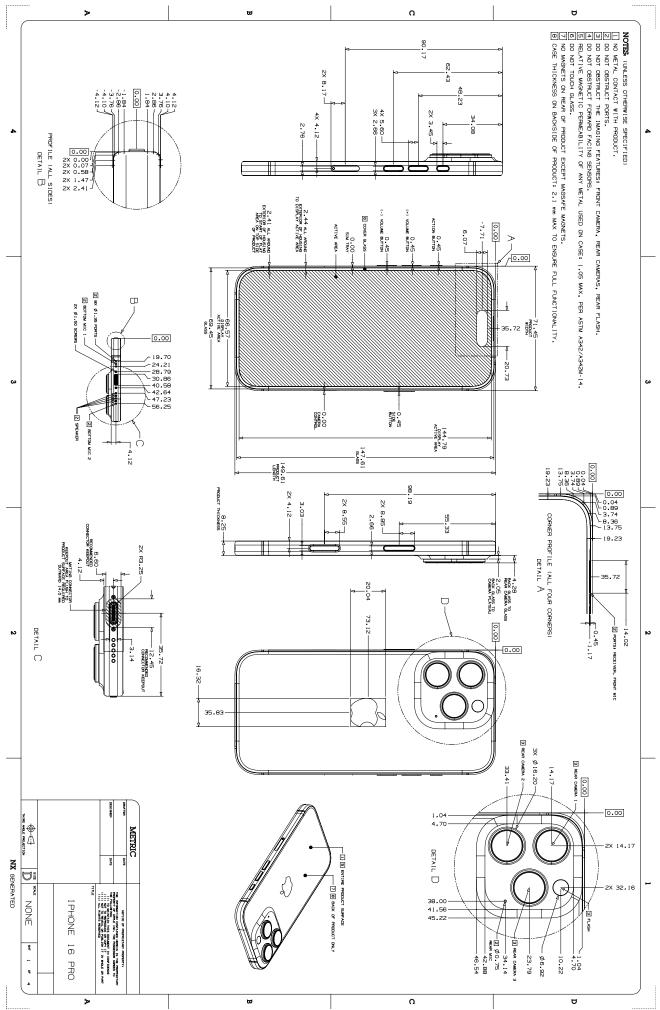
59.3 iPhone 16 Pro Max, 3 of 4



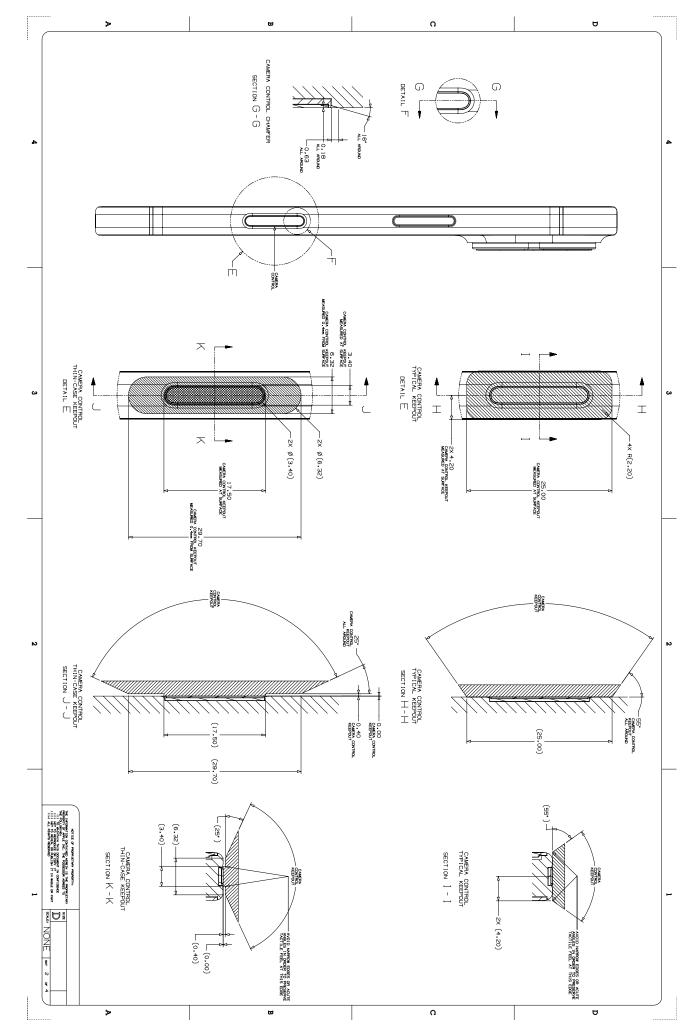
59.4 iPhone 16 Pro Max, 4 of 4



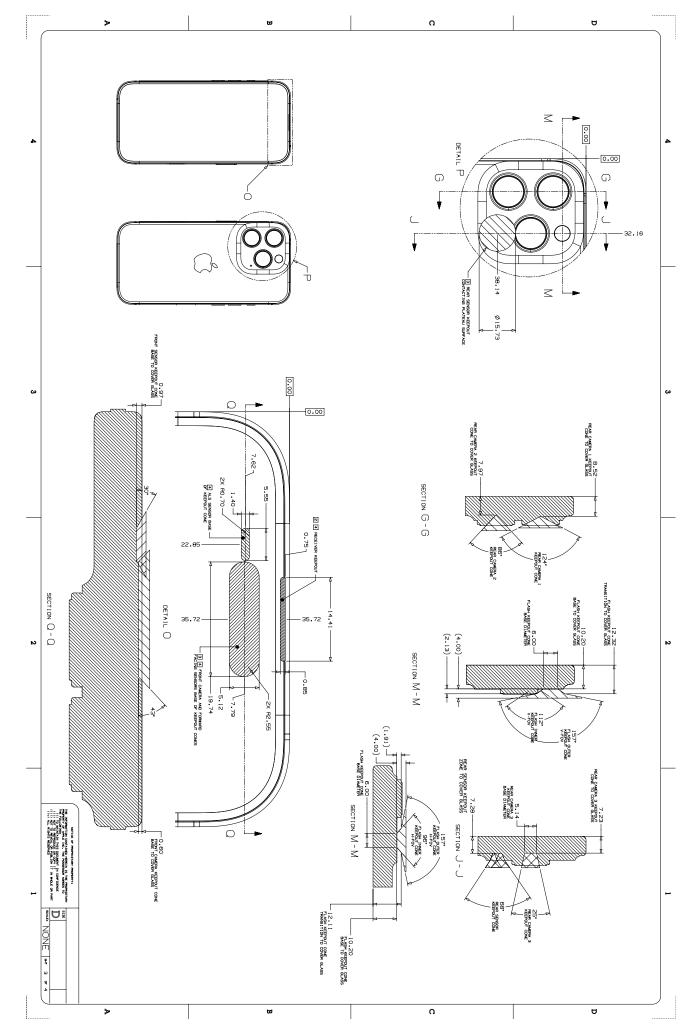
59.5 iPhone 16 Pro, 1 of 4



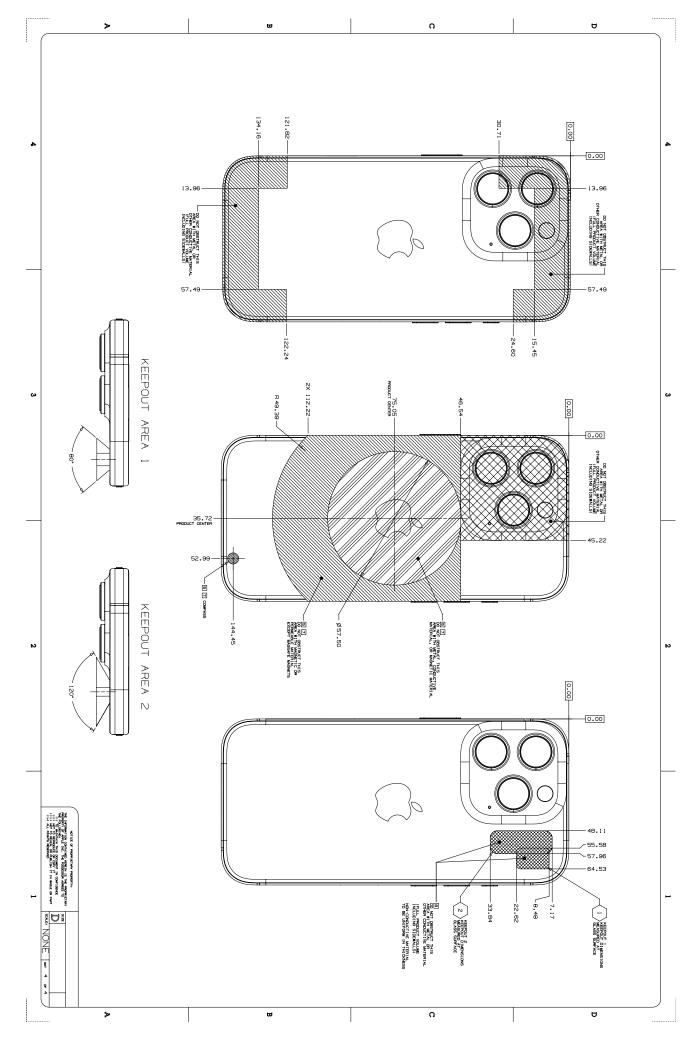
59.6 iPhone 16 Pro, 2 of 4



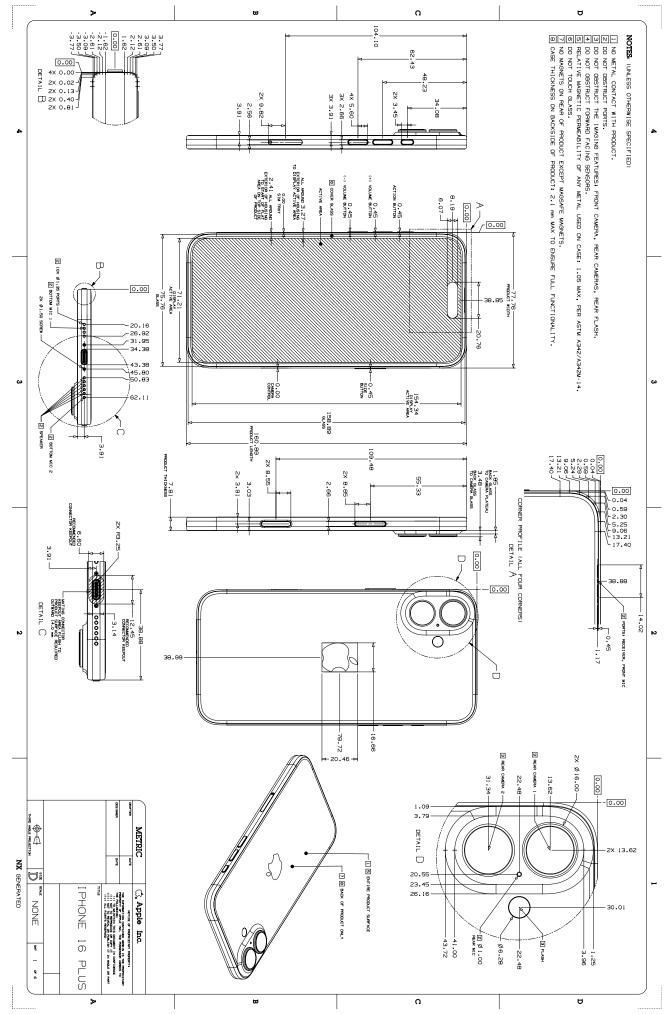
59.7 iPhone 16 Pro, 3 of 4



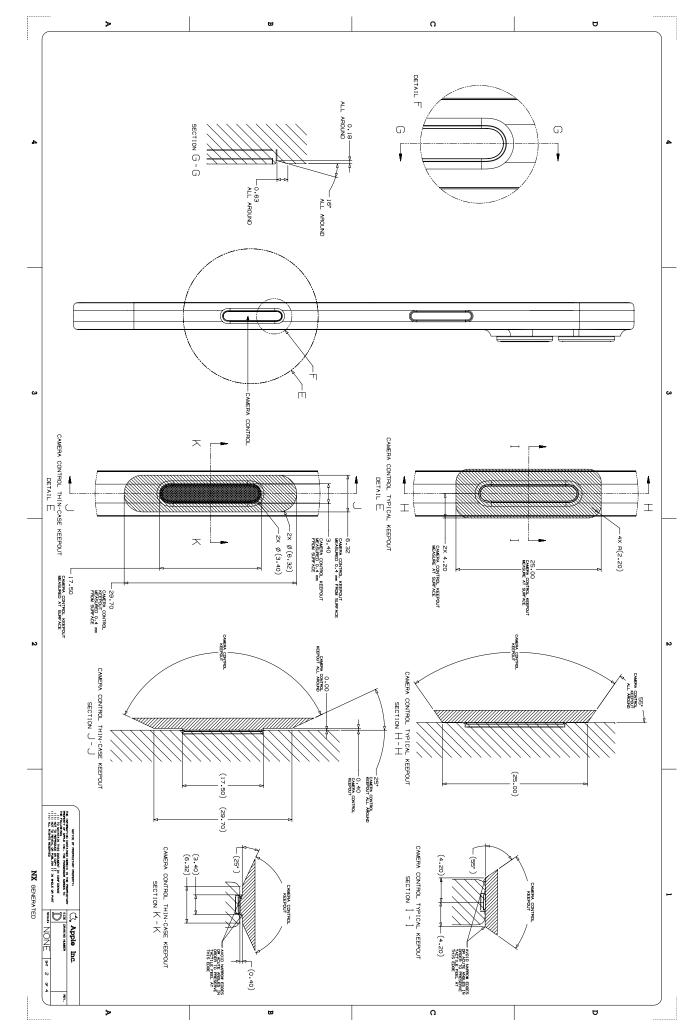
59.8 iPhone 16 Pro, 4 of 4



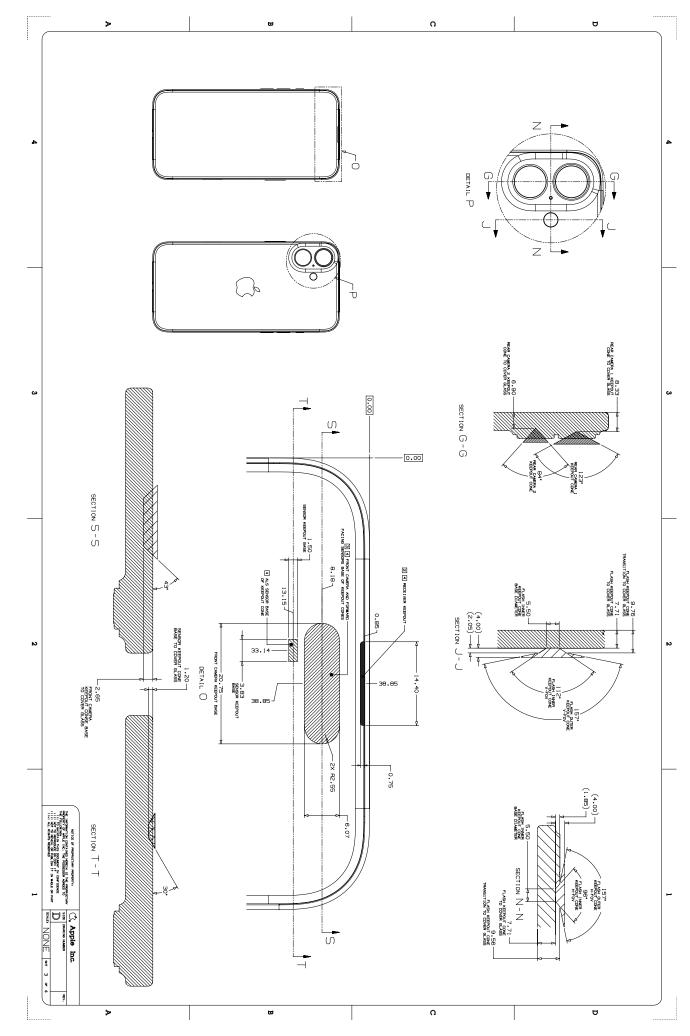
59.9 iPhone 16 Plus, 1 of 4



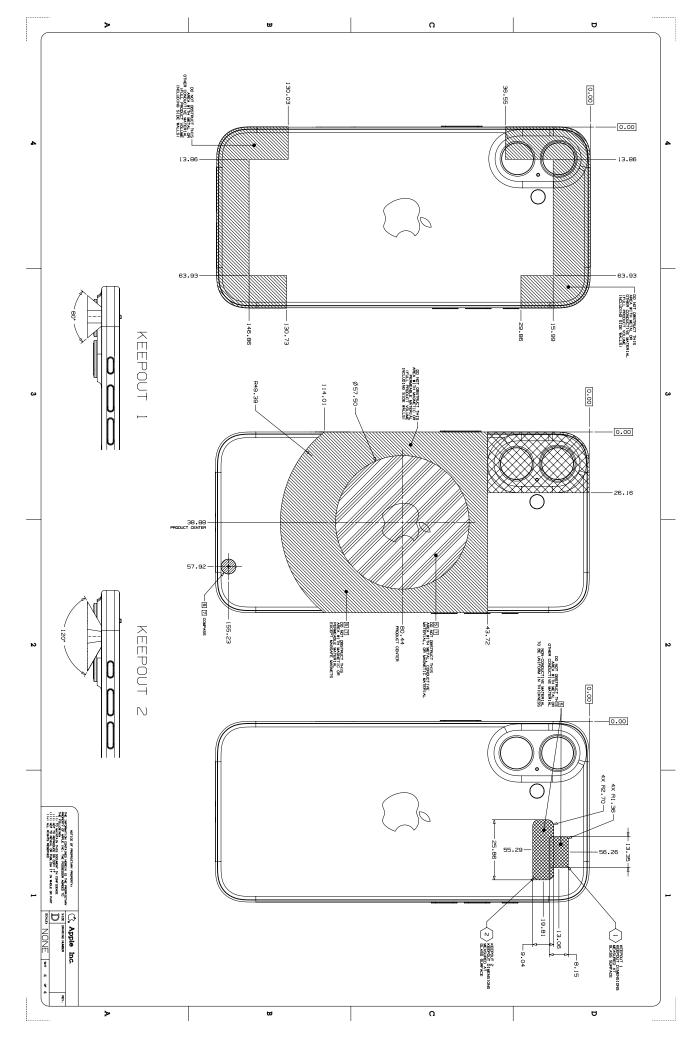
59.10 iPhone 16 Plus, 2 of 4



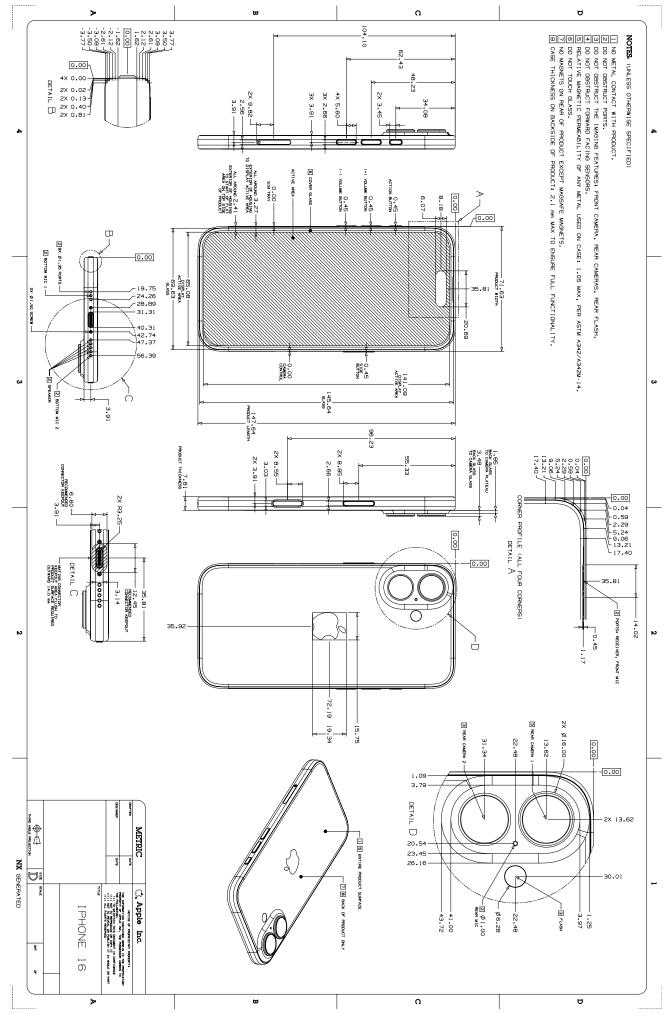
59.11 iPhone 16 Plus, 3 of 4

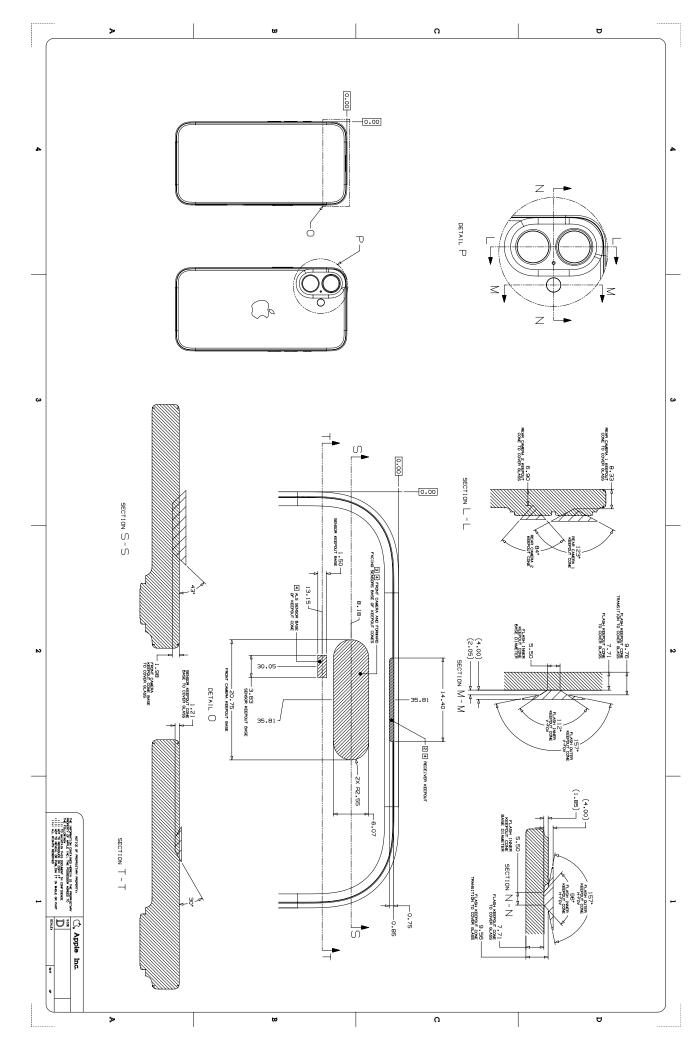


59.12 iPhone 16 Plus, 4 of 4

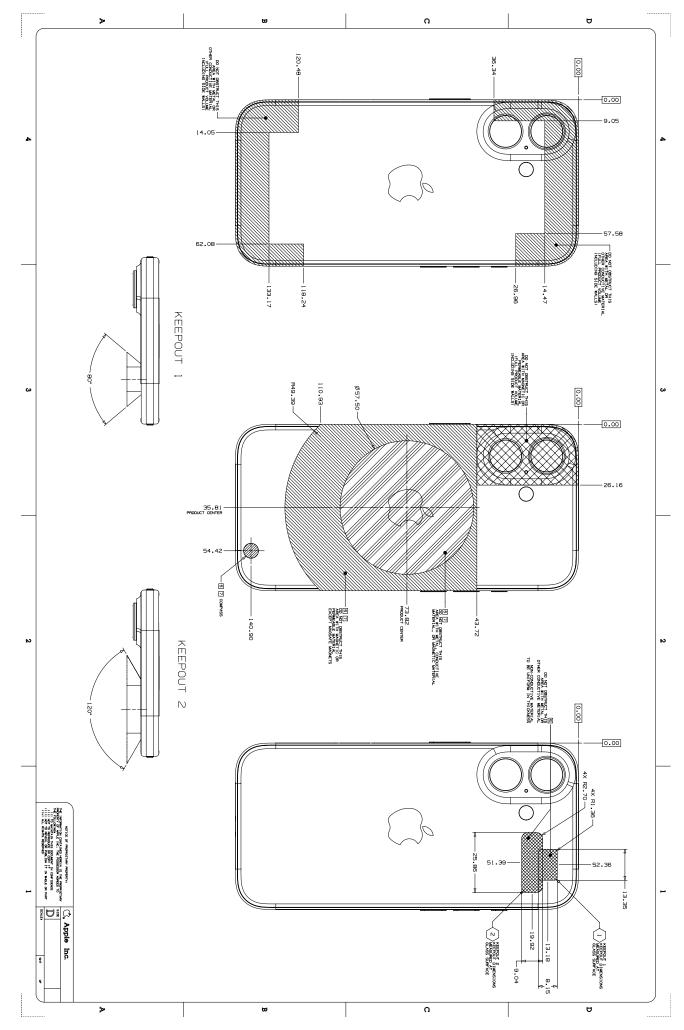


59.13 iPhone 16, 1 of 4

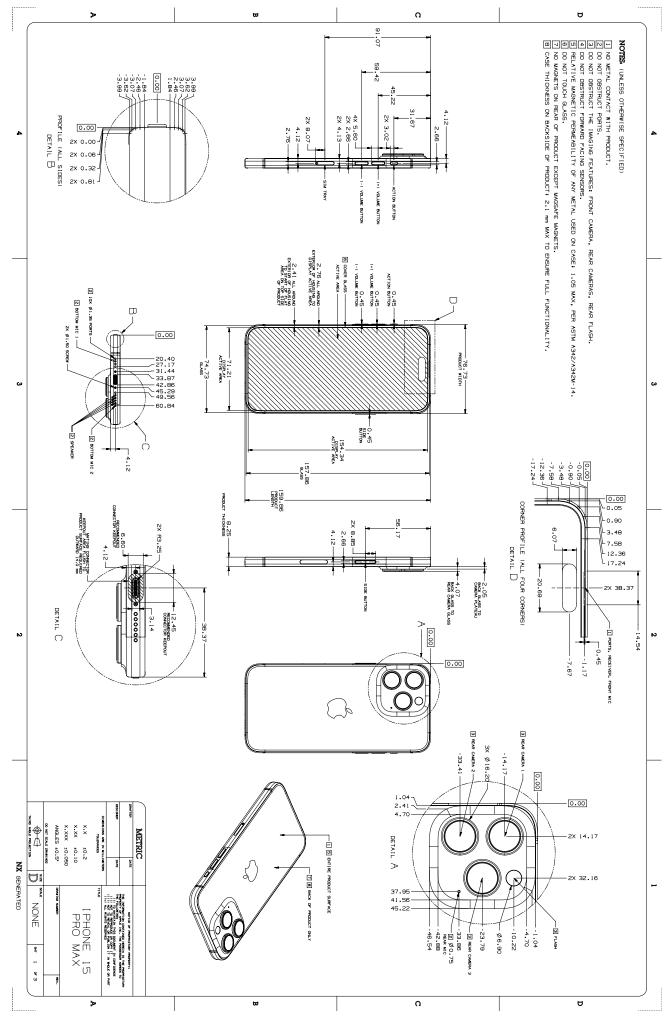




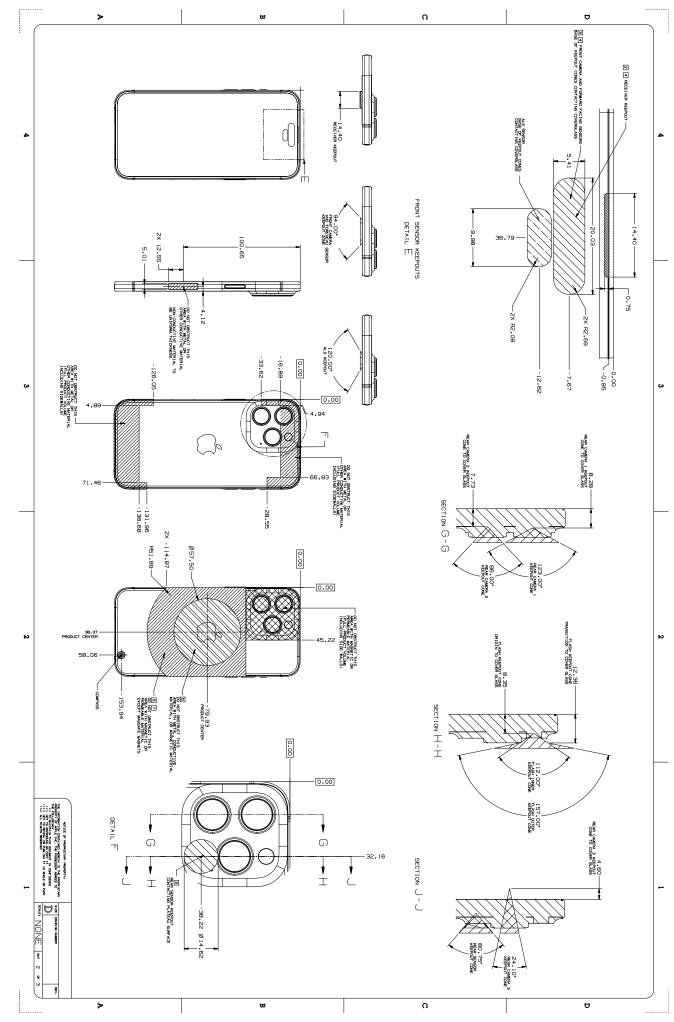
59.16 iPhone 16, 4 of 4



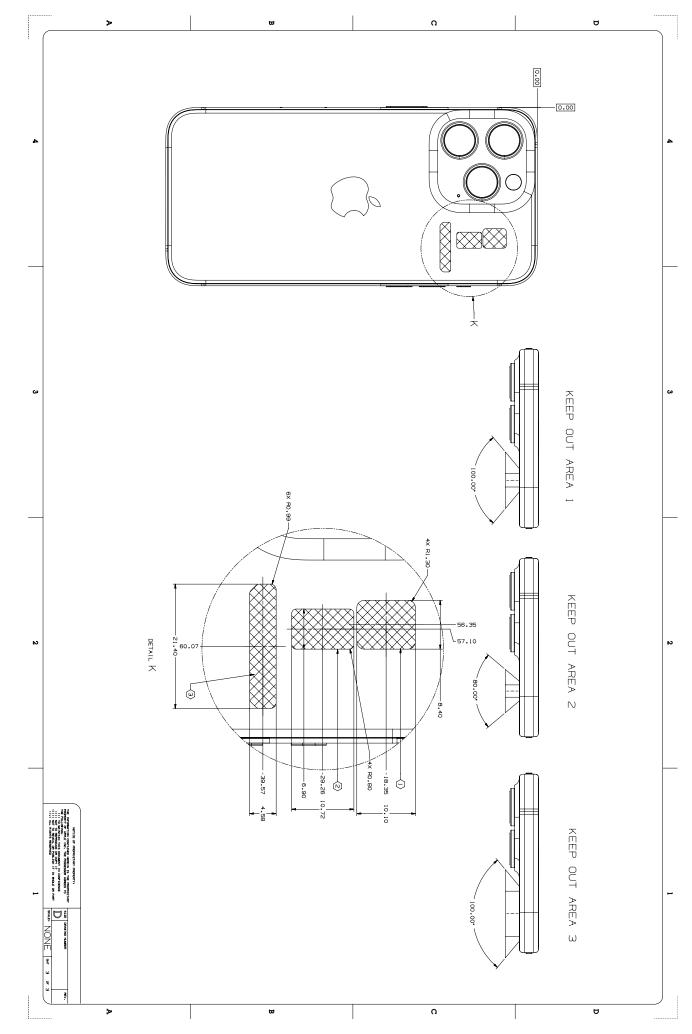
59.17 iPhone 15 Pro Max, 1 of 3



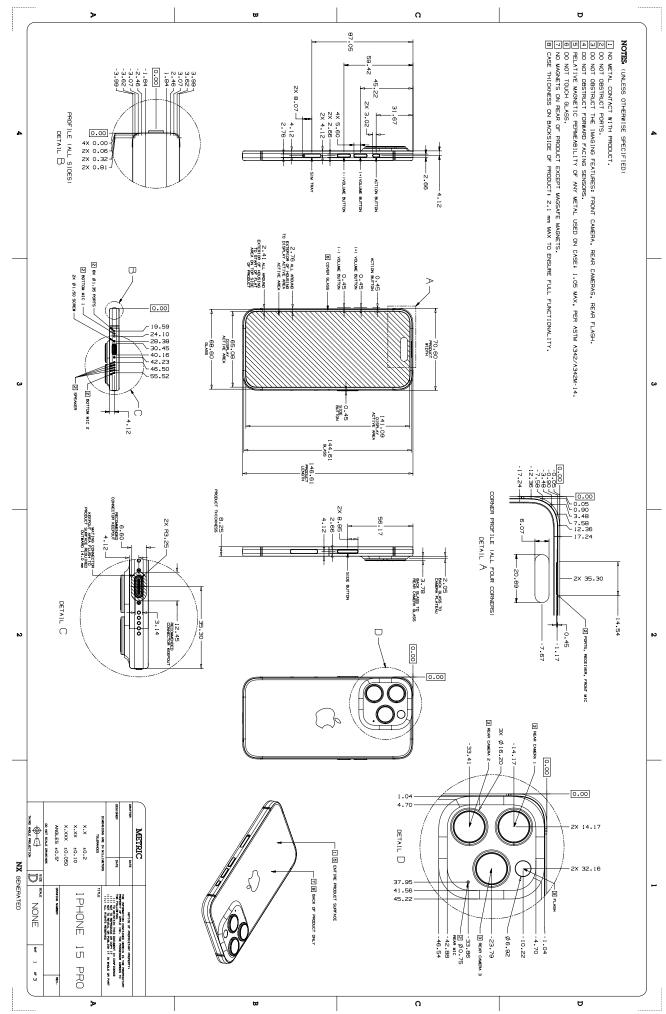
59.18 iPhone 15 Pro Max, 2 of 3



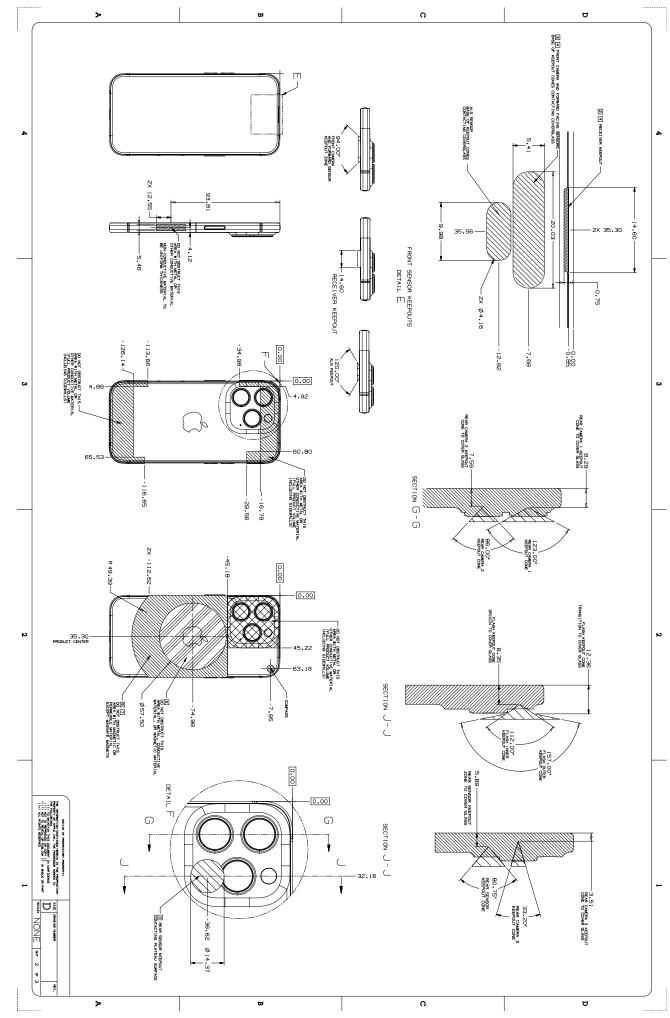
59.19 iPhone 15 Pro Max, 3 of 3



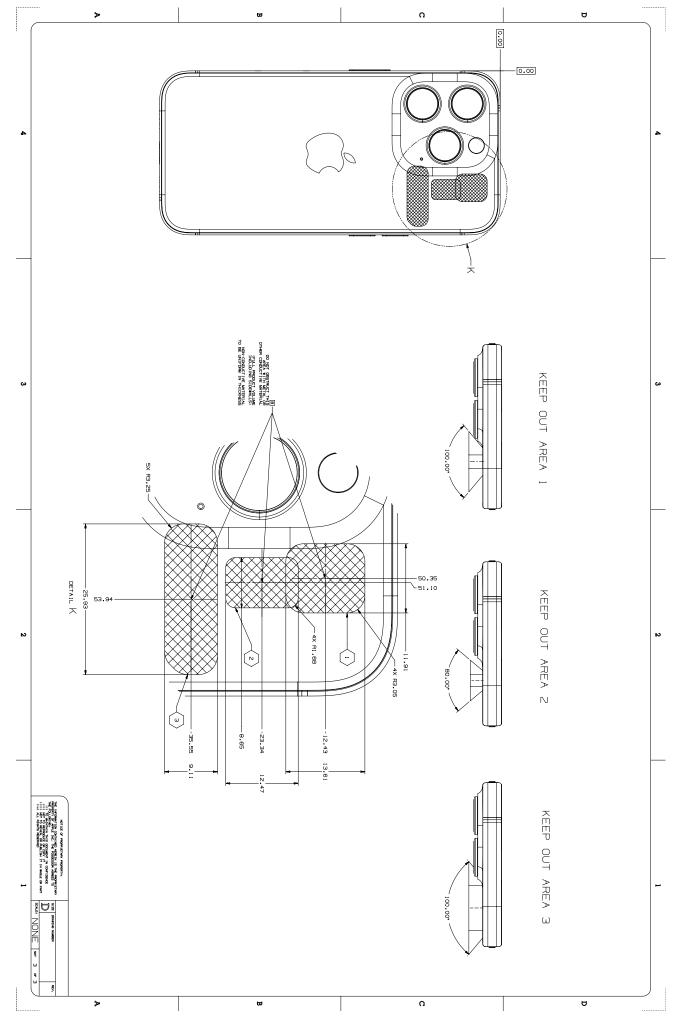
59.20 iPhone 15 Pro, 1 of 3



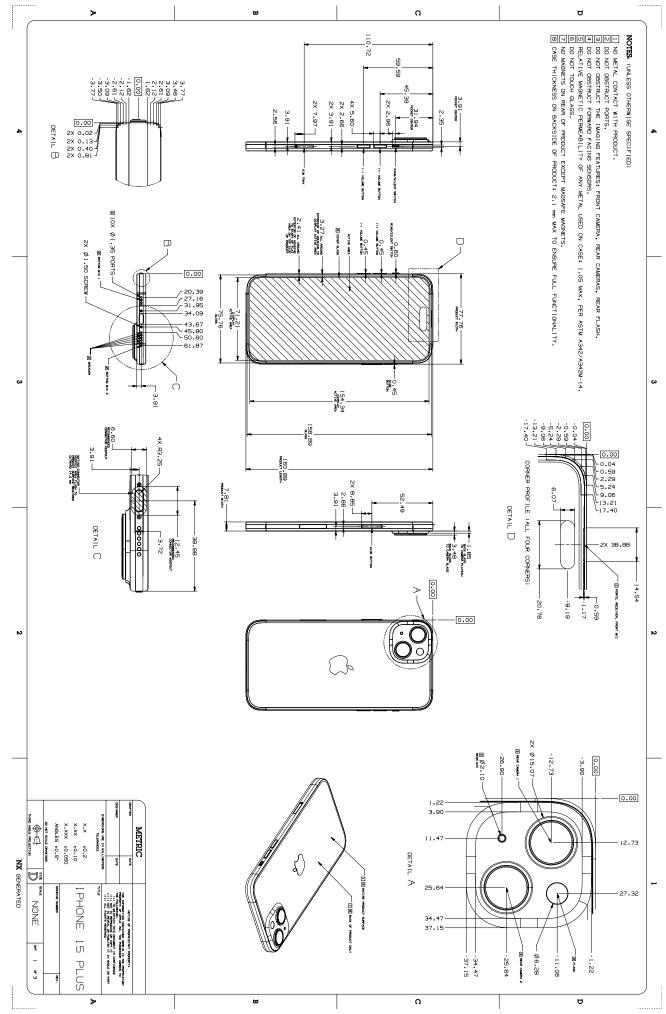
59.21 iPhone 15 Pro, 2 of 3



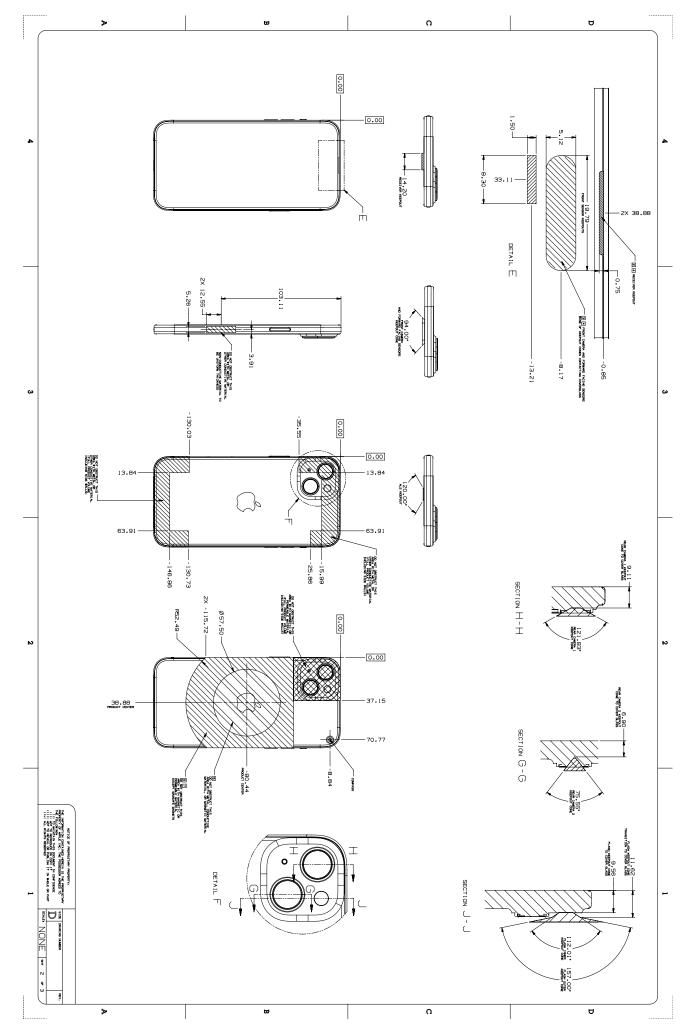
59.22 iPhone 15 Pro, 3 of 3



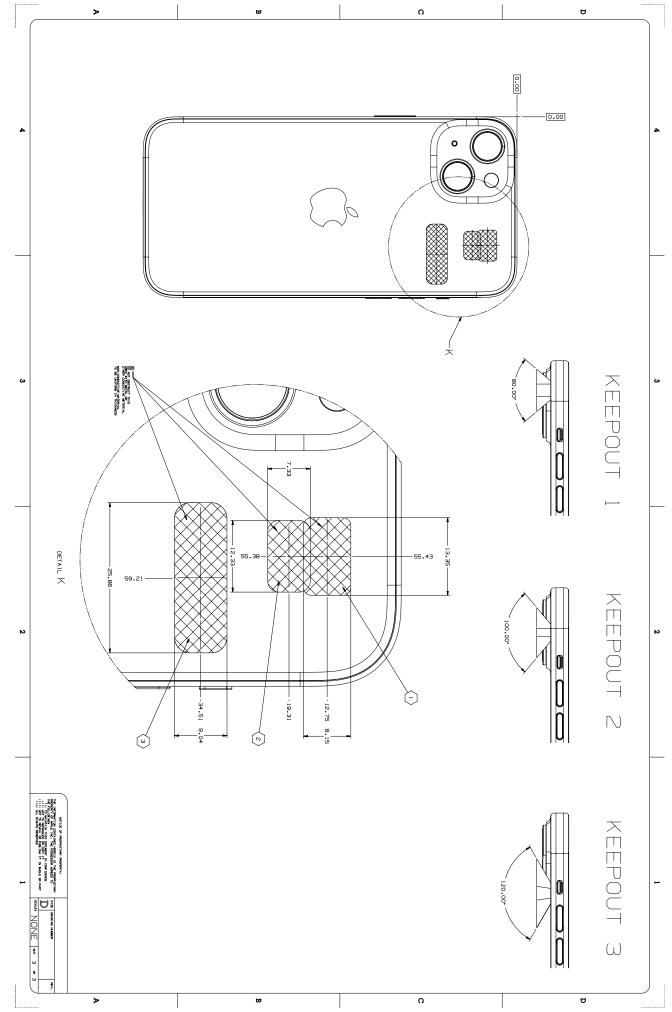
59.23 iPhone 15 Plus, 1 of 3



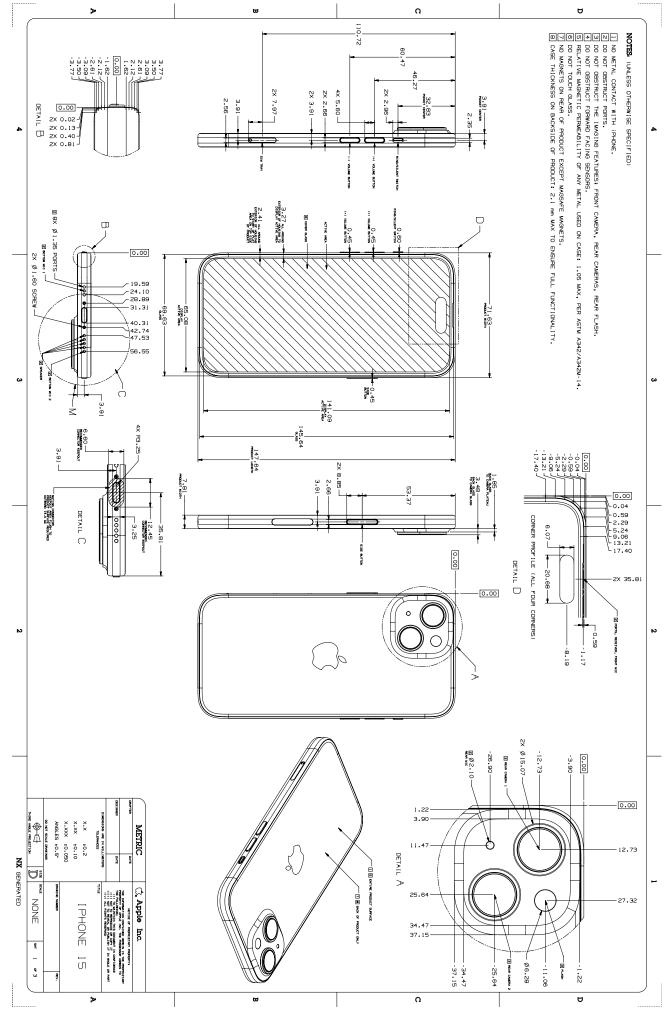
59.24 iPhone 15 Plus, 2 of 3



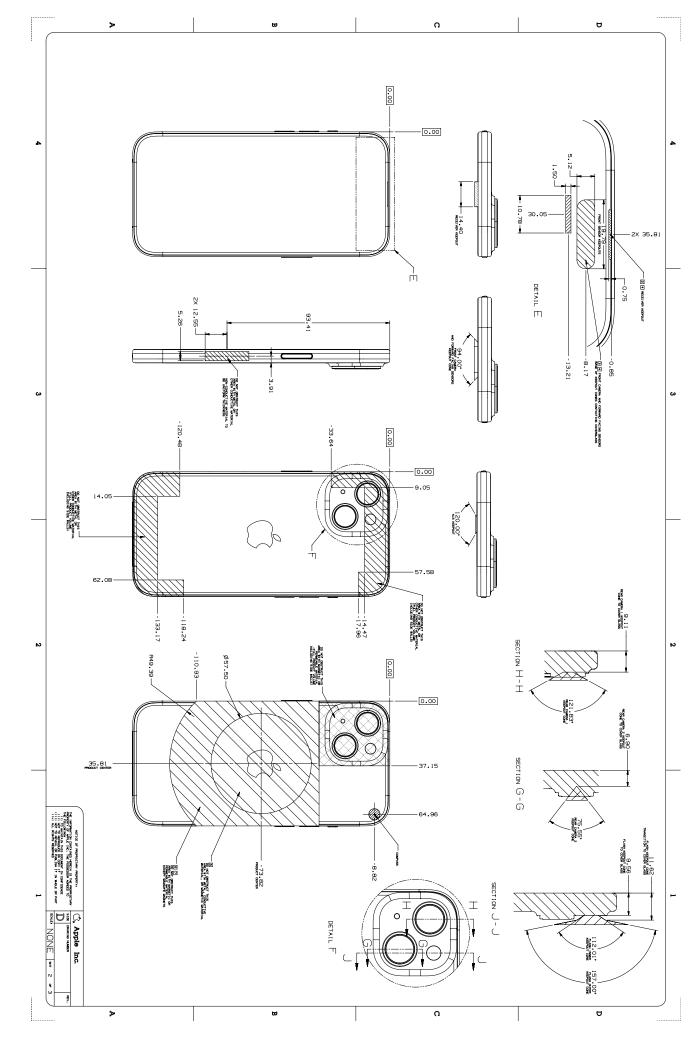
59.25 iPhone 15 Plus, 3 of 3



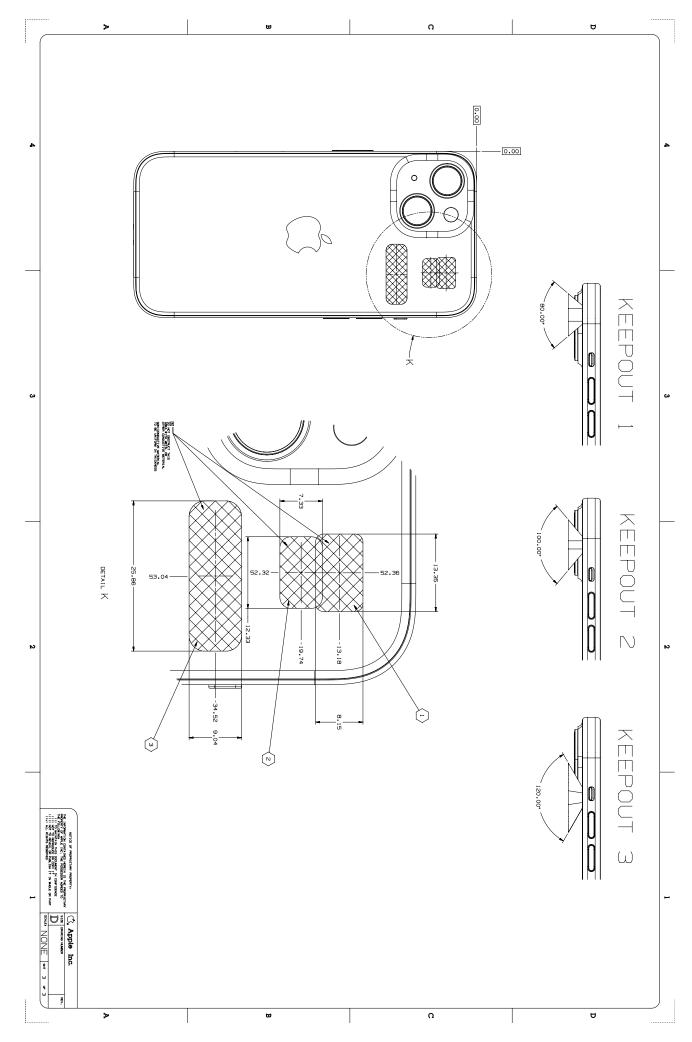
59.26 iPhone 15, 1 of 3



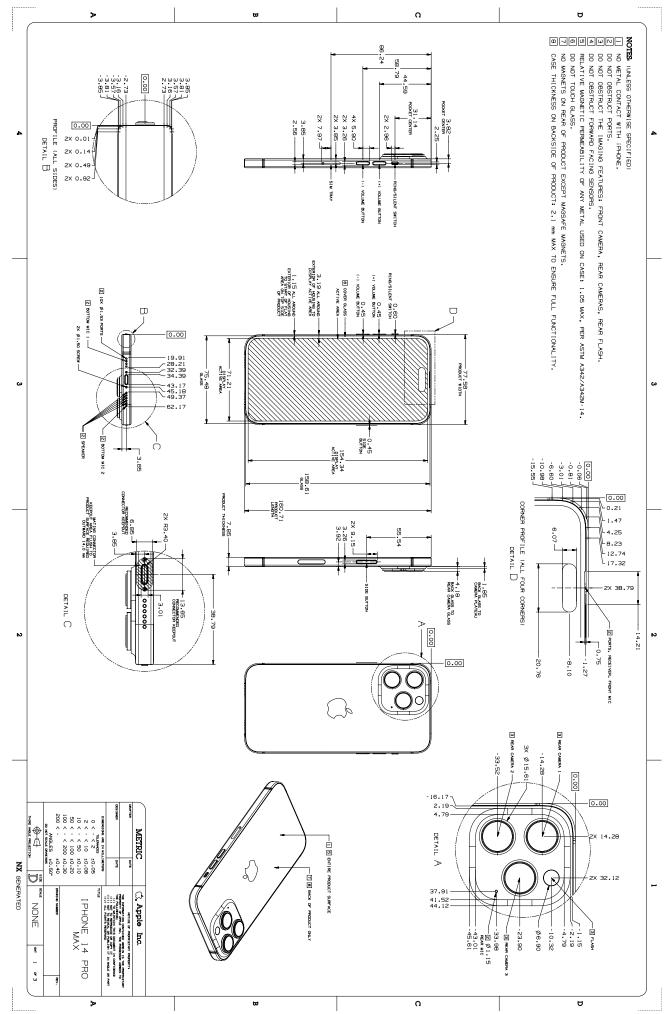
59.27 iPhone 15, 2 of 3



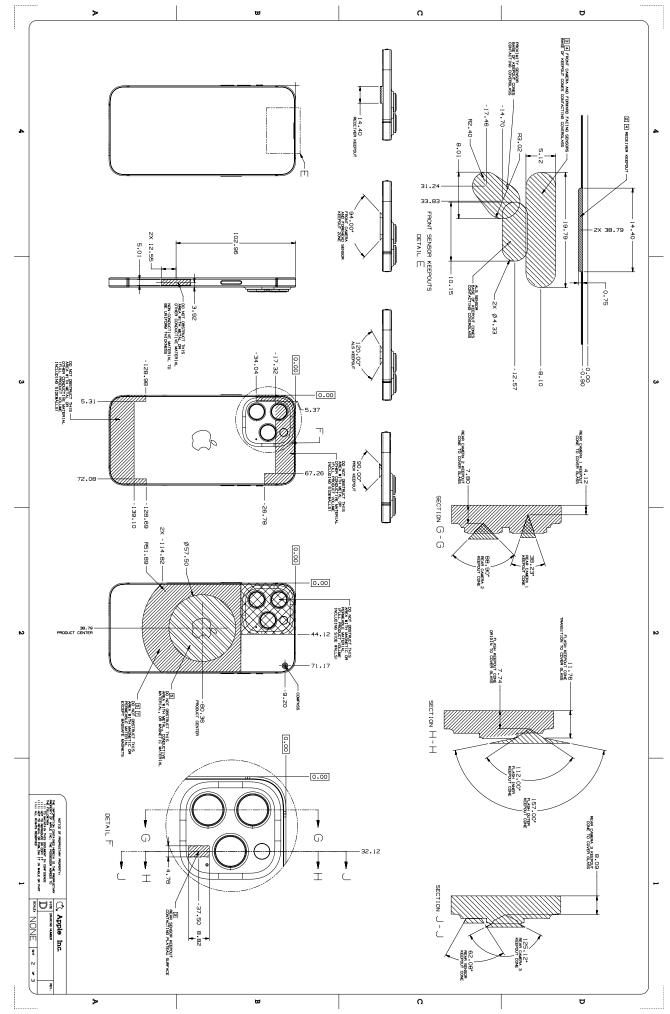
59.28 iPhone 15, 3 of 3



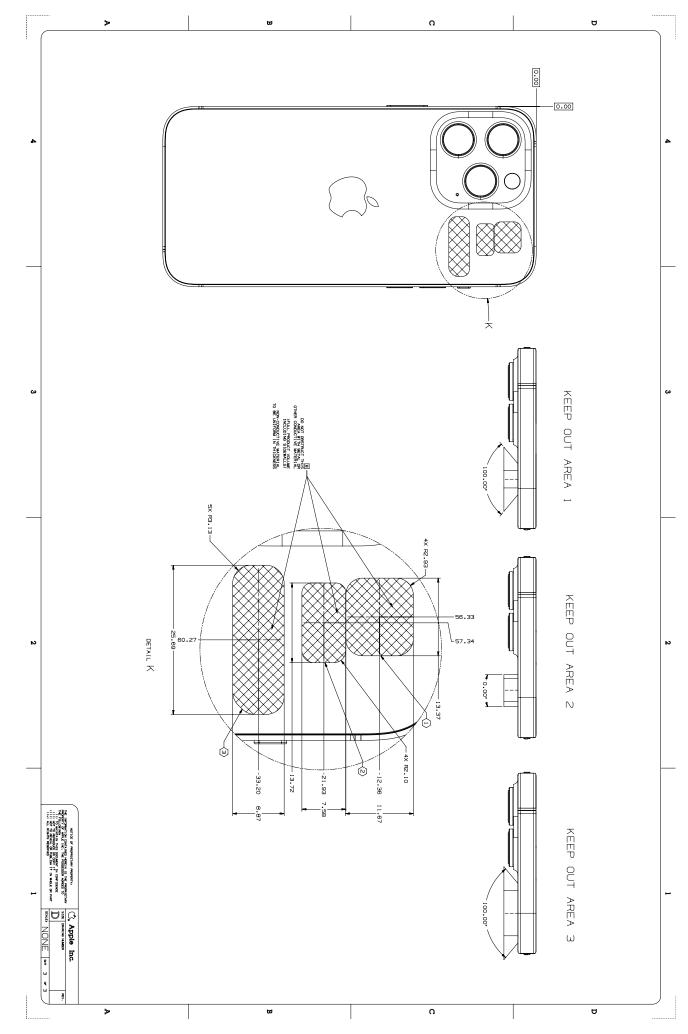
59.29 iPhone 14 Pro Max, 1 of 3

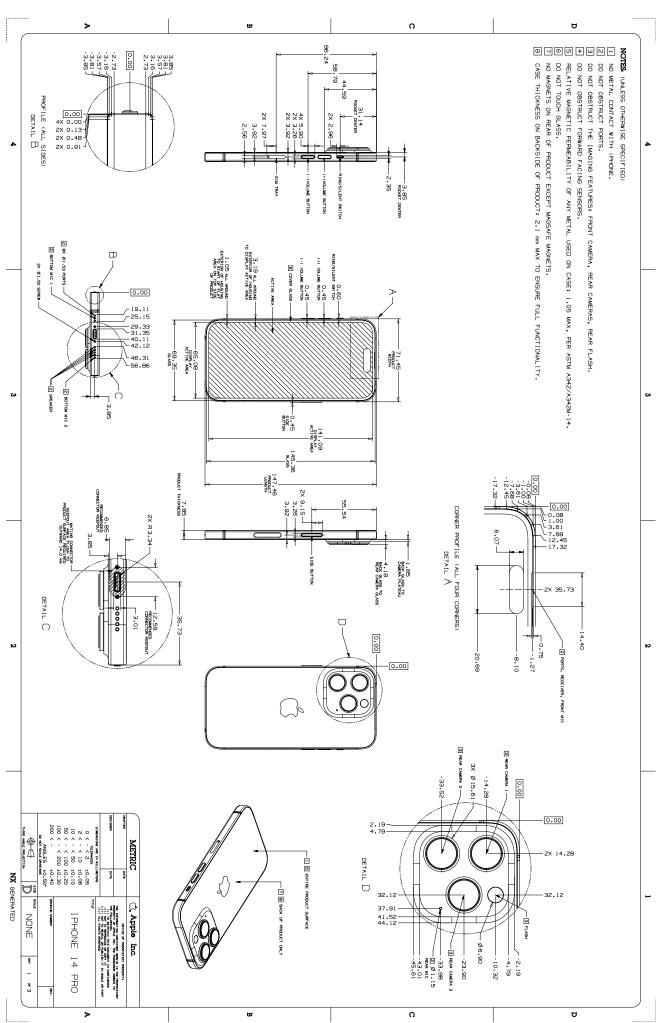


59.30 iPhone 14 Pro Max, 2 of 3

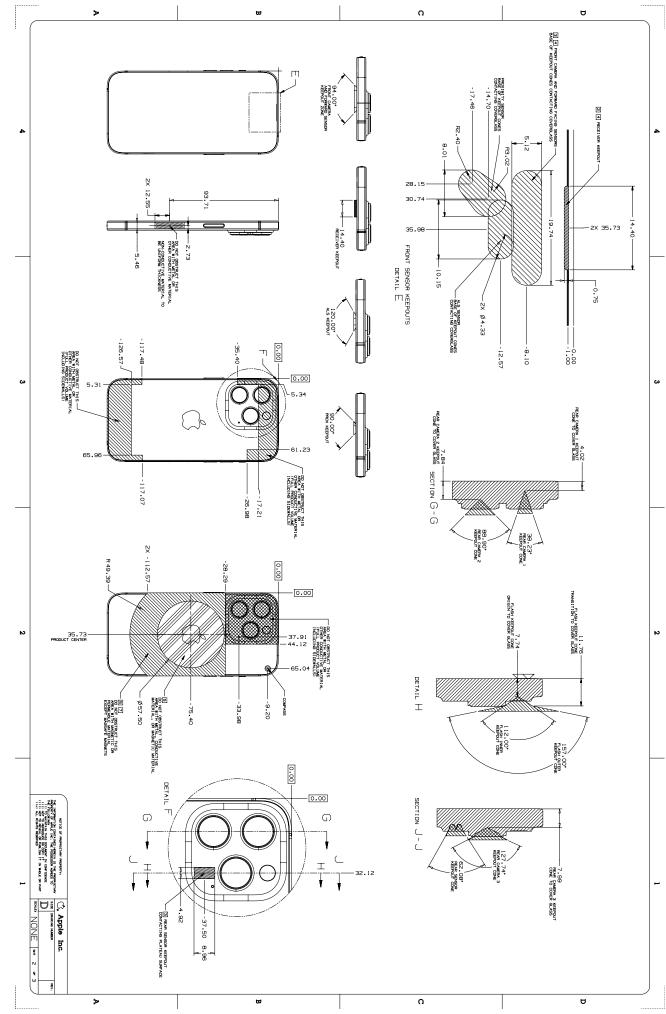


59.31 iPhone 14 Pro Max, 3 of 3

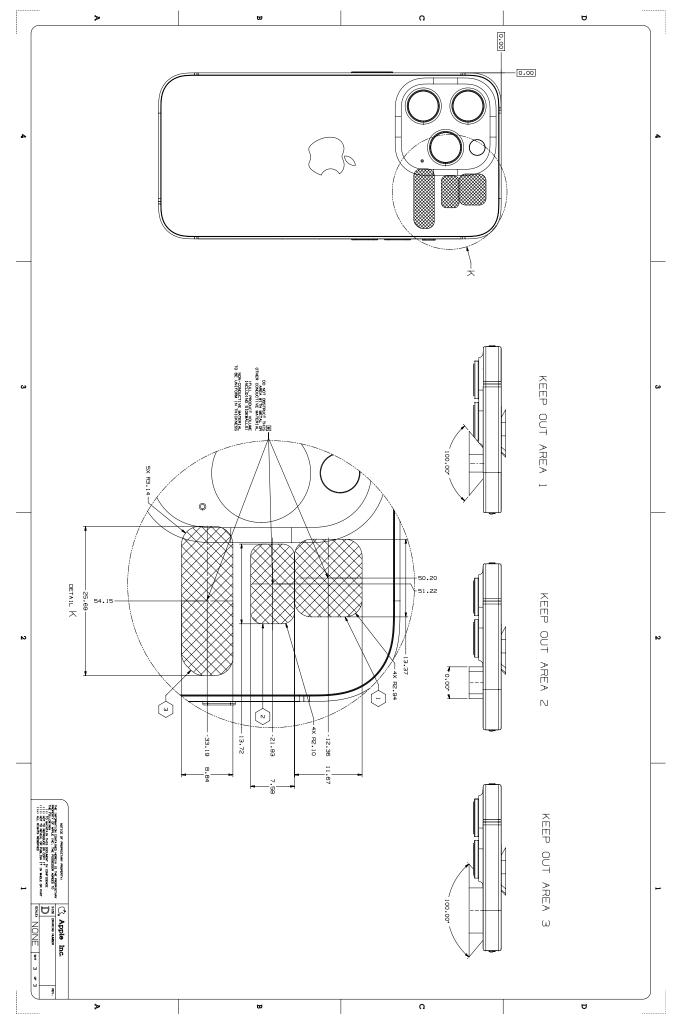




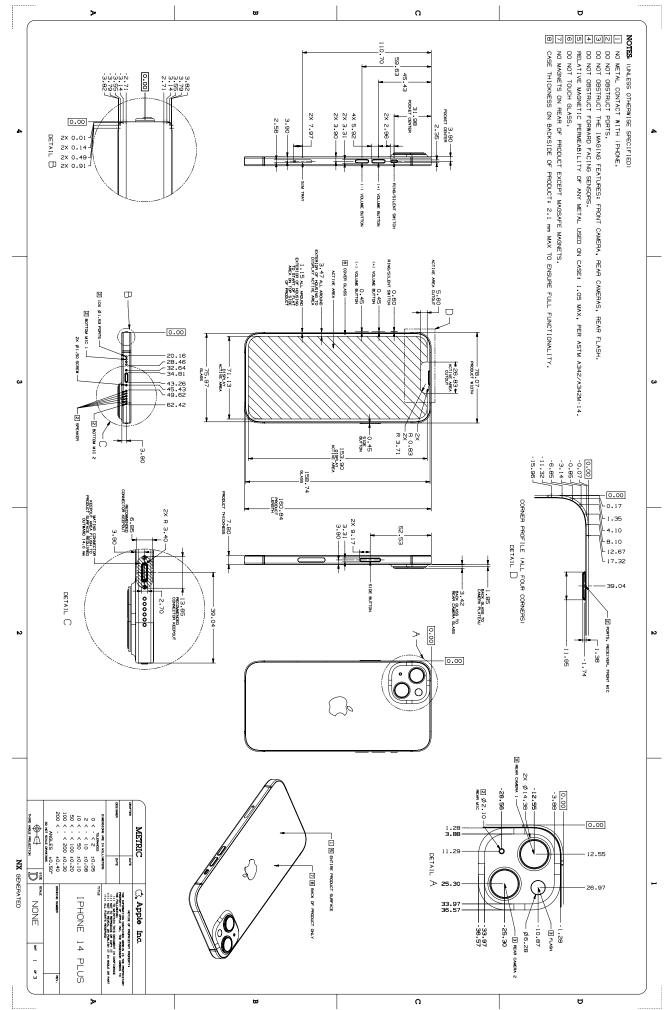
59.33 iPhone 14 Pro, 2 of 3



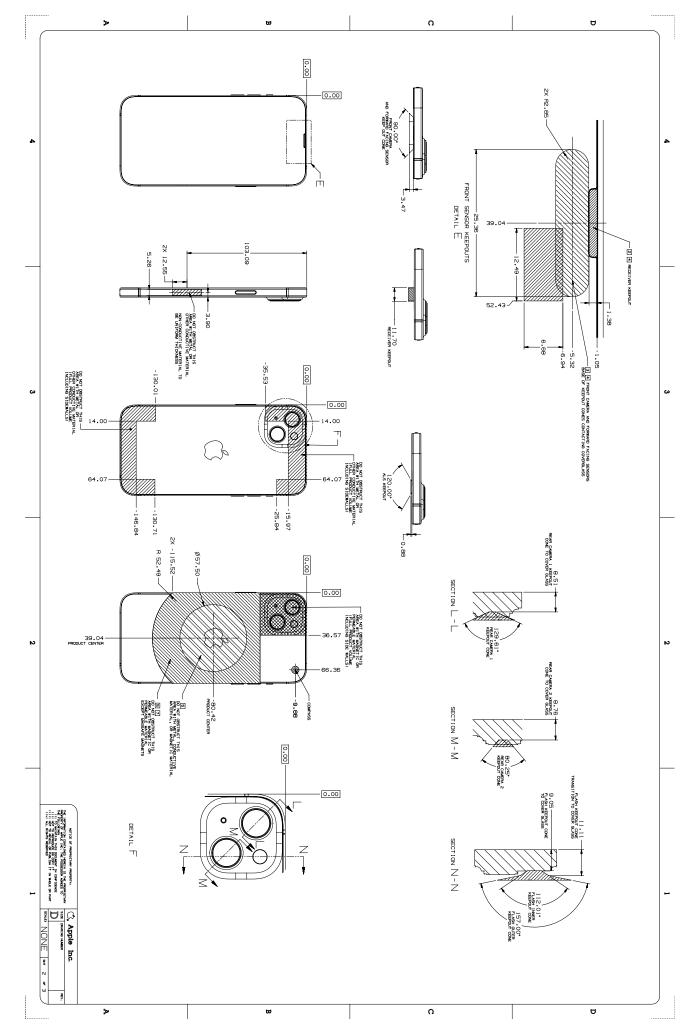
59.34 iPhone 14 Pro, 3 of 3



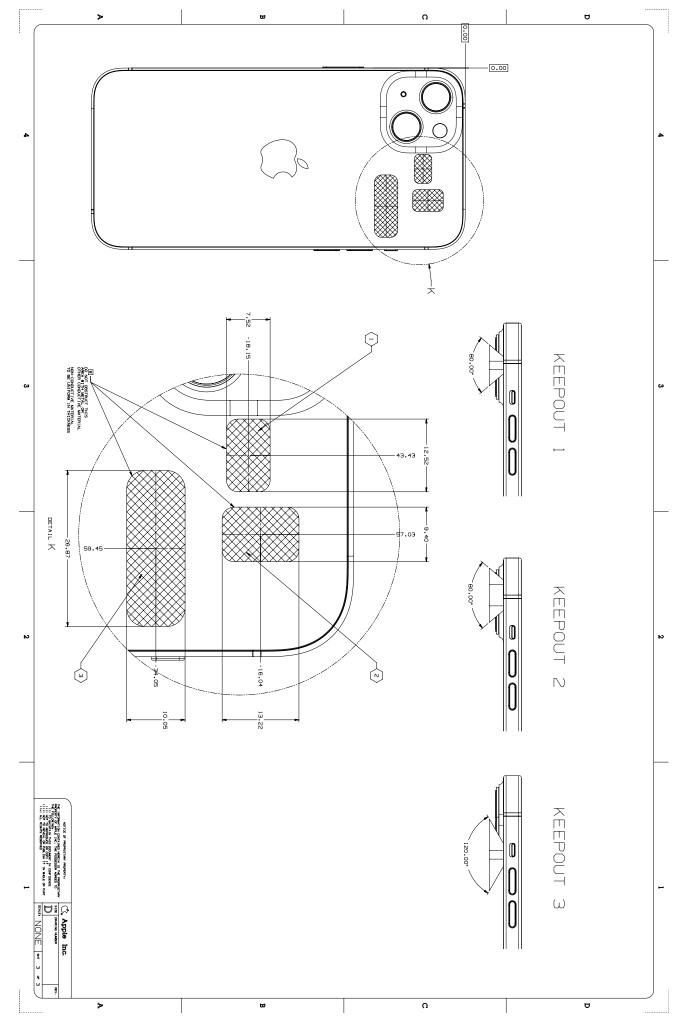
59.35 iPhone 14 Plus, 1 of 3

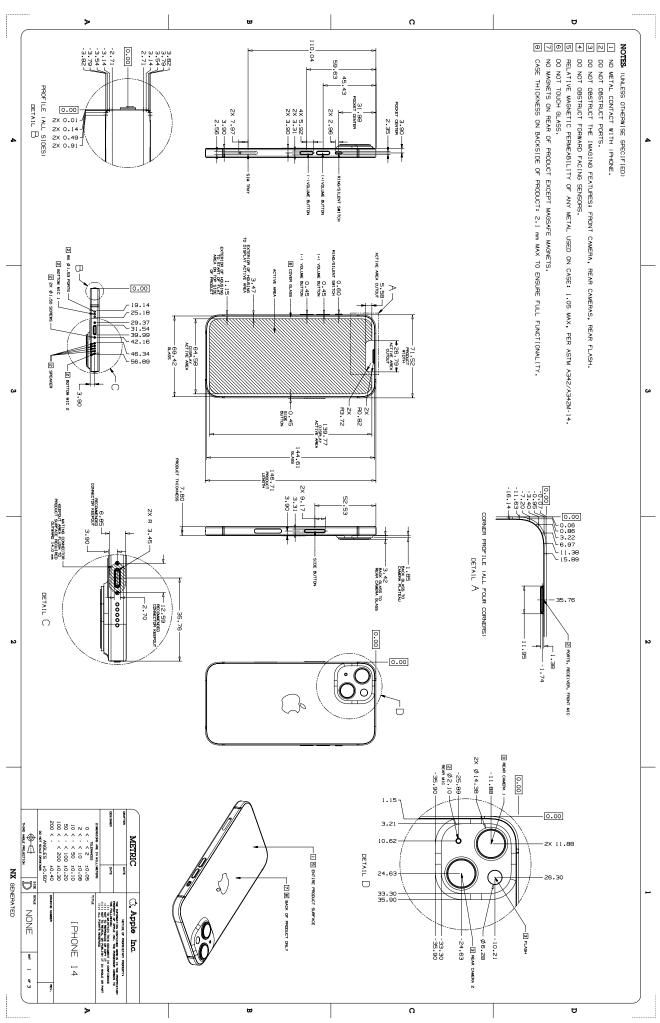


59.36 iPhone 14 Plus, 2 of 3

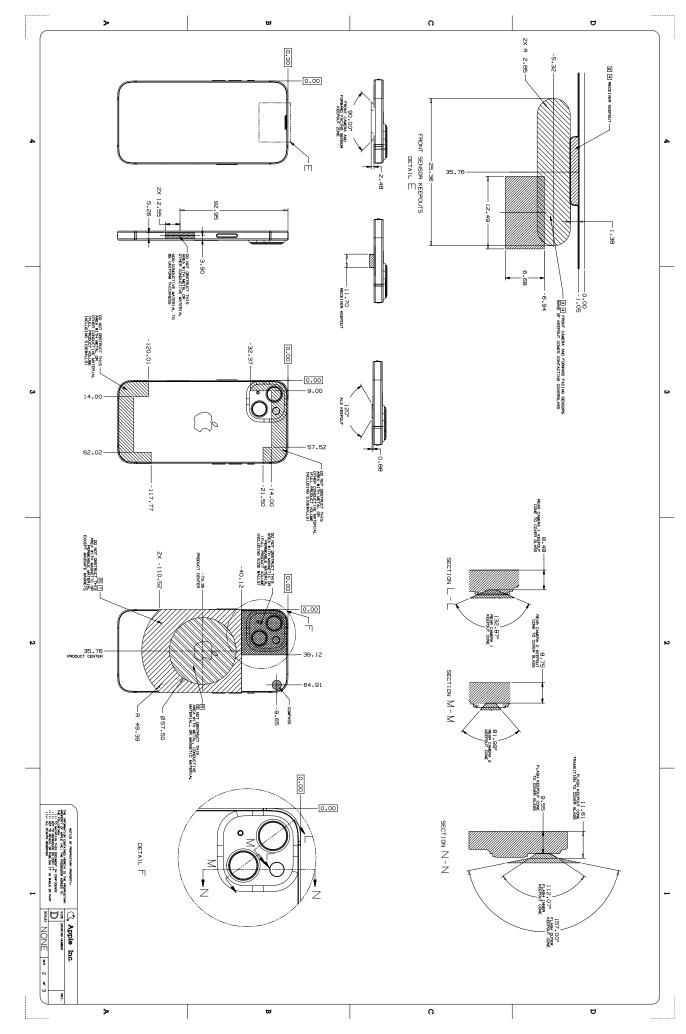


59.37 iPhone 14 Plus, 3 of 3

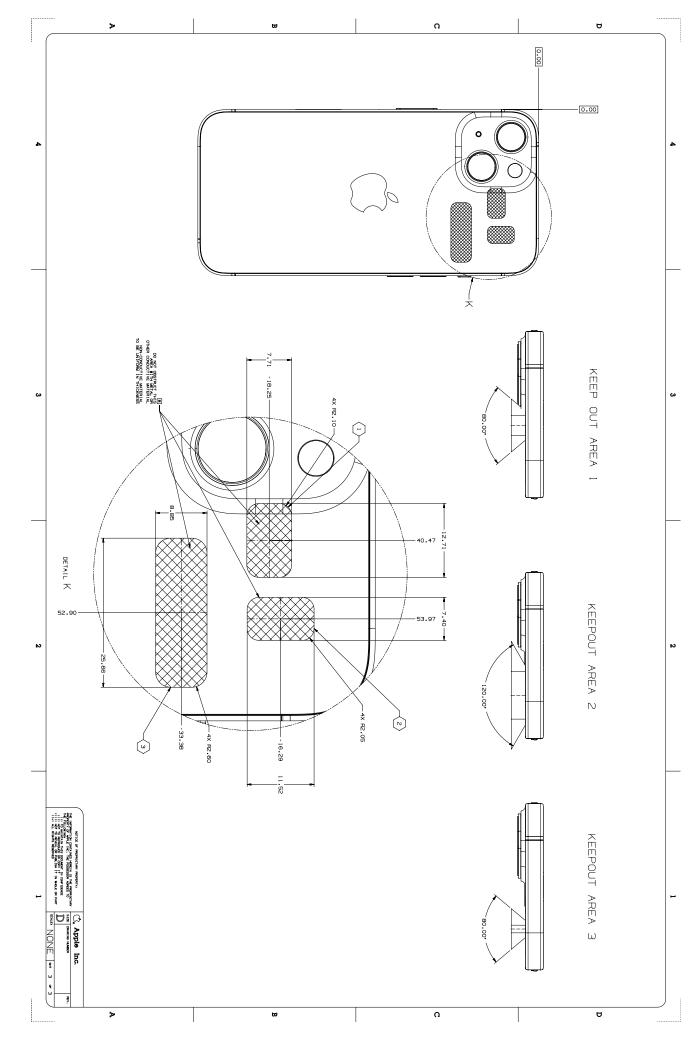




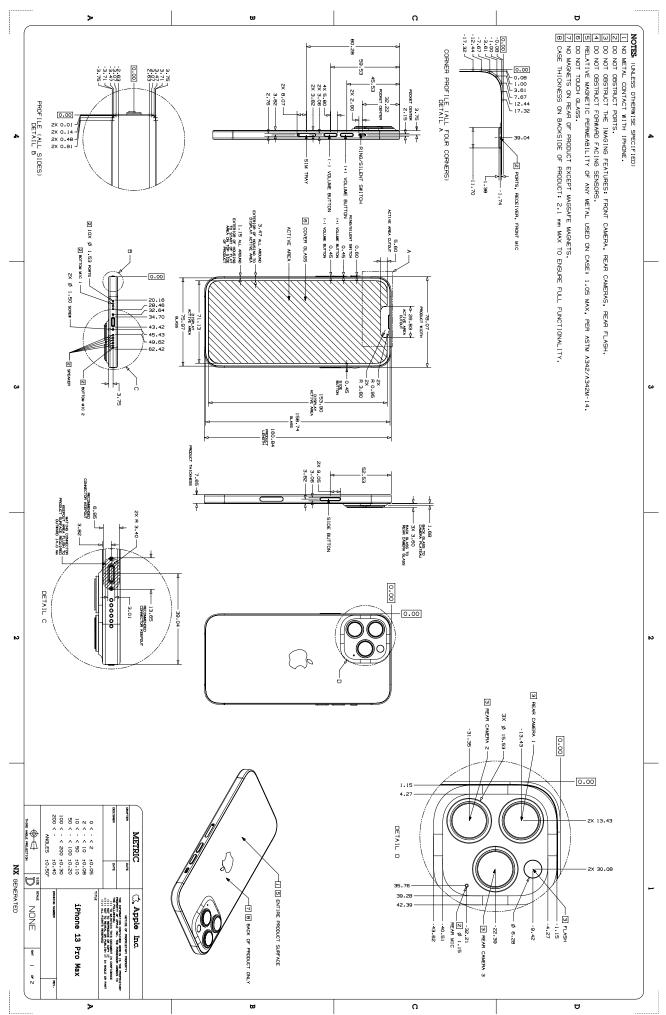
59.39 iPhone 14, 2 of 3



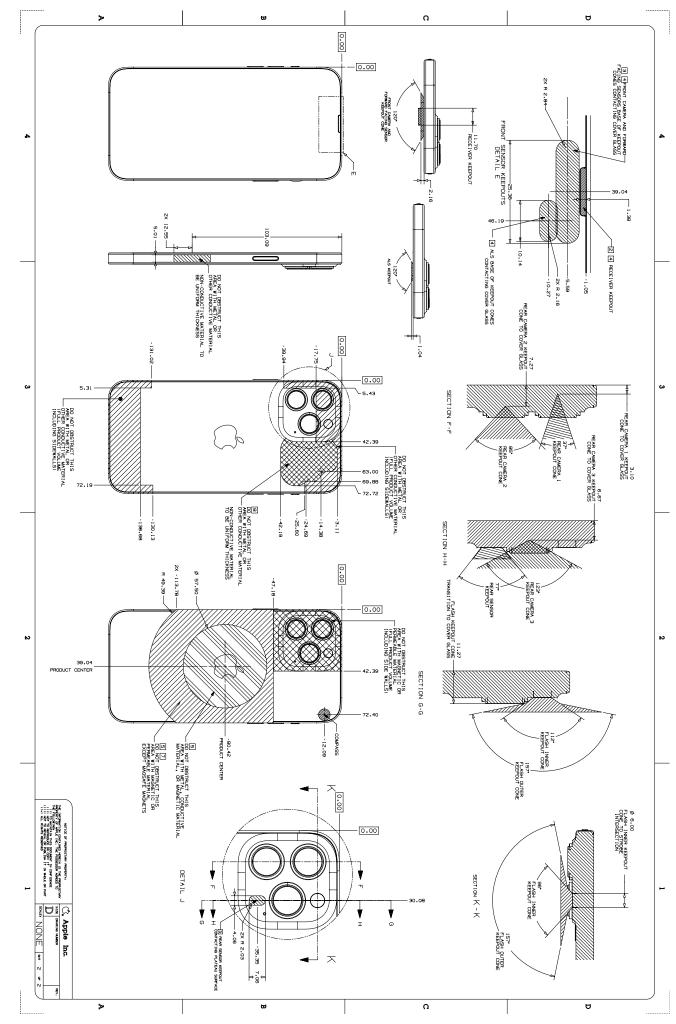
59.40 iPhone 14, 3 of 3

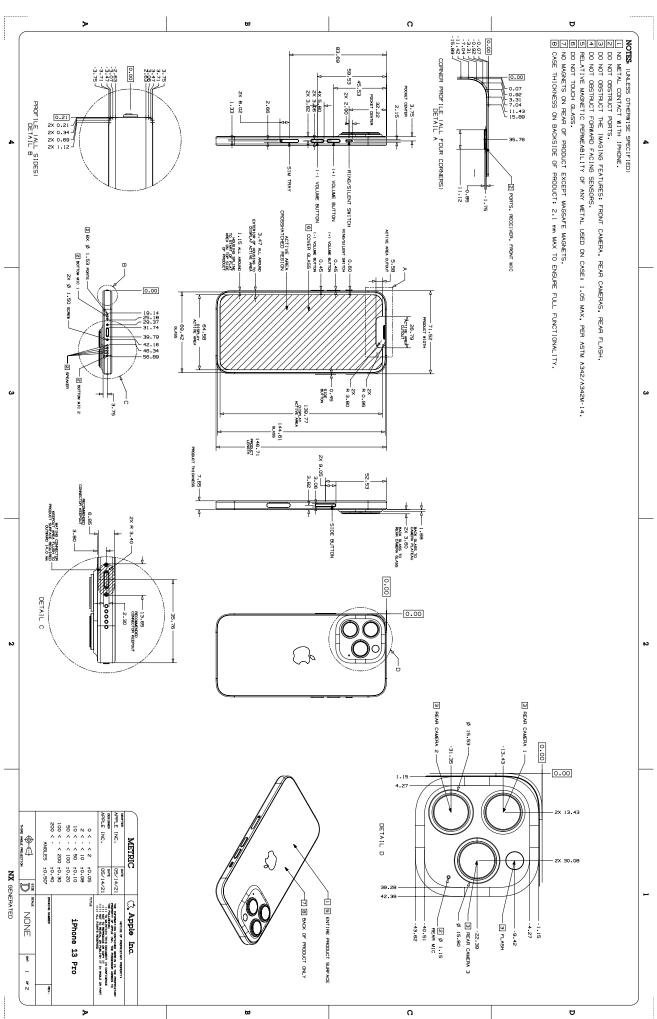


59.41 iPhone 13 Pro Max, 1 of 2

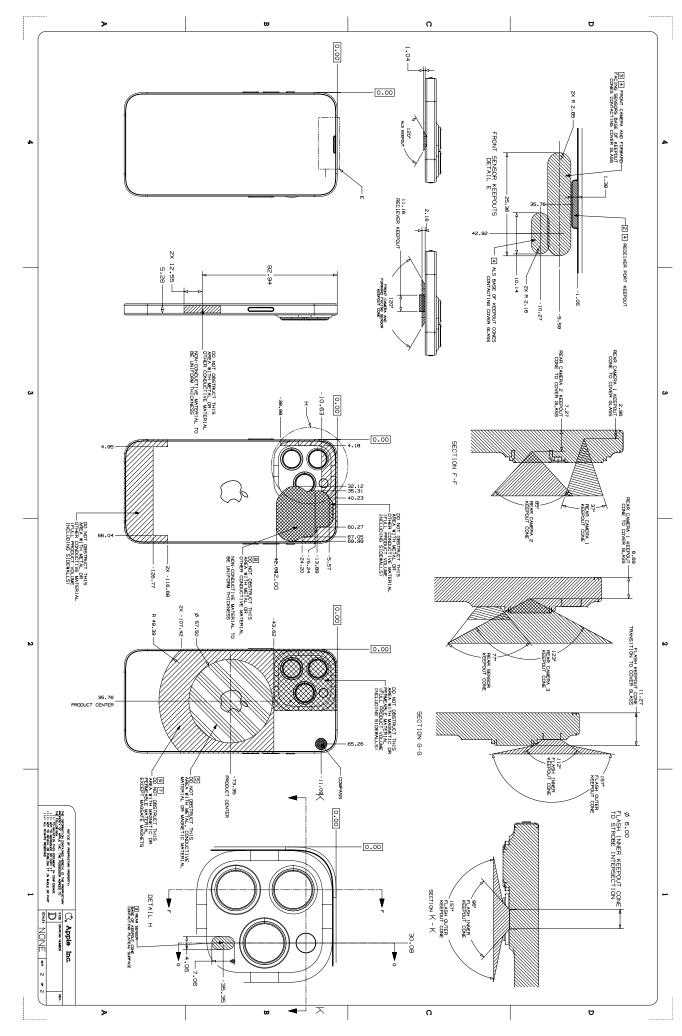


59.42 iPhone 13 Pro Max, 2 of 2





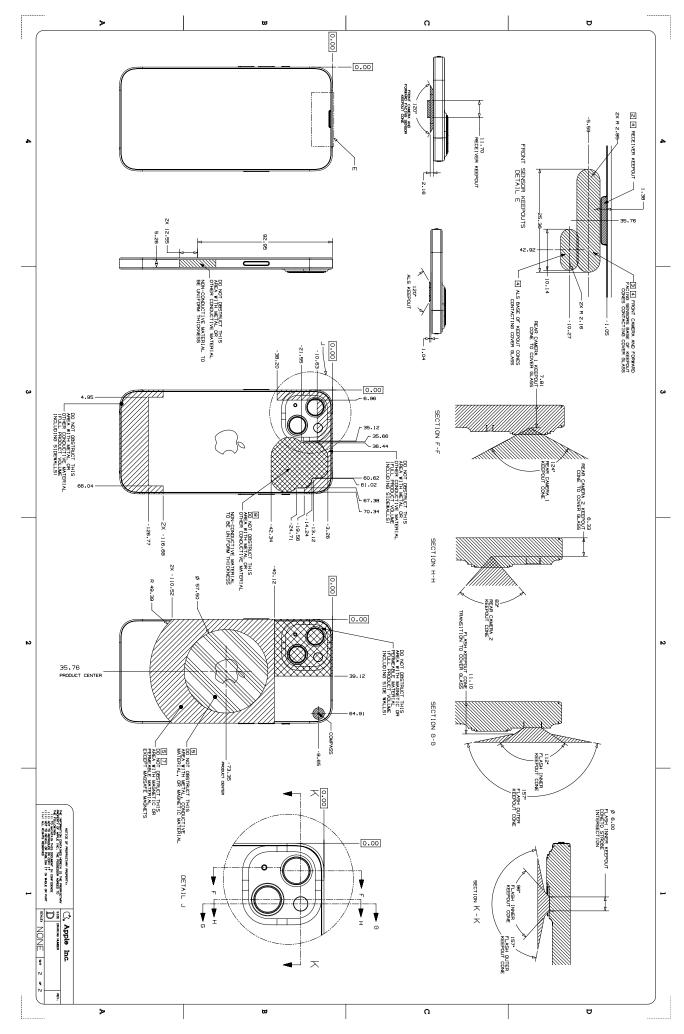
59.44 iPhone 13 Pro, 2 of 2



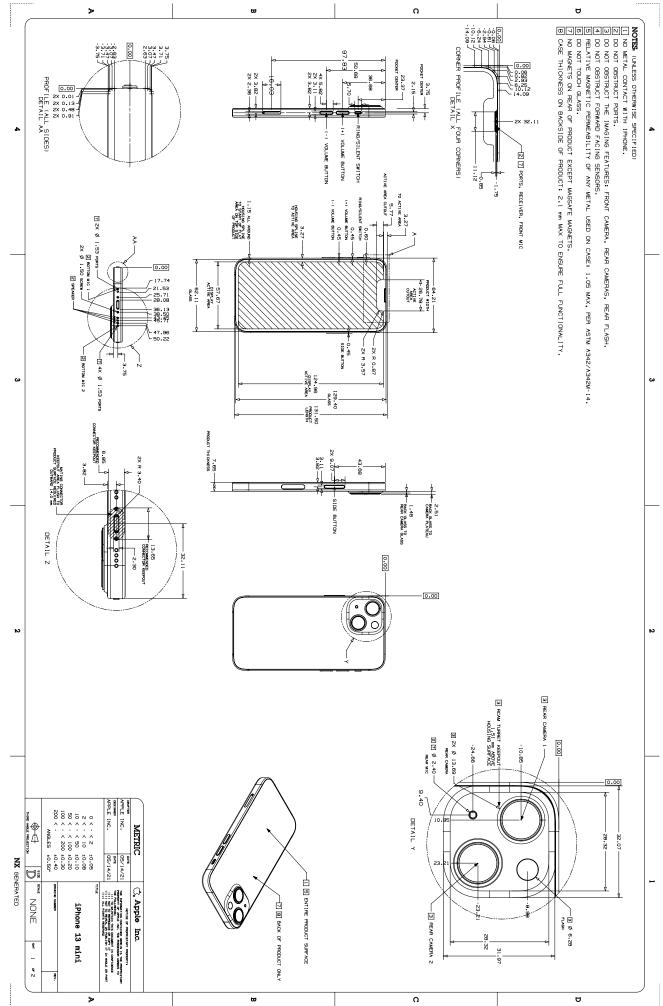
Ω U NOTES (UNLESS OTHERWISE SPECIFIED) I NO METAL CONTACT WITH IPHONE. DO NOT OBSTRUCT PORTS. DO NOT OBSTRUCT THE IMMGING FEATURES: FRONT CAMERA, REAR CAMERAS, REAR FLASH. DO NOT OBSTRUCT FORWARD FACING SENSORS. SHELATIVE MAGNETIC PERWEABILITY OF ANY METAL USED ON CASE: 1.05 MAX, PER ASTM A342/A342W-14. DO NOT TOUCH GLASS. NO NOT OUGH GLASS. NO MAGNETS ON PEAR OF PRODUCT EXCEPT MAGSAFE MAGNETS. 0.00 3.47 3.71 3.71 3.71 0.00 0.07 0.92 3.31 7.04 4x 5.82 — 2x 3.11 — 2x 3.82 — PROFILE (ALL SIDES) 15.89 0.00 2X 0.01 -2X 0.14 -2X 0.48 -2X 0.91 -RING/SILENT SWITCH (-) VOLUME BUTTON RING/SILENT L1.38 ---11.70 2 PORTS, RECEIVER, FRONT MIC 6 COVER GLASS 3.47 ALL AROUND EXTERIOR OF HOUSING TO DISPLAY ACTIVE AREA 0.45-0.45 -1.15 ALL ADVISOR EXTERIOR OF TOXING TOXING TOXING TOXING OF TOXING TOXI ACTIVE AREA -2 8X Ø 1.53 PORTS 2 BOTTOM MIC 1 2X Ø 1.50 SCREW - 19.14 - 25.18 - 29.37 - 31.74 - 39.79 - 42.16 - 46.34 - 56.89 ACTIVE AREA - 64.58 -DISPLAY ACTIVE AREA - 69.42 -GLASS - 2X - 2X - 23.80 - 0.45 - 2 BOTTOM MIC 2 ω ω 139.77 PRODUCT LENGTH MATING CONNECTOR KEEPOUT AREA FLUSH TO PRODUCT SURFACE REQUIRED OUTWARD 14.0 mm --- 1.50 BACK GLASS TO CAMERA PLATEAU --- 3X 2.59 BACK GLASS TO REAR CAMERA GLASS SIDE BUTTON 0.00 DETAIL C 0000 -2.30 -- 13.65 RECOMMENDED CONNECTOR KEEPOUT \bigcirc 3 REAR CAMERA 2x Ø 13.69 -11.88 0.00 -25.69 Z Ø Z.40 REAR MIC 0.00 1.15 3.64 APPLE INC. 0 < - < 2 :0.05 2 < - < 10 :0.08 10 < - < 50 :0.10 50 < - < 100 :0.20 100 < - < 200 :0.30 200 < - :0.40 ANNLES :0.50* THIRD ANGLE PROJECTION DETAIL D METRIC NX GENERATED U I S ENTIRE PRODUCT SURFACE 32.48 35.12 ், Apple Inc. OTICE OF RECHEIVE RECEPTIVE RECEPTIVE RECEPTIVE RECEIVER RECEIVE RECEIVER R NONE T B BACK OF PRODUCT ONLY . ∃ FLASH iPhone 13 - 3 REAR CAMERA 2 -3.64 - Ø 6.28 -10.01 -24.24 ž QF 2 Α В C U

59.45 iPhone 13, 1 of 2

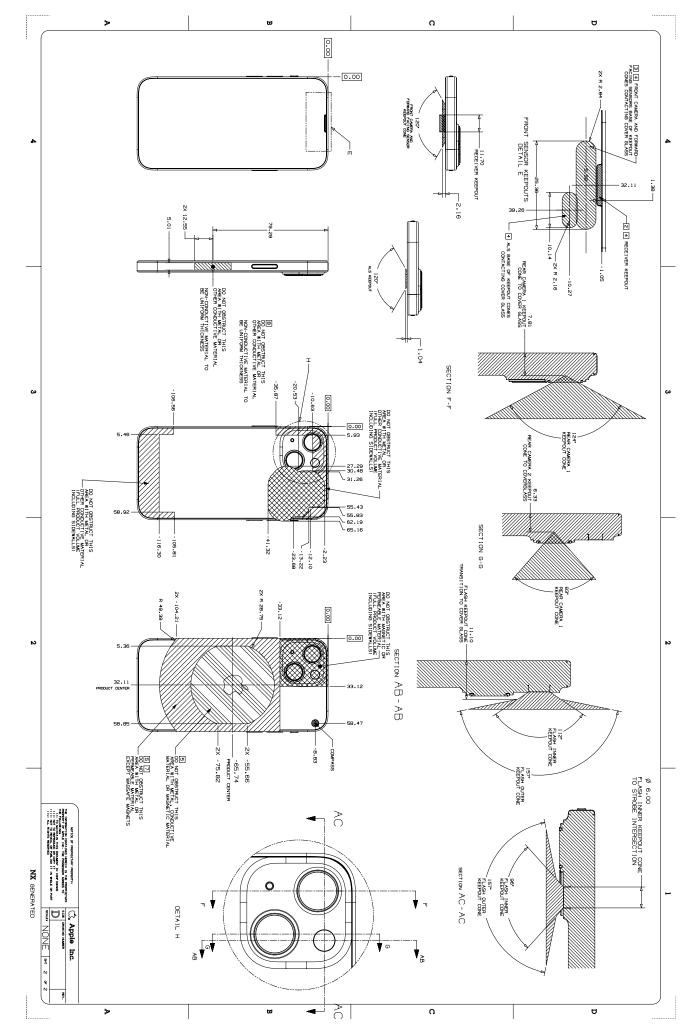
59.46 iPhone 13, 2 of 2



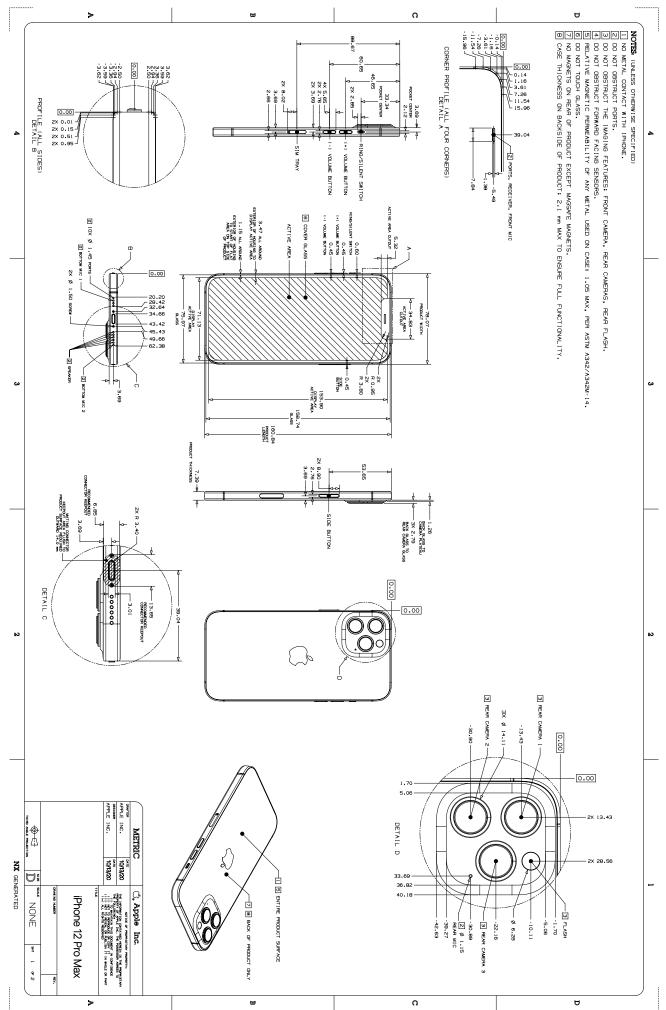
59.47 iPhone 13 mini, 1 of 2



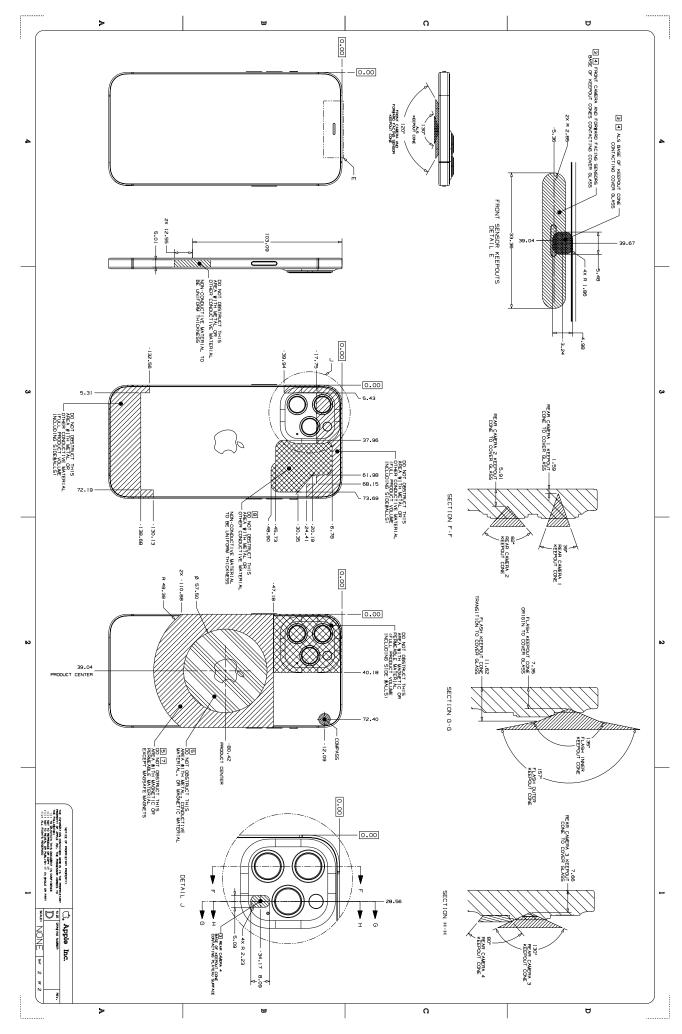
59.48 iPhone 13 mini, 2 of 2

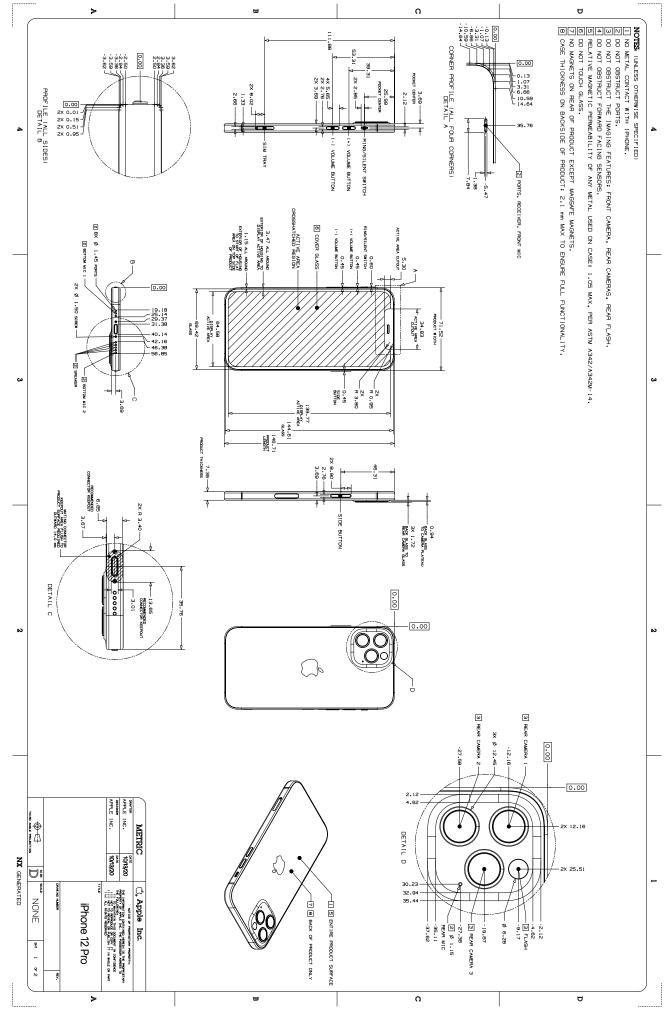


59.49 iPhone 12 Pro Max, 1 of 2

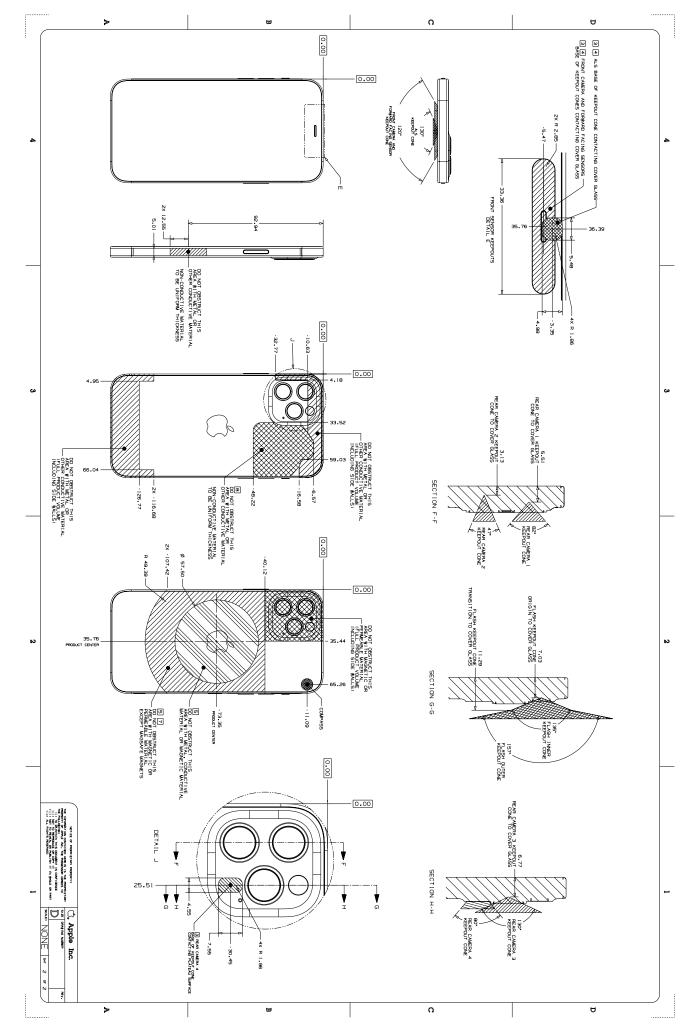


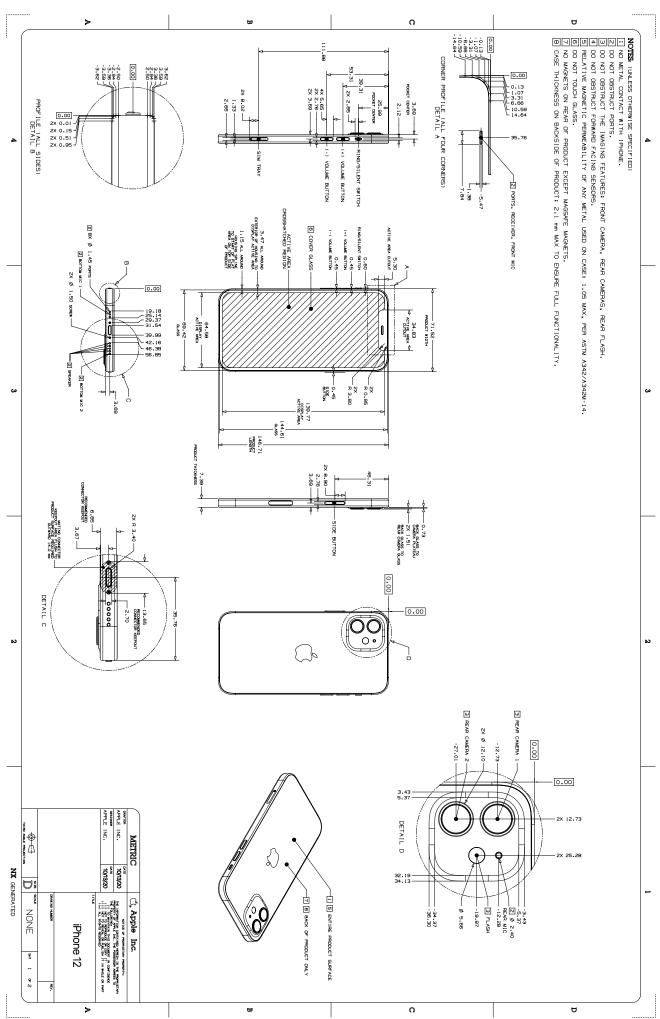
59.50 iPhone 12 Pro Max, 2 of 2



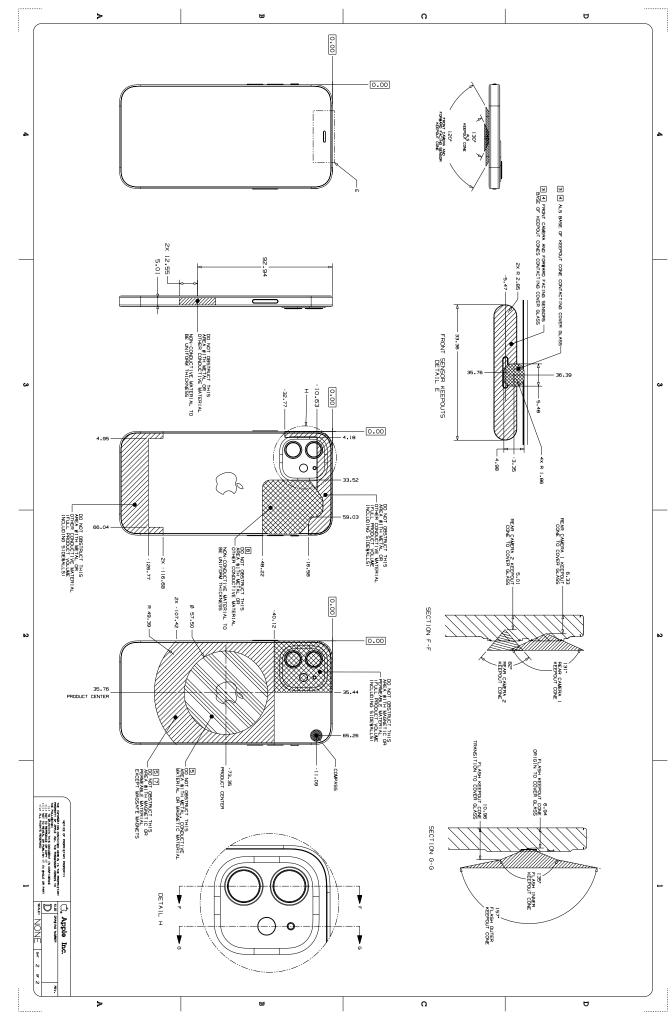


59.52 iPhone 12 Pro, 2 of 2

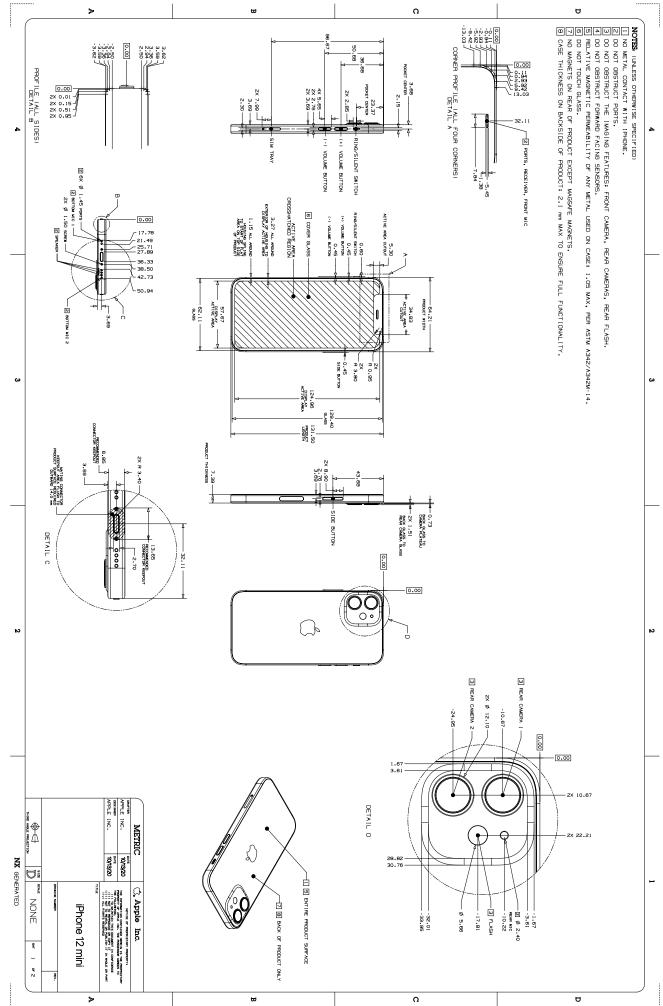




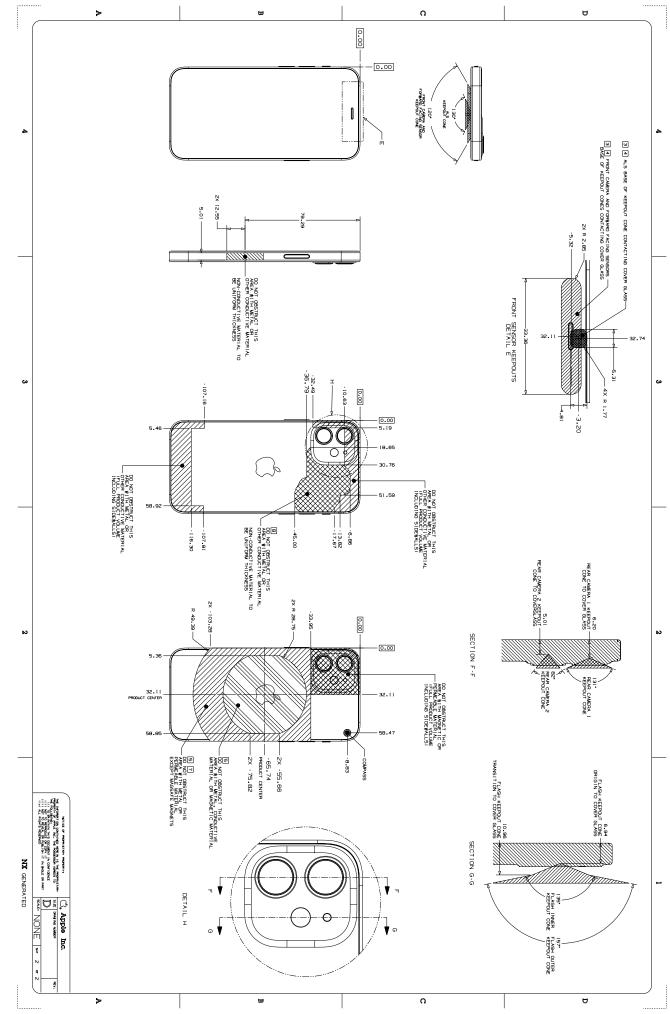
59.54 iPhone 12, 2 of 2



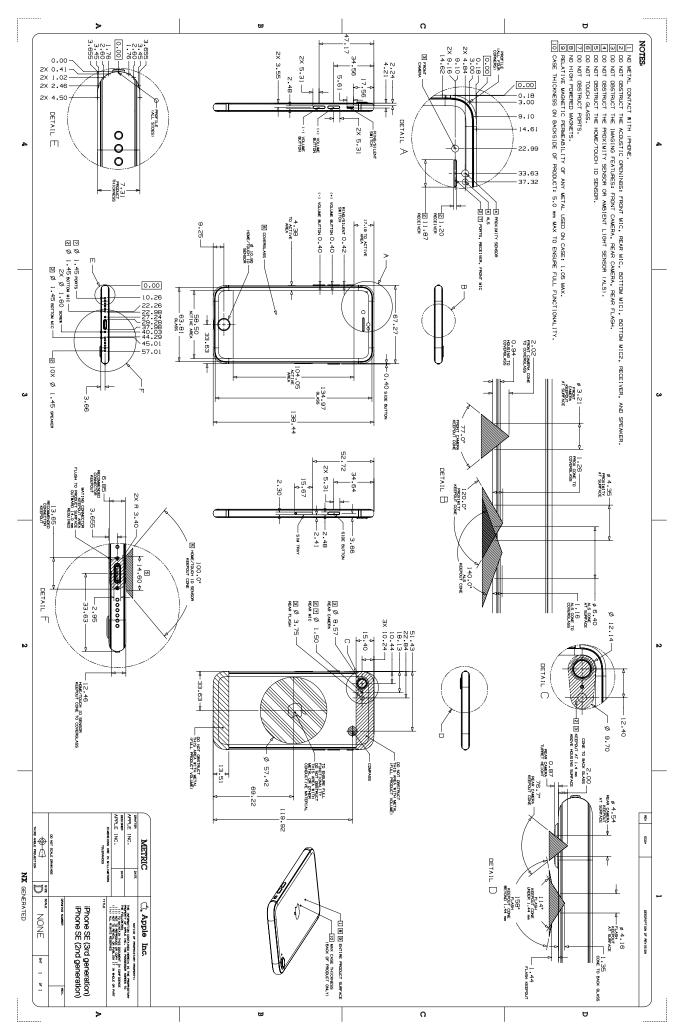
59.55 iPhone 12 mini, 1 of 2

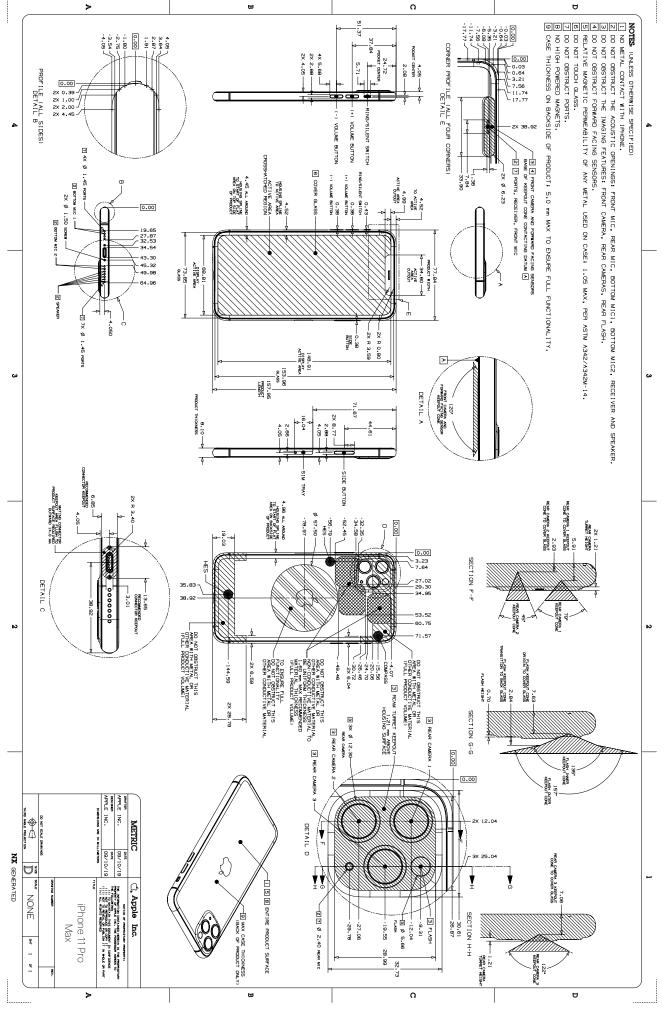


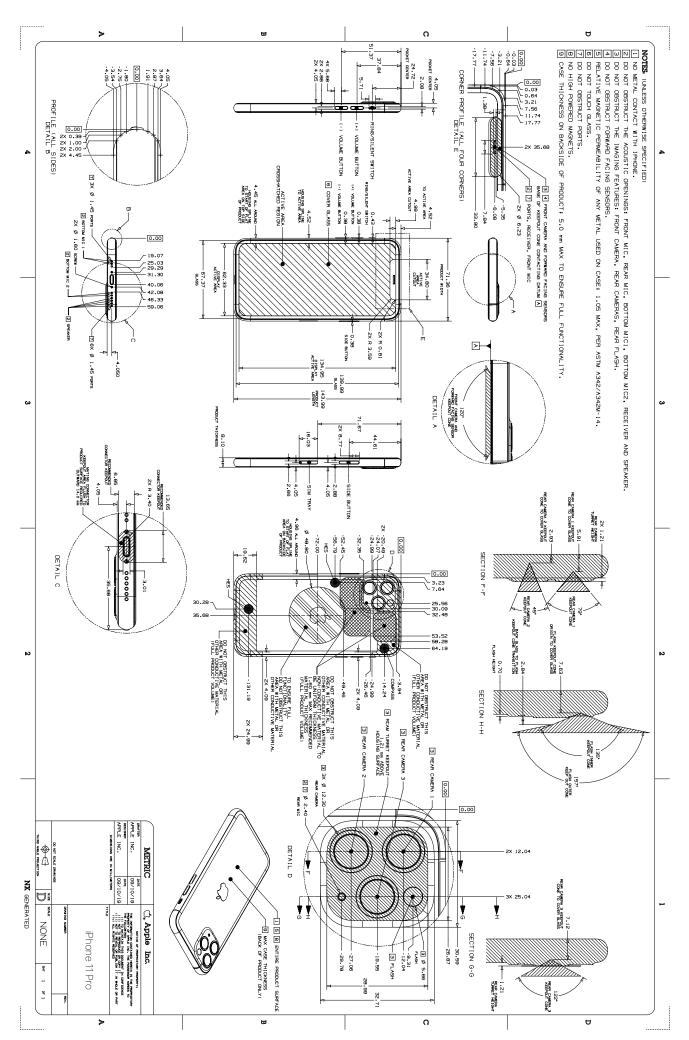
59.56 iPhone 12 mini, 2 of 2

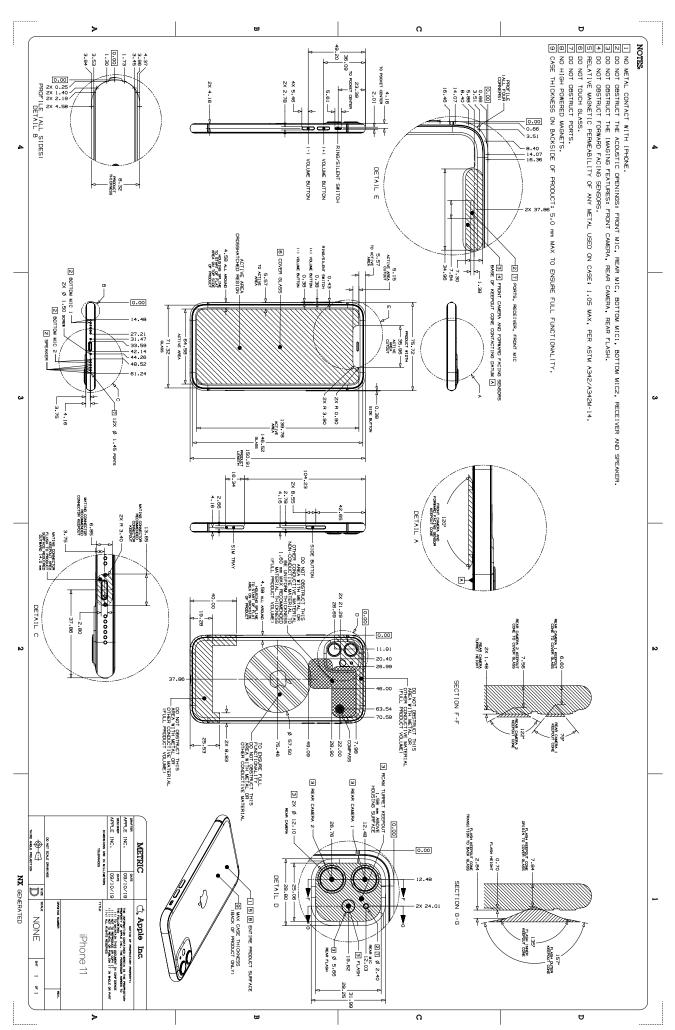


59.57 iPhone SE (3rd generation) and iPhone SE (2nd generation)

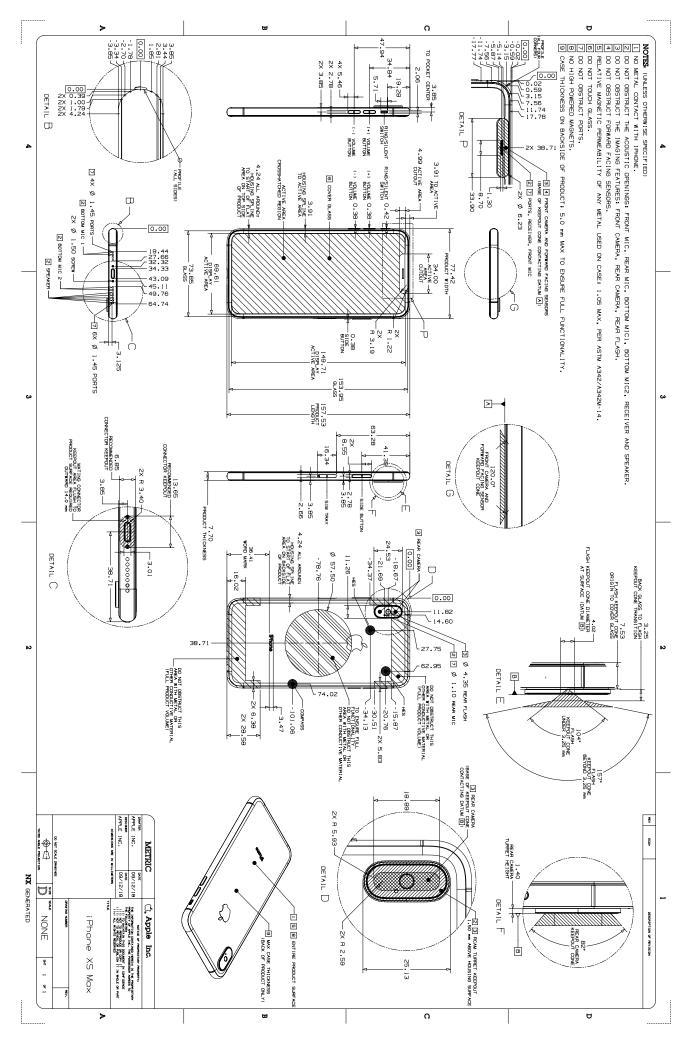




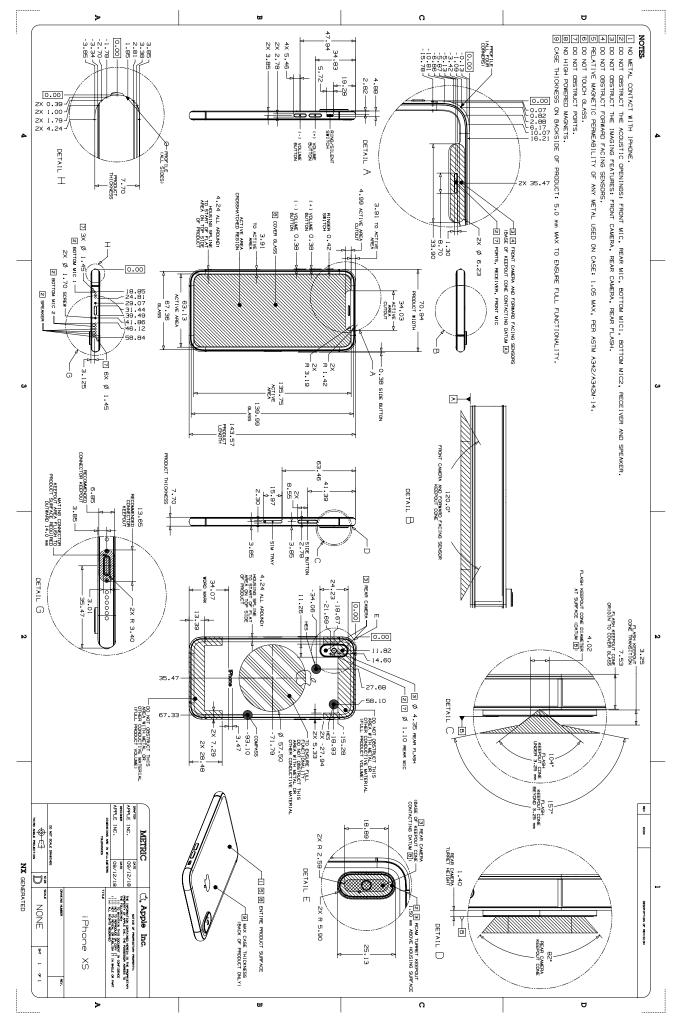




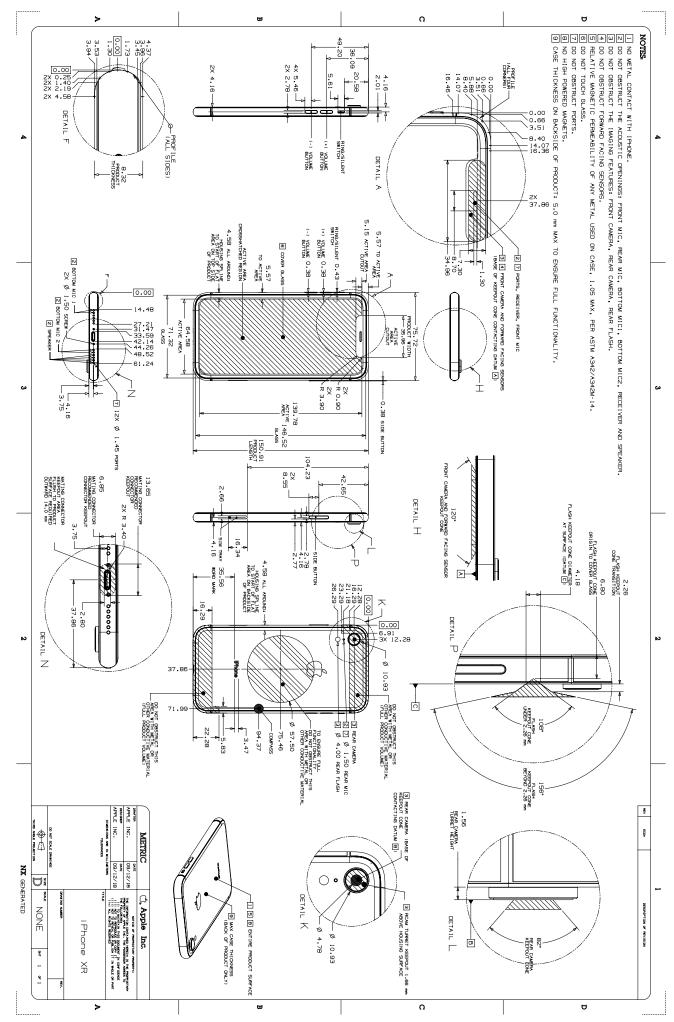
59.61 iPhone XS Max



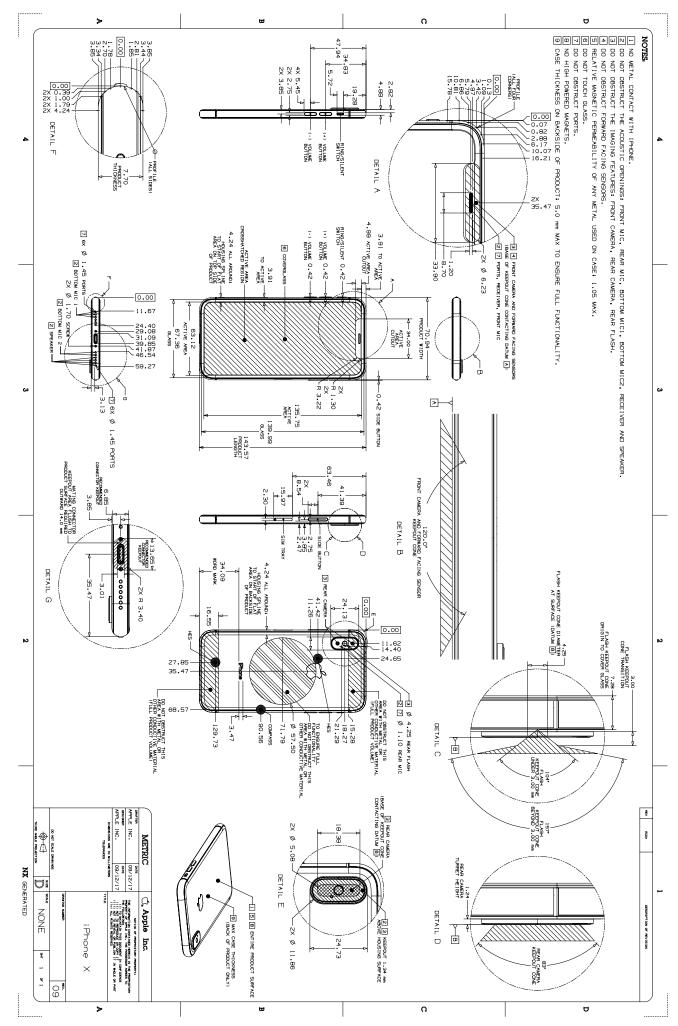
59.62 iPhone XS



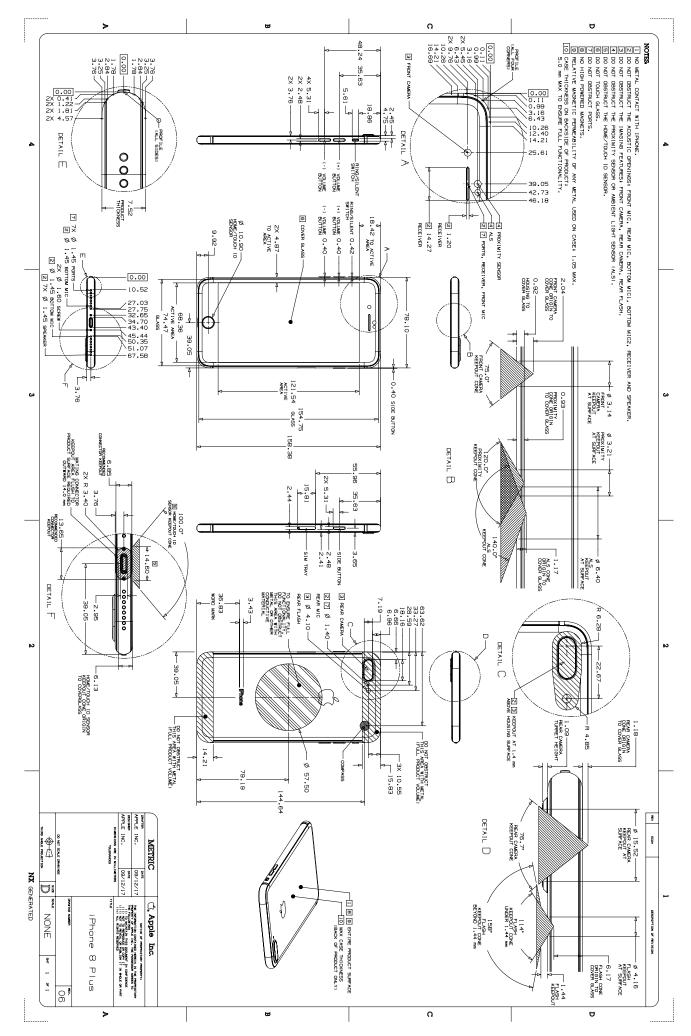
59.63 iPhone XR



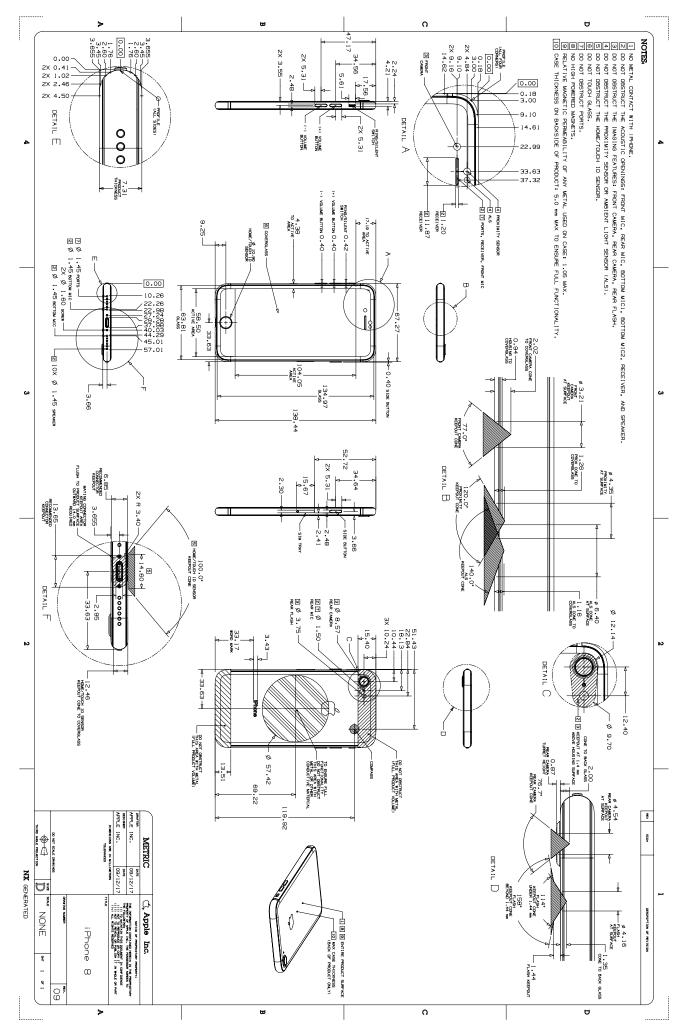
59.64 iPhone X



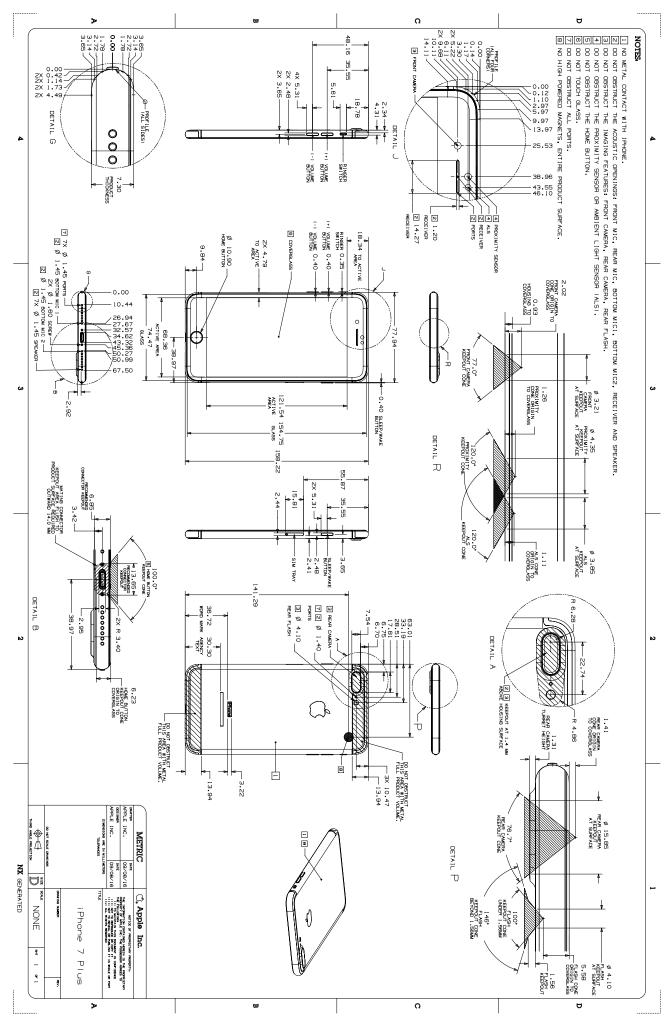
59.65 iPhone 8 Plus



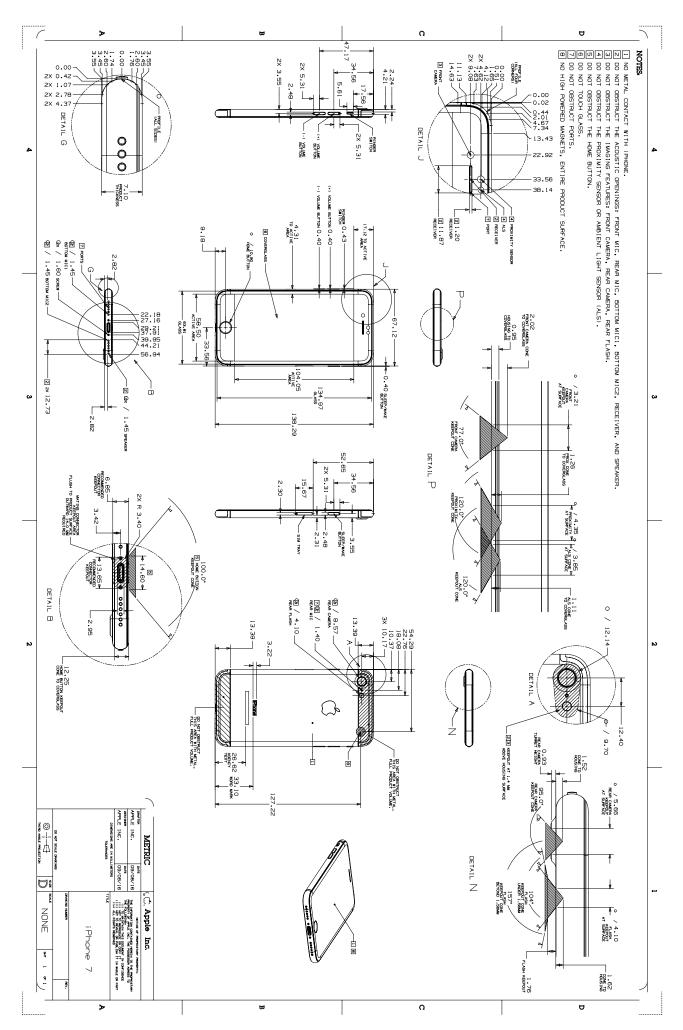
59.66 iPhone 8



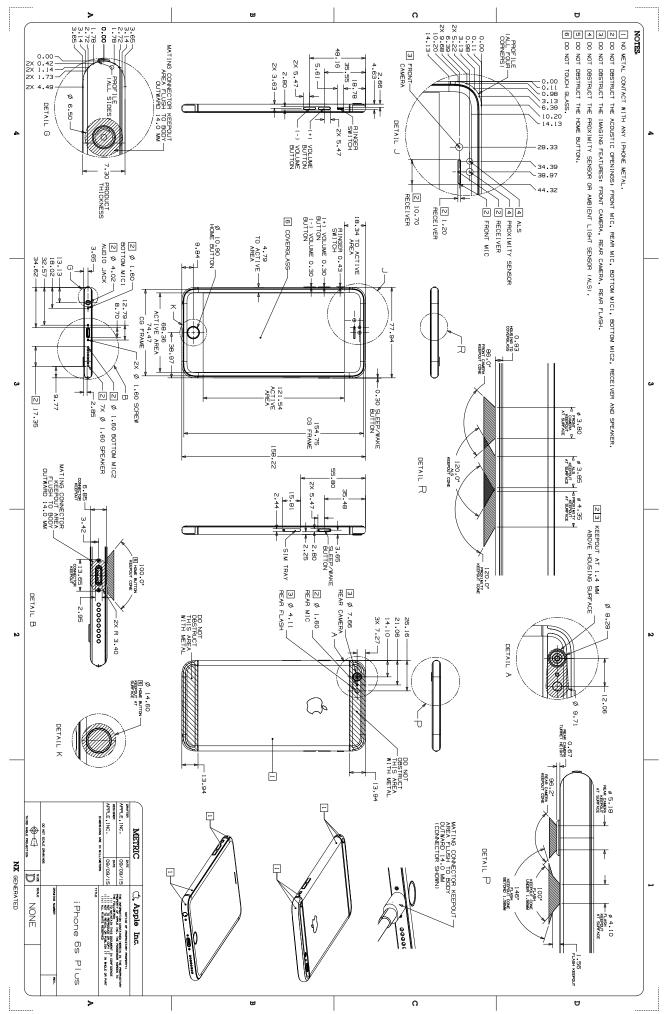
59.67 iPhone 7 Plus



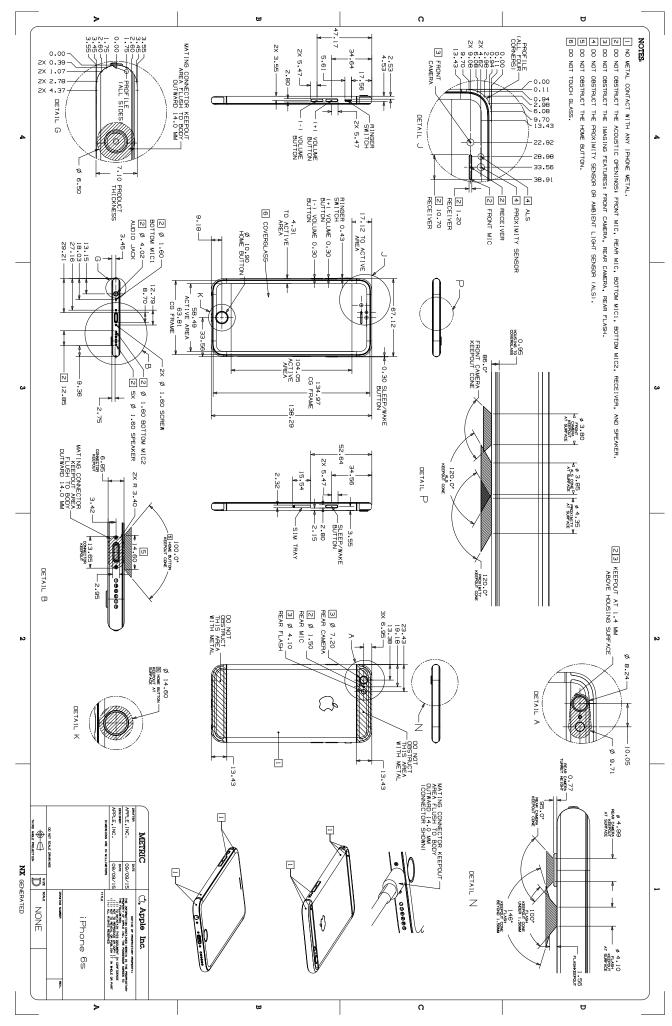
59.68 iPhone 7



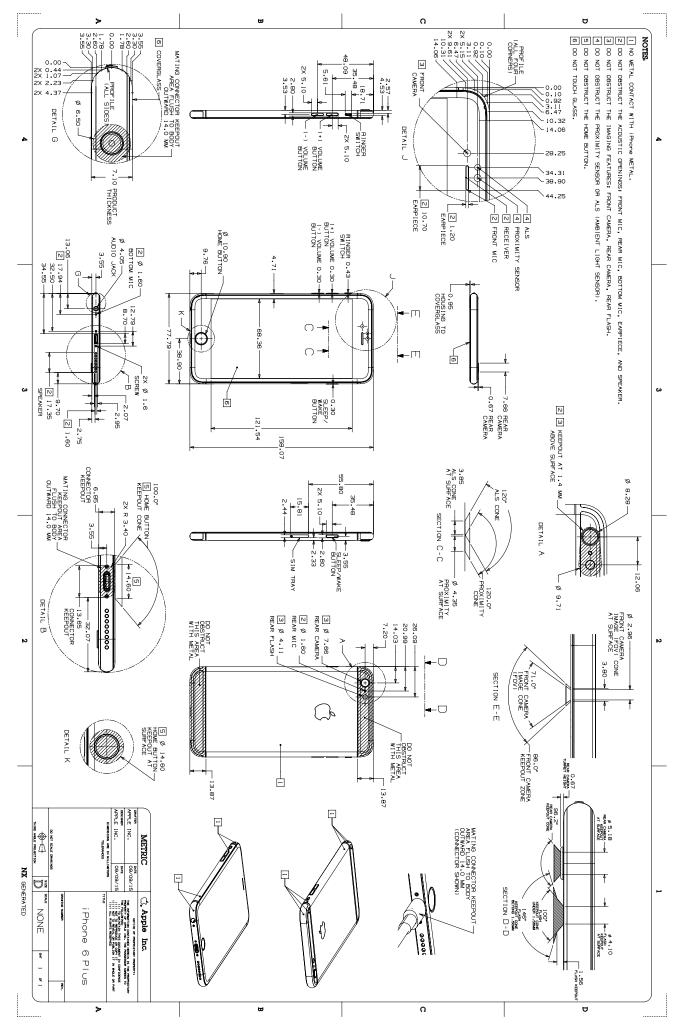
59.69 iPhone 6s Plus

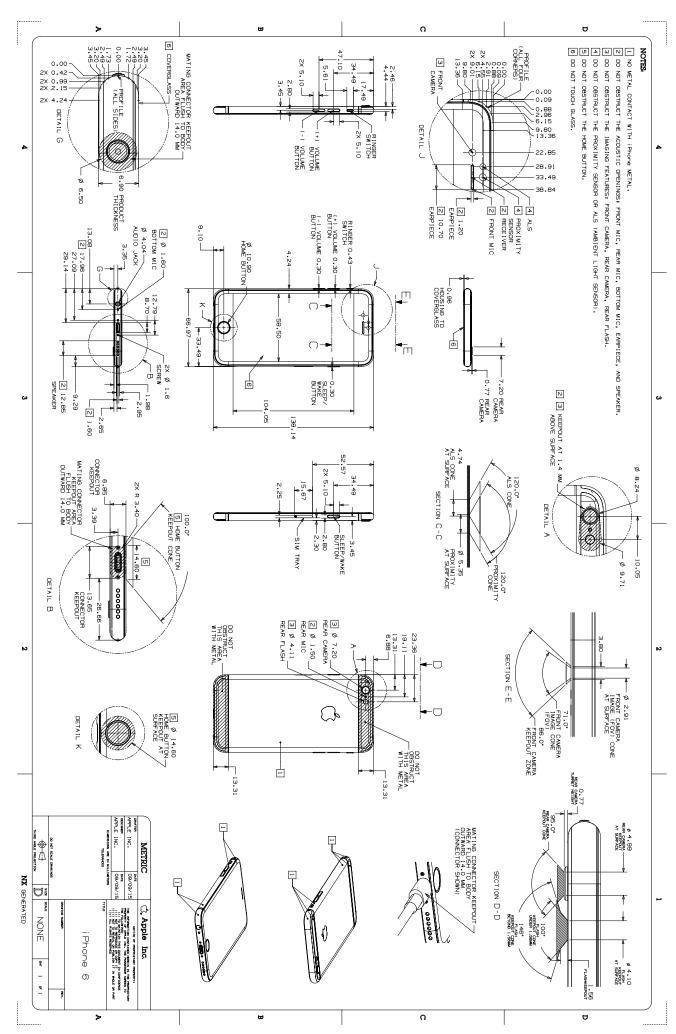


59.70 iPhone 6s

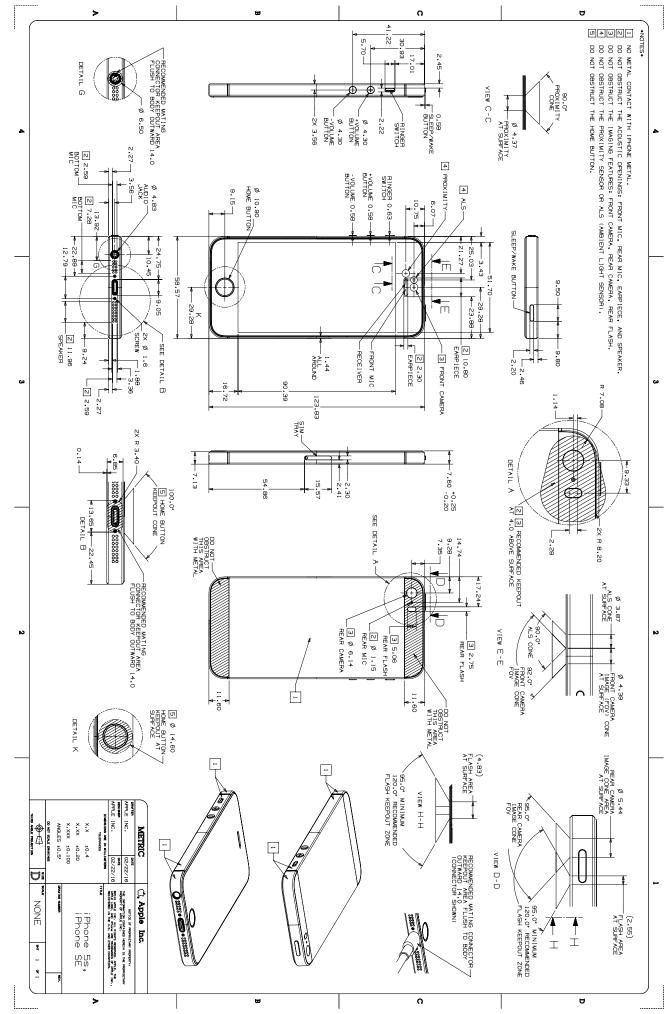


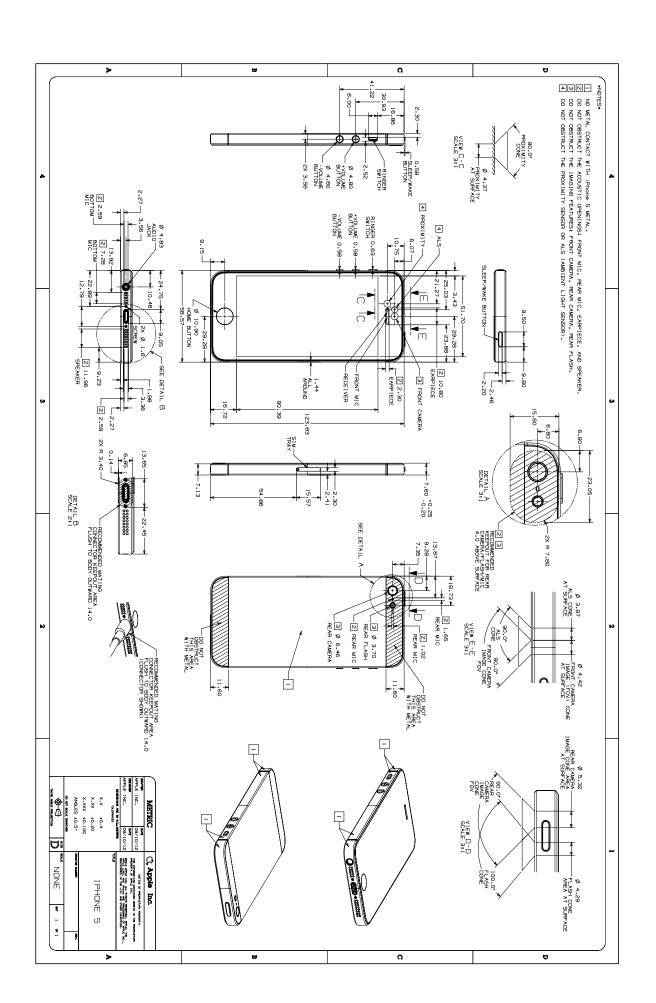
59.71 iPhone 6 Plus



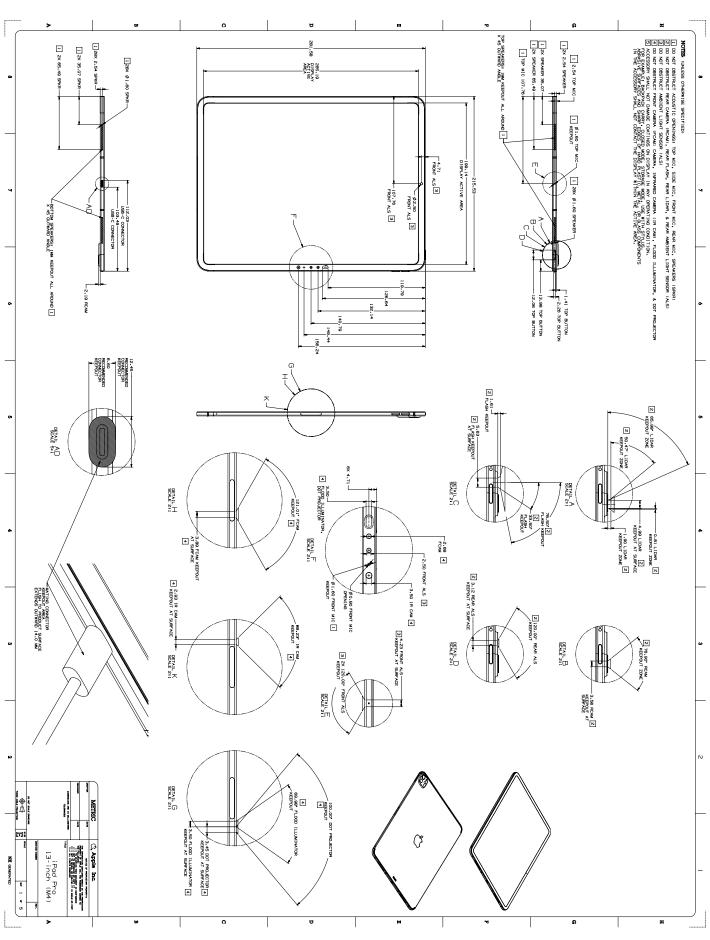


59.73 iPhone 5s and iPhone SE



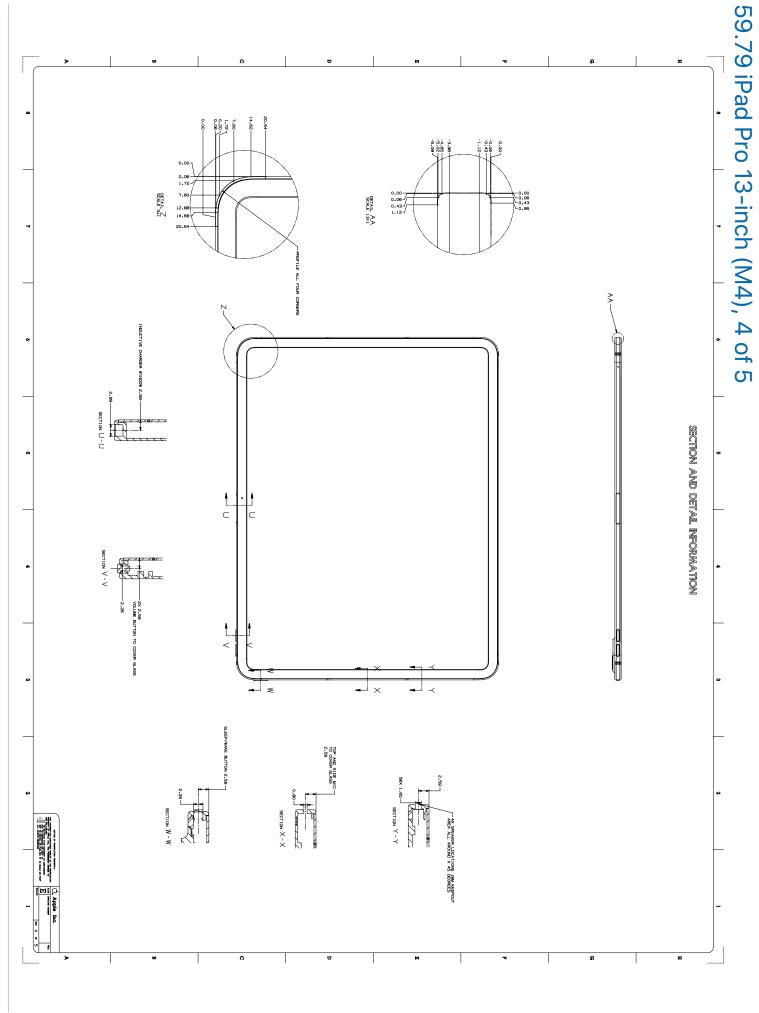


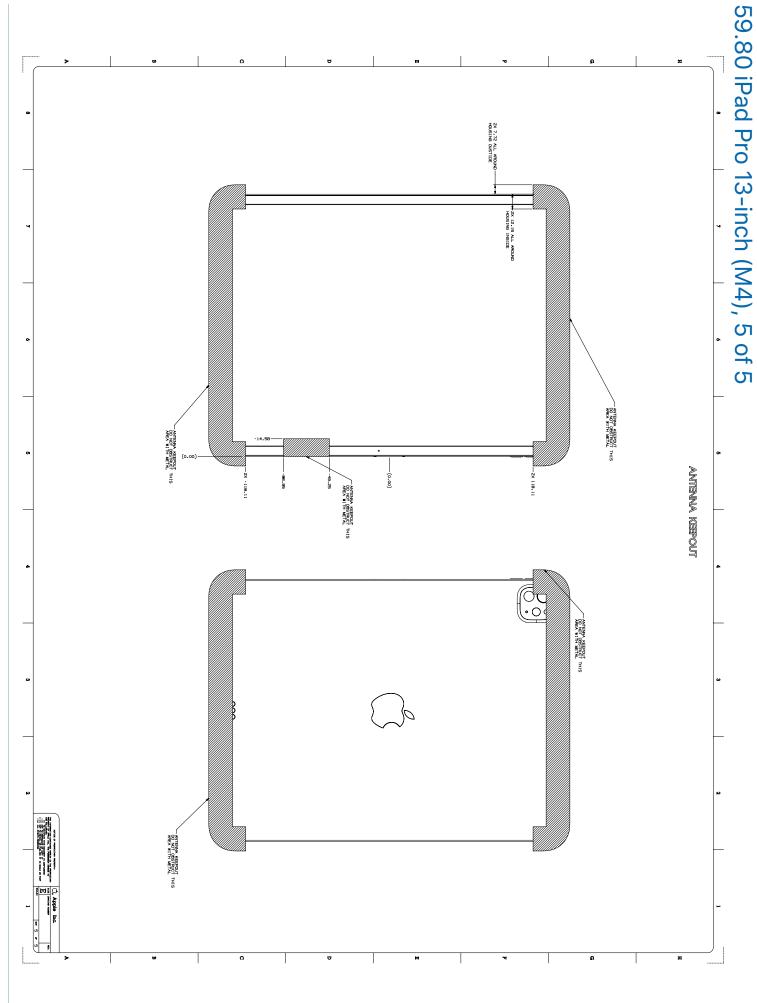
59.76 iPad Pro 13-inch (M4), 1 of 5



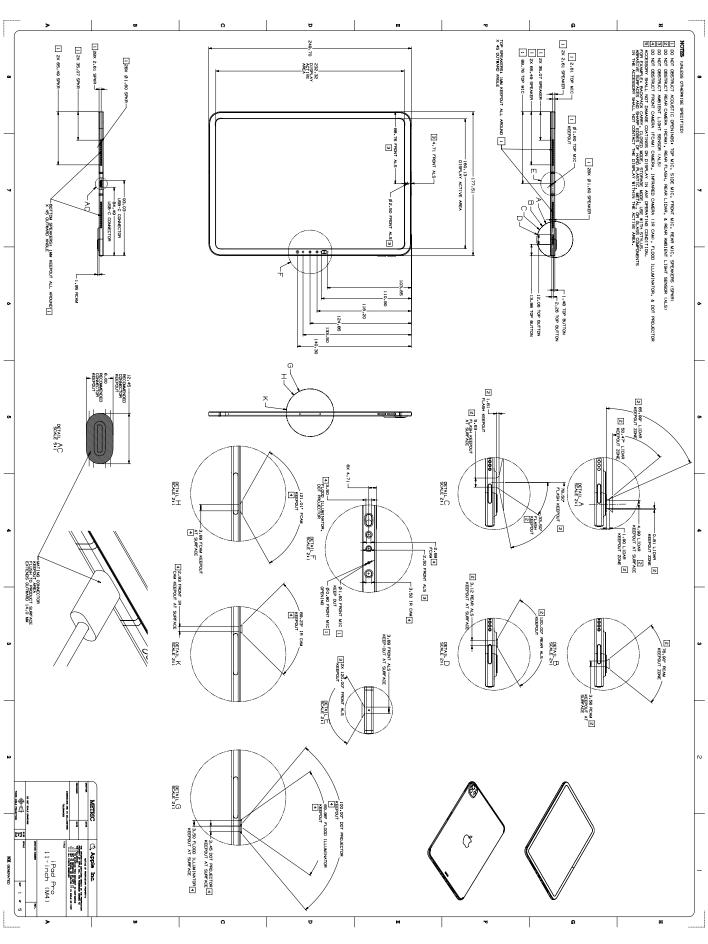
59.77 iPad Pro 13-inch (M4), 2 of 5 ID DUTI DESTRUCT ADDISTIC DESINOS: TOD NIC. SIDE NIC. PROTI NIC. REAR NIC. DESENDE (SERVI). DUTI DESTRUCT MADIENT ADDISTIC DESINOS AND. PROFESSOR MADIENTA (SERVI MADIENTA). DU NOT DESTRUCT MADIENT ADDISTICATION (SERVI MADIENT ADDISTICATION (SERVI MADIENT ADDISTICATION (SERVI M 1 24.36 SIDE MIC 1 SIDE MIC (0.00)-- \$1.60 II SIDE MIC OPENING 2X 2.26 VOLUME BUTTONS MAGNETIC CONNECTOR KEEPOUT NO METAL ALLOWABLE IN THIS AREA DETAIL L Ø8.41 LIDAR 2 33.44 REAR MIC KEEPOUT [] 53.80 REAR ALS [3] - Ø1.72 REAR MIC OPENING [] Ø6.70 FLASH [2] 10.83 REAR CAMERA [2] Z RCAM 128.78— Z FLASH 120.75— Z LIDAR 114.74— I 112.81 I REAR MIC 3 REAR ALS 128.88 DETAIL N DETAIL M PIN DIAMETER -3x Ø4.28 HOUSING OPENING (0.0) |-|-|-|-DETAIL P THE INTERPRETATION CONTINUES ARREST TO THE PROPERTY OF THE FIRST THE PROPERTY OF THE CONTINUES ARE THE PROPERTY OF THE CONTINUES ARE THE C 7.31 RCAM TURRET TO COVERGALSS SURFACE SYSTEM THICKNESS Apple Inc.

59.78 iPad Pro 13-inch (M4), 3 of 5 KEEP-OUT KEEP-OUT ESI 224.66 78.36-1 76.55-71.11-63.86-185.31 4X -102.11 -'n MAXIMUM 5mT IN HATCHED REGION 8 (0.00) TONE NO. 15.00 19.70 24.41 BV3-1 -3x 27.49 100 - -32.19 -2X 54.78 -6X 59.48 -6X 64.18 4X 79.15 4X 83.85 4X 88.55 HES2 95.15 MAGNET DETAIL 4X 104.03 CG-C2, CG-C3-PM 8X 104.86-FLUX KEEP-OUT FLUX KEEP-OUT FLUX KEEP-OUT FLUX KEEP-OUT 3x 250.77 2x 246.07 242.33 2x 240.97 2x 237.63 2x 235.08 FLUX KEEP-OUT -81.74 FLUX KEEP-OUT -MAXIMUM 1.3mT ANYWHERE ALONG -208.56 CG-C3-SHUNT -MAGNETIC FLUX KEEP-OUT -MAN THICK CENTERED IN PRODUCT THICKNESS MAXIMUM 0.25mT IN CROSS-HATCHED REGION -146.04 KEEP-OUT 217.61 06-03-1 106.04 KEEP-OUT 119.04 KEEP-OUT -2x 2,54 FLUX KEEP-OUT TO OUTSIDE OF HOUSING HESZ ACTIVATED WITH 8-FIELD-NORTH IN THIS DIRECTION TIME OF COMPASS TO OUTSIDE OF HOUSING SECTION AC - AC S-S NOTTON ECTION R-R NORTH IN THIS DIRECTION TA INCRETED CONVERS SEEN IS TO A POSITION OF THE PARTY OF BOTTOM OF HESZ TO OUTSIDE OF HOUSING BOTTOM OF HEST TO OUTSIDE OF HOUSING Apple Inc.

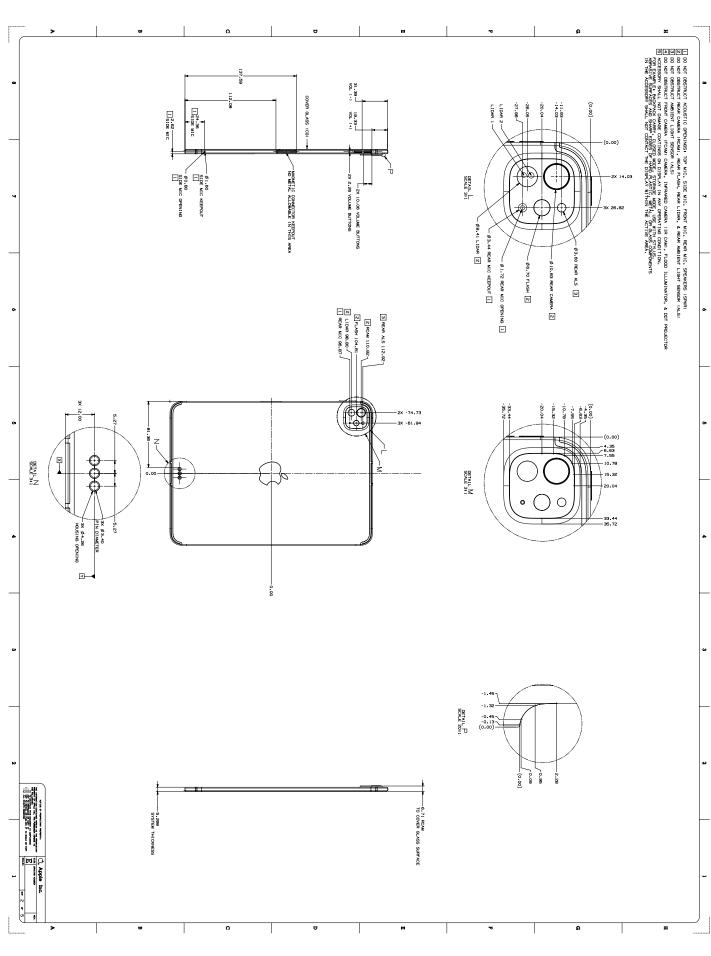




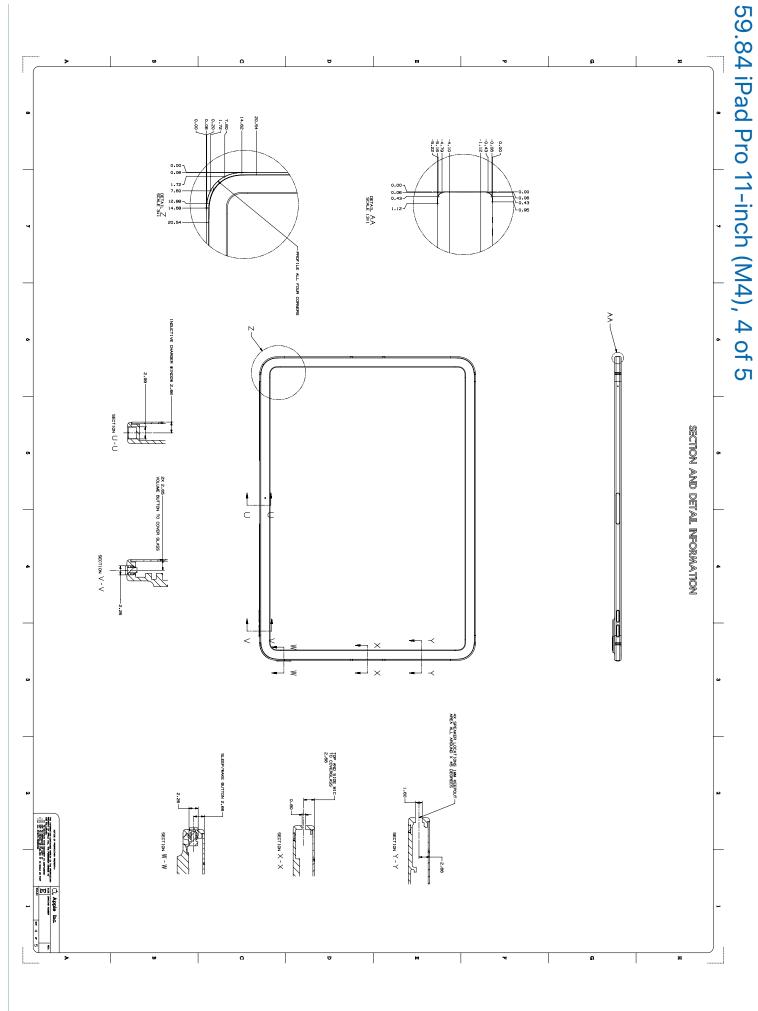
59.81 iPad Pro 11-inch (M4), 1 of 5

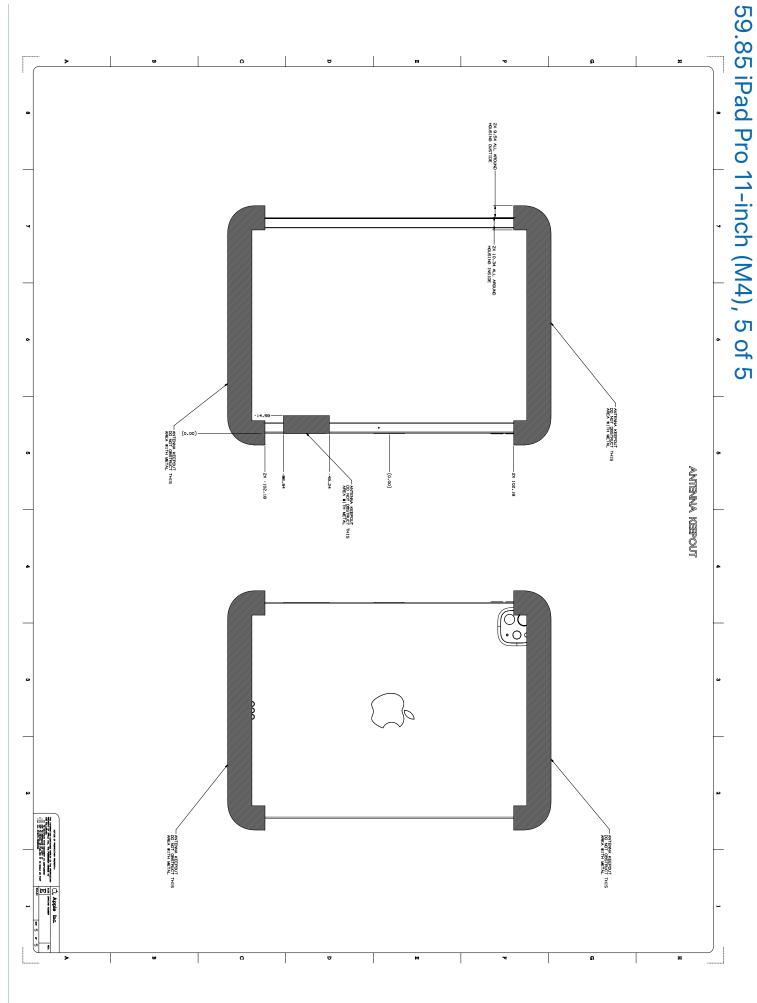


59.82 iPad Pro 11-inch (M4), 2 of 5 ID DINT DESTRUCT ACQUITE OPENINES FOR MIC, SIZE MIC, PROMITING, REAM MIC, SERVERS (SAME) 2 DINT DESTRUCT MARIENT LIGHT SEASON (ALS) 10 DINT DESTRUCT MARIENT LIGHT SEASON (ALS) 10 DINT DESTRUCT MARIENT LIGHT SEASON (ALS) 10 DINT DESTRUCT MARIENT CHARM FORM CARENT, MERRATED CHARM LIGHT, CHARMED (LLAMINATOR, & DOT PROJECTOR 10 DINT DESTRUCT PROVINCE AND CARENT, MERRATED CHARMED (LIGHT) 10 DINT DESTRUCT PROVINCE AND CARENT CHARMED (LIGHT) 11 DINT DESTRUCT CHARMED (LIGHT) 12 DINT DESTRUCT CHARMED (LIGHT) 13 DINT DESTRUCT CHARMED (LIGHT) 14 DINT DESTRUCT CHARMED (LIGHT) 15 DINT DESTRUCT CHARMED (LIGHT) 16 DINT DESTRUCT CHARMED (LIGHT) 17 DINT DESTRUCT CHARMED (LIGHT) 18 DINT DESTRUCT CHARMED (LIGHT) 18 DINT DESTRUCT CHARMED (LIGHT) 18 DINT DESTRUCT CHARMED (LIGHT) 19 DINT DESTRUCT CHARMED (LIGHT) 19 DINT DESTRUCT CHARMED (LIGHT) 19 DINT DESTRUCT CHARMED (LIGHT) 10 DINT DESTRUCT CHARMED (LIGHT) 10

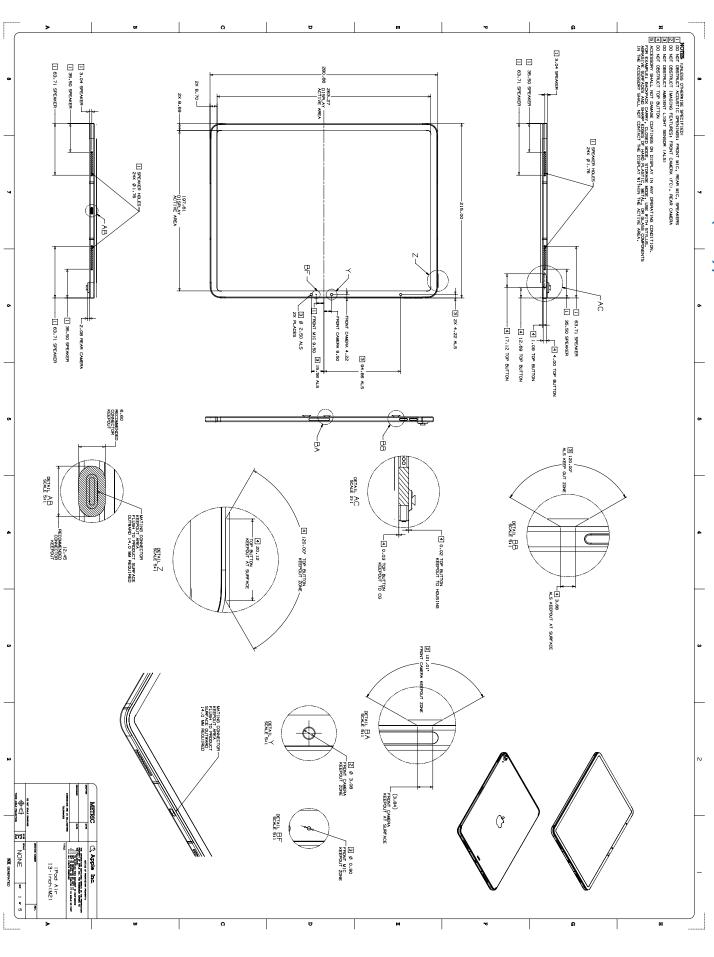


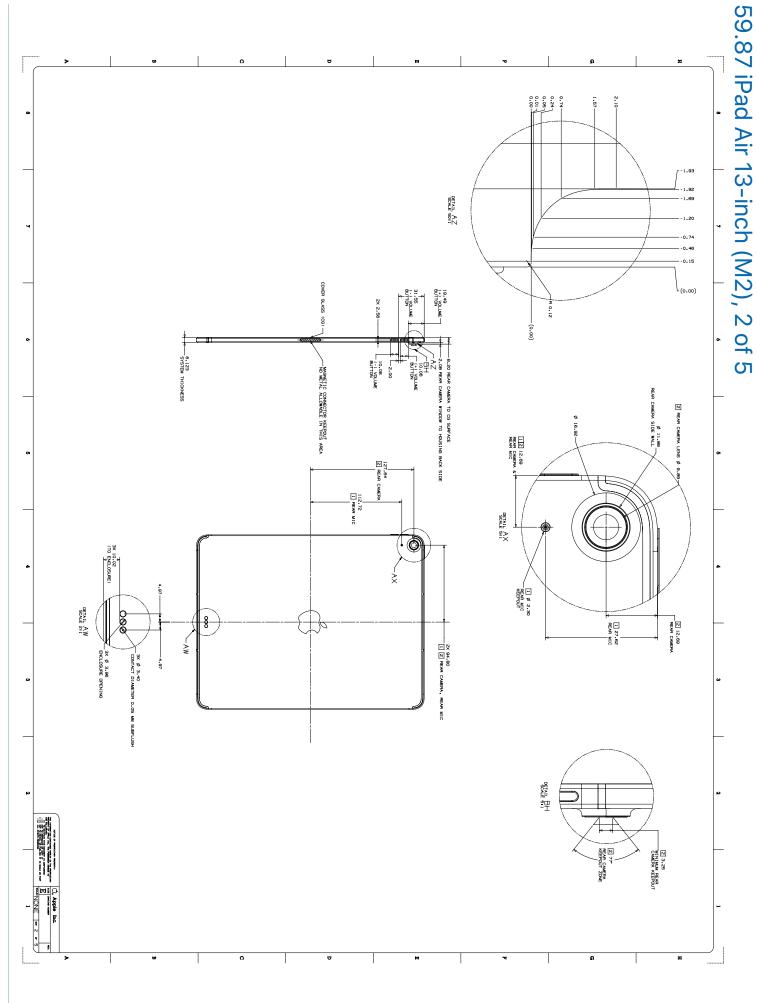
59.83 iPad Pro 11-inch (M4), 3 of 5 72.94— 68.49— 64.04— KEEP-OUT 63.95 KEEP-OUT 53.85 KEEP-OUT 120.92 KEEP-OUT 128.92 159.96 159.96 155.51 فِافِقُ Ë 3x 221.77-3x 217.44-3x 213.09-MAGNETIC FLUX KEEP-OUT EXTENDS ENTIRE PRODUCT MAXIMUM 2.5mT IN HATCHED REGION MAGNETIC FLUX KEEP-OUT EXTENDS ENTIRE PRODUCT THICKNESS MAXIMUM $\mathbf{S}_{mT}^{\text{T}}$ IN HATCHED REGION 2X -29.98 --29.23 -2X -24.18 --23.73 -25.92 -23.12 -22.52 -21.22 -17.40 (-16.52 -15.92 -11.60 ΑВ ΑВ 2X 18.37— 2X 23.62— 30.42 30.52 33.37— 36.67 37.12 38.12 29.33 34,63 -45.23 2X 68.27 69.28 2X 73.57 74.93 HES2 77.41 7 CG-C2, CG-C3 PM 8X 85.85 S 178.55 178.55 179.55 199.05 MAGNET DETAIL S MAXIMUM 1.3mT ANWHERE ALONG THIS LINE —B FIELD DIRECTION —75.61 FLUX KEEP-OUT —75.81 FLUX KEEP-OUT 141.60 FLUX KEEP-OUT KEEP-OUT 71.76 KEEP-OUT 96.46-FLUX KEEP-OUT 92. 103.10 KEEP-OUT -MAGNETIC FLUX KEEP-OUT 3MM THICK CENTERED IN PRODUCT THICKNESS MAXIMUM 0.25mT IN CROSS-HATCHED REGION 17.10 KEEP-OUT 30.10 KEEP-OUT \2x 221.35 \2x 216.65 \2x 211.85 \5x 208.34 \2x 207.25 THIS LINE FLUX KEEP-OUT TO OUTSIDE OF HOUSING HESZ ACTIVATED WITH 8-FIELDясттом AB - AB SECTION S - S SECTION R-R PIG 1.26 BOTTOM OF COMPASS TO OUT ISDE OF HOUSING HESI ACTIVATED WITH 8-FIELD NORTH BOTTOM OF HESI TO OUTSIDE OF HOUSING TA INCRETED CONVERS SEEN IS TO A POSITION OF THE PARTY OF BOTTOM OF HESZ TO OUTSIDE OF HOUSING Apple Inc.

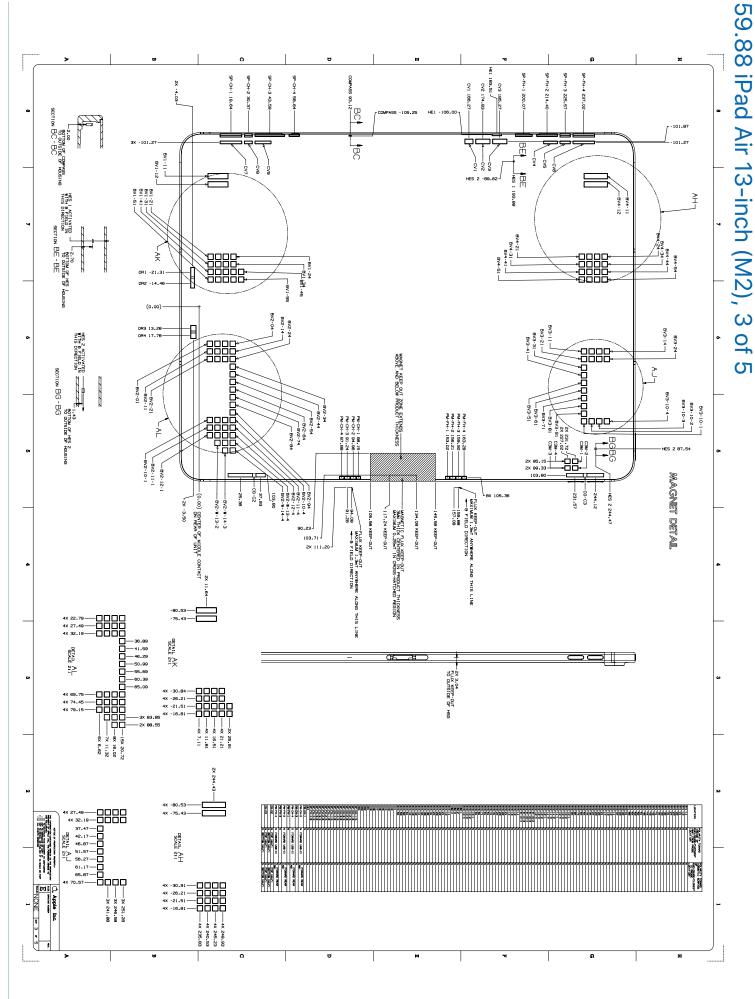


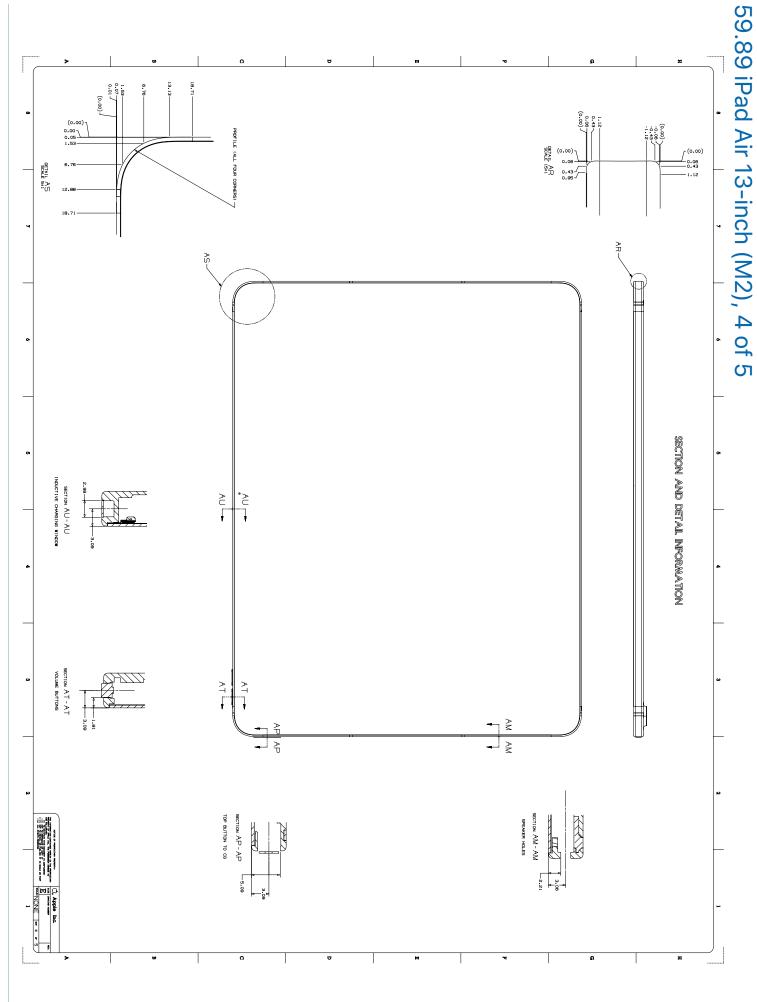


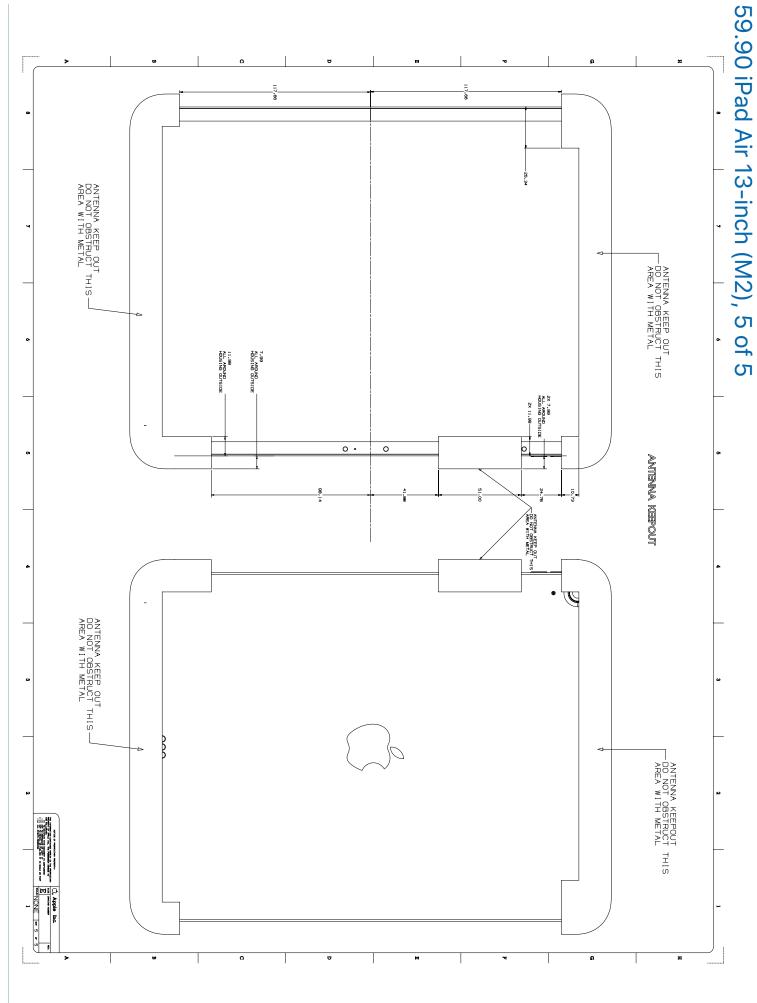
59.86 iPad Air 13-inch (M2), 1 of 5 NOTES INJECTS OTERNIES SPECIFEDI DO NOT OBSTRUCT INJOHO FENTRESS FRONT MEC, REAR MEC, SERMENS 2 DO NOT OBSTRUCT INJOHO FENTRESS FRONT CAMEN, ITCI, REAR CAMEN, 3 DO NOT OBSTRUCT OF SERVED ASSOCIATION DO NOT OBSTRUCT OBSTRUCT OF SERVED ASSOCIATION DO NOT OBSTRUCT OBSTRUCT OF SERVED ASSOCIATION DO NOT OBSTRUCT OBSTRUCT



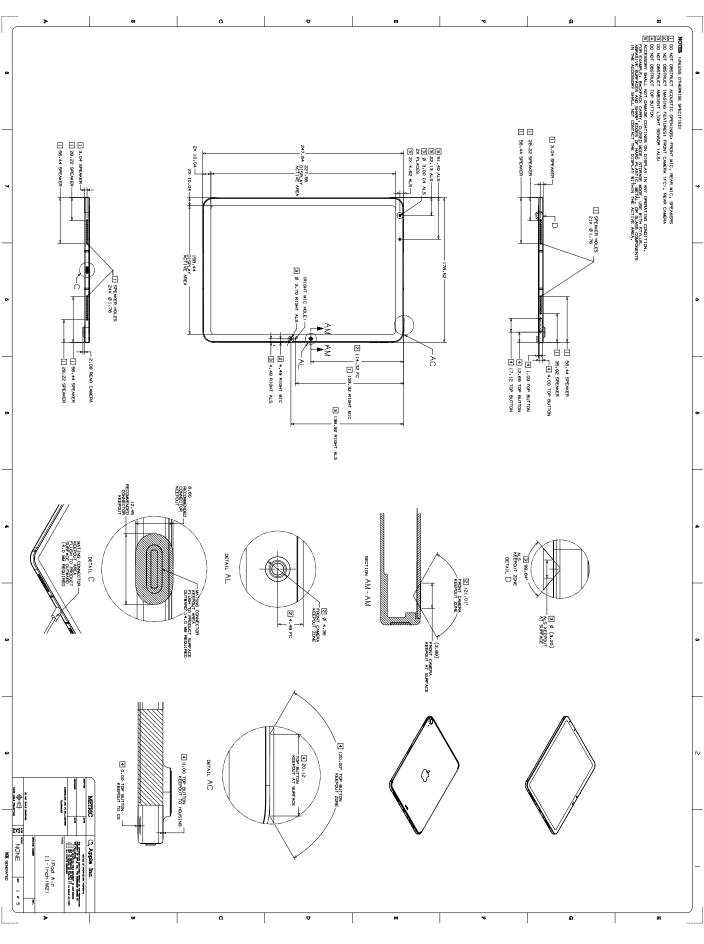




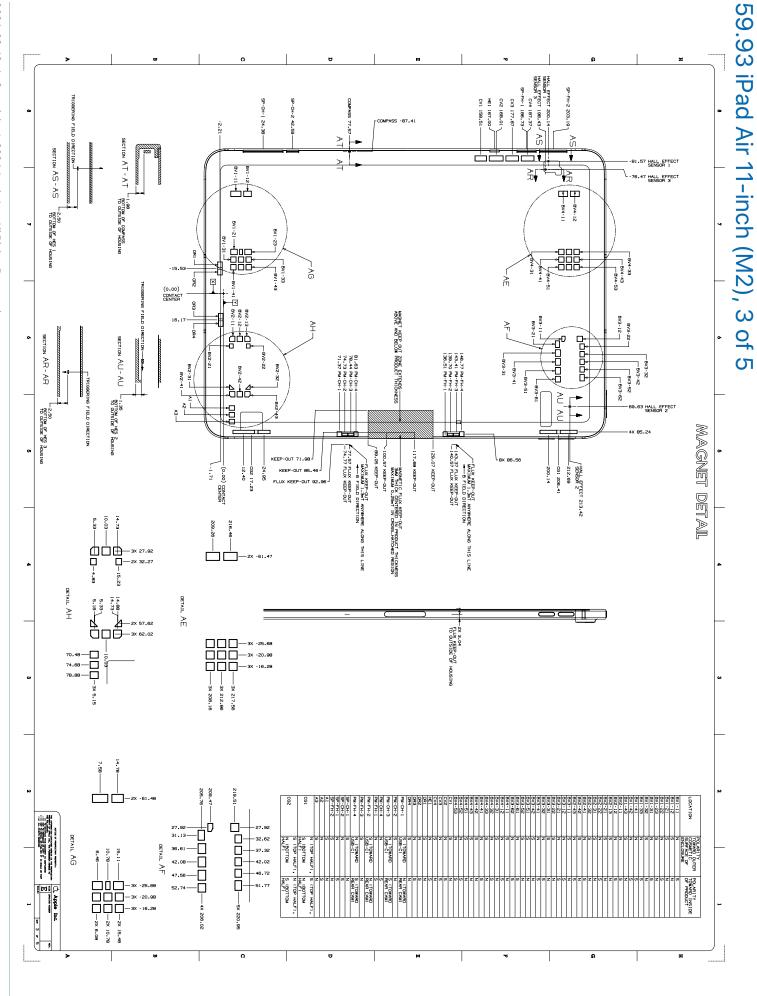


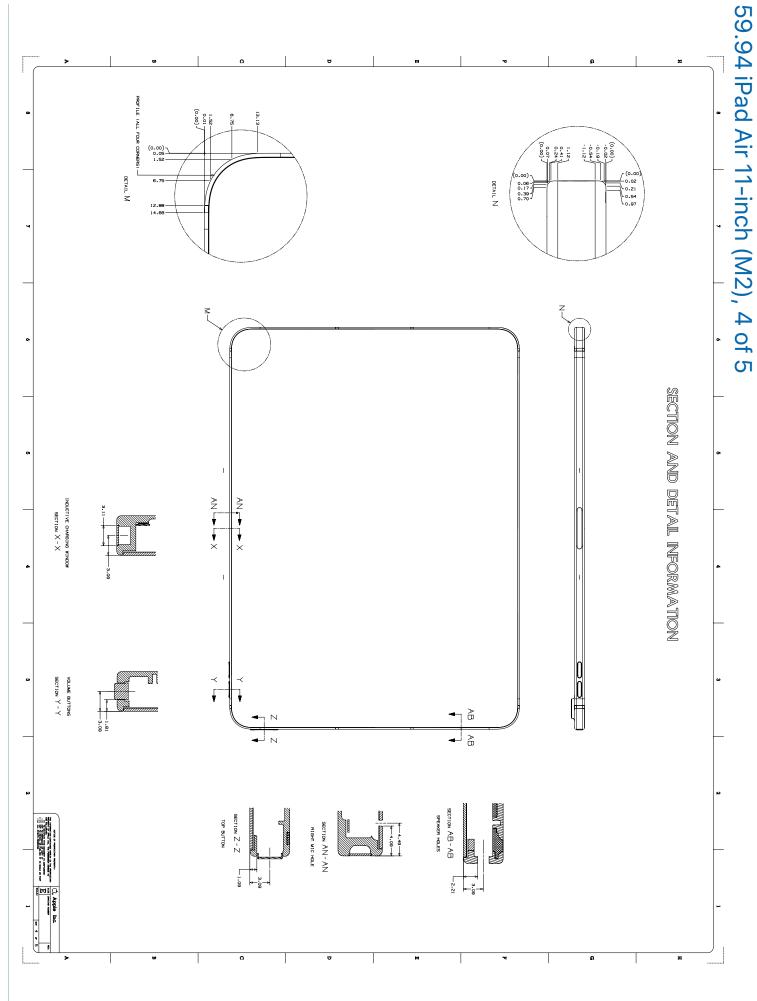


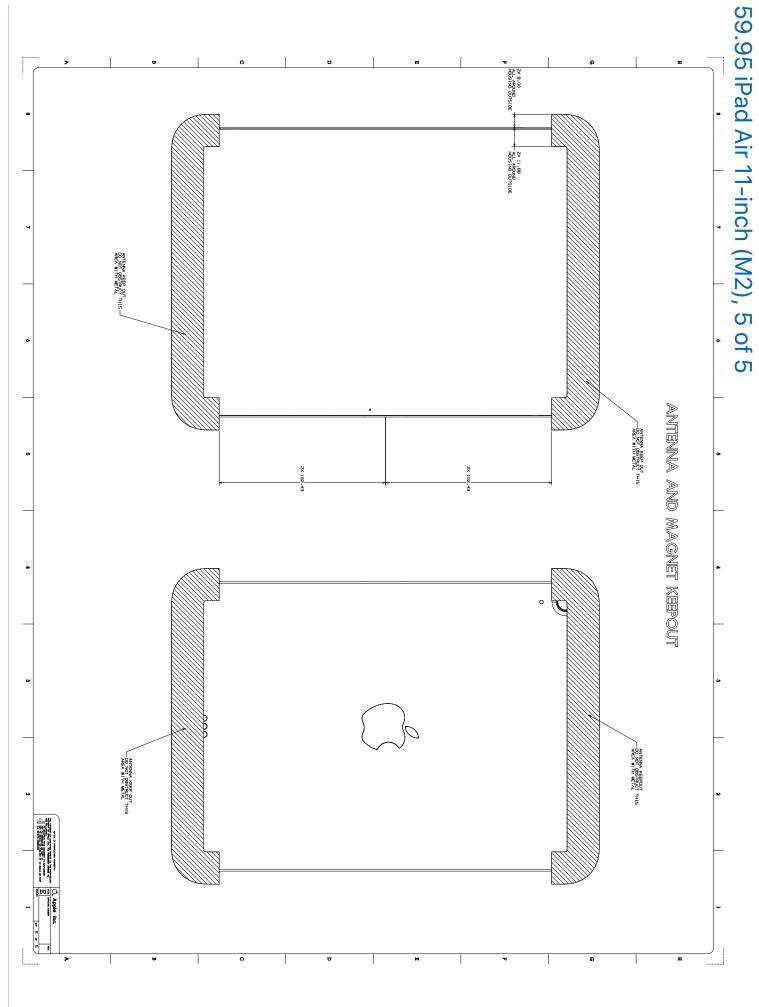
59.91 iPad Air 11-inch (M2), 1 of 5 NOTES INJESS OFFERISE SPECIFED: 1 DO NOT DESTRUCT MODERN CHESIS FROM MIC., REAR MIC., SEEMERS 2 DO NOT DESTRUCT MODERN CHESIS FROM CAMEN, IFCI, REAR CAMENA 3 DO NOT DESTRUCT MODERN CHESIS FROM CAMEN, IN CHESIS OF THE SPECIAL MOT DAMAGE CONTINS ON DISPAT, IN ANY DEPARTING CONDITION, 1 DACESSERY SMALL NOT DAMAGE CONTINS ON DISPAT, IN ANY DEPARTING CONDITION, 1 DACESSERY SMALL NOT DAMAGE CONTINS ON DISPAT, IN ANY DEPARTING CONDITION, 1 DACESSERY SMALL NOT DAMAGE CONTINS OF DATE OF THE STATE MODERNIS NAME OF THE STATE MODERNIS NAME OF THE MODERNIS SMALL NOT DAMAGE THE MODERNIS OF THE STATE MODERNIS NAME OF THE MODERNIS NAME OF TH I SPEAKER HOLES



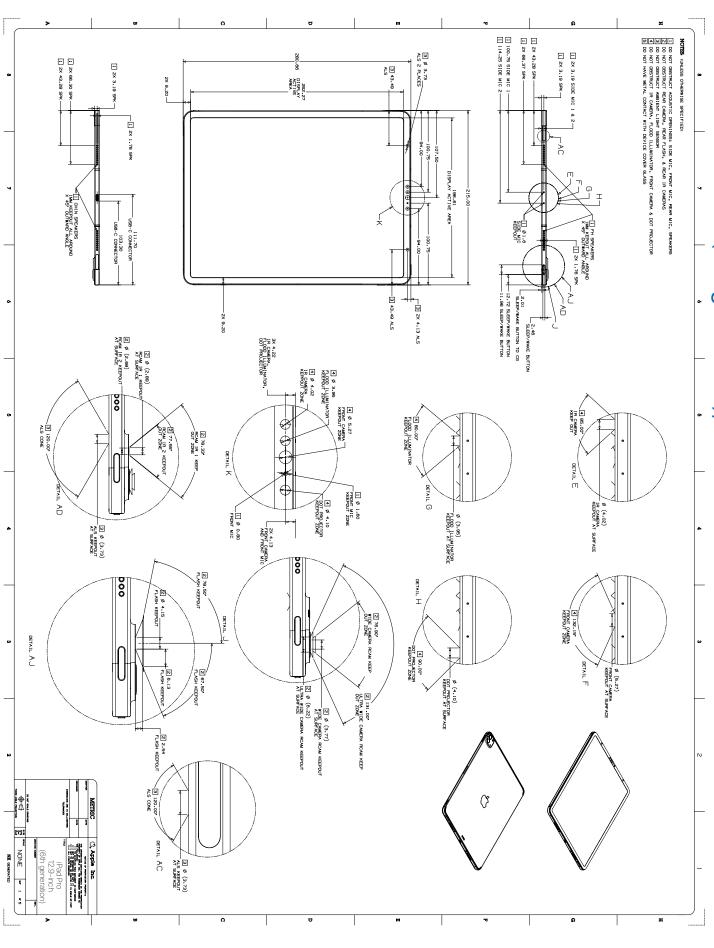
59.92 iPad Air 11-inch (M2), 2 of 5 Z REAR CAMERA LENS Ø 9.8 IIZ 12.68 REAR CAMERA (REAR MIC (+) VOLUME -BUTTON DETAIL F SYSTEM THICKNESS 1.20 REAR CAMERA WINDOW TO HOUSING BACK SIDE MAGNETIC CONNECTOR KEEPOUT NO METAL ALLOWABLE IN THIS AREA REAR MIC KEEPOUT EAR MIC 1111.12 2 REAR CAMERA 96.20 SCALE 5:1 Z 3.21 MINIMUM REAR CAMERA KEEPOUT DETAIL H ZX 76.56 _3X Ø 3.40 CONTACT DIAMETER 0.0217 DETAIL X

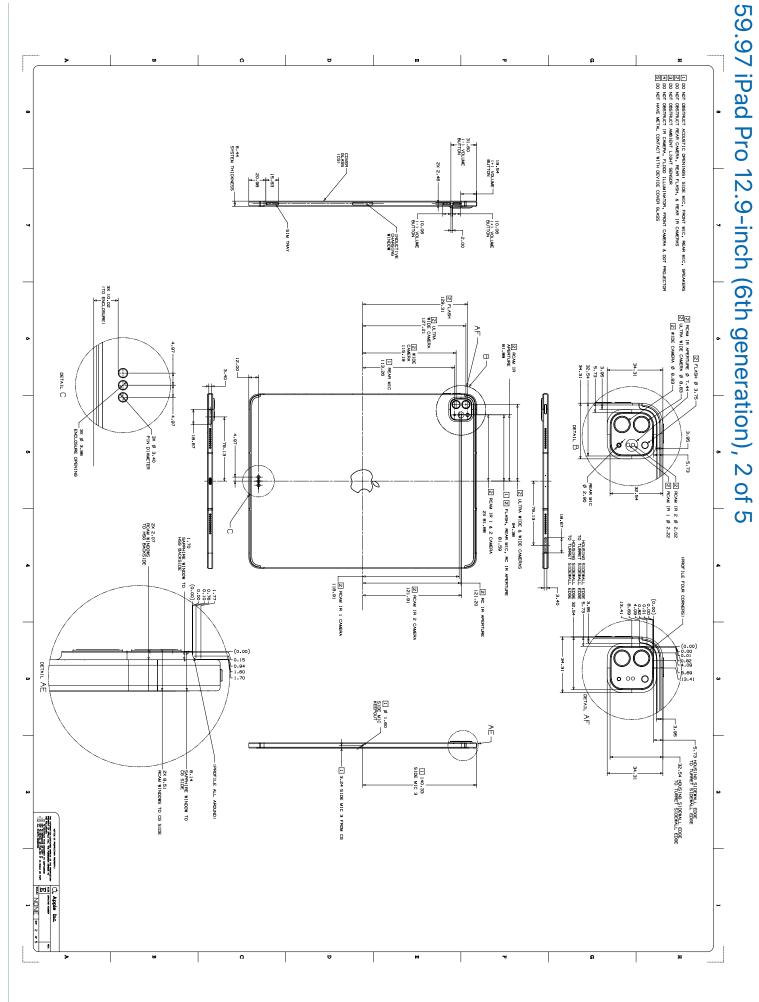


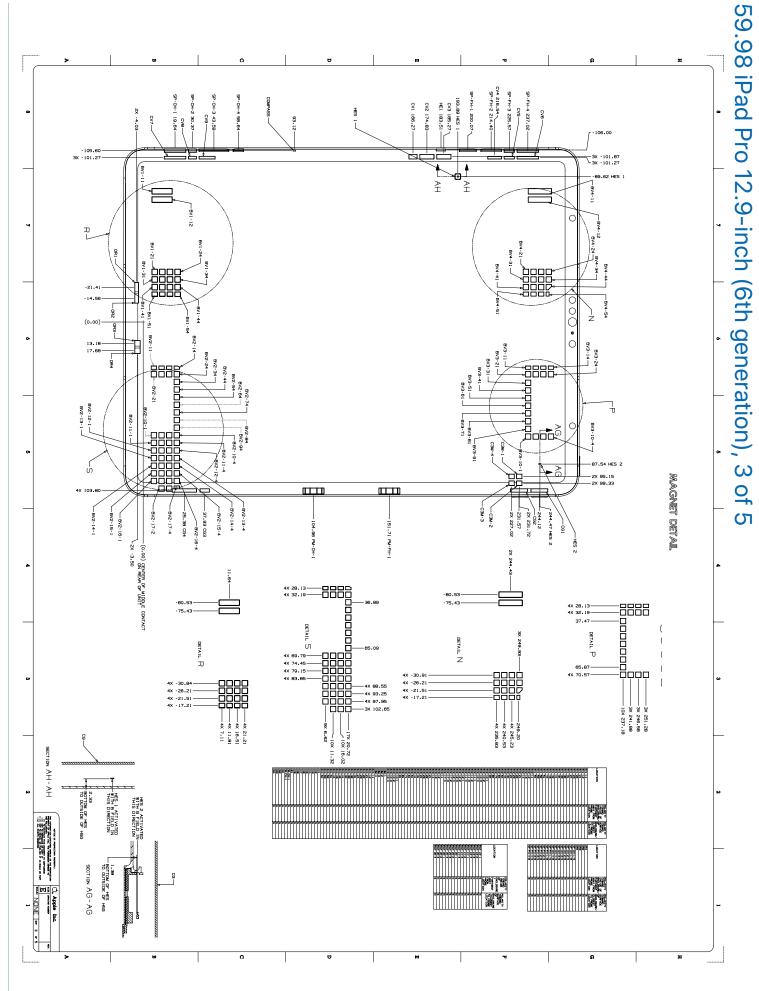


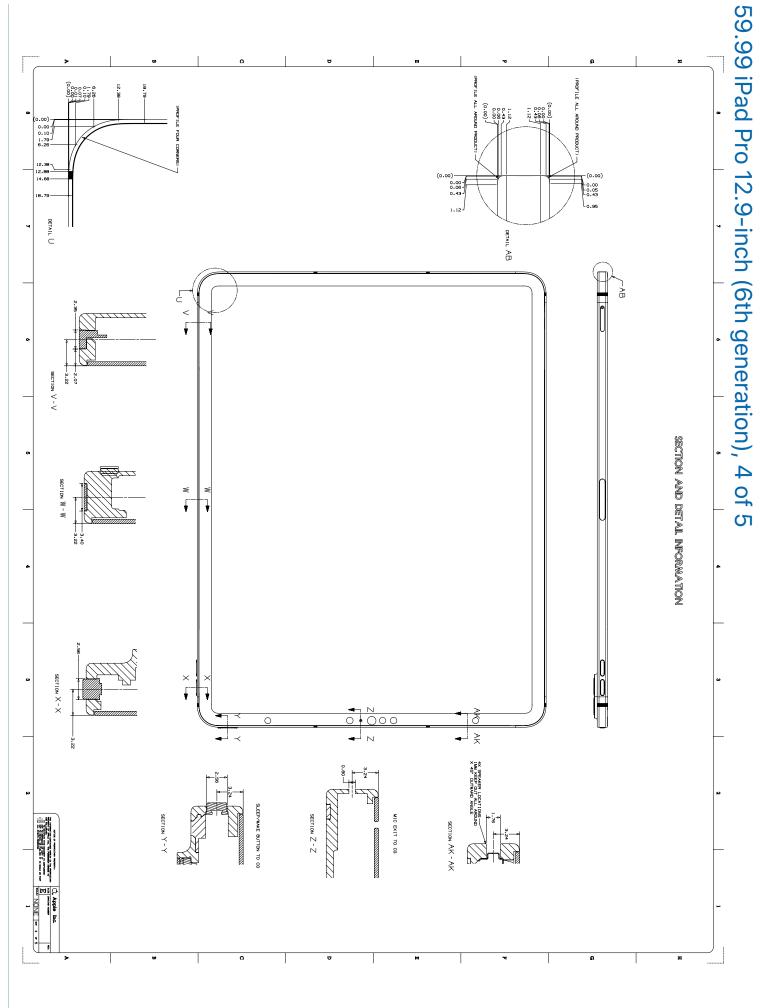


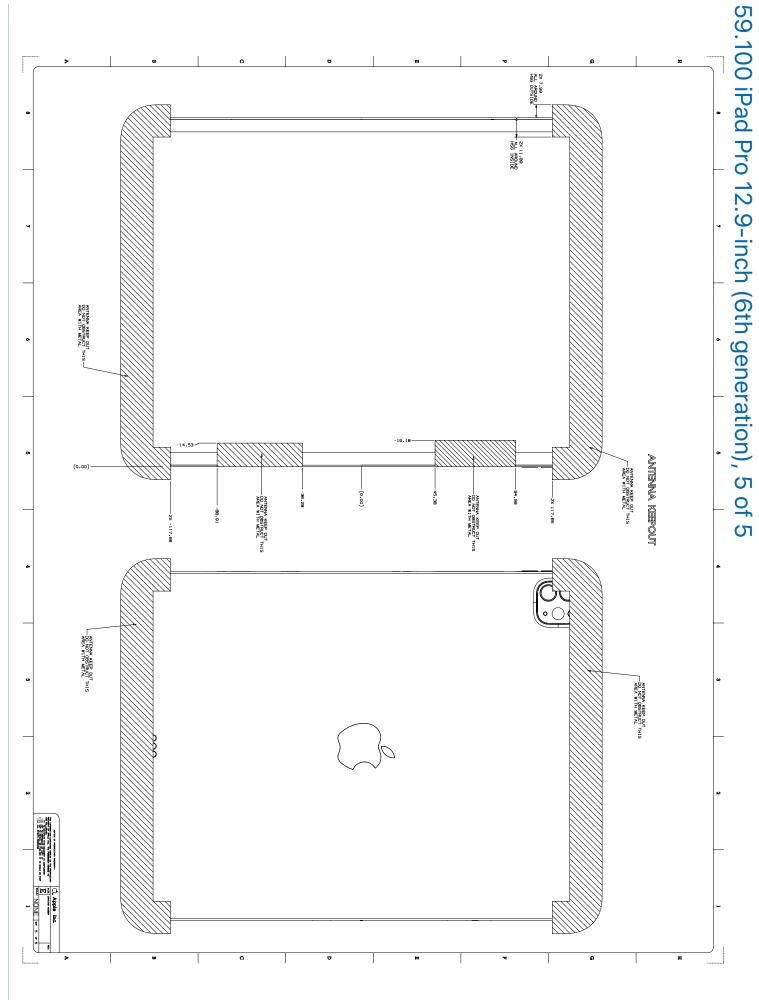
59.96 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (6th generation), 1 of 5



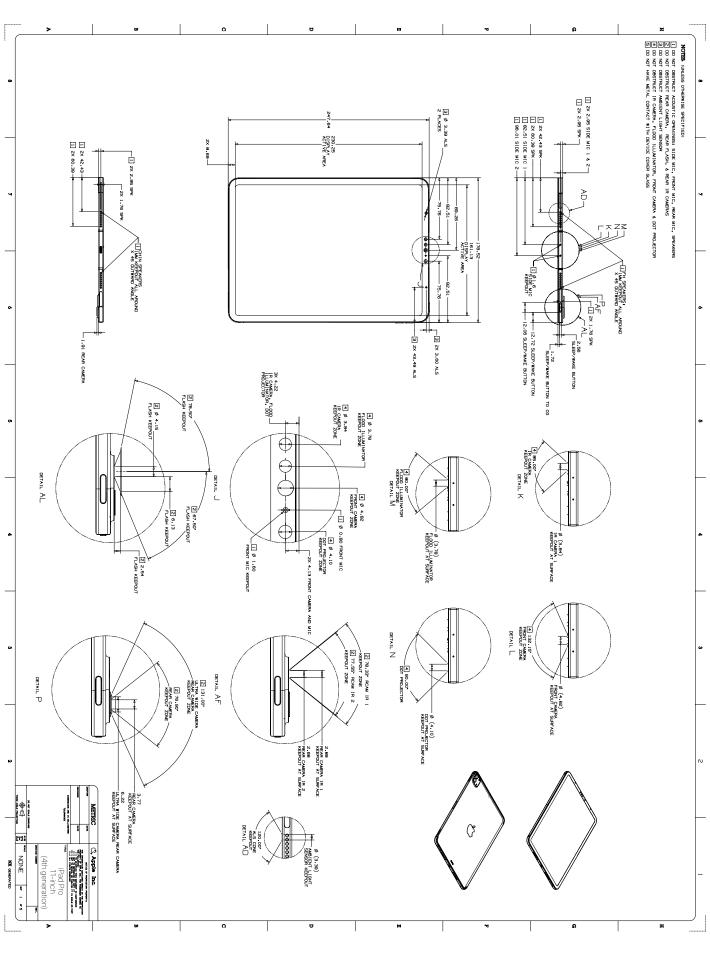




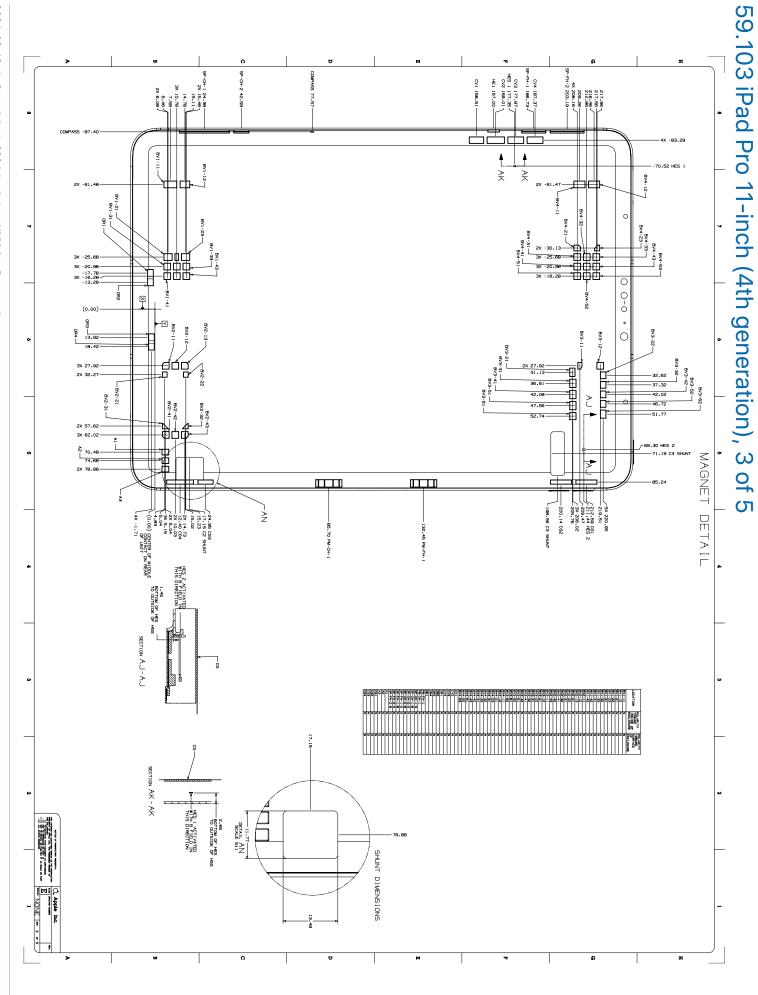


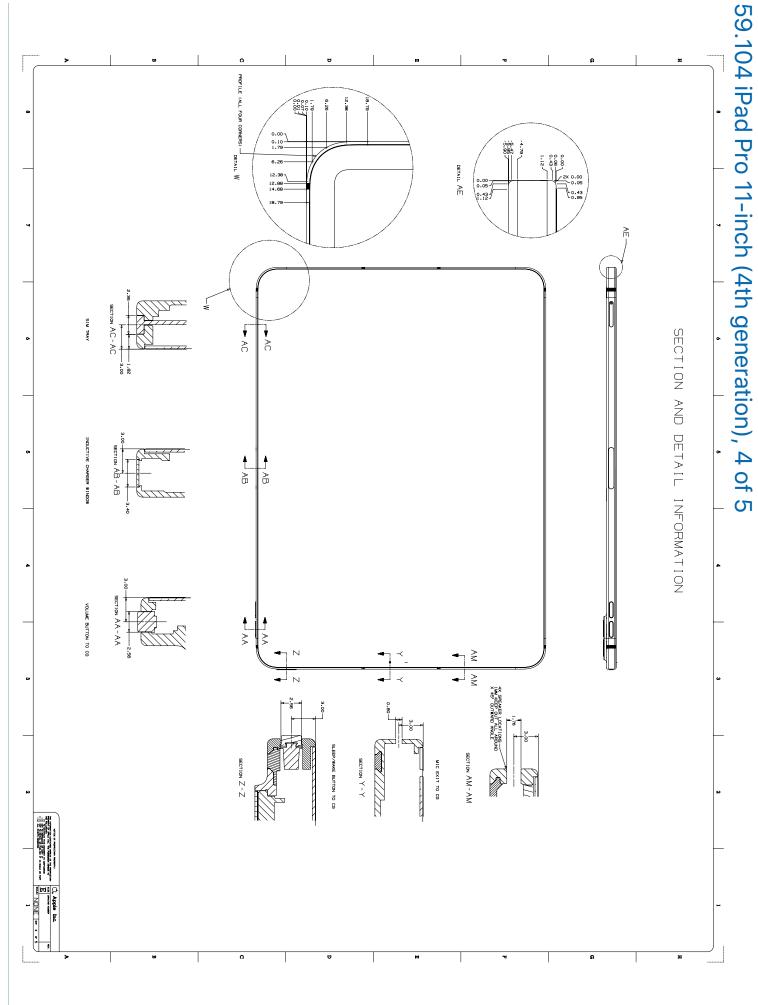


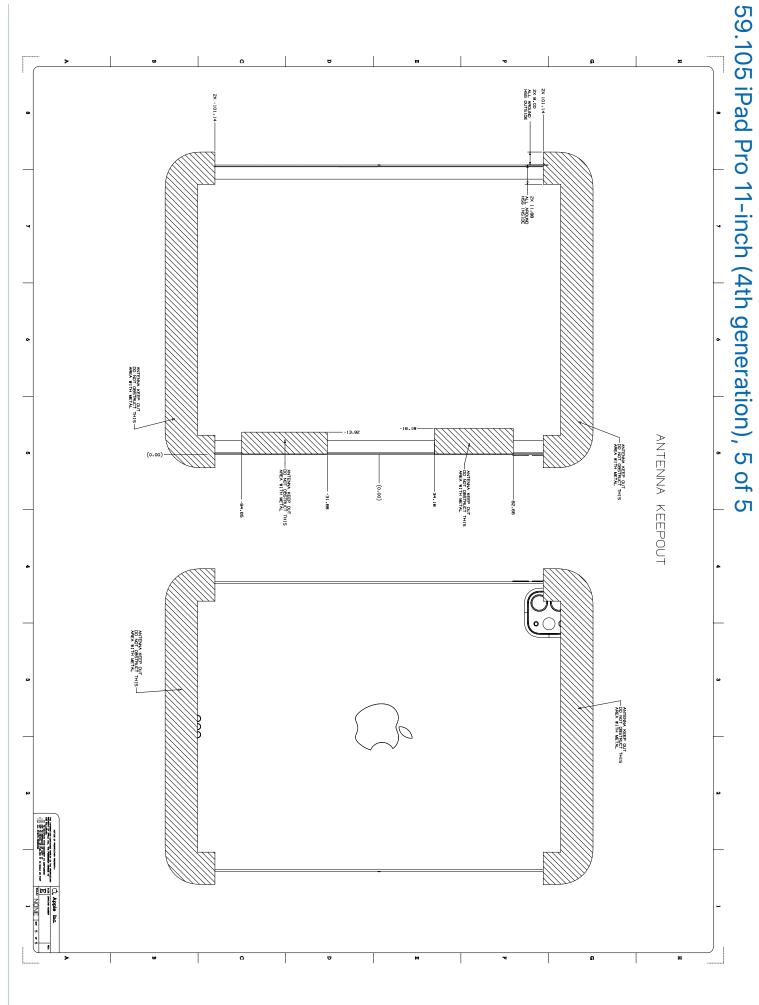
59.101 iPad Pro 11-inch (4th generation), 1 of 5 NOTES (UNLESS OTHERWISE SPECIFIED)



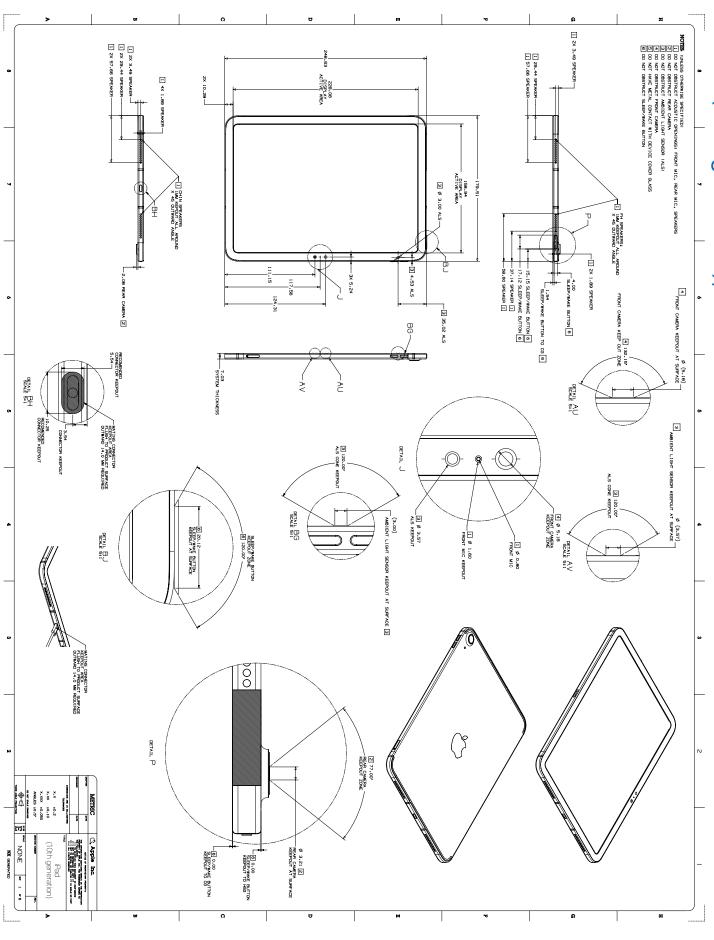
59.102 iPad Pro 11-inch (4th generation), 2 of 5 II DO NOT OBSTRUCT MOUSTIC COMMINISTS SIZE MIC. FROM MIC. REAM MIC., SPEMERS 20 DO NOT OBSTRUCT MEDITE OF MEDITE. REAR FLOW, A CREAR IN COMERNS 30 DO NOT OBSTRUCT MEDITE CHECKS. PRODUCT CLASSIFING CAMERN & DOT PROJECTOR 30 DO NOT MEMITE IN CAMERN. PRODUCT ILLUMINATION, FROMT CAMERN & DOT PROJECTOR 50 DO NOT HAVE METAL CONTACT WITH DEVICE CONER QUASS Z WIDE CAMERA Ø 8.83 Z ULTRA WIDE CAMERA Ø 8.83 Z RCMM IR 1 Ø 2.22 COVER GLASS (CG 2 xx 25.62— 2 xx 25.91 REAM MIC 4 REAM LS4 REAM REATURE Z RCAM IR APERTURE Ø 31.55 (-) VOLUME BUTTON 19.49 (+) VOLUME BUTTON 5.953 SYSTEM THICKNESS (+) VOLUME - INDUCTIVE CHARGING WINDOW ¥ DETAIL T Z FLASH Z ULTRA 112.79 WIDE CAMERA -2 FLASH Ø 3.75 96,75 Z 11.03 REAR FLASH Z 13.12 ULTRA WIDE CAMERA REAR CAMERA AG-TE 19-13 RCM IR 1 & 2 SAPPHIRE TE 19-13 RCM IR 1 & 2 SAPPHIRE WINDOW APERTURE TE 21-42 RCM IR 1 HSG SIDE WALL EDGE TO 32.54 HSG SIDE WALL EDGE TO 5.72-—2 25.14 REAR CAMERA _1 27.07 4.97 ZX 63.64 __[] Z FLASH, REAR MIC, RC IR APERTURE 63.35 Z ULTRA WIDE & WIDE CAMERAS 9X Ø 3.40 PIN DIAMETER 3X Ø 3.96 ENCLOSURE OPENING DETAIL AG $\bigoplus \bigoplus$ \oplus 2 RCAM IR I CAMERA Z RCAM IR 2 CAMERA 105,40 5.72 HSG SIDE WALL EDGE TO TURRET SIDE WALL EDGE Z RC IR APERTURE 104.69 32.54 HSG SIDE WALL EDGE TO TURRET SIDE WALL EDGE 0.10 REAR CAMERA WINDOW-TO HSG BACK SIDE SAPPHIRE WINDOW TO HSG BACK SIDE ветите АН TAL INFORMATION CONTROL SPECIAL TO A PROPERTY OF THE PARTY OF THE CONTROL IN SIDE MIC 3 -7.49 SAPPHIRE WINDOW TO CG SURFACE -0.78 S SIDE MIC 3 E NONE or 2

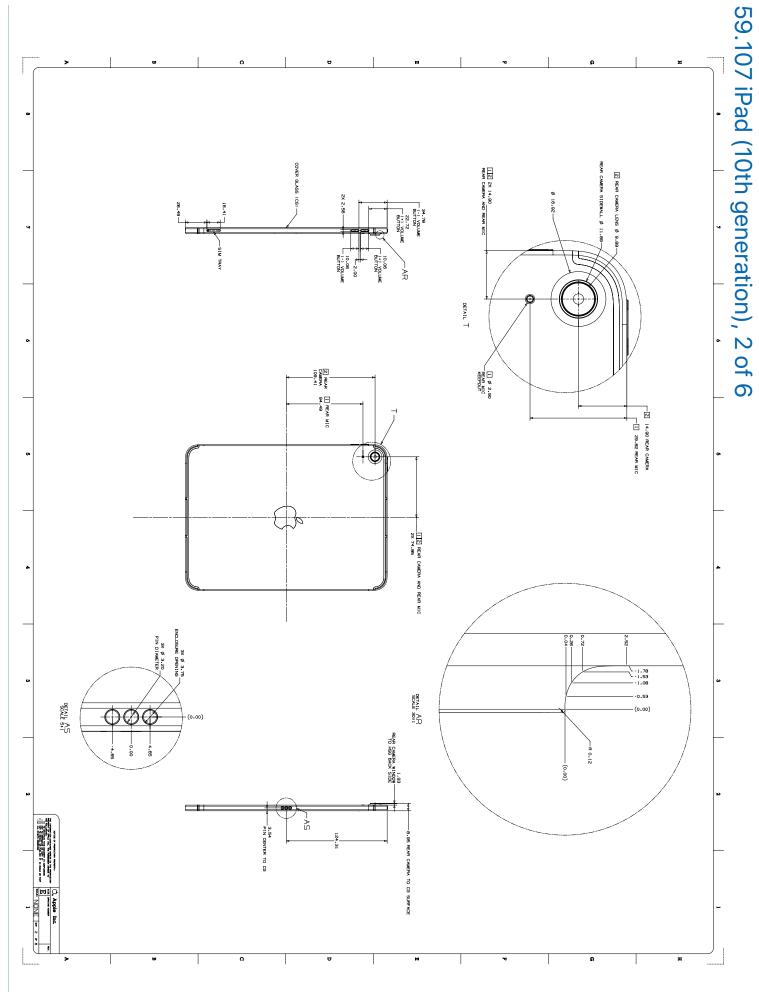


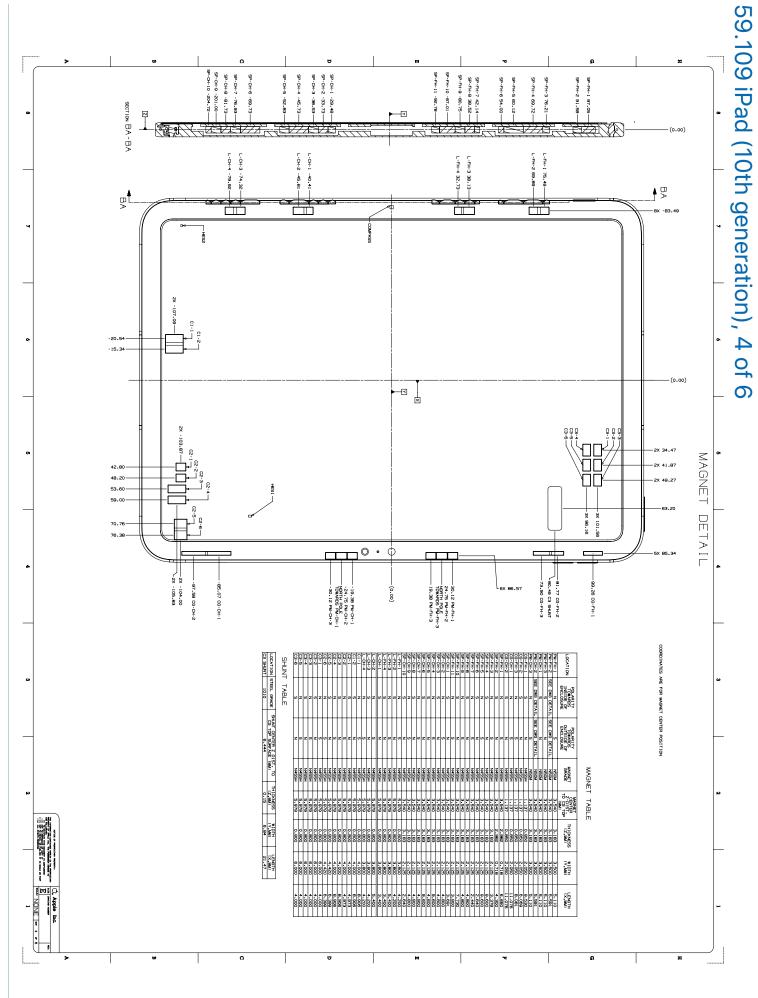


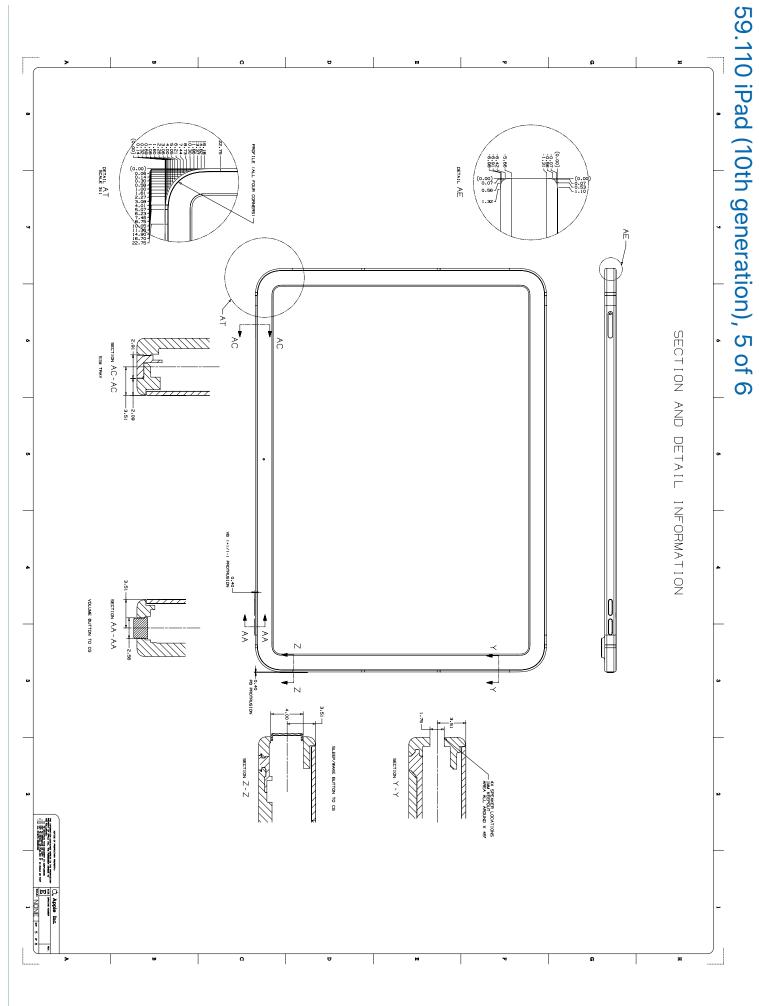


59.106 iPad (10th generation), 1 of 6 FRONT CAMERA KEEPOUT AT SURFACE

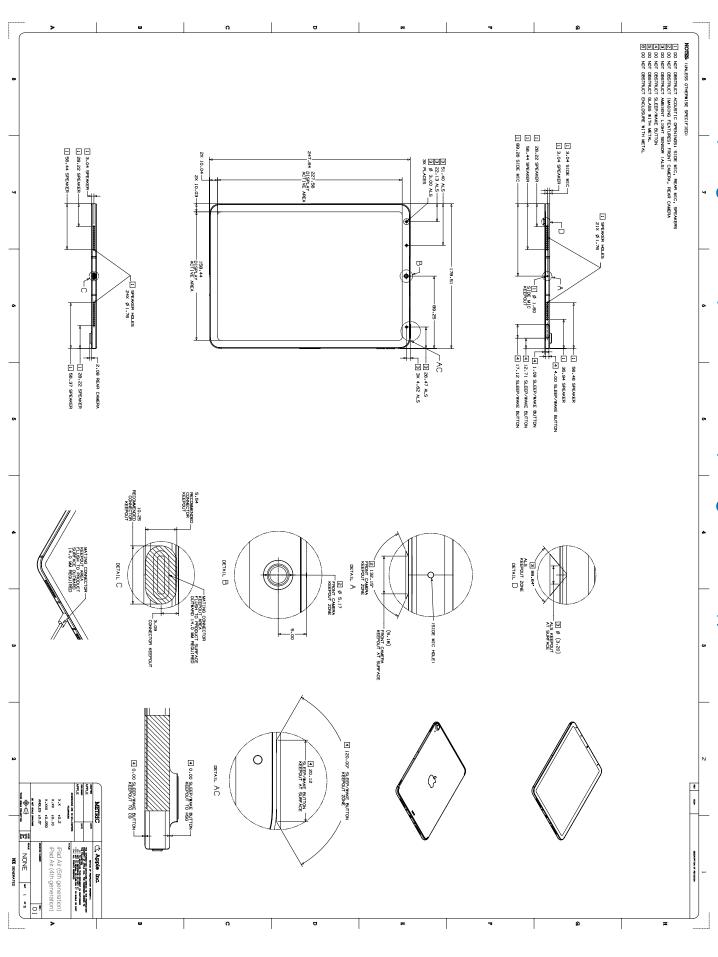








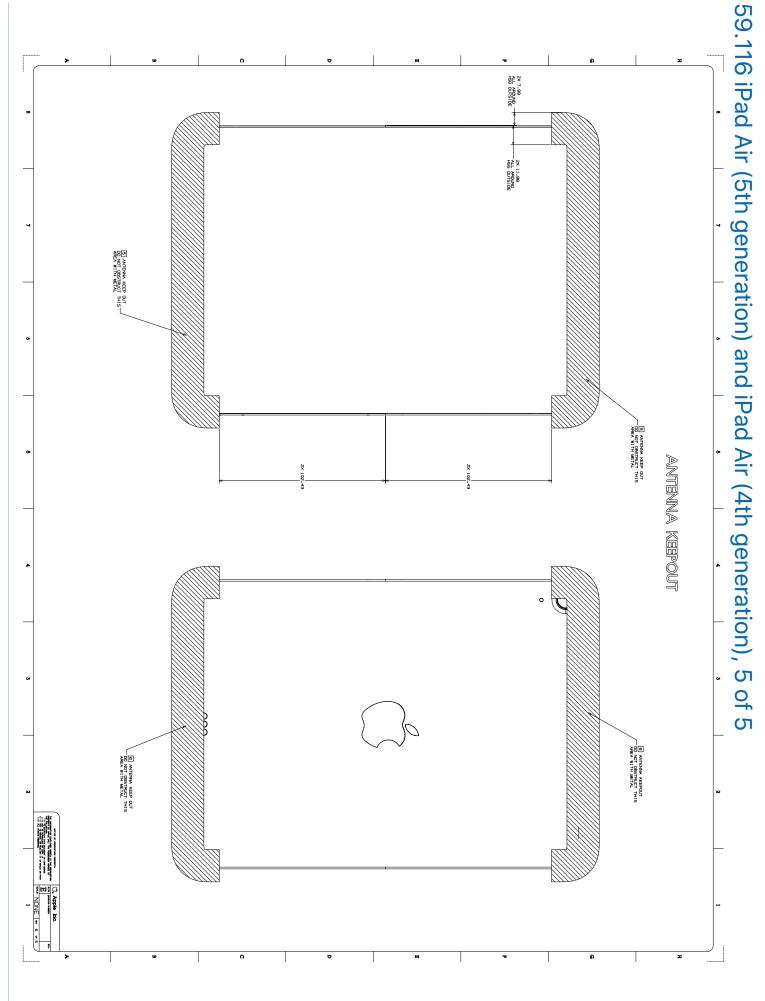
59.112 iPad Air (5th generation) and iPad Air (4th generation), 1 of 5 NOTES (UNLESS OTHERWISE SPECIFIED)



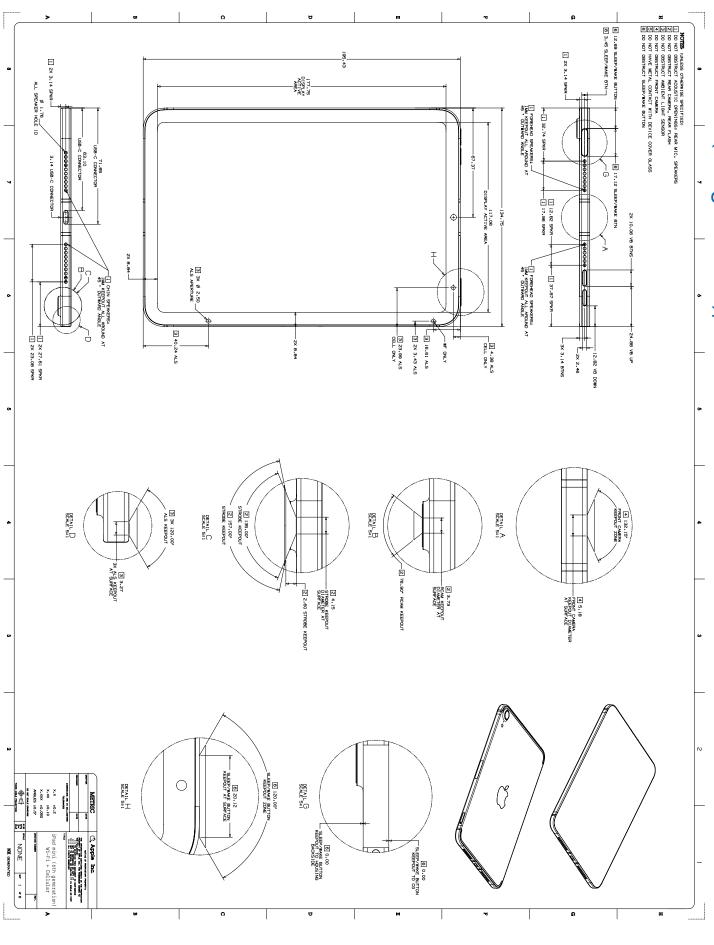
59.113 iPad Air (5th generation) and iPad Air (4th generation), 2 of 5 Z REAR CAMERA LENS Ø 9.85 HEAR CANERA A 19.49 1+1 VOLUME -BUTTON DETAIL F - CHARGING 2.08 REAR CAMERA WINDOW TO HSG BACK SIDE REAR NIC EAR NIC III.IZ Z REAR CANERA 96.20 SECTION AD - AD Z 3.21 MINIMUM REAR CAMERA KEEPOUT DETAIL H ZX 76,57 3x Ø 3.40 CONTACT DIAMETER 0 0 0 2 1 7 3 DETAIL X (0.00)

59.114 iPad Air (5th generation) and iPad Air (4th generation), 3 of HALL EFFECT 200.14 HALL EFFECT 188.43 SENSOR 3 CV4 187.37 SP-FH-1 186.73 CV2 168.017 CV3 177.87 COMPASS -87.41 76.47 HALL EFFECT BV4-12 -000 -000 -000 (0.00) CONTACT CENTER Ġ ora_L L21-648 16.17 BV3-21-×144444√ BV3-41 _в∨з-62 治64 MAGNET DETAIL шш ШШ l ≥ SENSOR 2 CG1 212.89 85.70 PM-CH-41 95.70 PM-CH-31 PM-CH-31 PM-CH-30 82.09 PM-CH-30 PM-CH-20 79.87 PM-CH-1 138.27 PM-FH-5 136.05 PM-FH-41 132.45 PM-FH-31 PM-FH-31 PM-FH-31 128.84 PM-FH-31 PM-FH-25 PM-FH-26 PM-FH-1 (0.00) CONTACT 91.52 PM-CH-5 10.03 209.47 西白 由 27.92 ретлік АН 3 14.88 DETAIL DETAIL AE ð 47.56— 46.72 —3x -20.98 91.802 xE----2x 15.48 — 2x 6.08 O -3x 217.58 . ₹ THE PROPERTY OF THE PROPERTY O TOWARD OUTER COSMETIC SURFACE OF POLARITY TOWARD INSIDE OF PRODUCT E NONE or 3

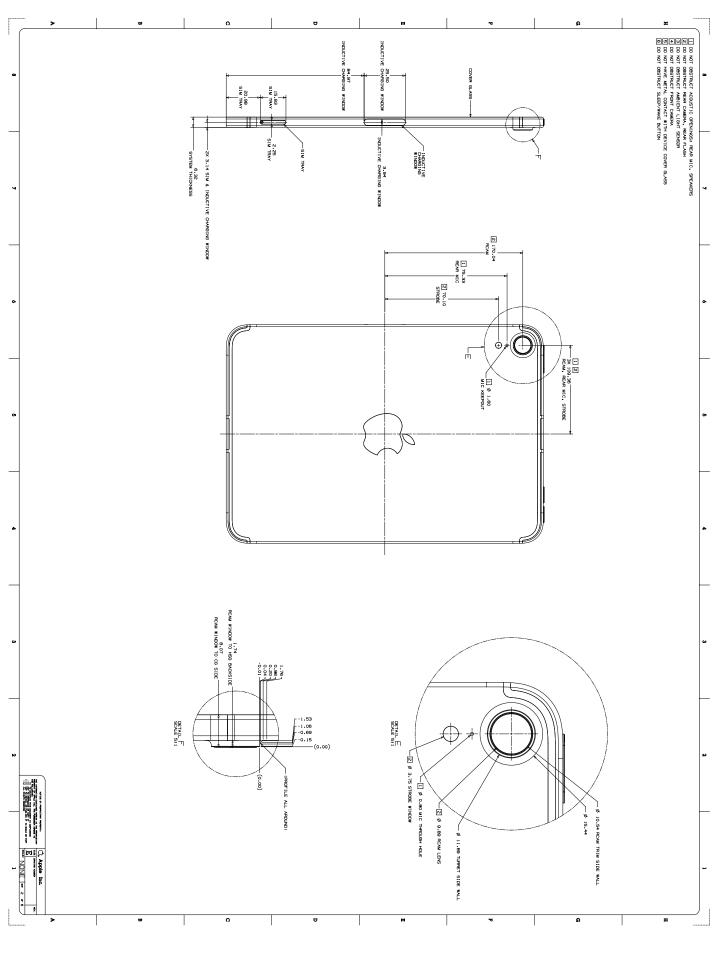
59.115 iPad Air (5th generation) and iPad Air (4th generation), 4 of 5 0.41 -0.02 DETAIL M DETAIL N SECTION W - W SECTION AND DETAIL INFORMATION SECTION X-X INDUCTIVE CHARGING WINDOW FOR PENCIL SPEAKER HOLES

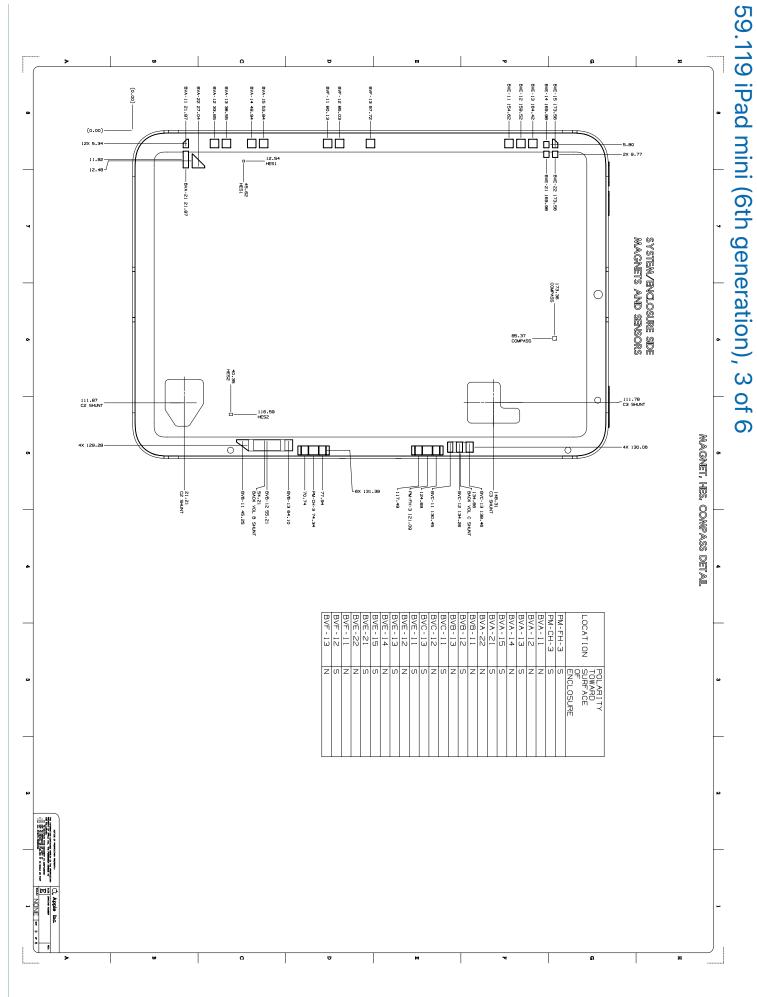


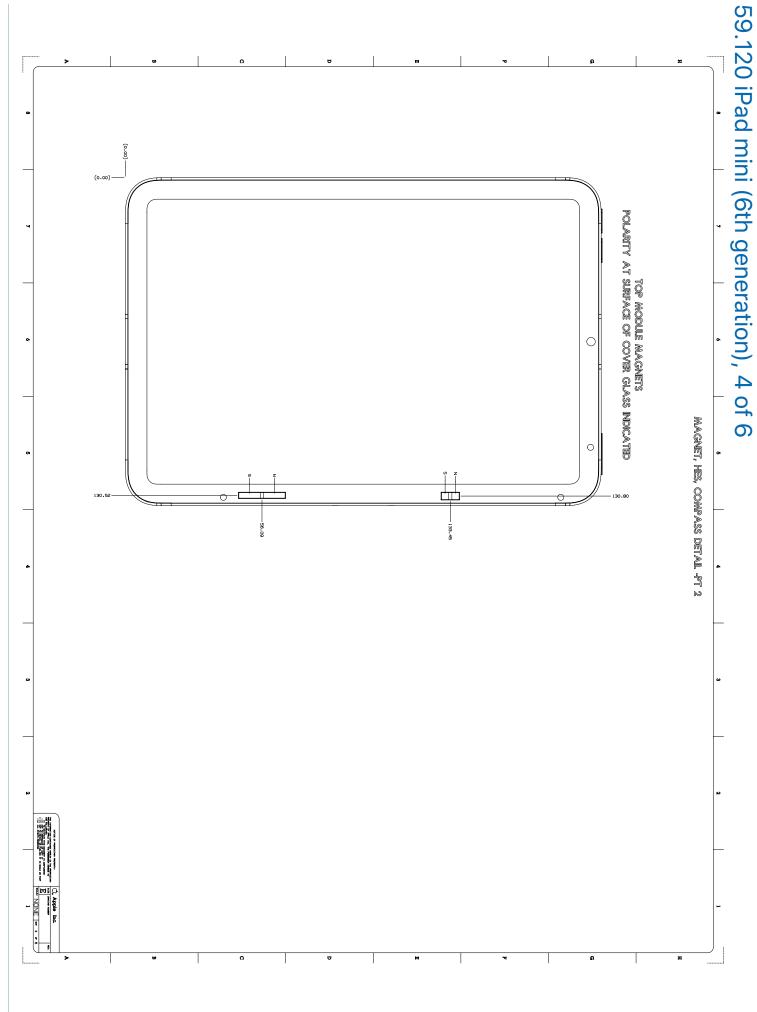
59.117 iPad mini (6th generation), 1 of 6

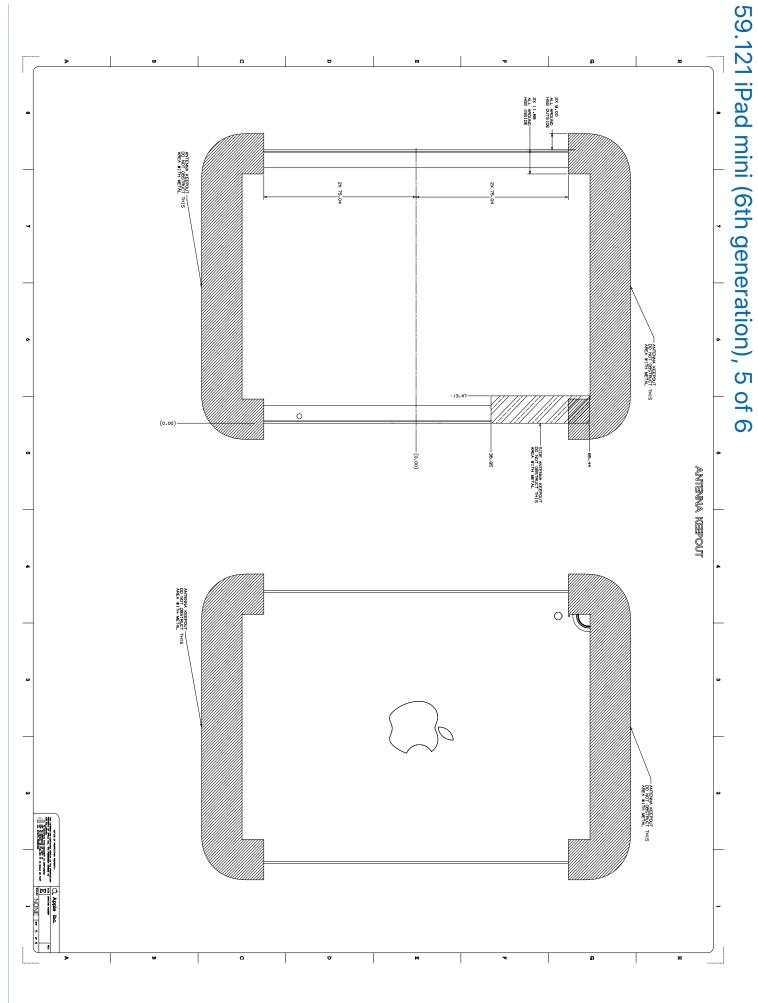


59.118 iPad mini (6th generation), 2 of 6 10 DO NOT DESTRUCT ACCUSTIC OPENINGS FRAM MIC. SPEMERS 20 DO NOT DESTRUCT FRAM CAMEDO, HER FLASH 30 DO NOT DESTRUCT FRAM CAMEDO T LIGHT SESSION AD THE METAL CONFIGN THE METAL CONFIGN THE METAL CONFIGN ALSS TO DO NOT HAVE FAIL CONFIGN ALSS

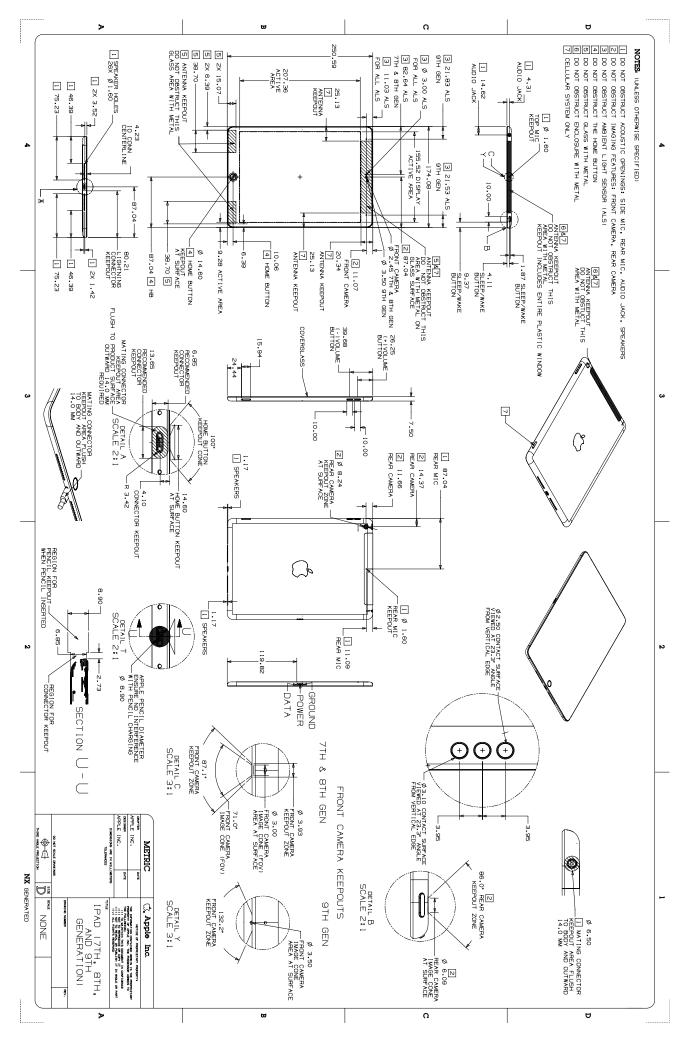




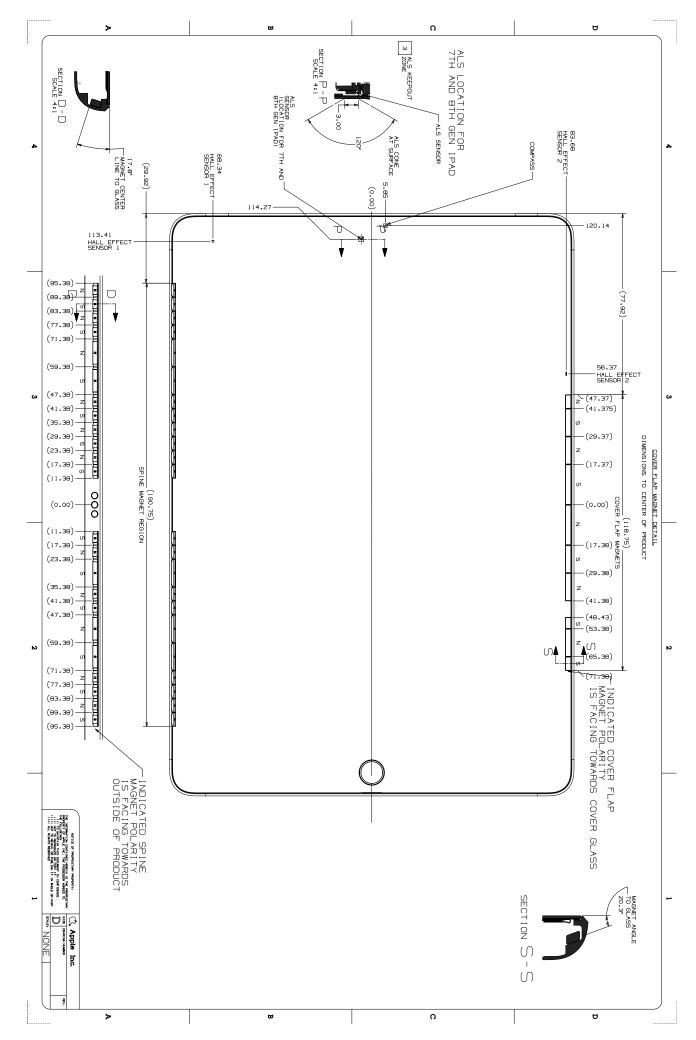




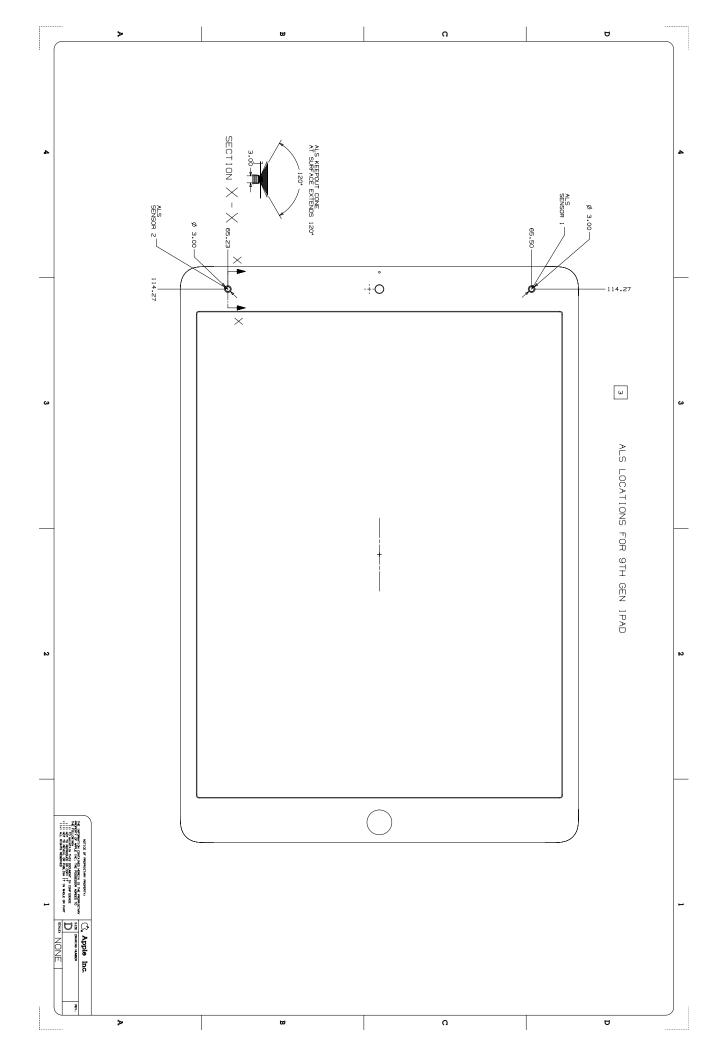
59.123 iPad (9th generation), iPad (8th generation) and iPad (7th generation), 1 of 4



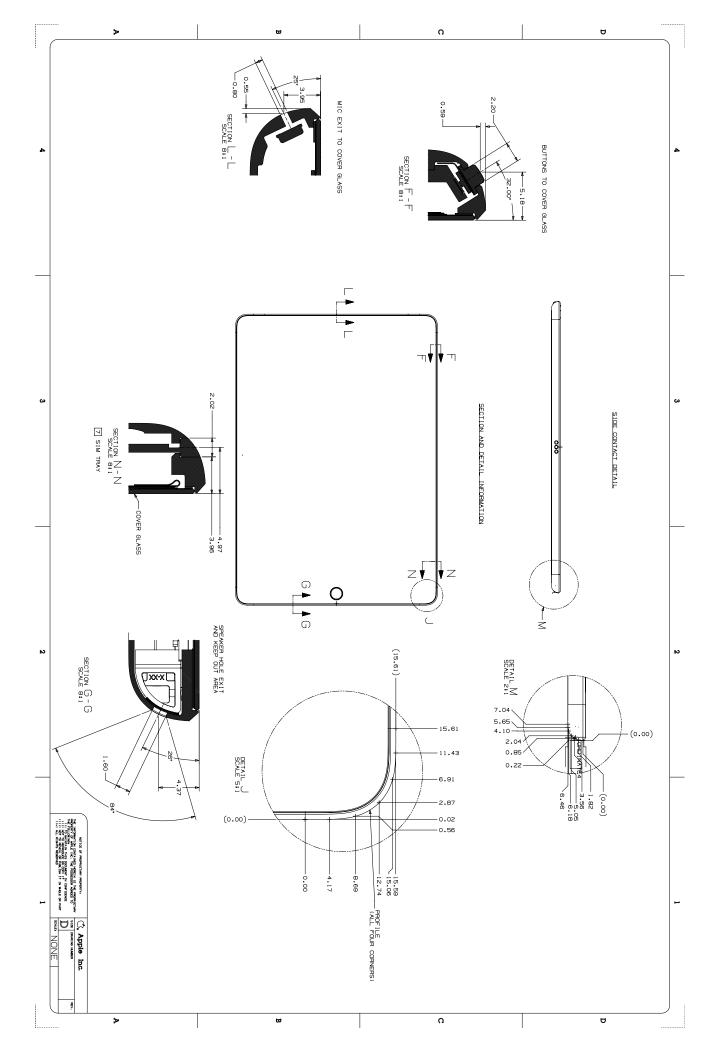
59.124 iPad (9th generation), iPad (8th generation) and iPad (7th generation), 2 of 4



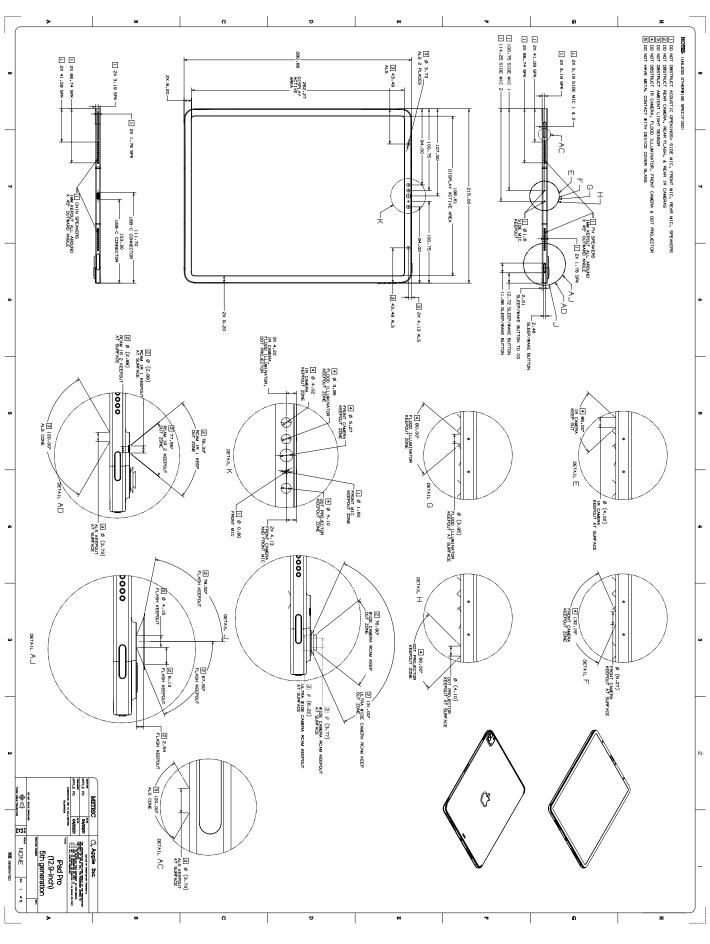
59.125 iPad (9th generation), iPad (8th generation) and iPad (7th generation), 3 of 4



59.126 iPad (9th generation), iPad (8th generation) and iPad (7th generation), 4 of 4

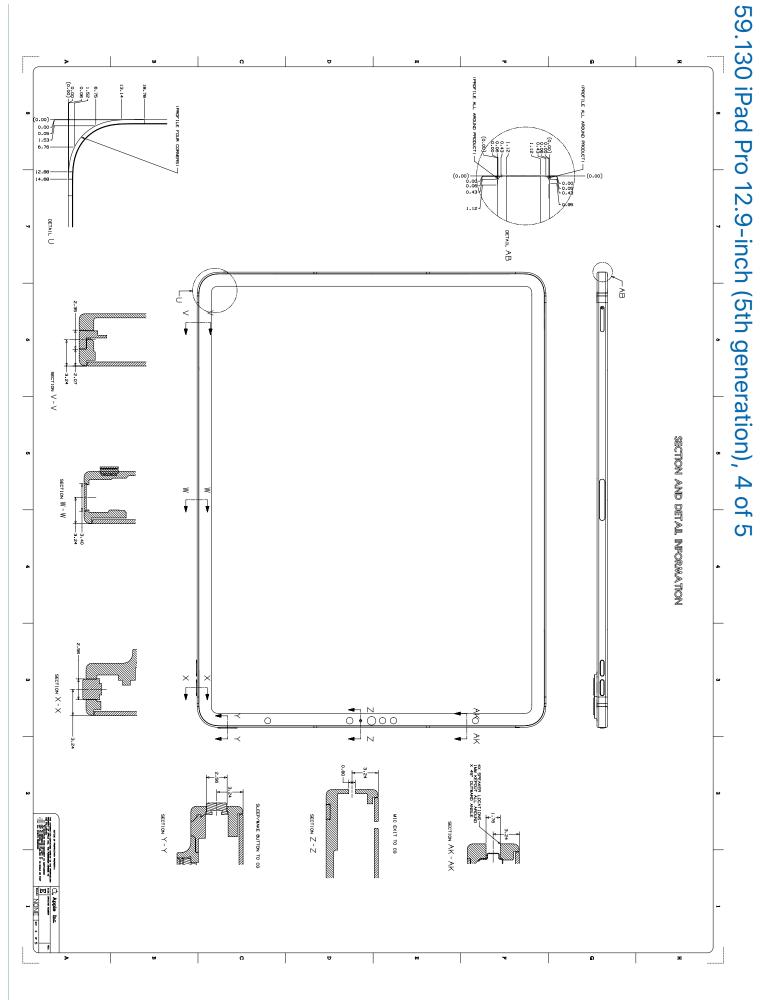


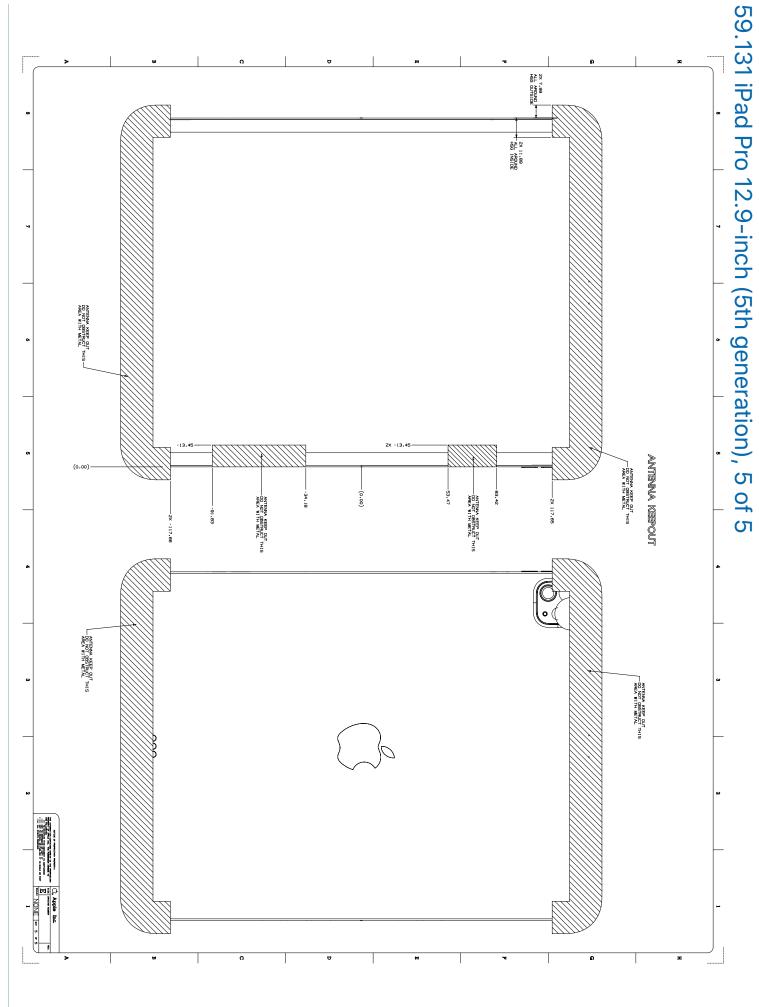
59.127 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (5th generation), 1 of 5 NOTES (UNLESS OTHERWISE SPECIFIED)



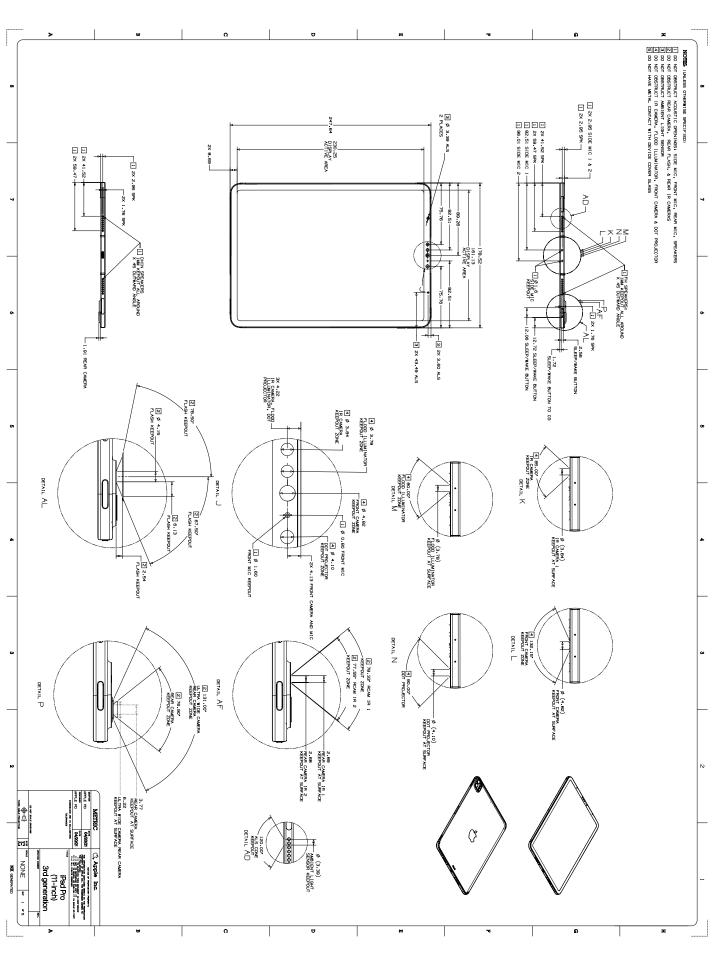
59.128 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (5th generation), 2 of 5 II DO NOT DESTRUCT MODERNIC OPENINOS: SIDE NIC., FROM NIC., SEAN CAMERA & DOT PROJECTOR SID NO NOT HAVE SECUL. COUNTY NIC., SEAN CAMERA & DOT PROJECTOR SID NO NOT HAVE SECUL. COUNTY NIC., SEAN NIC., SEAN CAMERA & DOT PROJECTOR SID NO NOT HAVE SECUL. COUNTY NIC., SEAN NIC., S 6.44 SYSTEM THICKNESS GLASS GLASS 19.54 (+) VOLUME — BUTTON 10.08 (-) VOLUME BUTTON CHARGING WINDOW Z FLASH Ø 3.75Z RCAM IR APERTURE Ø 7.44Z ULTRA WIDE CAMERA Ø 8.83Z WIDE CAMERA Ø 8.83-2 ULTRA WIDE CAMERA 127.21 Z RCAM IR APERTURE 81.88 ф 113.26 $\Theta \otimes \Theta$ DETAIL C 3X Ø 3.40 PIN DIAMETER -2 RCAM IR 2 Ø 2.02 _Z RCAM IR 1 & 2 CAMERA 2X 81.88 Z ULTRA WIDE & WIDE CAMERAS 2X 2.07 RCAM WINDOWS TO HSG BACKSIDE HOUSING SIDEWALL EDGE 5.73— TO TUPRET SIDEWALL EDGE 32.54— TO TUPRET SIDEWALL EDGE 32.54— TO TUPRET SIDEWALL EDGE SAPPHIRE WINDOW TO HSG BACKSIDE Z RCAM IR Z CAMERA _Z RC IR APERTURE 73.40 (0.00) 0.00 0.05 4.53 13.41 (0.00) 0.15 0.94 1.80 DETAIL AE • · · · O SIDE MIC -ETAIL AF -5.73 HOUSING SIDEWALL EDGE TO TURRET SIDEWALL EDGE - 32.54 HOUSING SIDEWALL EDGE TO TURRET SIDEWALL EDGE 140.33 SIDE MIC 3 - 1 3.24 SIDE MIC 3 FROM CG -2X 8.51 RCAM WINDOWS TO CG SIDE PROFILE ALL AROUND) 8.14 SAPPHIRE WINDOW TO CG SIDE THE PROPERTY OF THE COMMENT OF APPLICATION AND APPLICATION OF THE COMMENT OF APPLICATION OF THE COMMENT OF THE

59.129 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (5th generation), 3 of HE1 183.51 CV1 166.27 CV2 174.83 √3x -101.87 3x -101.27 Ì È 0000 BV2-12-1 .v2-84 ☐ 8v2-94 ☐ Bv2-10-4 ВУЗ MAGNET DETAIL шш шш -BV2-14-4 L 231.57 — 2x 227.02 -BV2-15-4 BV2-17-4 -25.38 CG4 -BV2-14-1 Bv2-17-2 37.93 063 O LZX -3.50 (0.00) CENTER OF MIDDLE CONTACT -75.43-37.47 S JIVIBO DETAIL P DETAIL N DETAIL R 4X 69.79— 4X 74.45— 4X 79.15— 4X 83.85— 4X 70.57 4X -30.84 4X -26.21 4X -21.51 4X -17.21 -4X 93.25 -4X 97.95 -3x 251.28 -3x 246.58 -3x 241.88 -10x 237.18 4x 21.21 4x 16.51 4x 11.81 4x 7.11 SECTION AH- AH HES I ACTIVATED IN THIS DIRECTION 2.33 BOTTOM OF HES TO OUTSIDE OF HSG WITH B FIELD IN-THIS DIRECTION N THE ENGINEERS OF THE PROPERTY OF THE PROPERTY OF A PROPERTY OF THE PROPERTY OF 1.38 —BOTTOM OF HES TO OUTSIDE OF HSG SECTION AG-AG 8 E NONE or 3 or

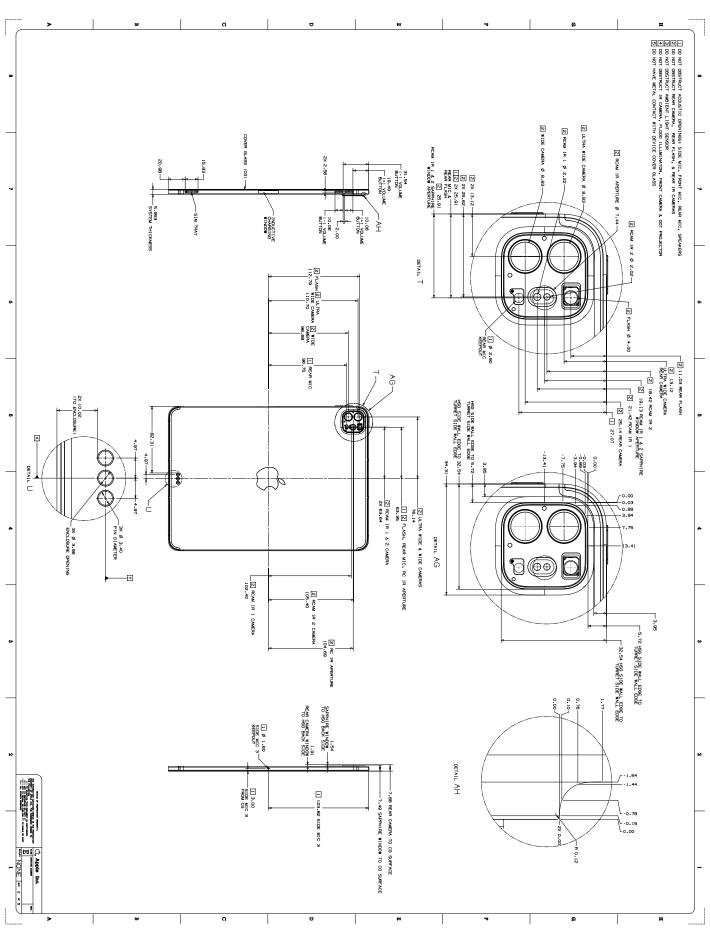


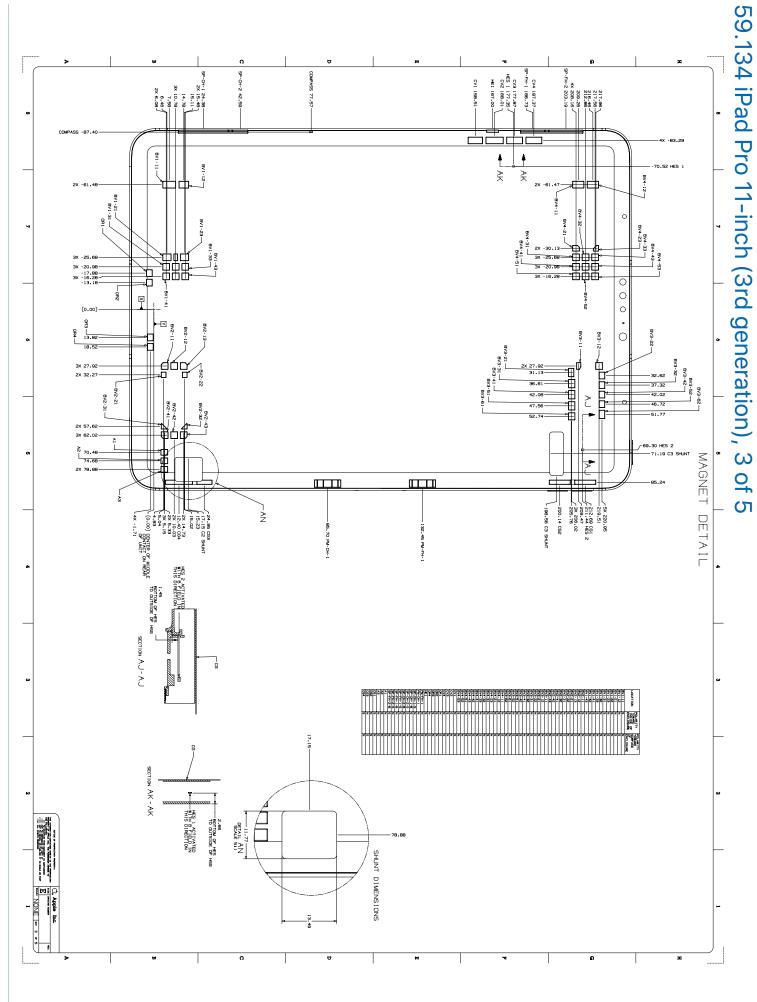


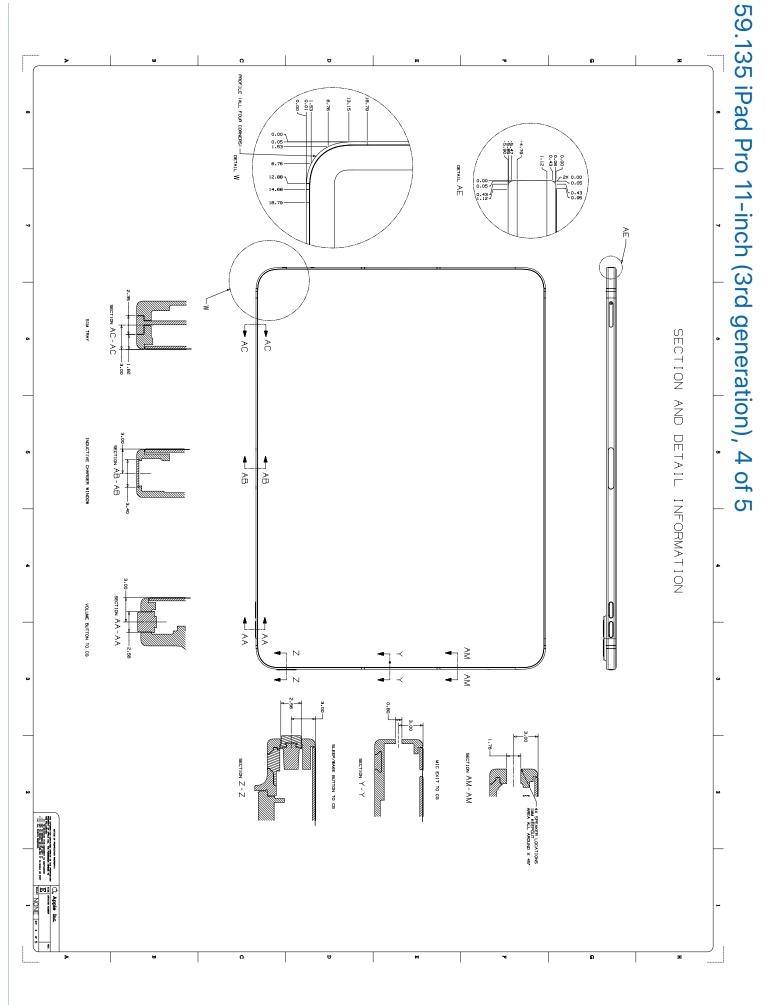
59.132 iPad Pro 11-inch (3rd generation), 1 of 5

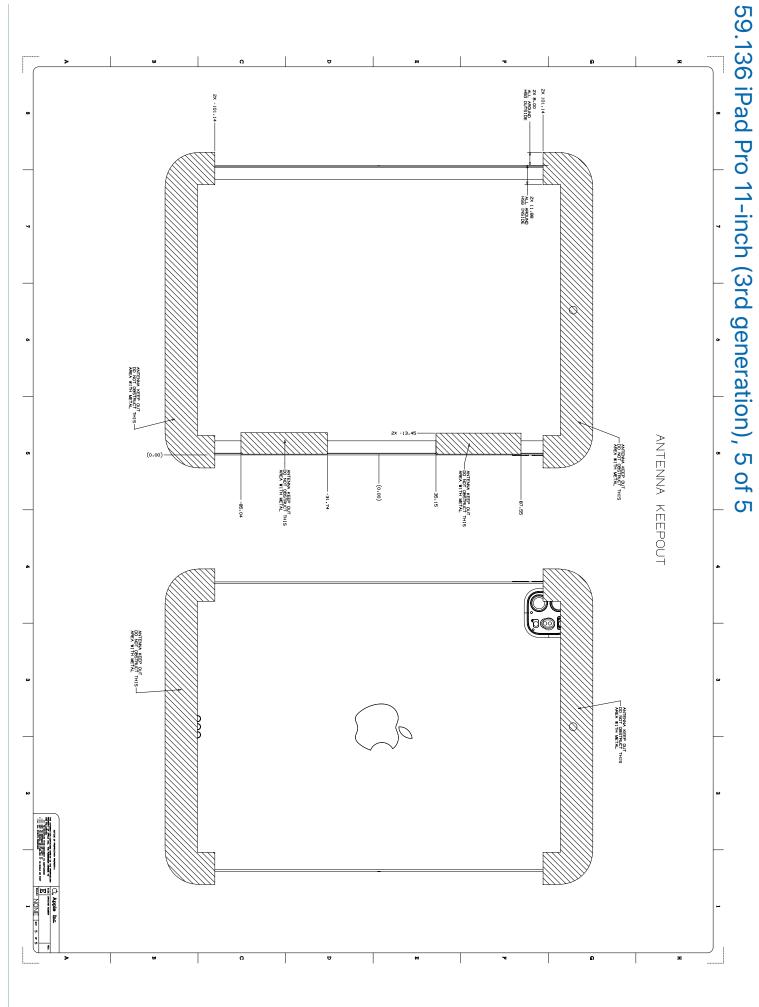


59.133 iPad Pro 11-inch (3rd generation), 2 of 5

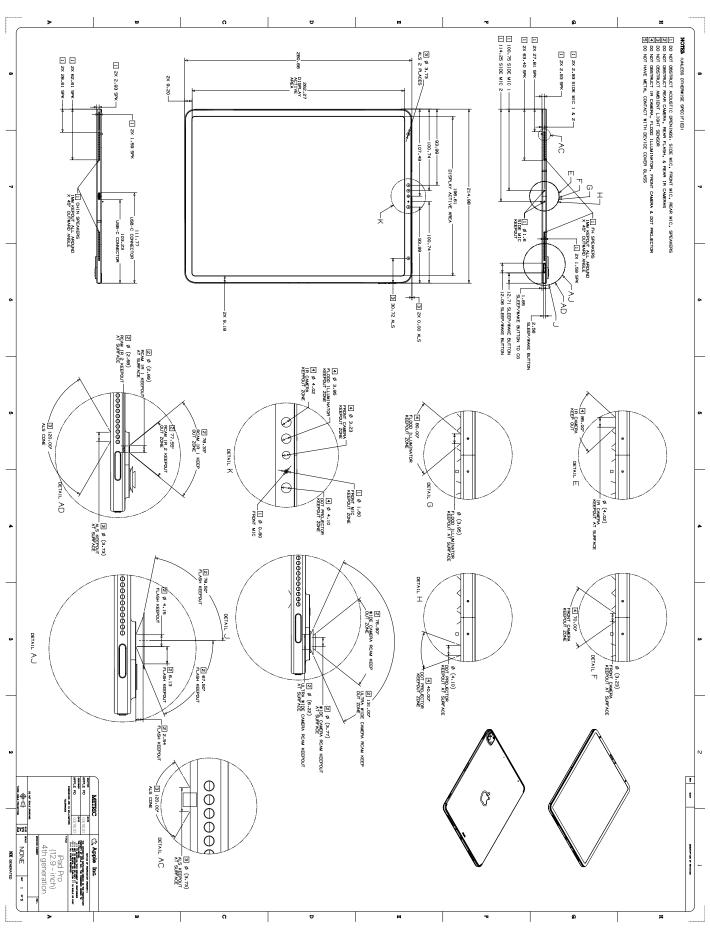




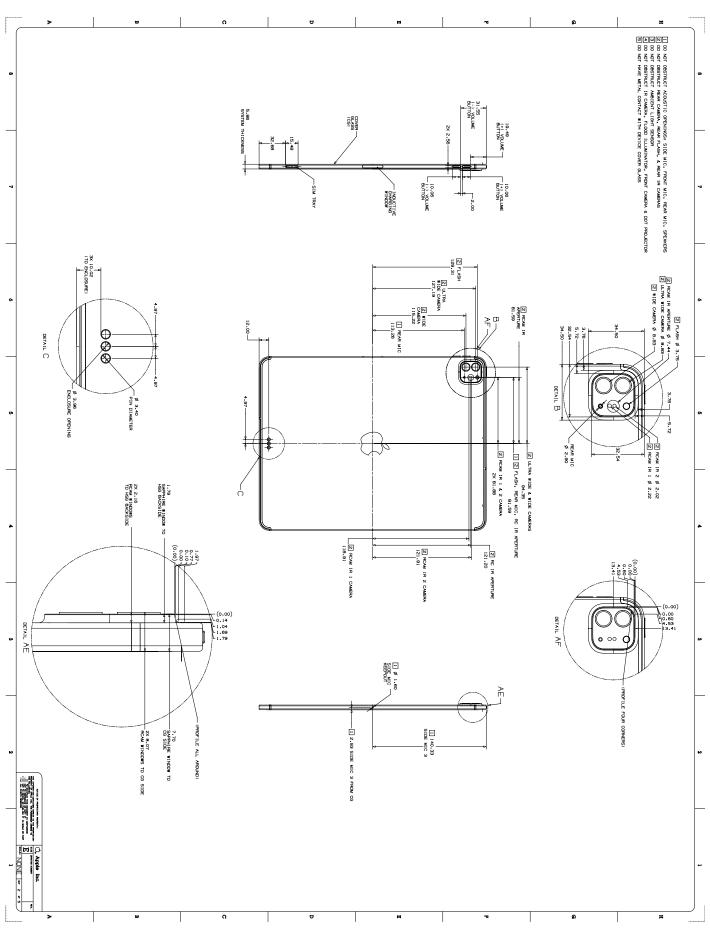




59.137 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (4th generation), 1 of 5 NOTES (UNLESS OTHERWISE SPECIFIED)

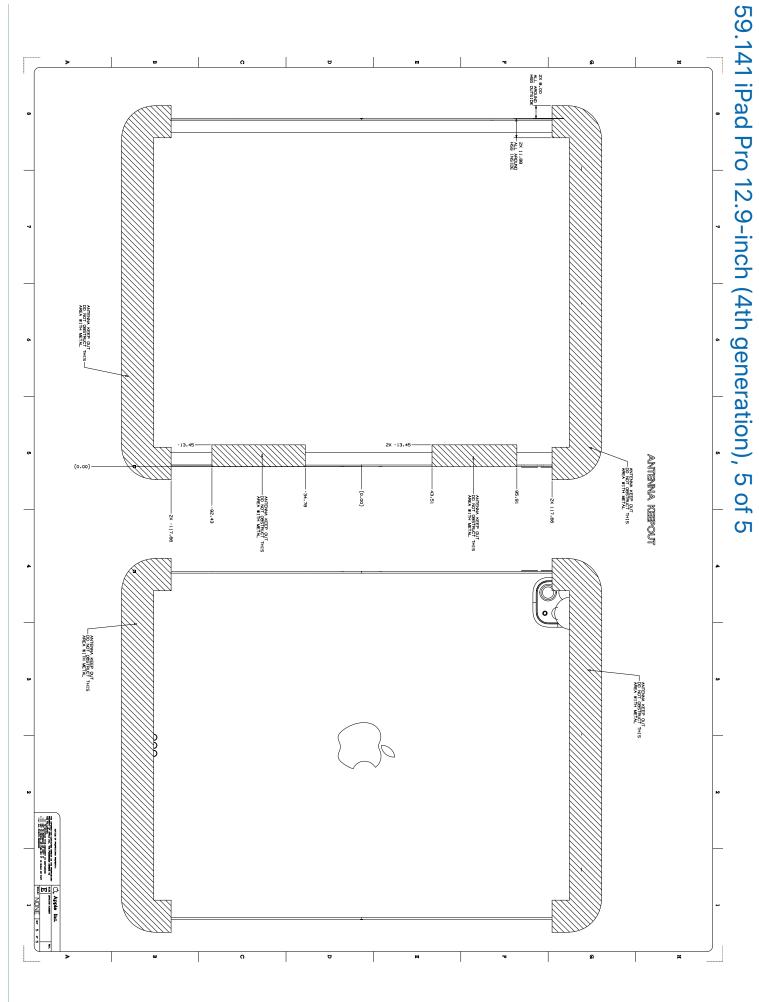


59.138 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (4th generation), 2 of 5

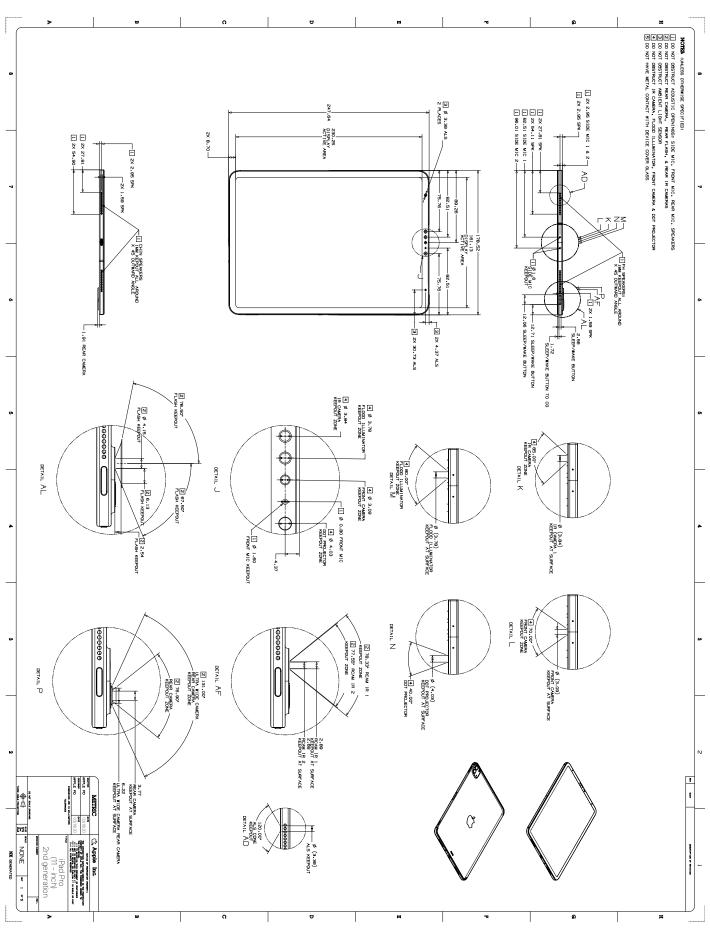


59.139 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (4th generation), 3 of 5 SP-FH-3 225.57 CV4 195.70 CV3 185.27 CV3 185.27 CV3 185.27 CV1 168.27 CV2 174.83 Ī. Ž 000.0 -11 Bv2-28 -6v2-15 BV3-54-<u>-</u>∂ MAGNET DETAIL 15.71 PUFFH-47 160-10 PUFFH-37 PUFFH-80 146-10 PUFFH-37 PUFFH-80 146-88 PUFFH-1 ∠244.12 ∠002 ∠2x 231.72 ∠231.57 — 2x 227.02 104.96 PM-CH-36 104.96 PM-CH-37 PM-CH-46 101.35 PM-CH-38 PM-CH-28 -244.47 HES 2 L2x -3.50 ------DETAIL P DETAIL S DETAIL N DETAIL R -00000 3x 25.42 3x 20.72 3x 16.02 15.39 6x 11.32 6X -26.21 6X -21.51 6X -16.81 3x 11.8 - 3x 249.93 - 3x 245.23 - 3x 240.53 - 3x 235.83 - 3x 231.13 - 3x 226.43 SECTION AH - AH HES I ACTIVATED WITH B FIELD IN HES 2 ACTIVATED WITH S DIRECTION THIS DIRECTION T BOTTOM OF HES TO OUTSIDE OF HSG THE STATE OF PROPERTY AND AND THE STATE OF SHAPE SECTION AG-AG E ROLL NONE | ser 3 or 5 3.28 BOTTOM OF HES TO OUTSIDE OF HSG

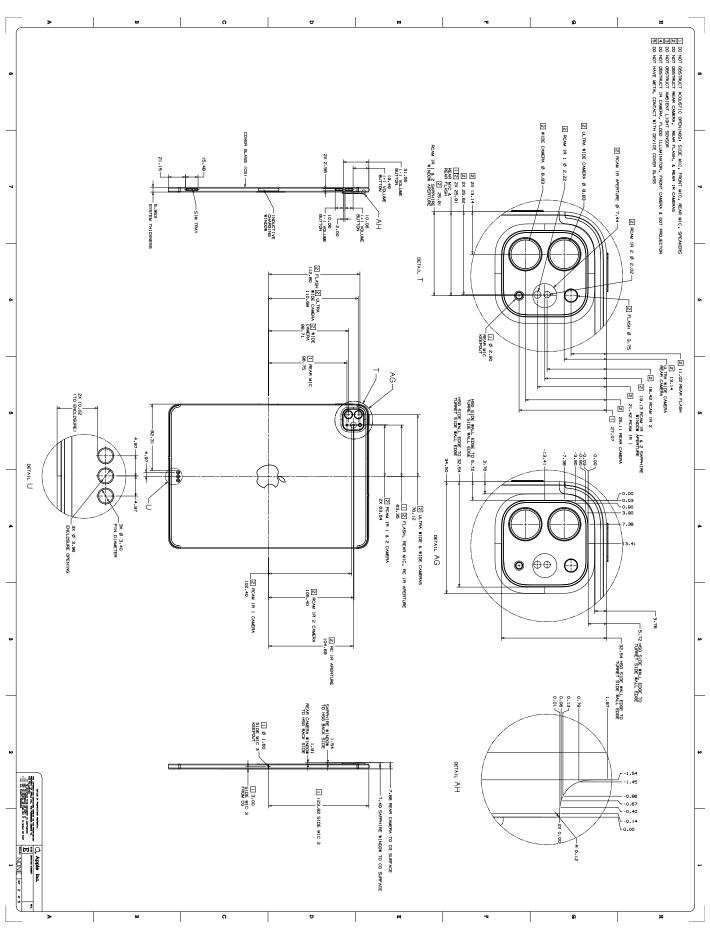
59.140 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (4th generation), 4 of 5 00 00000°C ветлік АВ < [SECTION AND DETAIL INFORMATION SECTION AA-AA SECTION Z-Z 4X SPEAKER LOCATIONS IMM KEPOUT ALL AROUND X 45° OUTWARD ANGLE



59.142 iPad Pro 11-inch (2nd generation), 1 of 5 NOTES: (UNLESS OTHERWISE SPECIFIED)

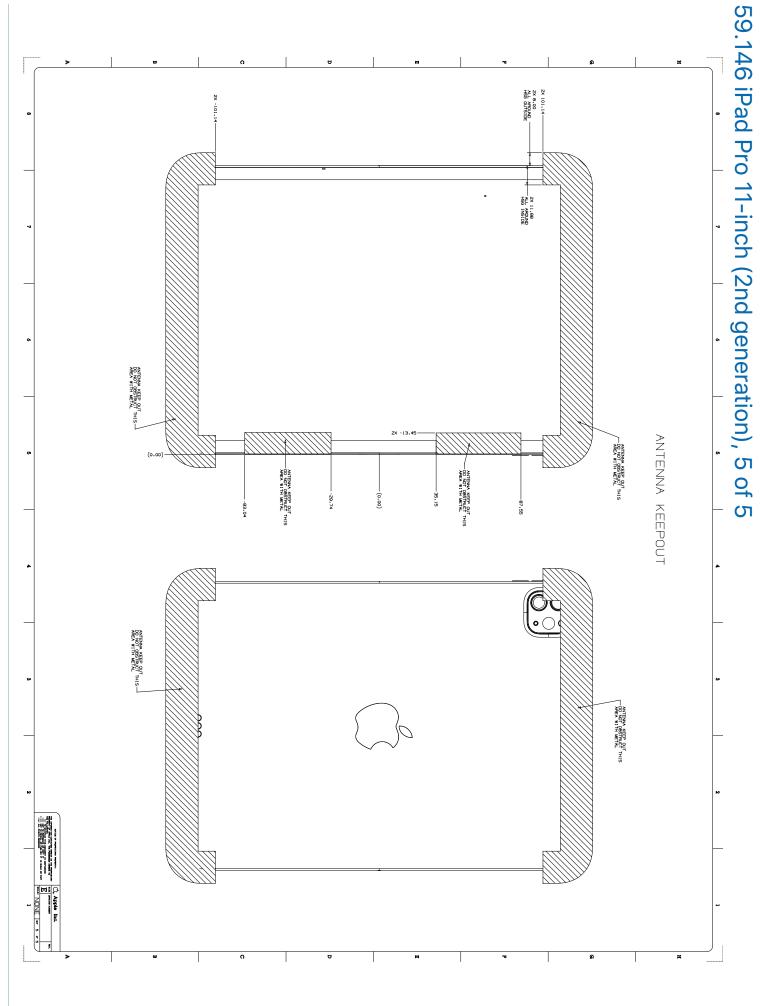


59.143 iPad Pro 11-inch (2nd generation), 2 of 5

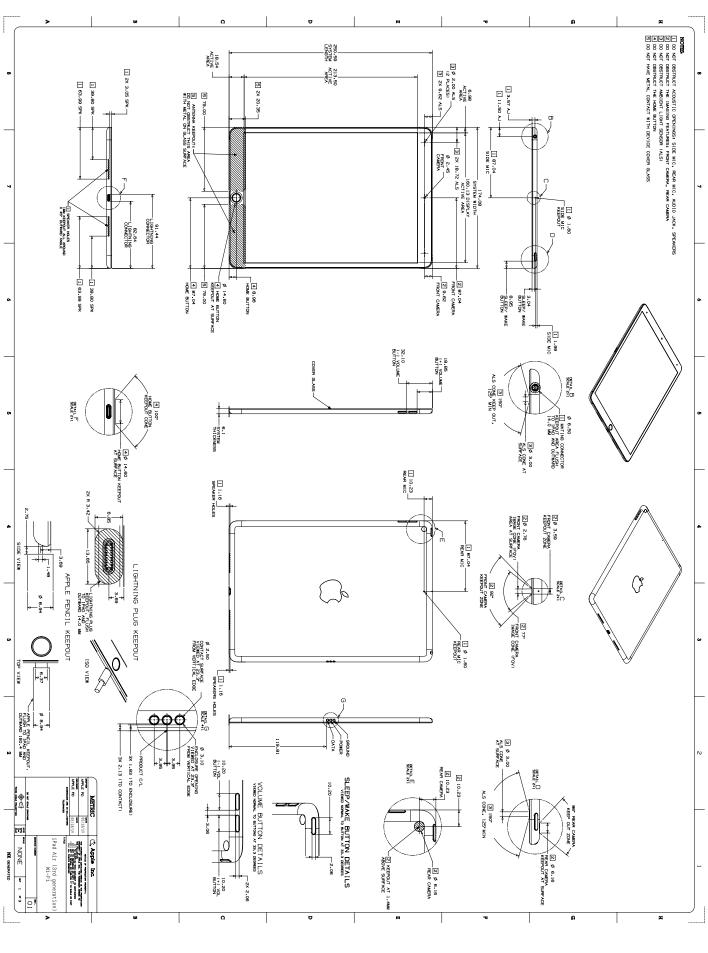


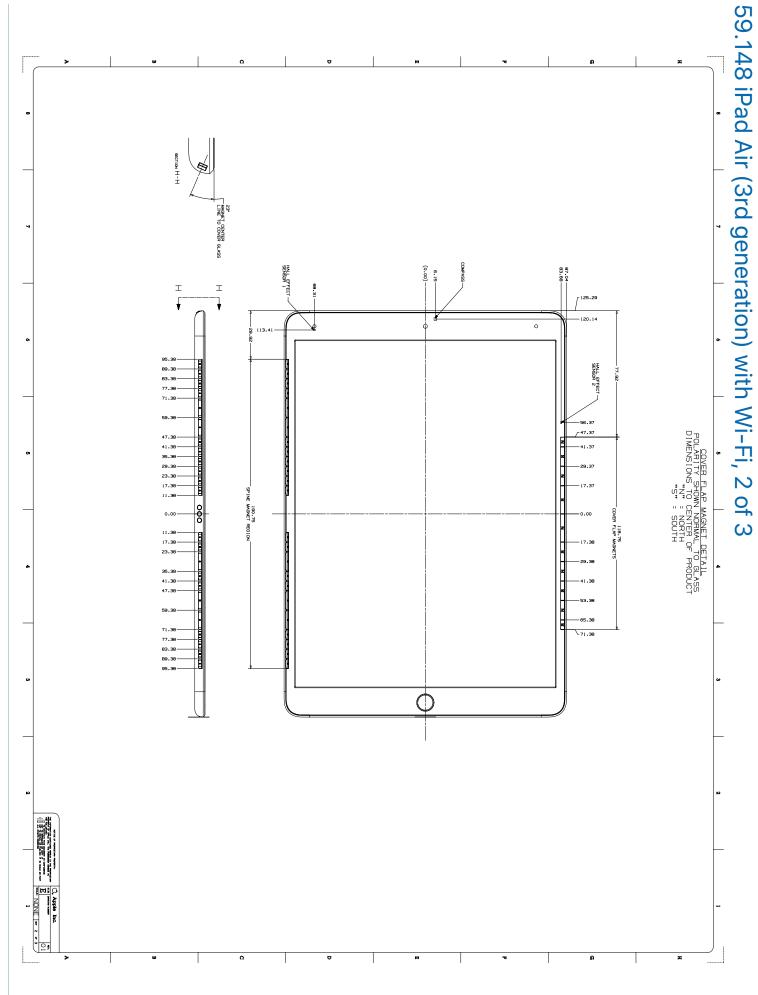
59.144 iPad Pro 11-inch (2nd generation), 3 of 5 CV3 177.87 HES 1 177.35 CV2 168.01 P-FH-1 217.96 217.56 218.86 228.86 209.28 4x 208.18 CV1 158.51 1 186.73 BV1-11 € <u></u>£. ≥ ₹ BV4-12 3X -25.68-3X -20.98 -17.88 3X -16.28 -13.18 0 ř 0 0 BV3-32-36.61 37.32 42.08 42.02 47.56 48.72 2X 57.62 0 3X 62.02-70.48 74.68 -71.19 C3 SHUNT MAGNET DETAIL ШШ ШШ 212.69 CG1 211.41 FES 2 209.47 FES 2 209.47 FES 2 209.70 FES 2 L196.56 C3 SHUNT - 138.58 PM-FH-5 - 136.05 PM-FH-4T PM-FH-4B -200.14 CGZ 24.95 003 171.15 02 94MT 15.03 22 11.73 27.10.03 27.10.03 27.5.03 1.83 27.5.03 1.83 27.5.03 1.83 27.5.03 1.83 27.5.03 1.83 27.5.03 1.83 27.5.03 1.83 27.5.03 1.83 27.5.03 128.84 PM-FH-2T -126.31 PM-FH-1 — 91.83 PM-CH-5 — 89.30 PM-CH-4T PM-CH-48 2.99 BOTTOM OF HES TO OUTSIDE OF HSG 132.45 PM-FH-3T PM-FH-3B WITH B FIELD IN THIS DIRECTION SECTION AJ-AJ SECTION AK - AK WITH B FIELD IN THIS DIRECTION 2.68 -BOTTOM OF HES TO OUTSIDE OF HSG THE INCOMPANY CONTRACTOR TO A CONTRACT OF THE CONTRACT OF CONTRACT OF THE CONTRACT OF CONTRACT OF THE CONTRACT C. Apple Inc.

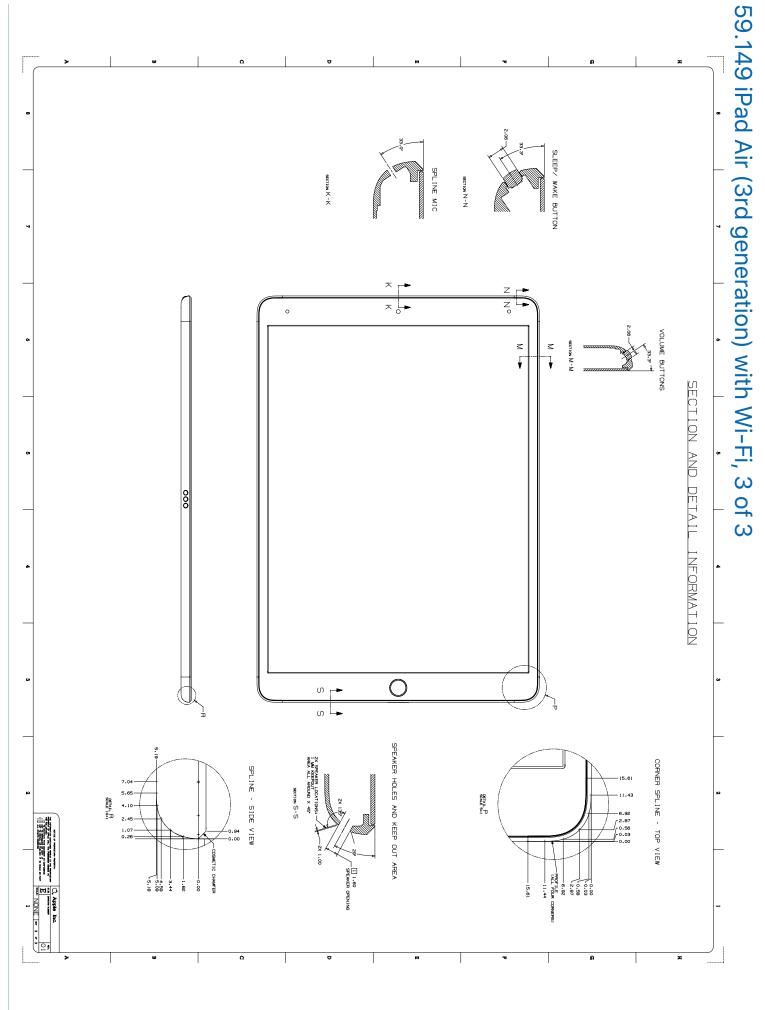
59.145 iPad Pro 11-inch (2nd generation), 4 of 5 0.00 0.05 2X 0.00 0.22 0.54 0.97 8:58 8:58 8:58 8:58 6.76 DETAIL AE 12.88 13.13 14.68 Ş. SECTION AND DETAIL INFORMATION ₹ AC INDUCTIVE CHARGER WINDOW SECTION AB - AB **≜**... AB . AB VOLUME BUTTON TO CG SECTION X-X SECTION Z - Z SECTION Y-Y MIC EXIT TO CG



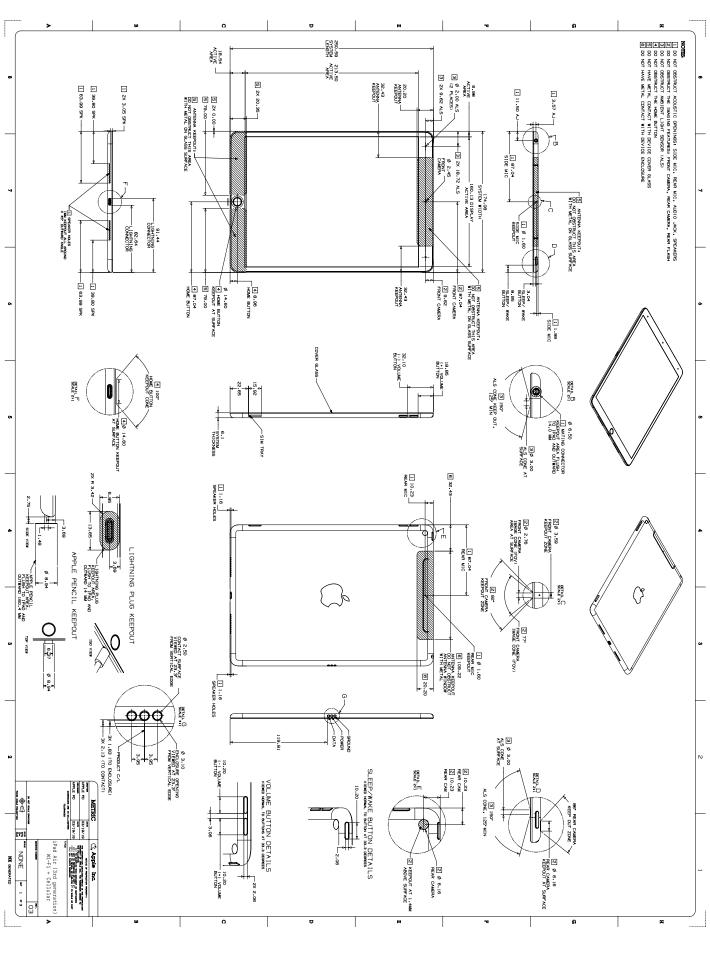
59.147 iPad Air (3rd generation) with Wi-Fi, 1 of 3 NOTES TO NOT OSSTRUCT ACQUSTIC OPENINGS: SIDE WIC, REAR WIC, AUDIO JACK, SPEMERS ON NOT OSSTRUCT THE IMMOING FENTINESS FRONT CAMERA, REAR CAMERA ON NOT OSSTRUCT MARION LIGHT SENSOR (ALS) ON NOT OSSTRUCT THE AUGE BUTTON DO NOT OSSTRUCT THE AUGE BUTTON DO NOT HAVE WETAL CONTACT WITH DEVICE COVER GLASS ()°

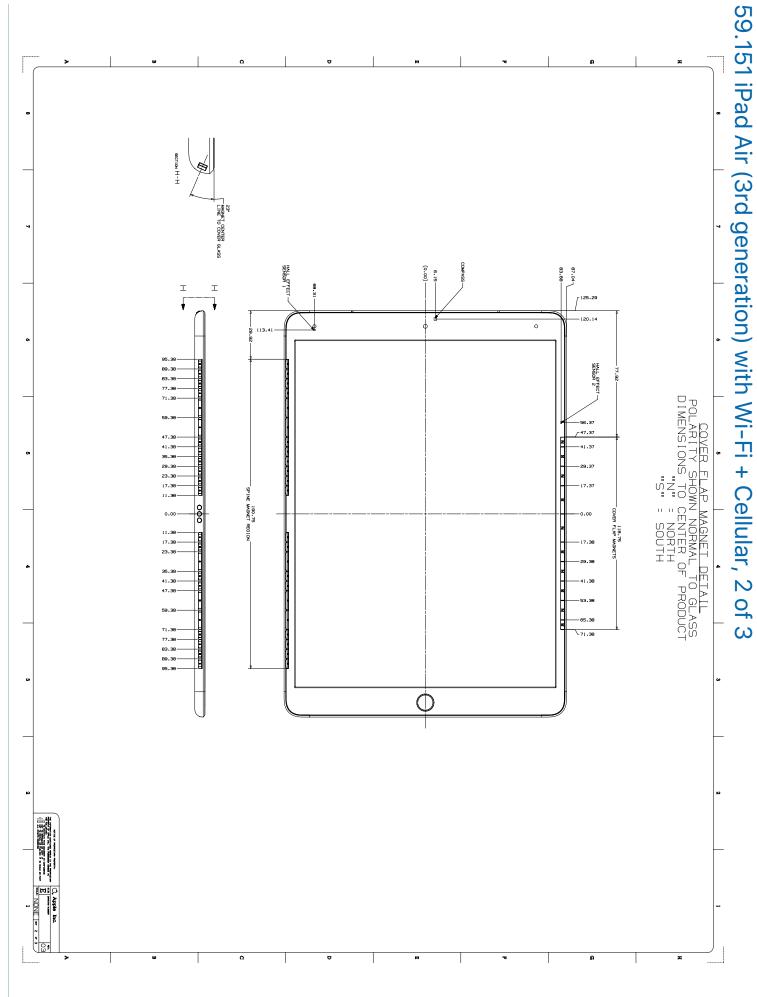


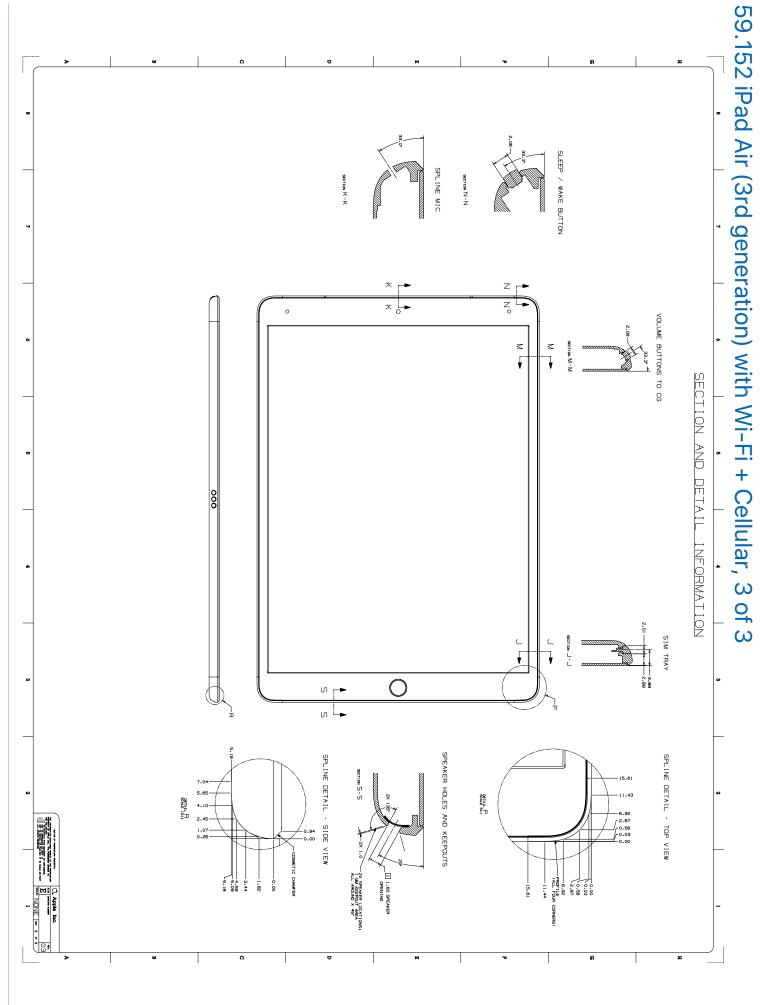




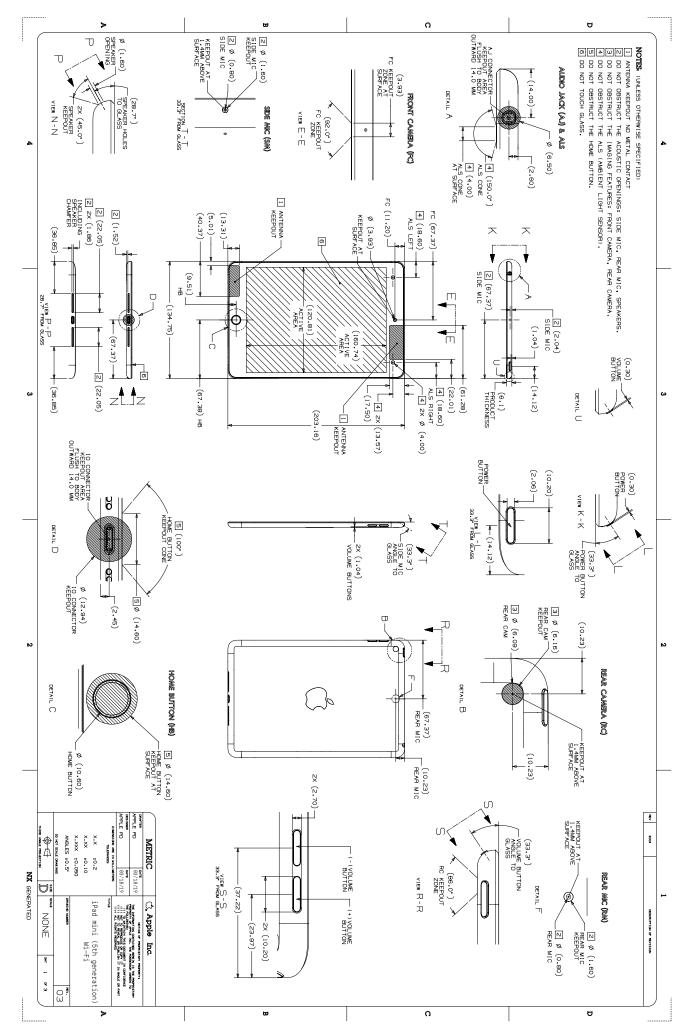
59.150 iPad Air (3rd generation) with Wi-Fi + Cellular, 1 of 3



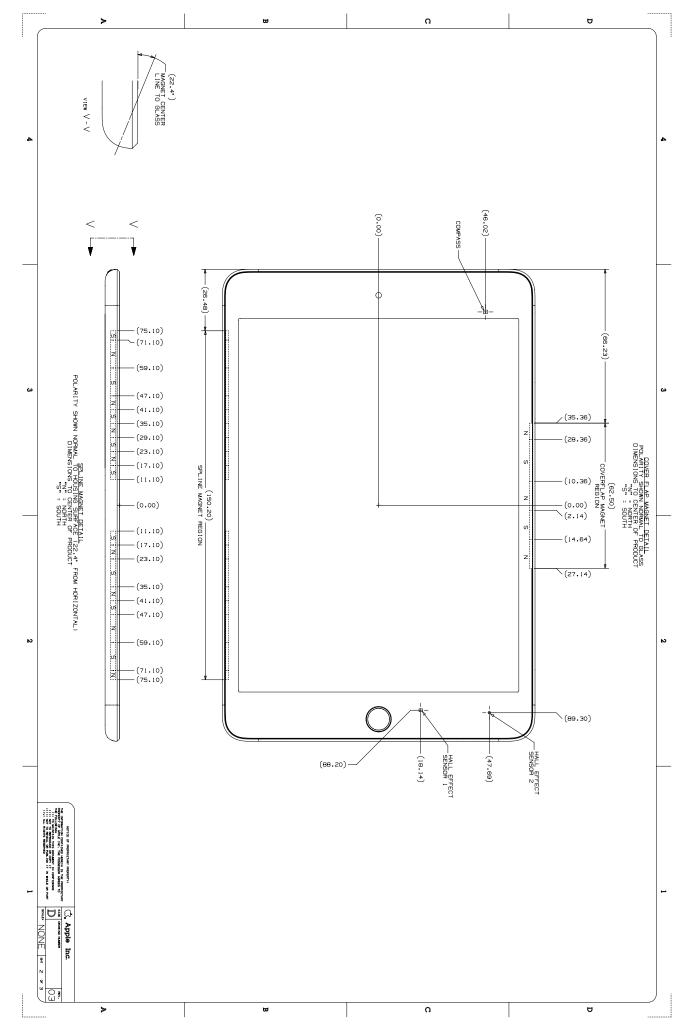




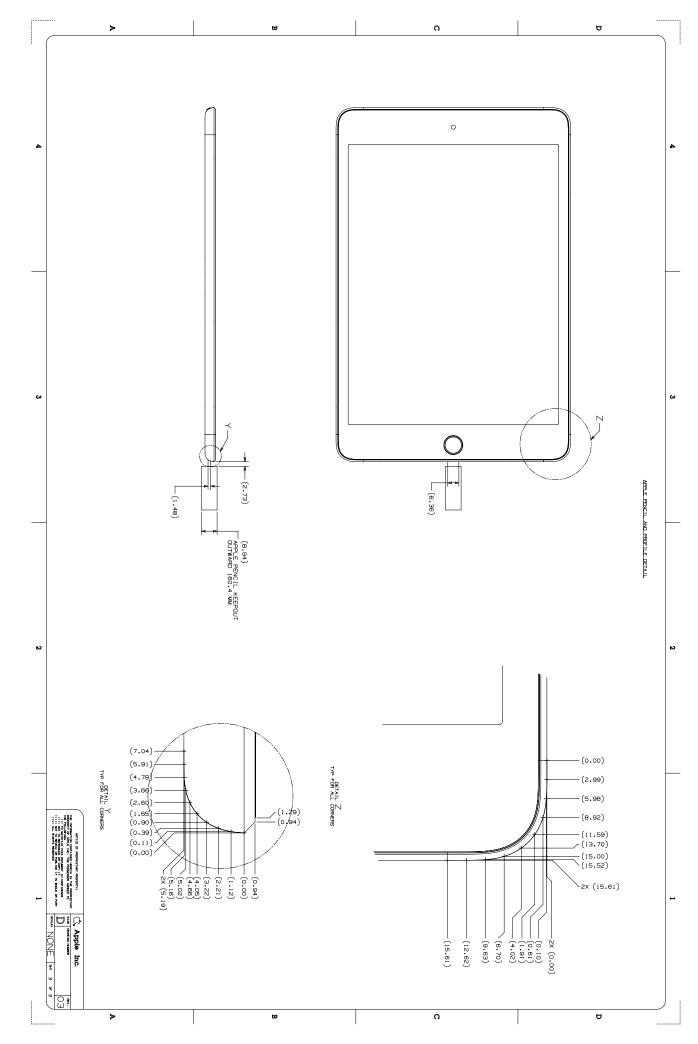
59.153 iPad mini (5th generation) with Wi-Fi, 1 of 3



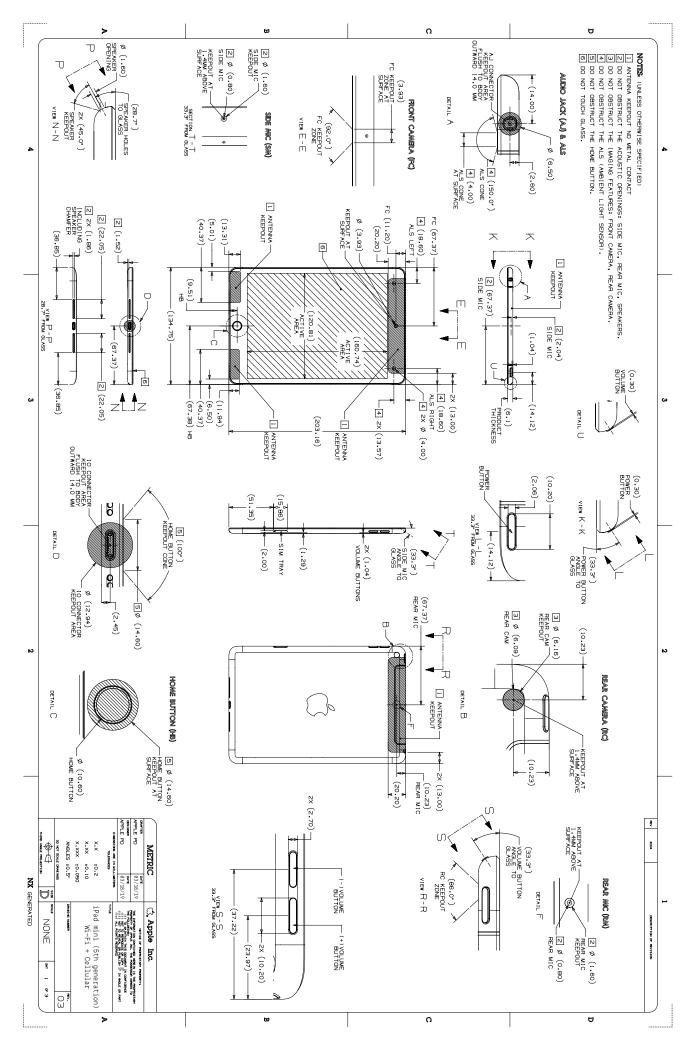
59.154 iPad mini (5th generation) with Wi-Fi, 2 of 3



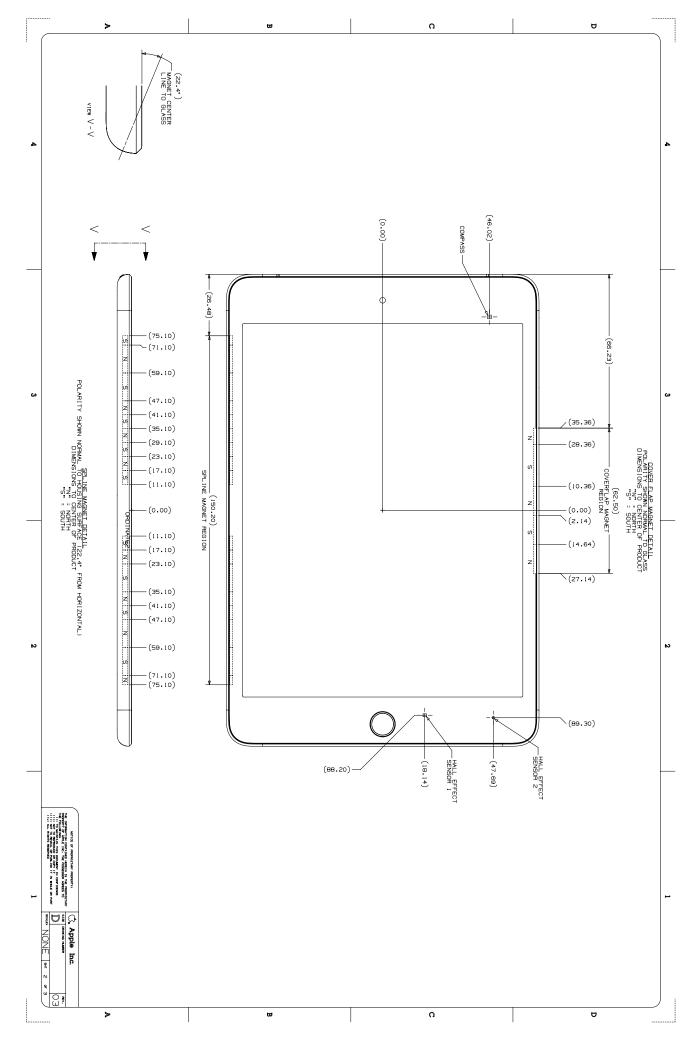
59.155 iPad mini (5th generation) with Wi-Fi, 3 of 3



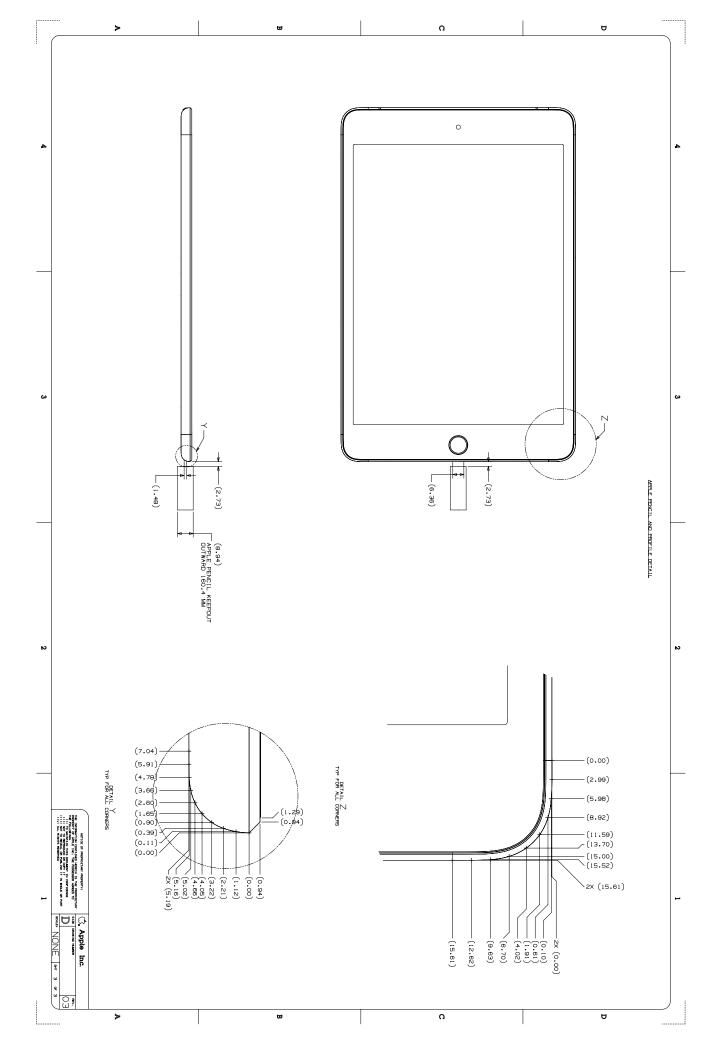
59.156 iPad mini (5th generation) with Wi-Fi + Cellular, 1 of 3



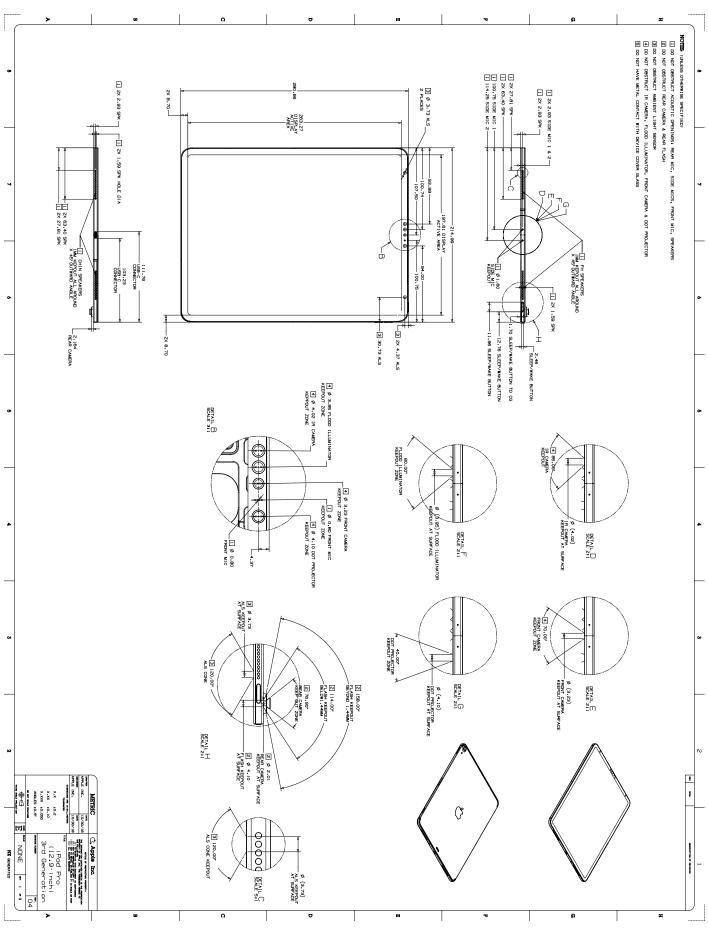
59.157 iPad mini (5th generation) with Wi-Fi + Cellular, 2 of 3



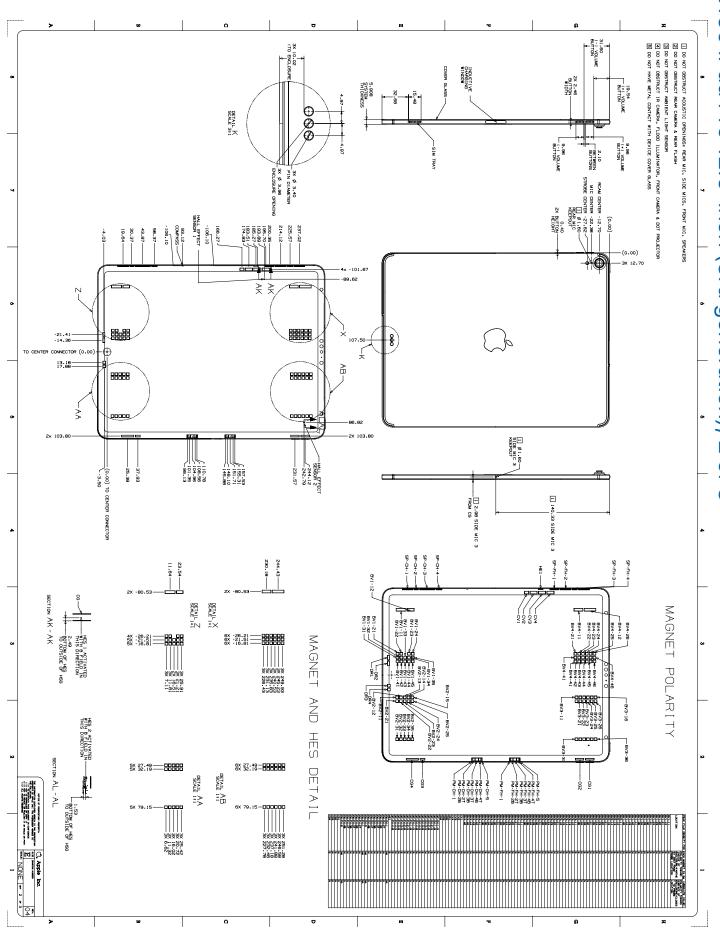
59.158 iPad mini (5th generation) with Wi-Fi + Cellular, 3 of 3

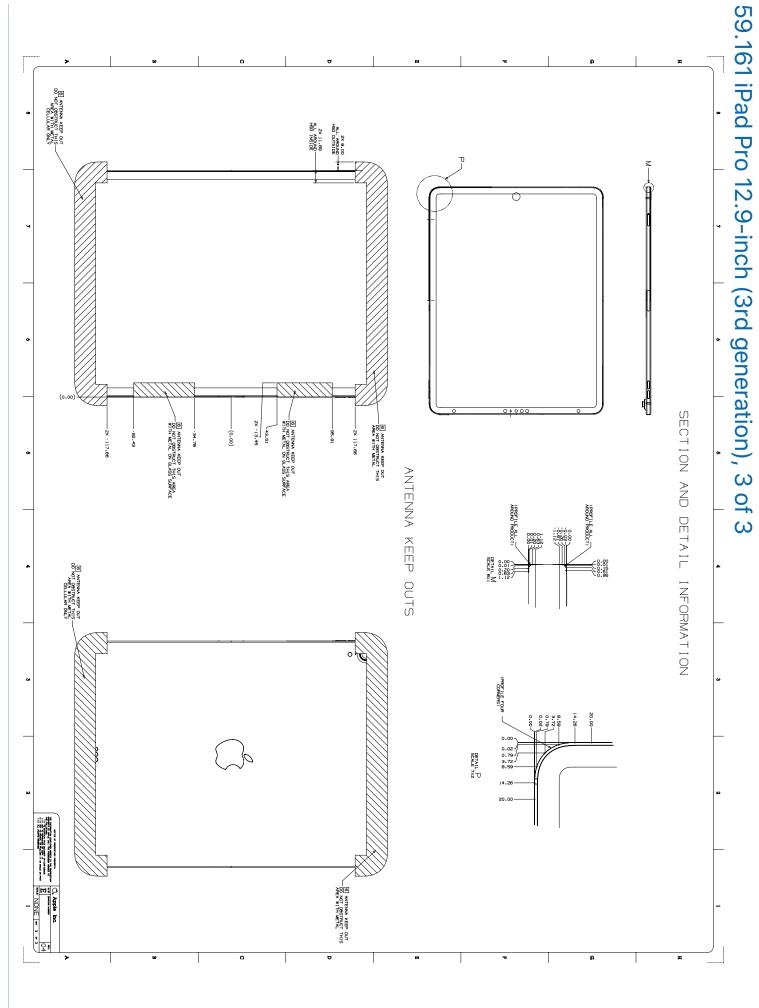


59.159 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (3rd generation), 1 of 3

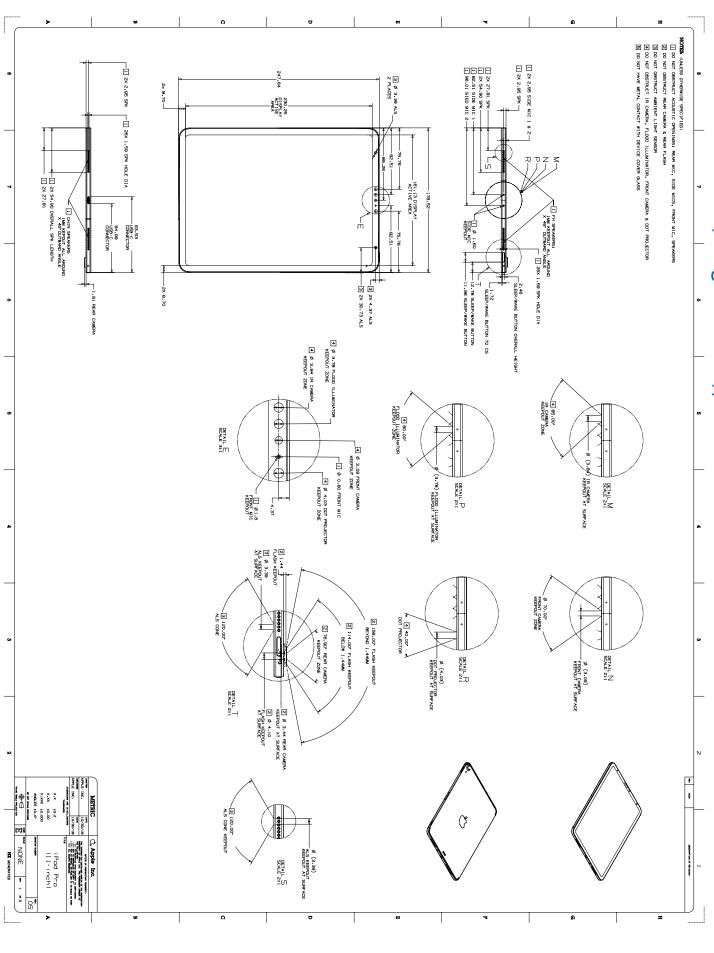


59.160 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (3rd generation), 2 of 3

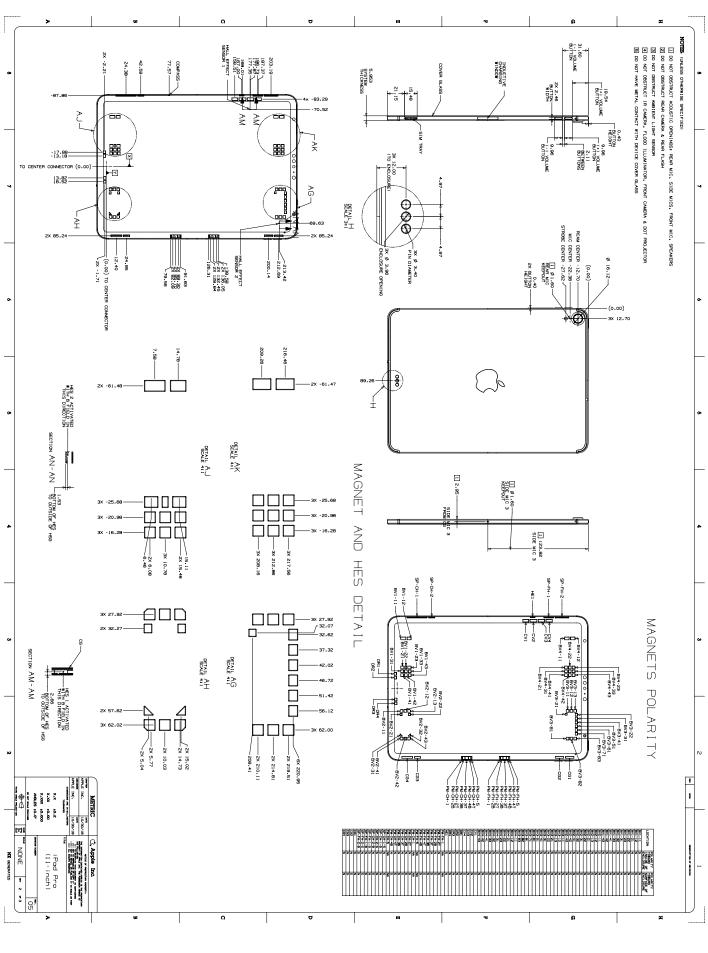


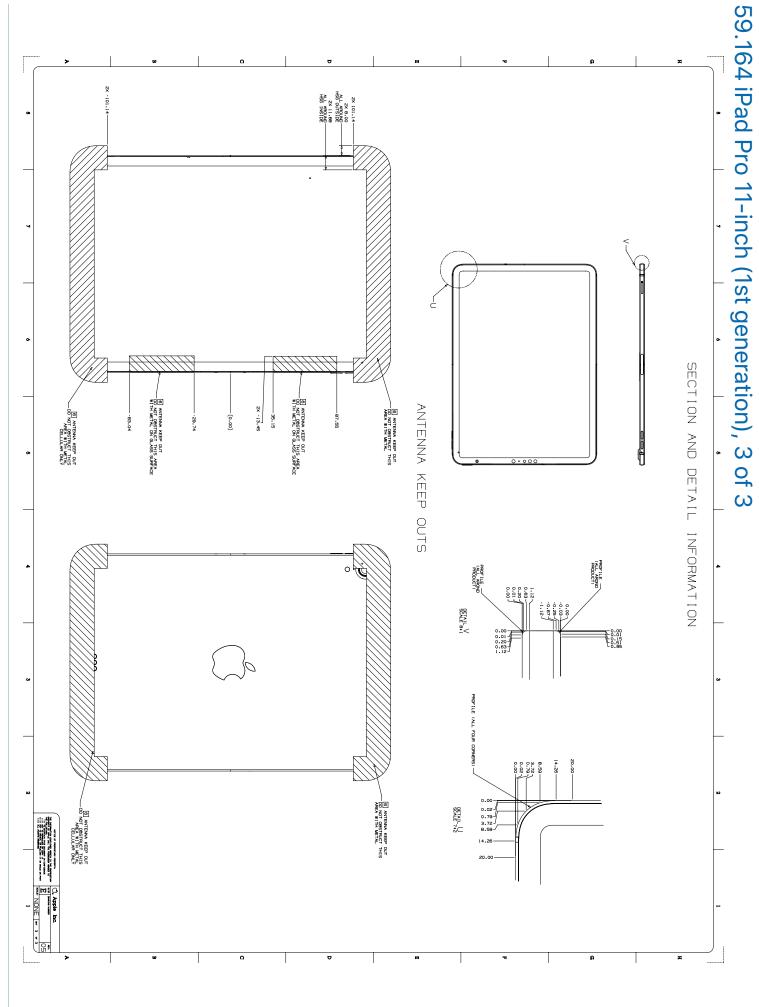


59.162 iPad Pro 11-inch (1st generation), 1 of 3

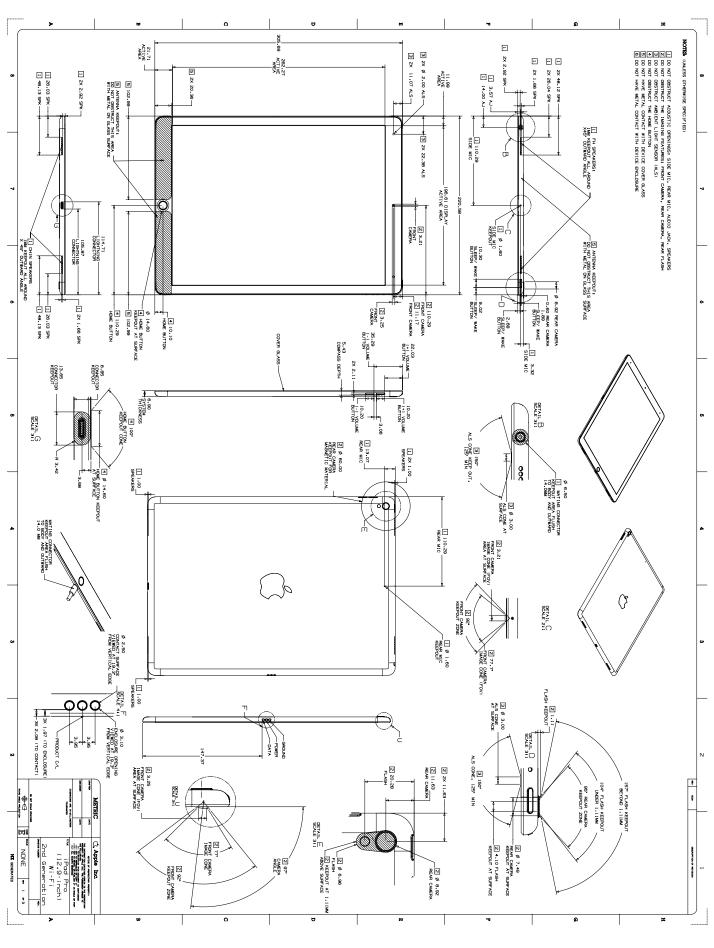


59.163 iPad Pro 11-inch (1st generation), 2 of 3 NOTES (UNLESS OTHERWISE SPECIFIED)

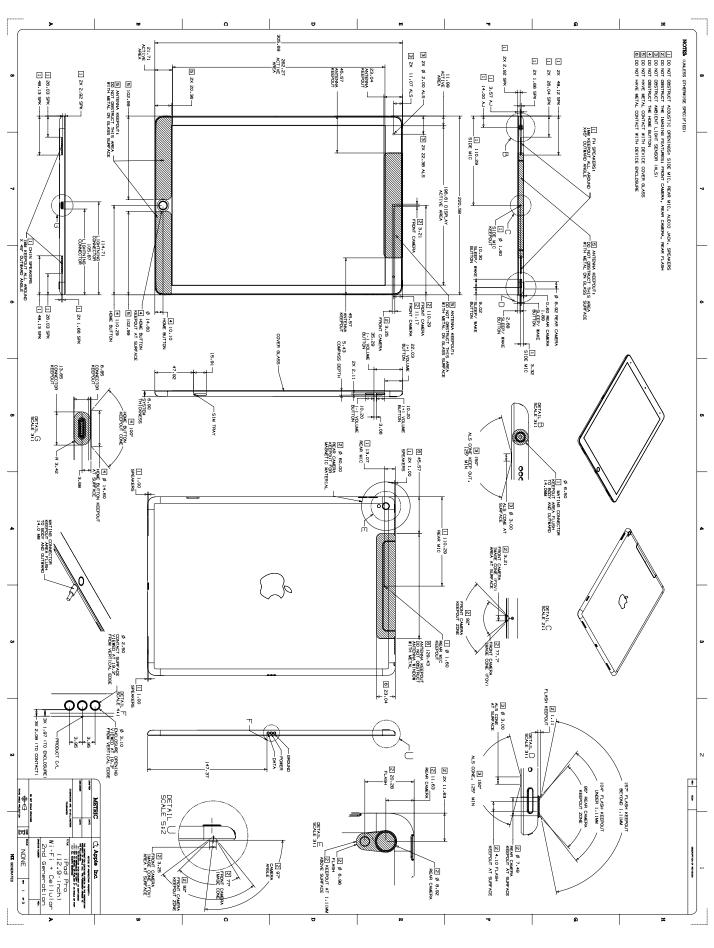


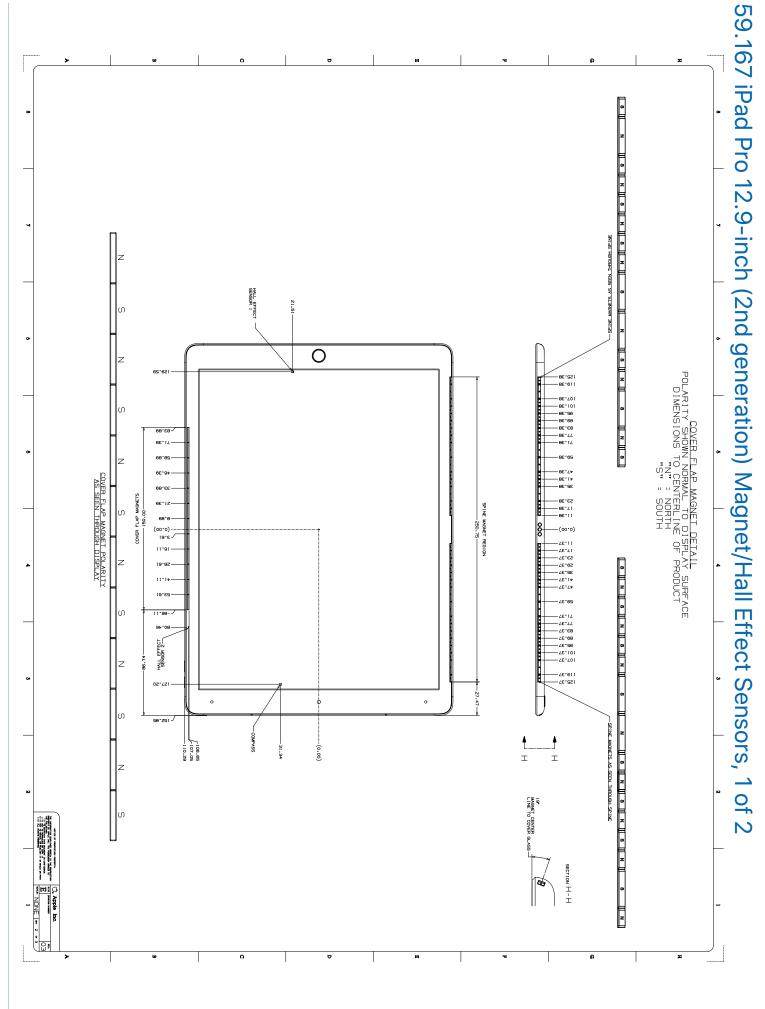


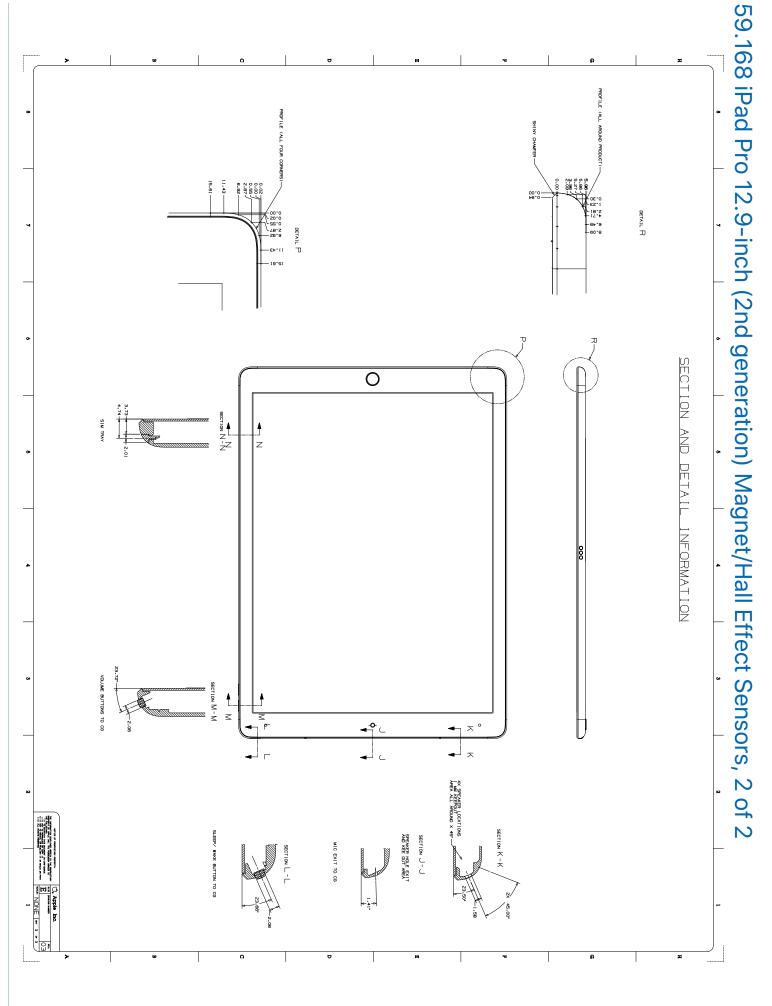
59.165 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (2nd generation) with Wi-Fi



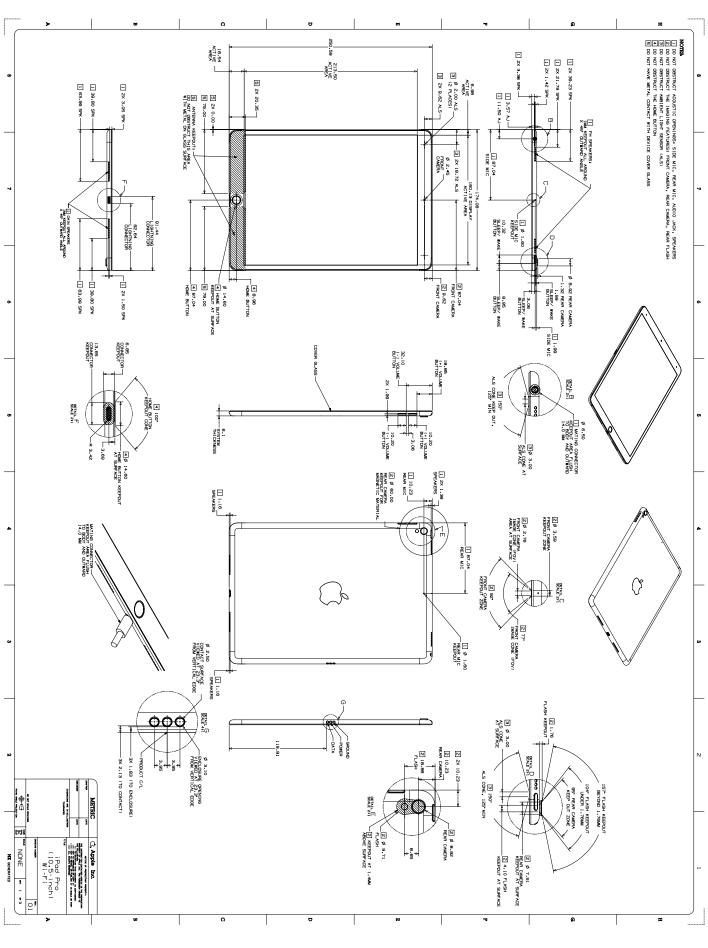
59.166 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (2nd generation) with Wi-Fi + Cellular



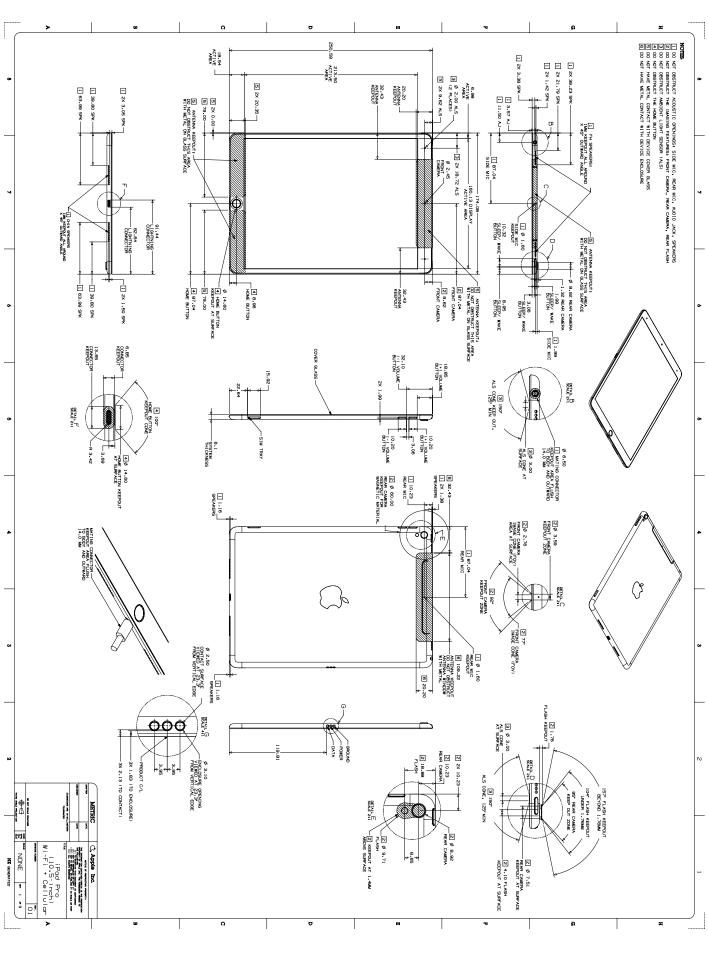


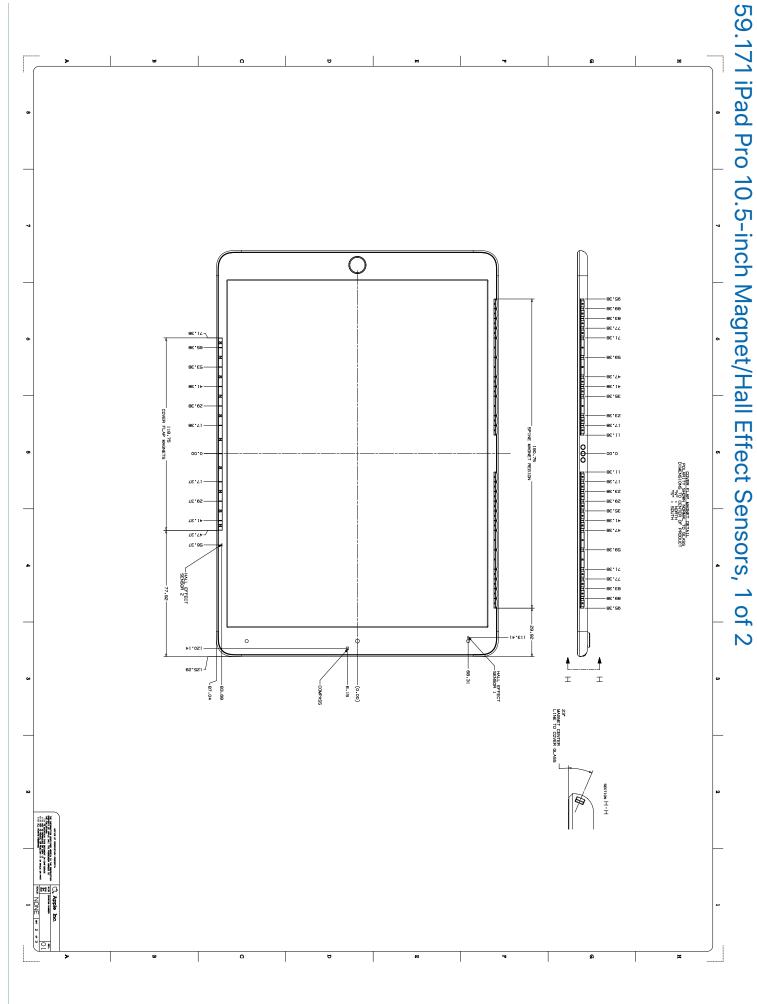


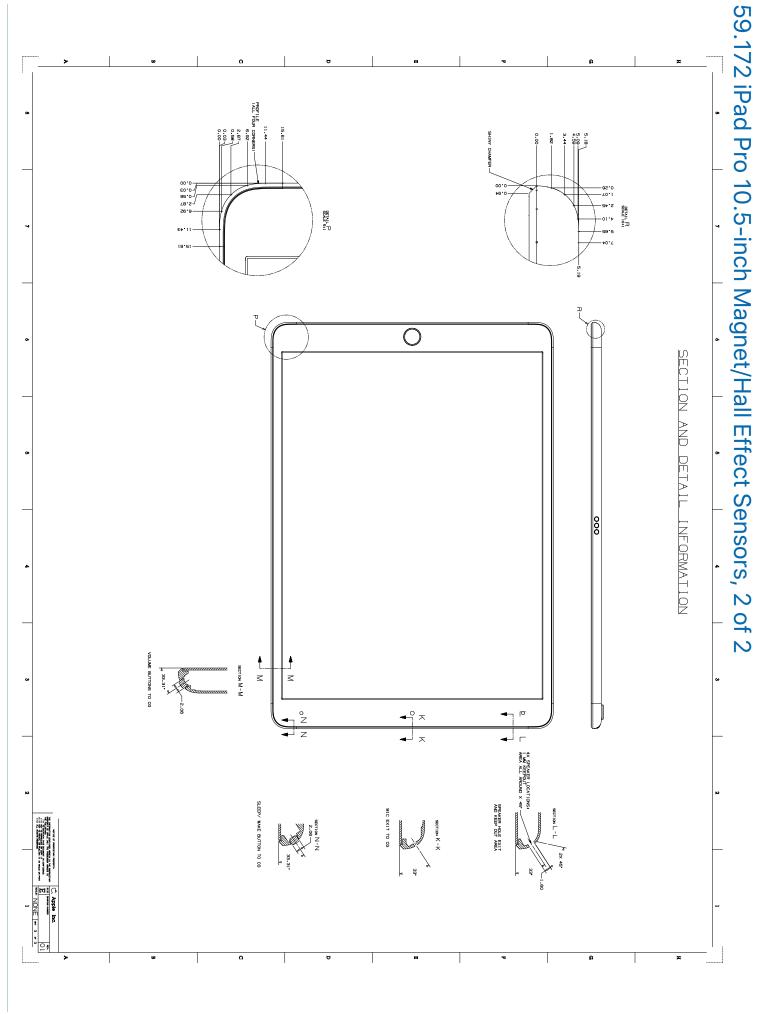
59.169 iPad Pro 10.5-inch with Wi-Fi



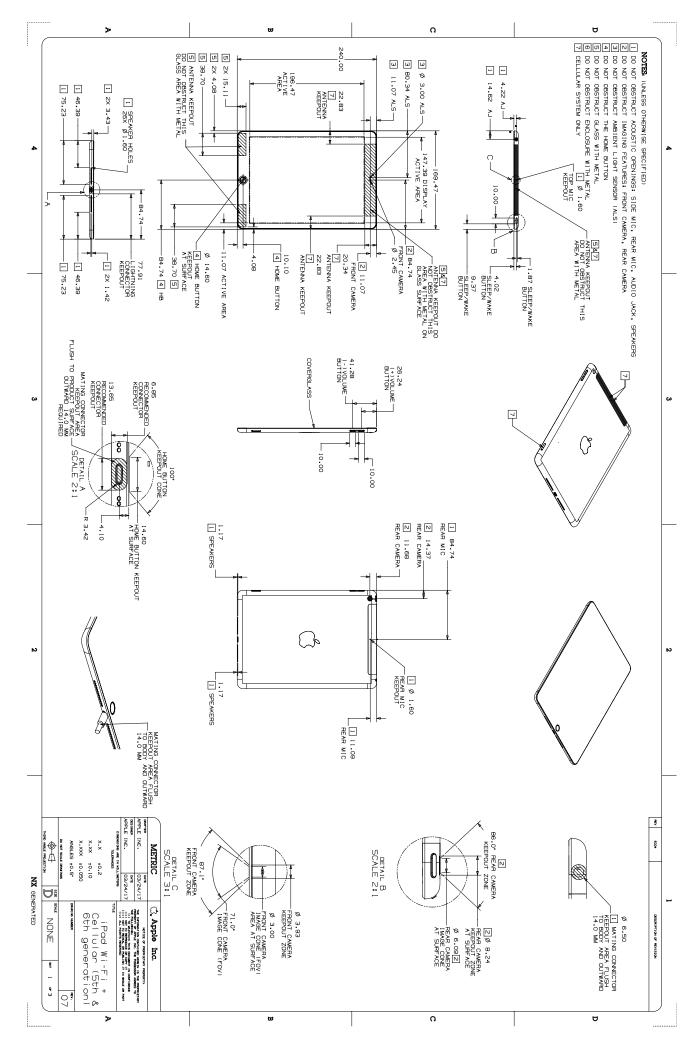
59.170 iPad Pro 10.5-inch with Wi-Fi + Cellular



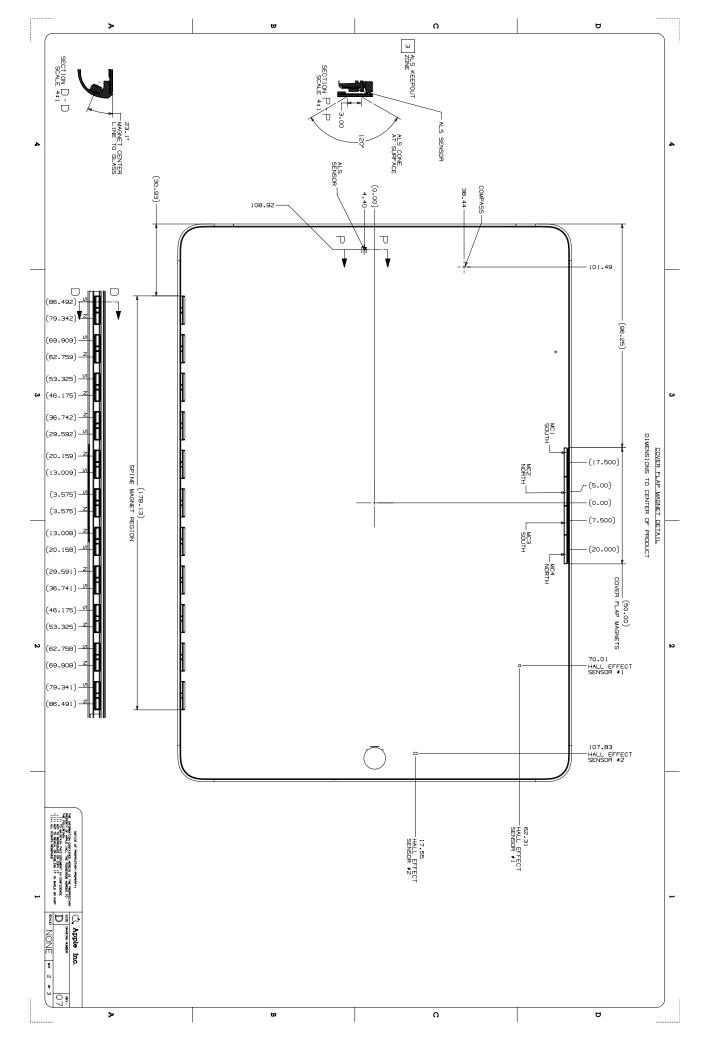




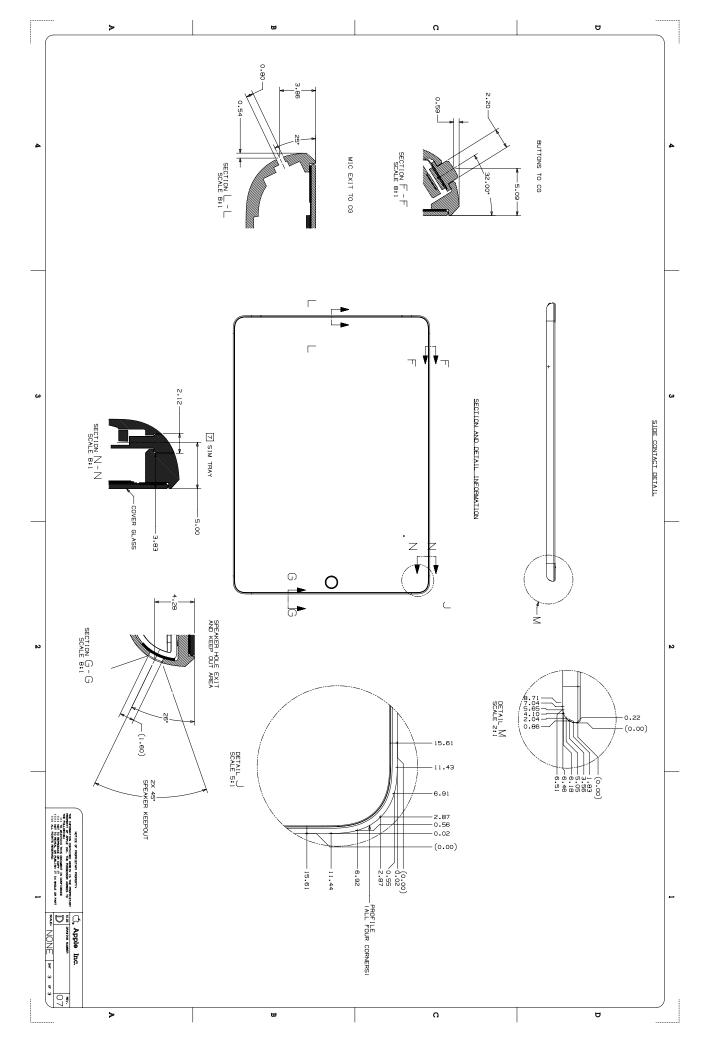
59.173 iPad (5th and 6th generation) with Wi-Fi + Cellular



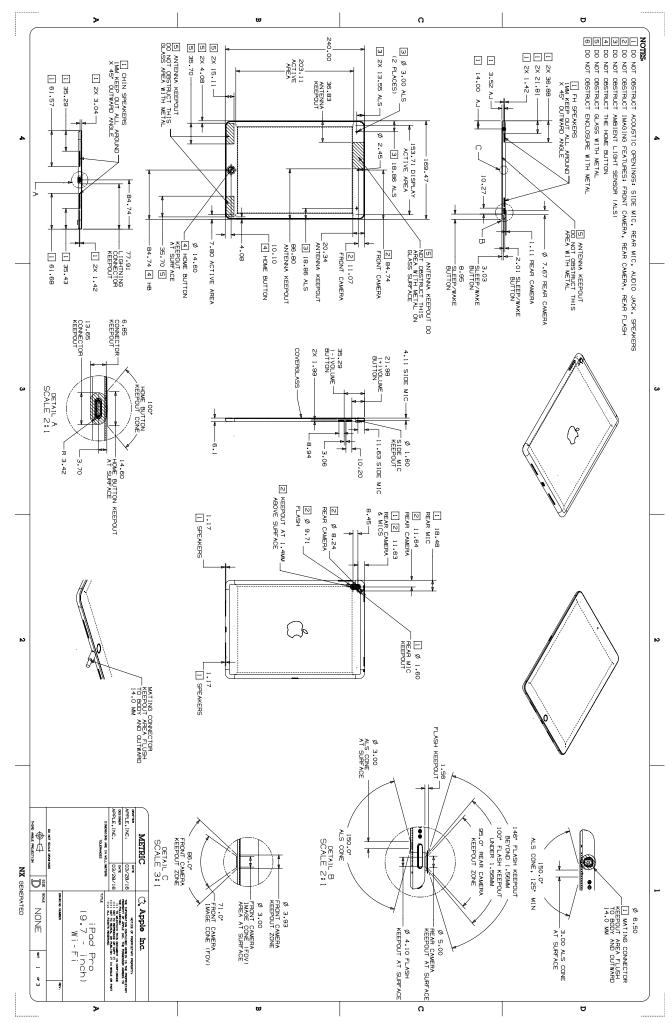
59.174 iPad (5th and 6th generation) Magnet/Hall Effect Sensors, 1 of 2

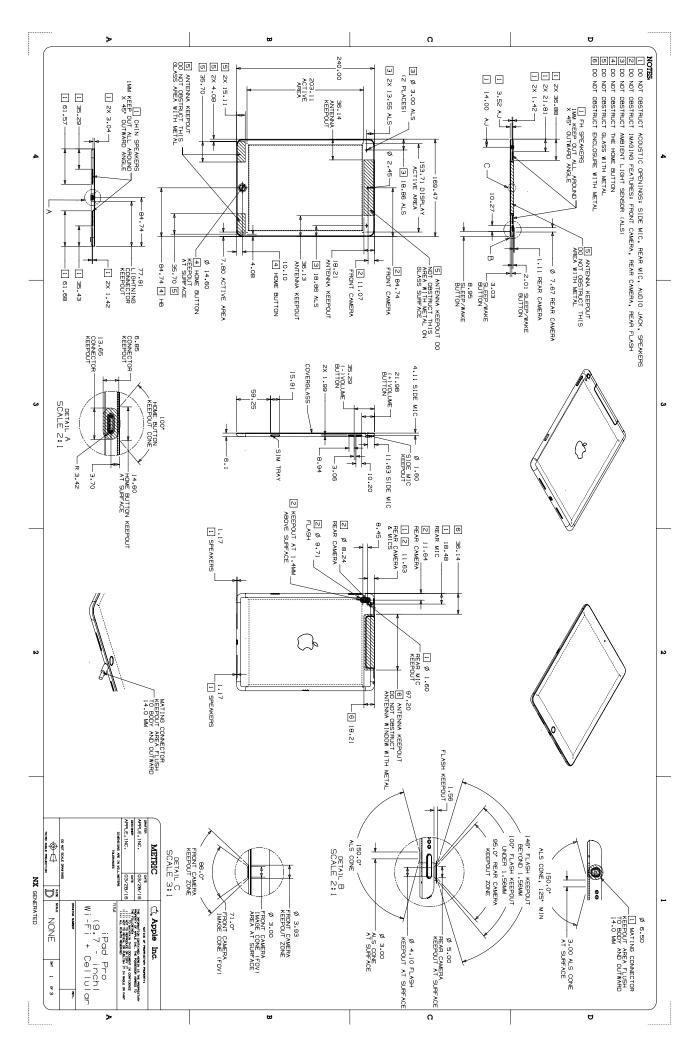


59.175 iPad (5th and 6th generation) Magnet/Hall Effect Sensors, 2 of 2

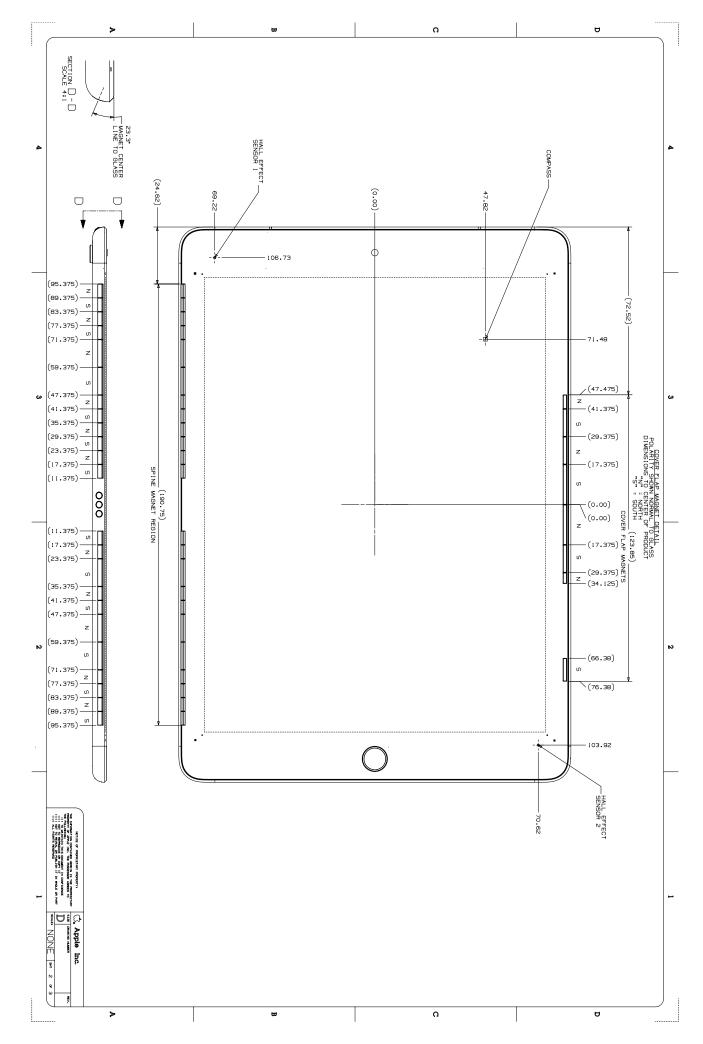


59.176 iPad Pro 9.7-inch with Wi-Fi

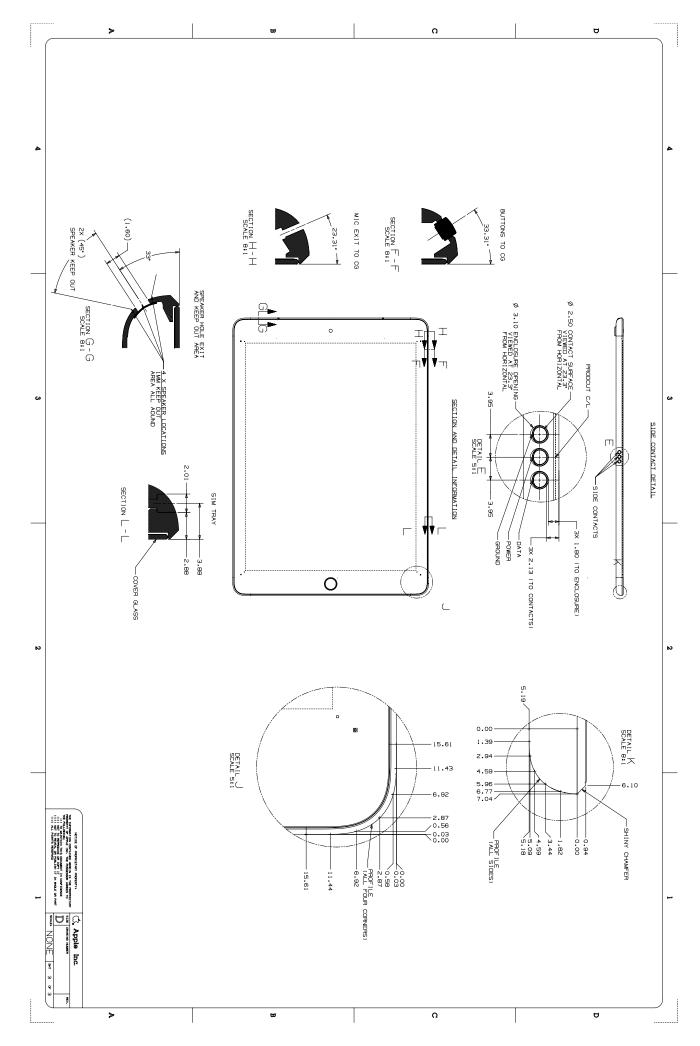




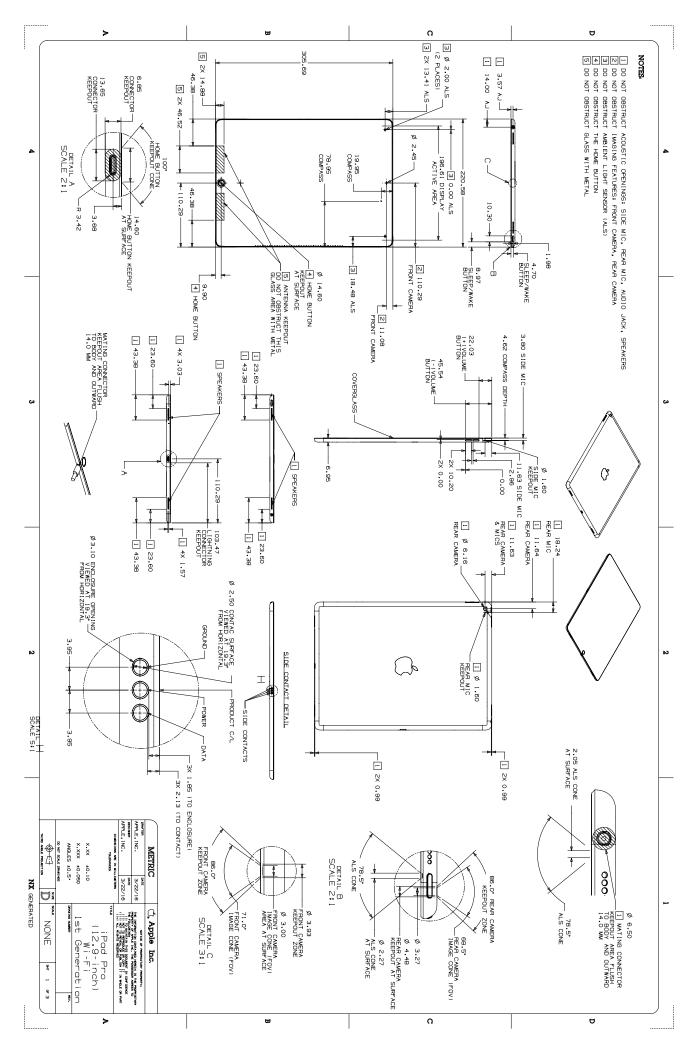
59.178 iPad Pro 9.7-inch Magnet/Hall Effect Sensors, 1 of 2



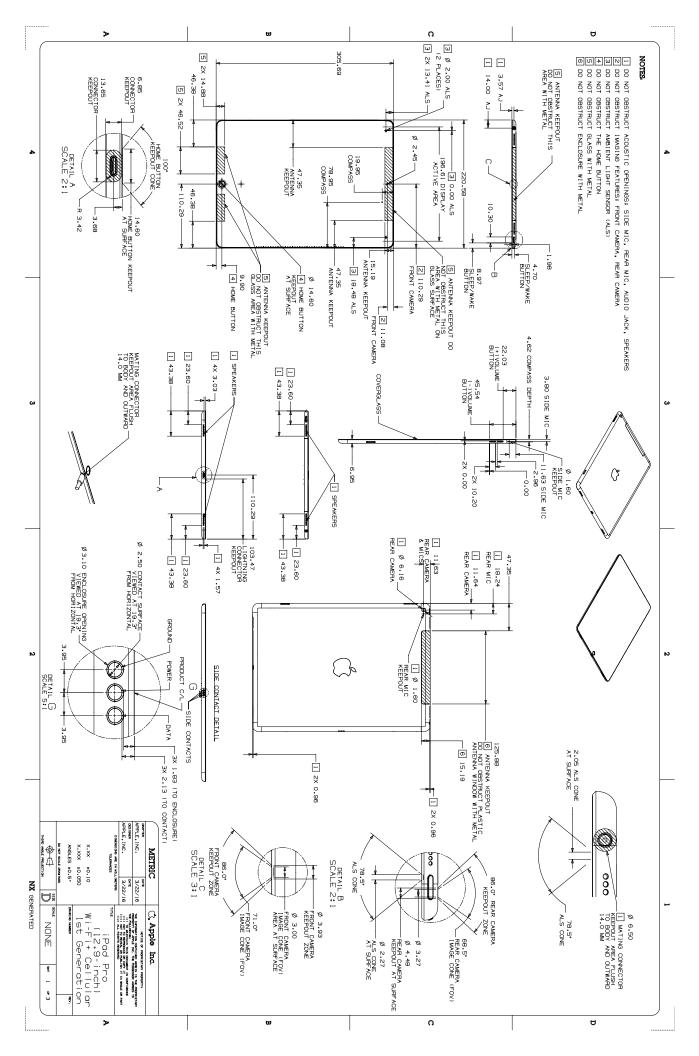
59.179 iPad Pro 9.7-inch Magnet/Hall Effect Sensors, 2 of 2



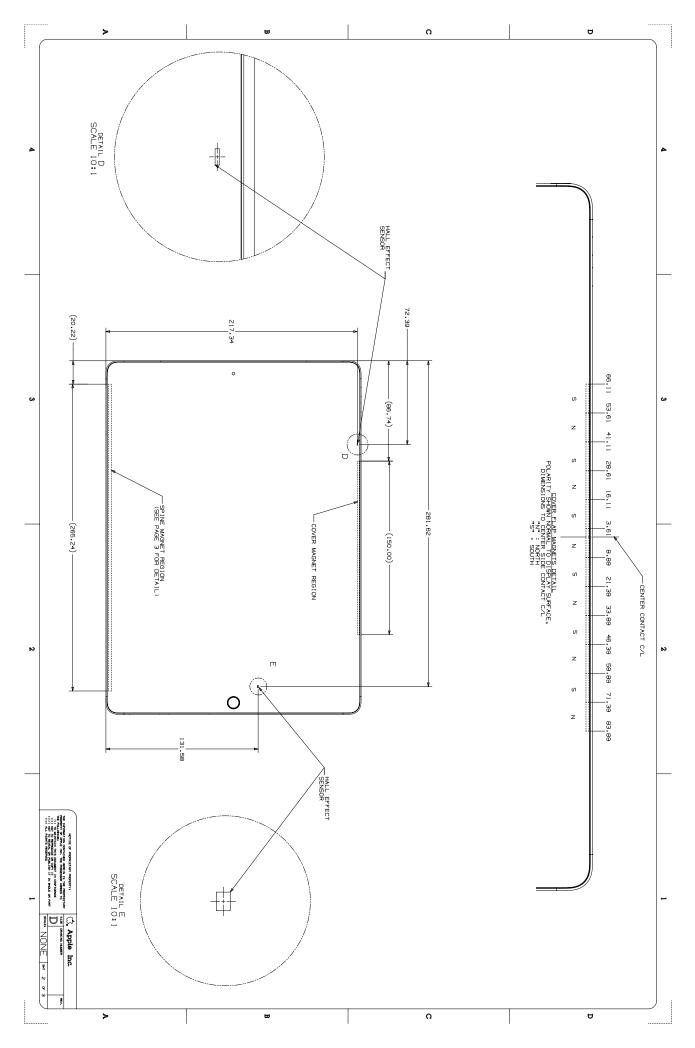
59.180 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (1st generation) with Wi-Fi

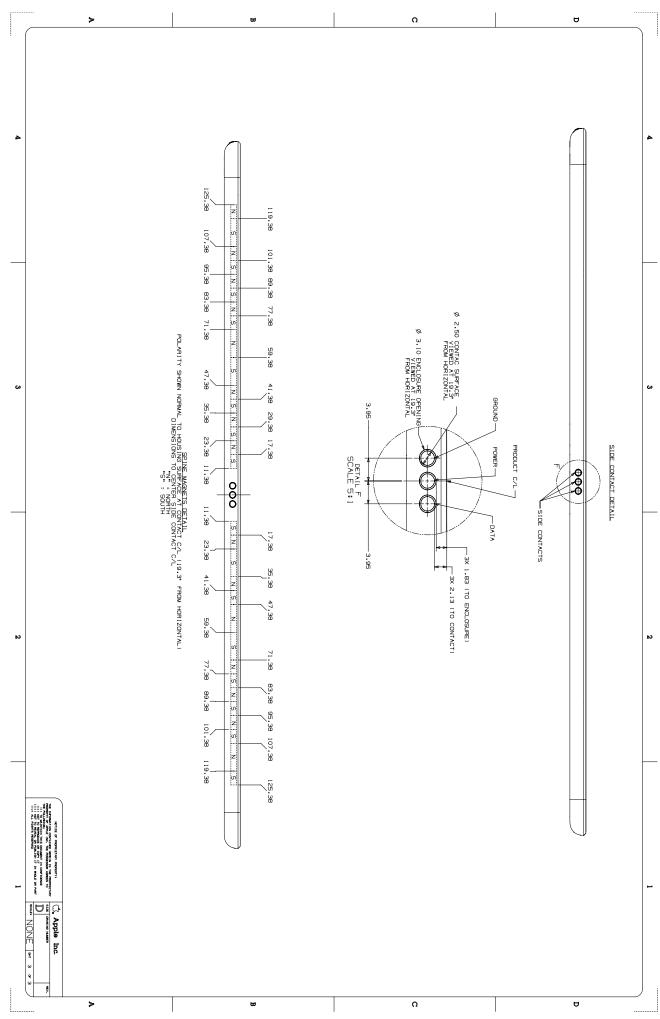


59.181 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (1st generation) with Wi-Fi + Cellular

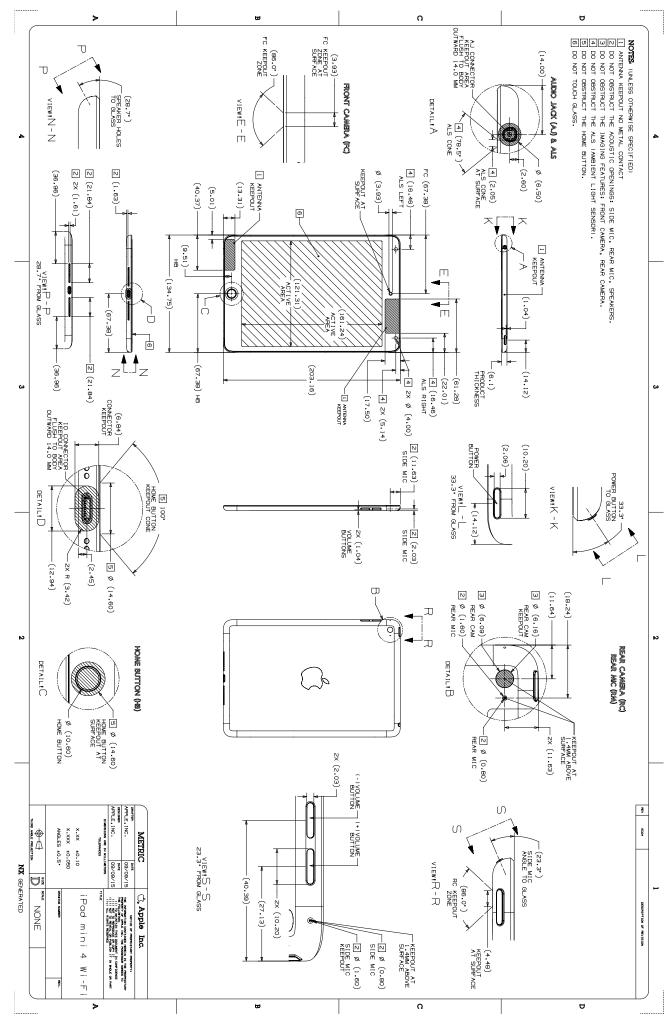


59.182 iPad Pro 12.9-inch (1st generation) Magnet/Hall Effect Sensors, 1 of 2

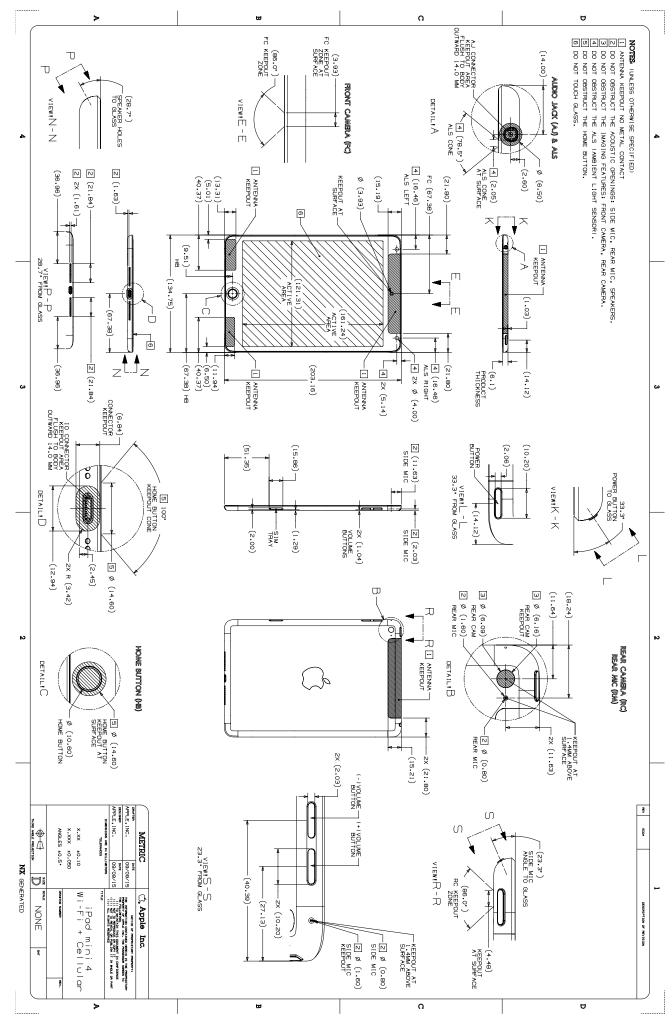




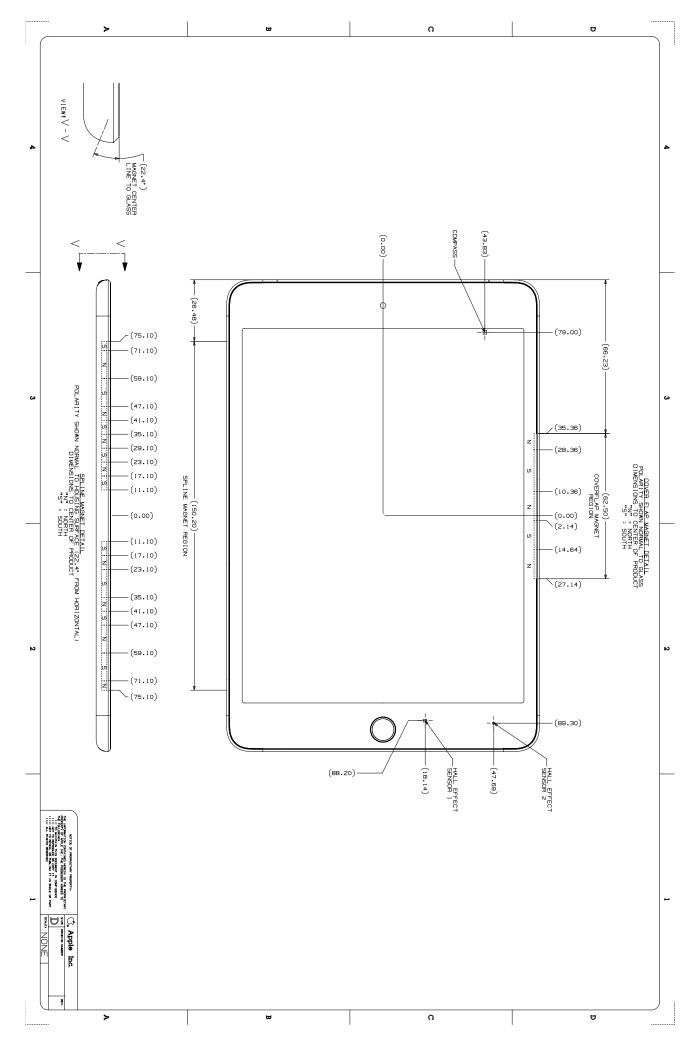
59.184 iPad mini 4 with Wi-Fi

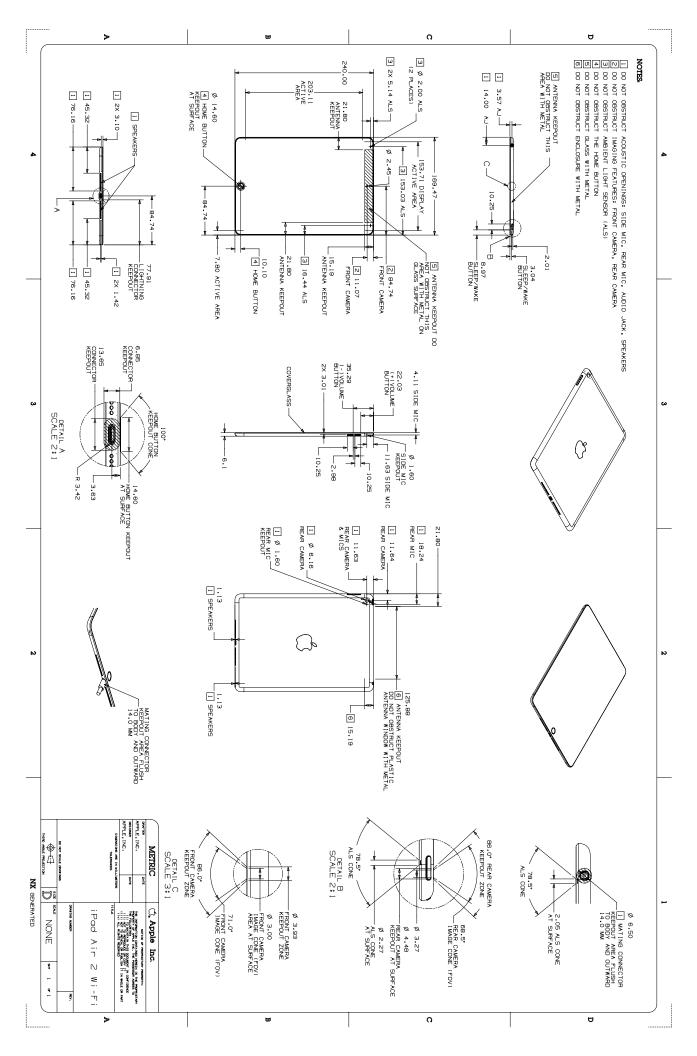


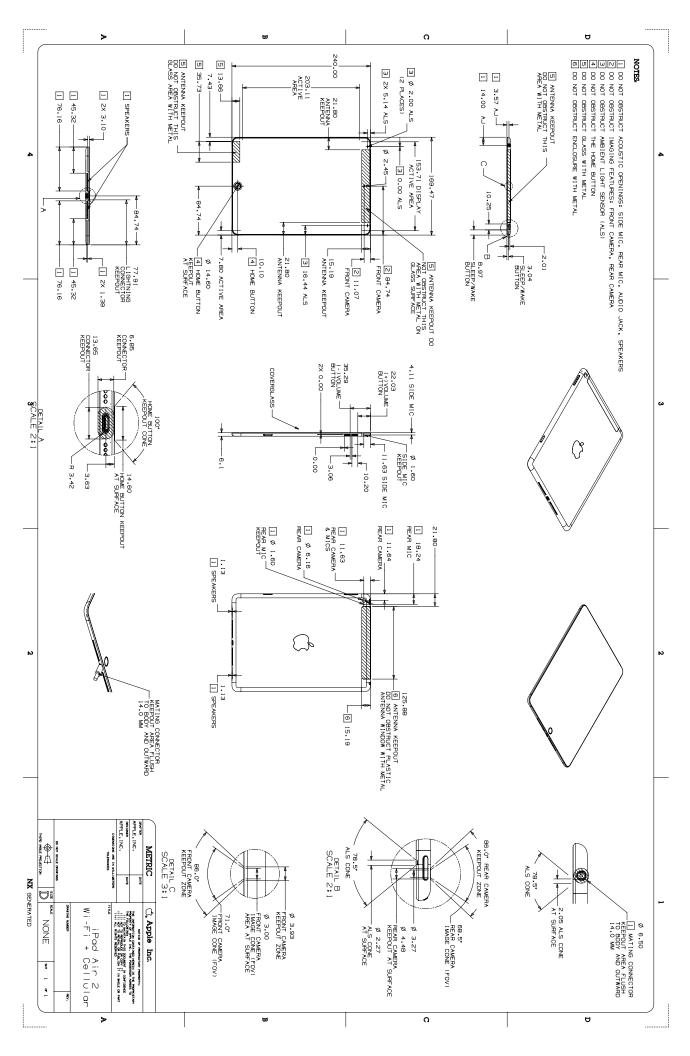
59.185 iPad mini 4 with Wi-Fi + Cellular



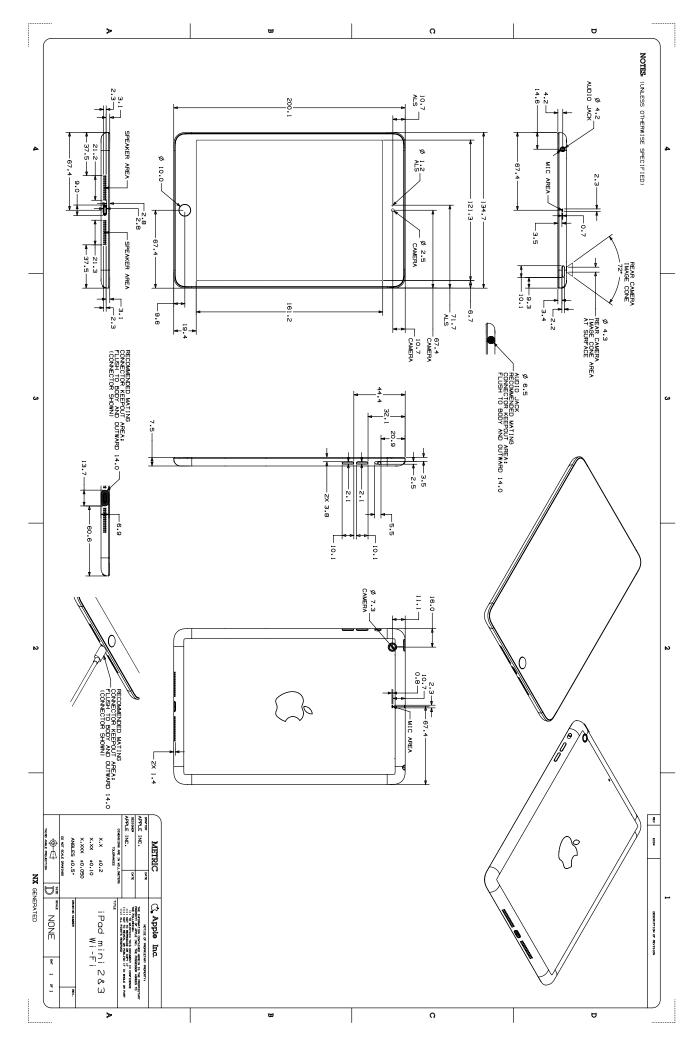
59.186 iPad mini 4 Magnet/Hall Effect Sensors



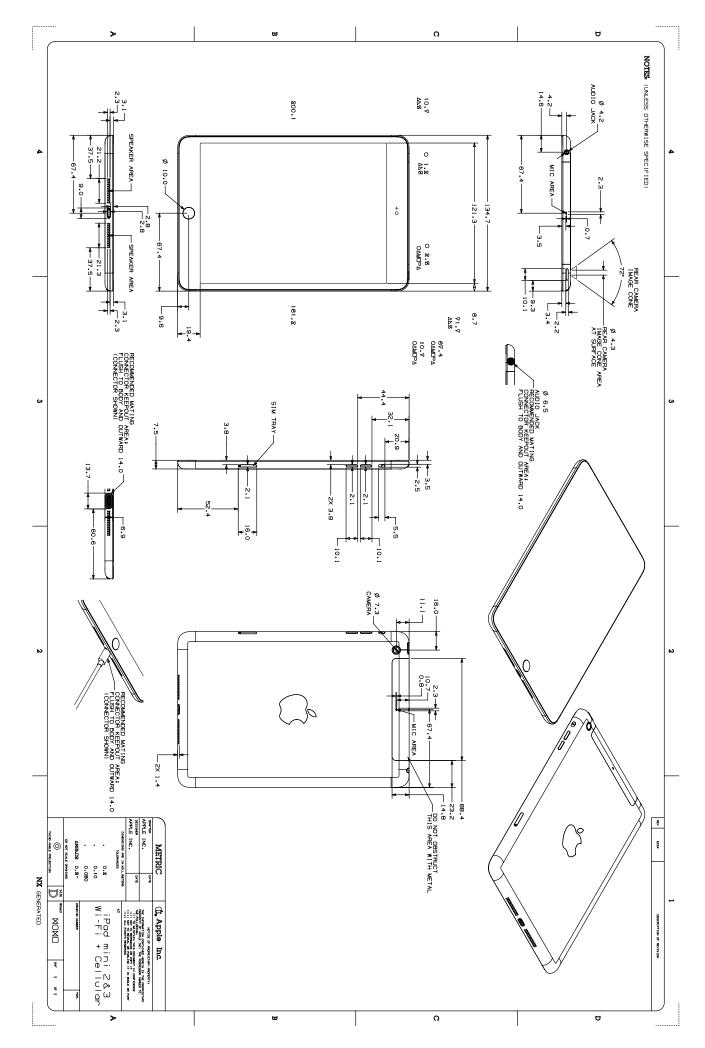




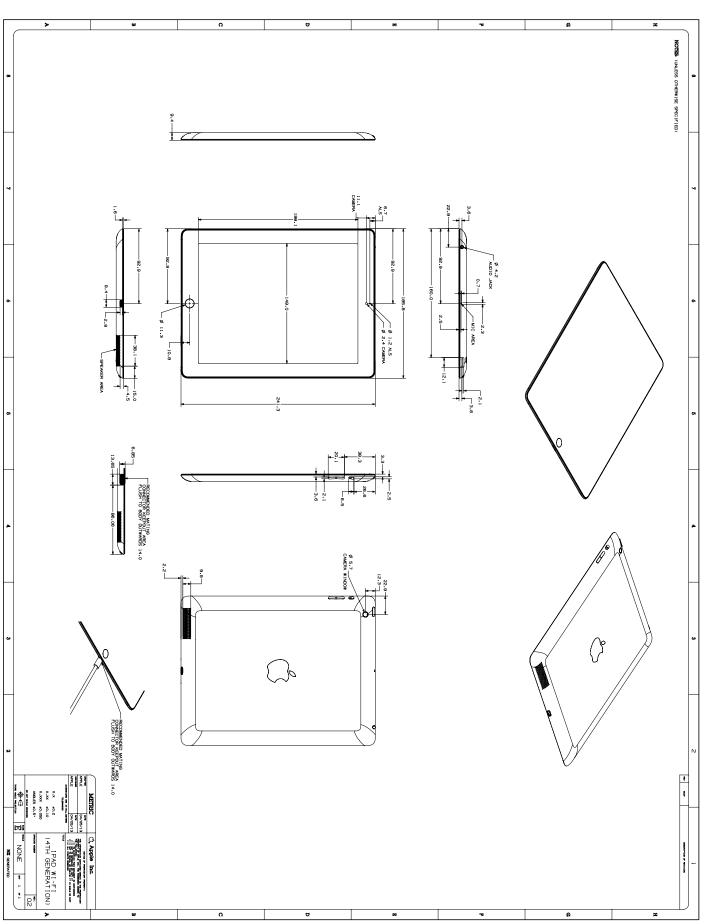
59.189 iPad mini 2 and iPad mini 3 with Wi-Fi



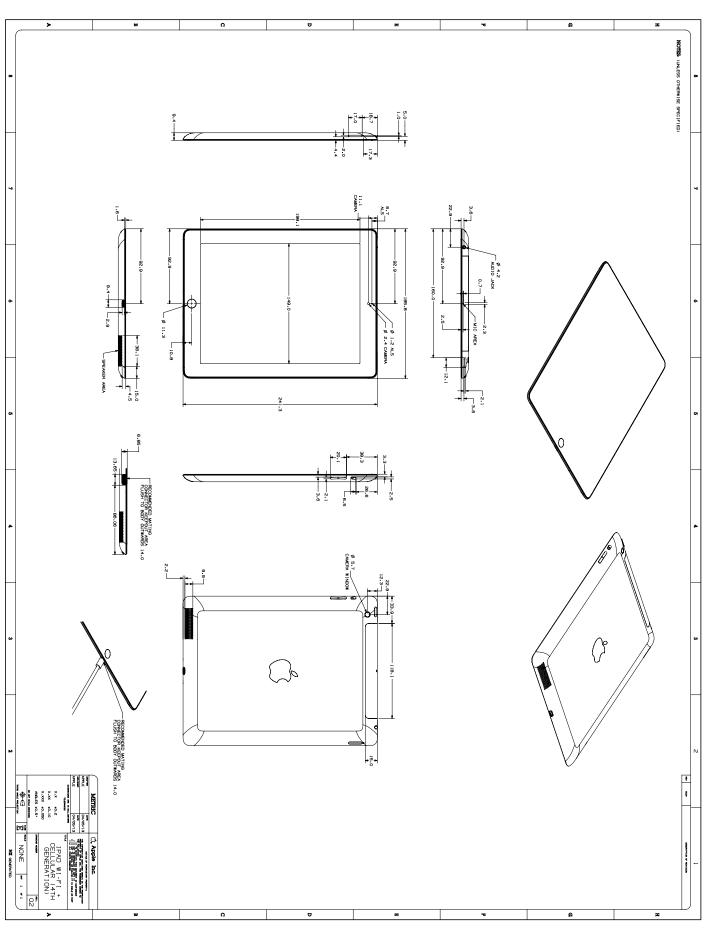
59.190 iPad mini 2 and iPad mini 3 with Wi-Fi + Cellular



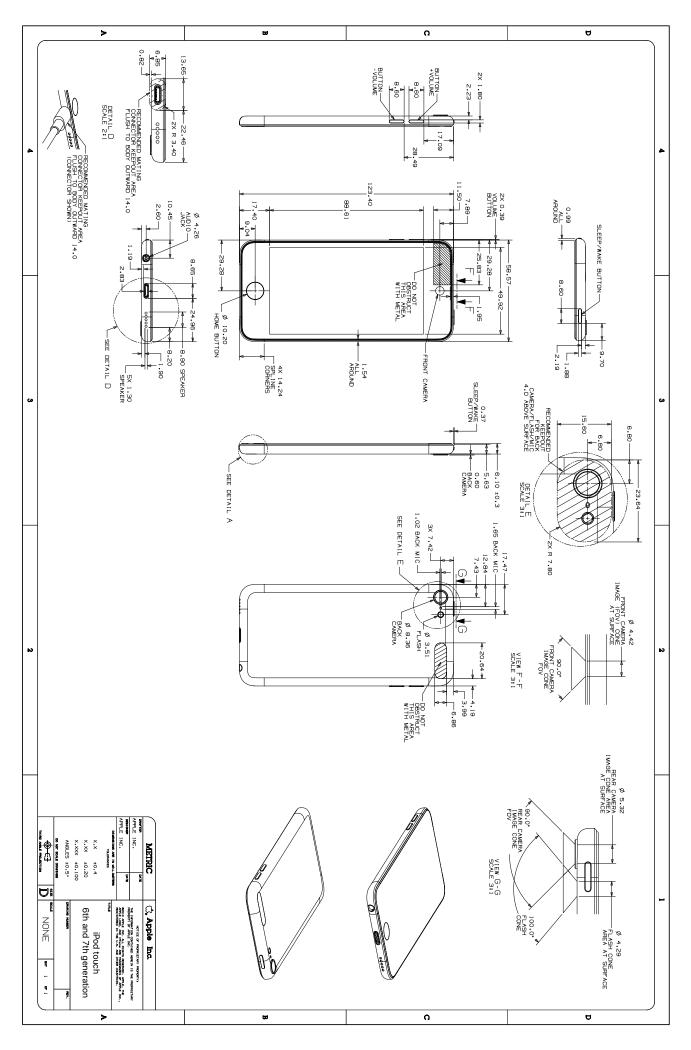
59.195 iPad (4th generation) with Wi-Fi

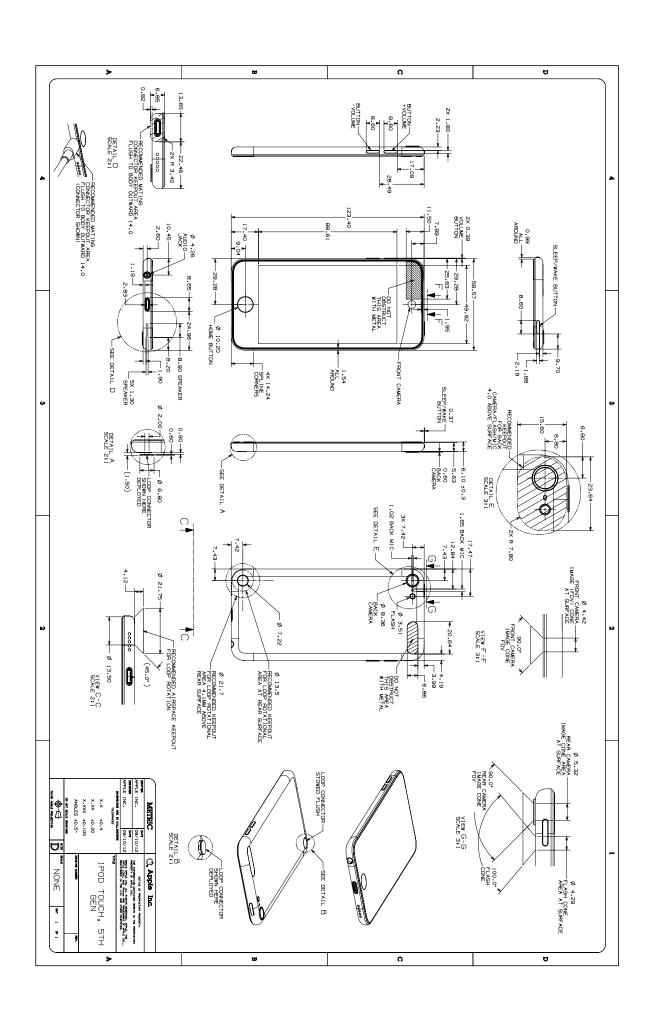


59.196 iPad (4th generation) with Wi-Fi + Cellular

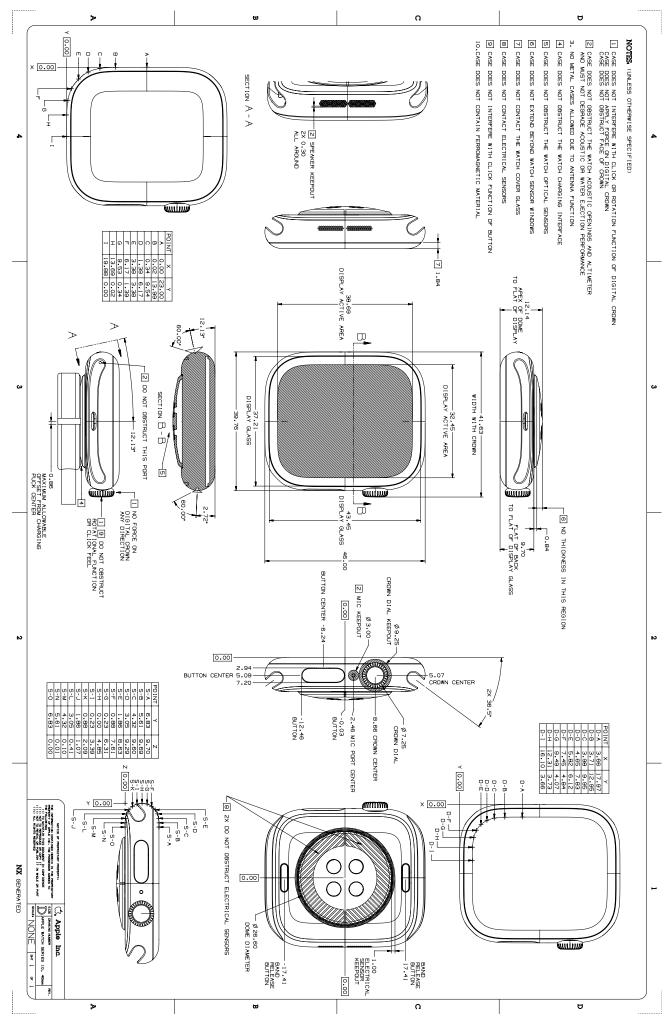


59.197 iPod touch (6th generation) and iPod touch (7th generation)

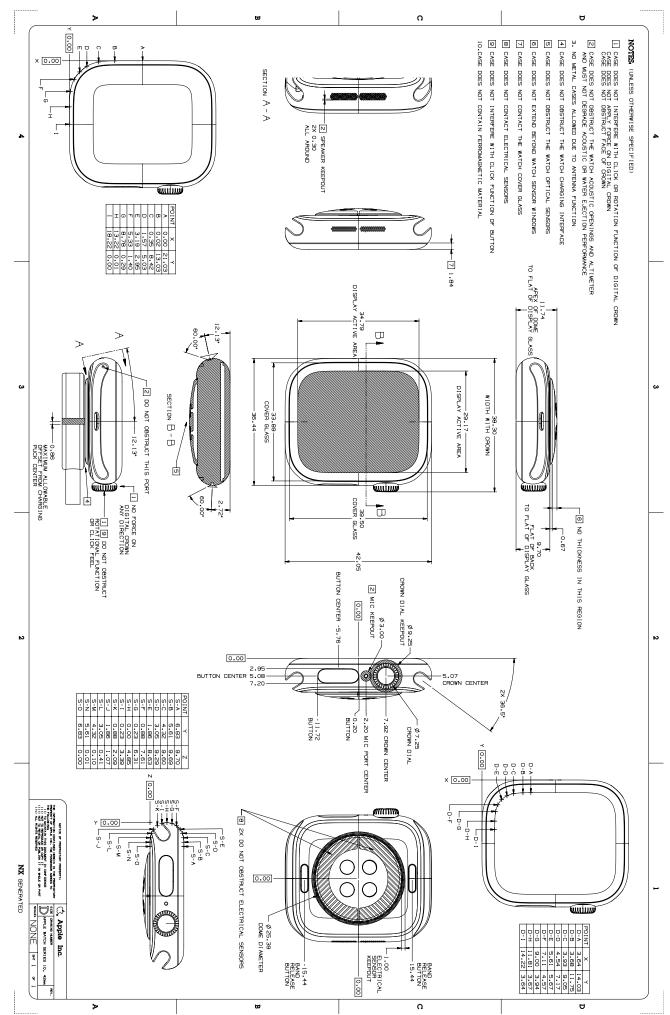




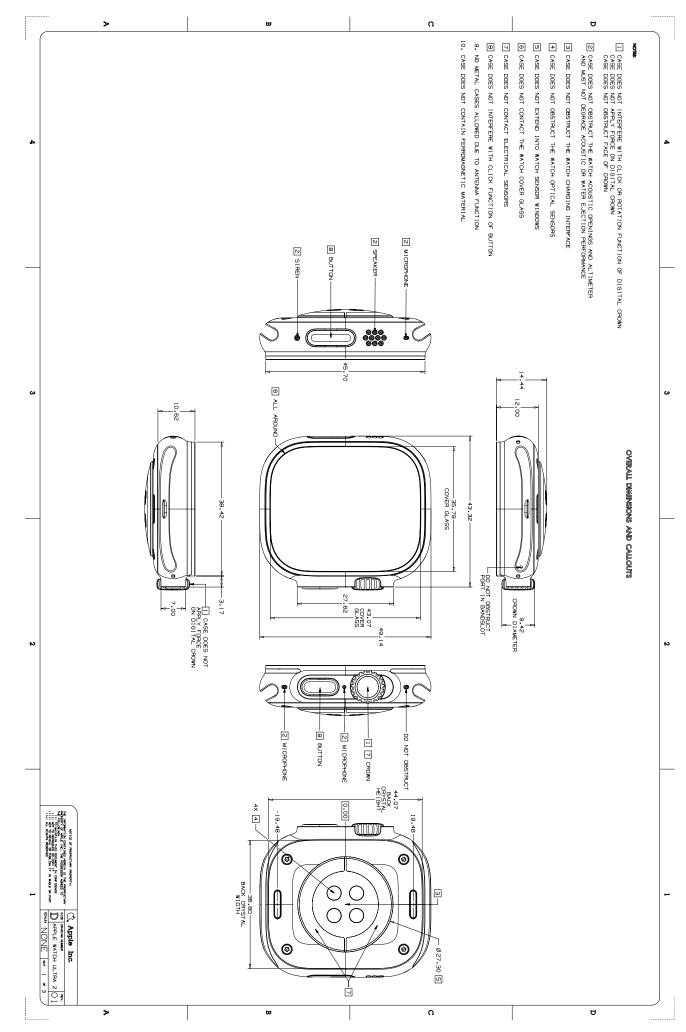
59.199 Apple Watch Series 10, 46 mm



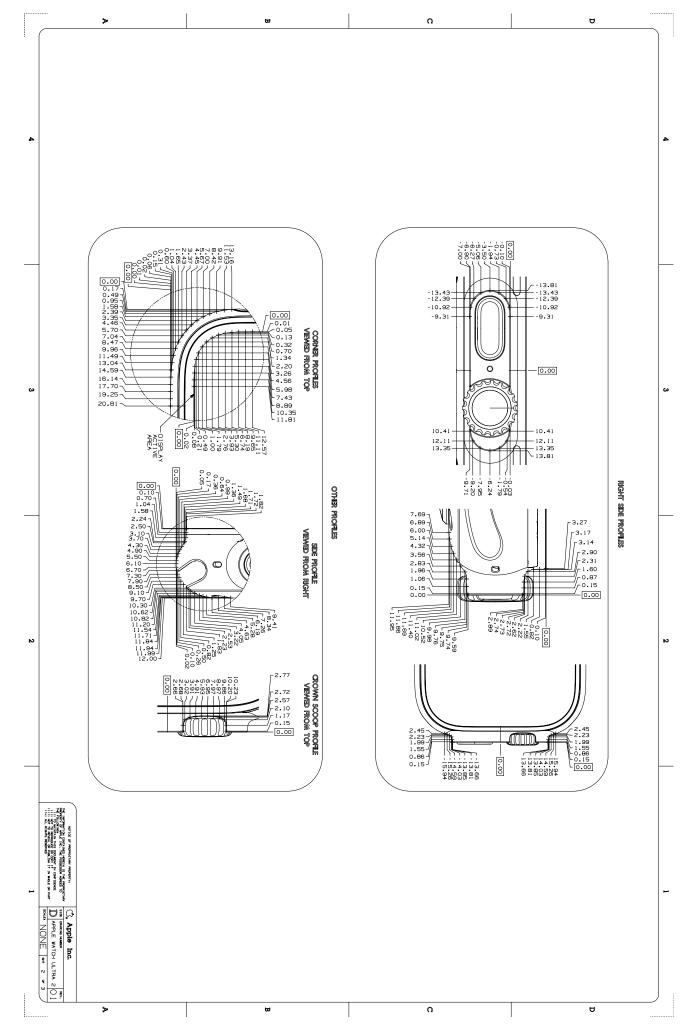
59.200 Apple Watch Series 10, 42 mm



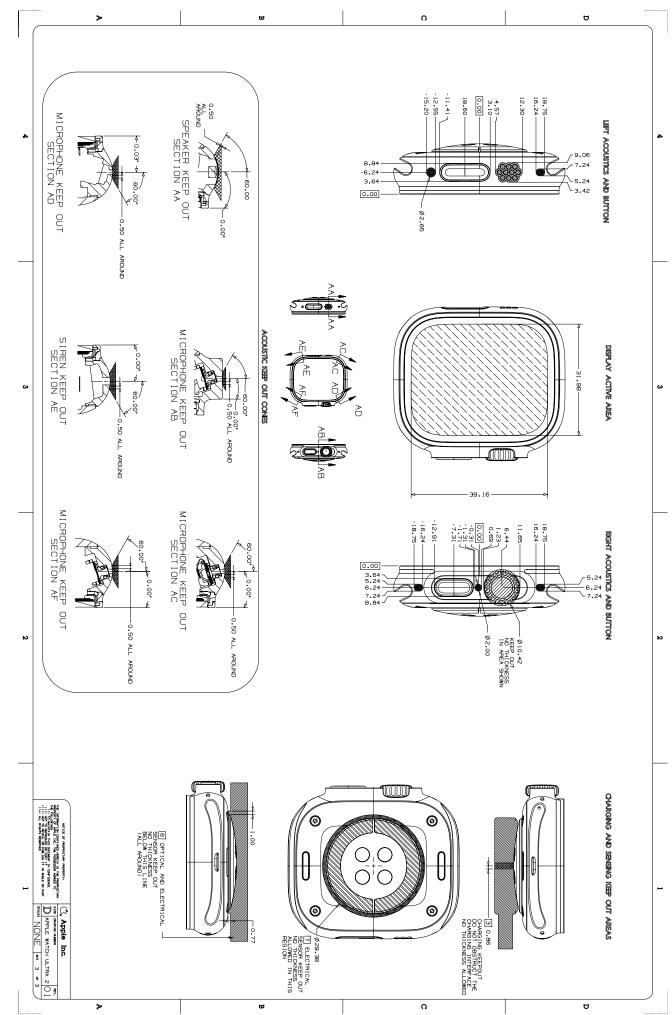
59.201 Apple Watch Ultra 2, 1 of 3



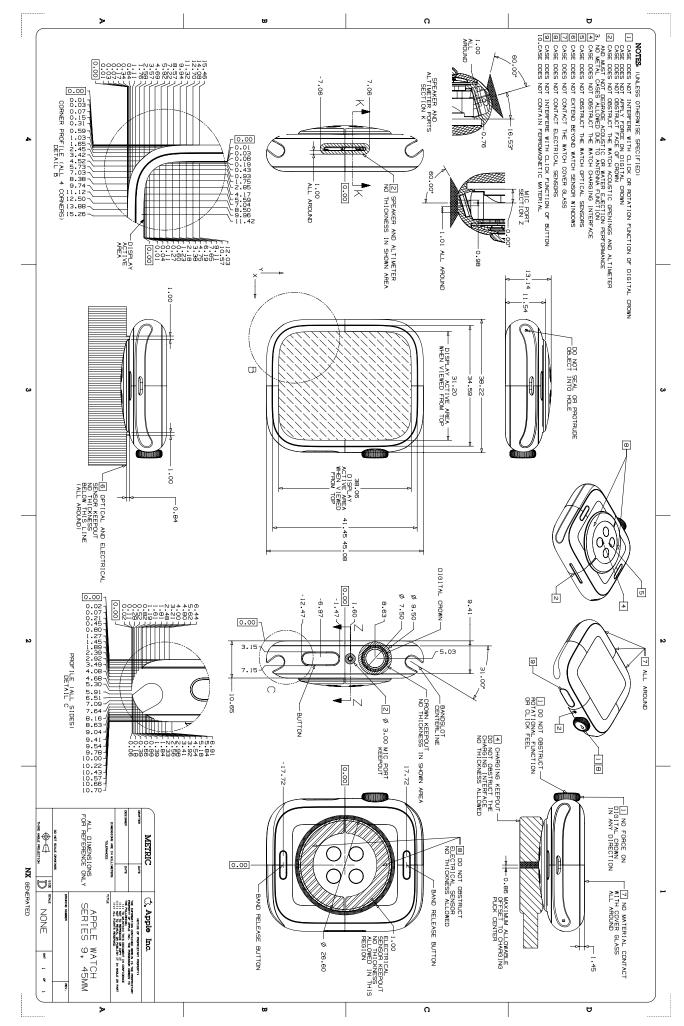
59.202 Apple Watch Ultra 2, 2 of 3



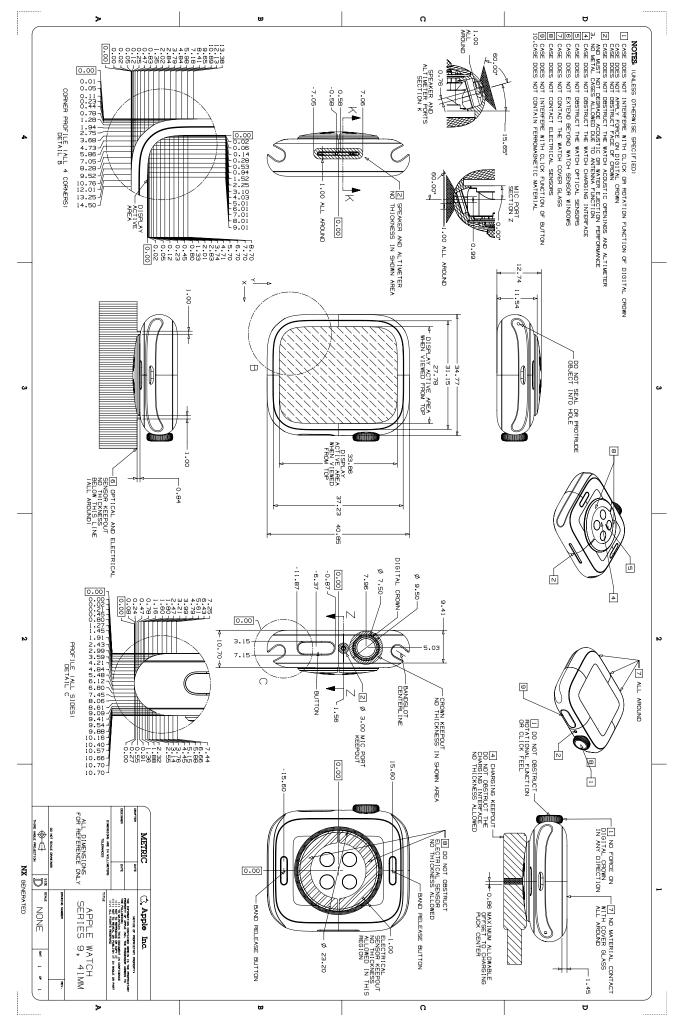
59.203 Apple Watch Ultra 2, 3 of 3



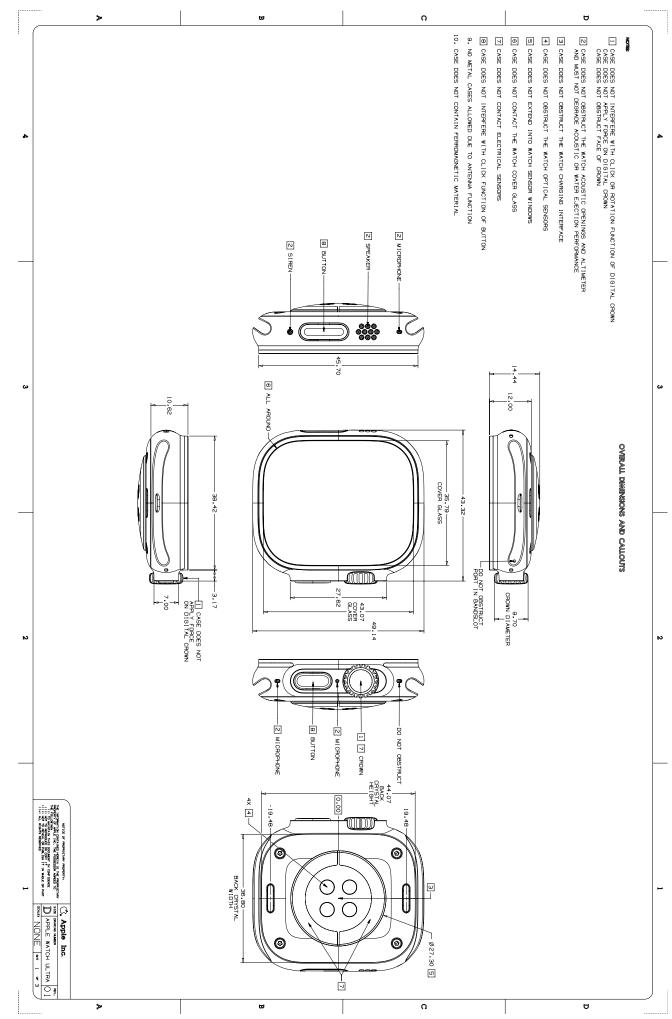
59.204 Apple Watch Series 9, 45 mm



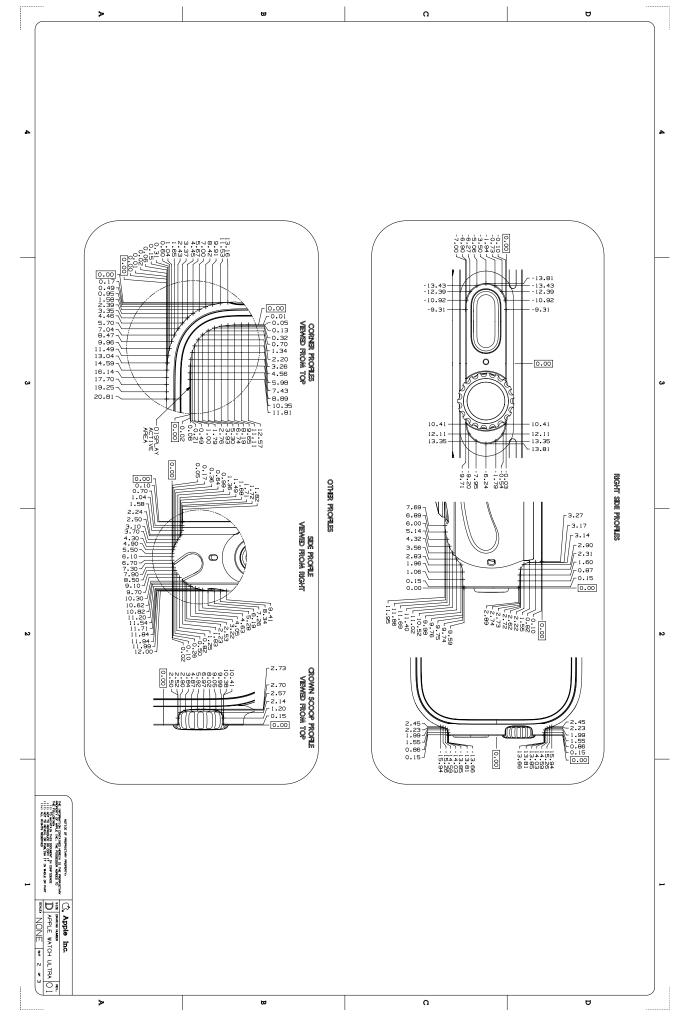
59.205 Apple Watch Series 9, 41 mm



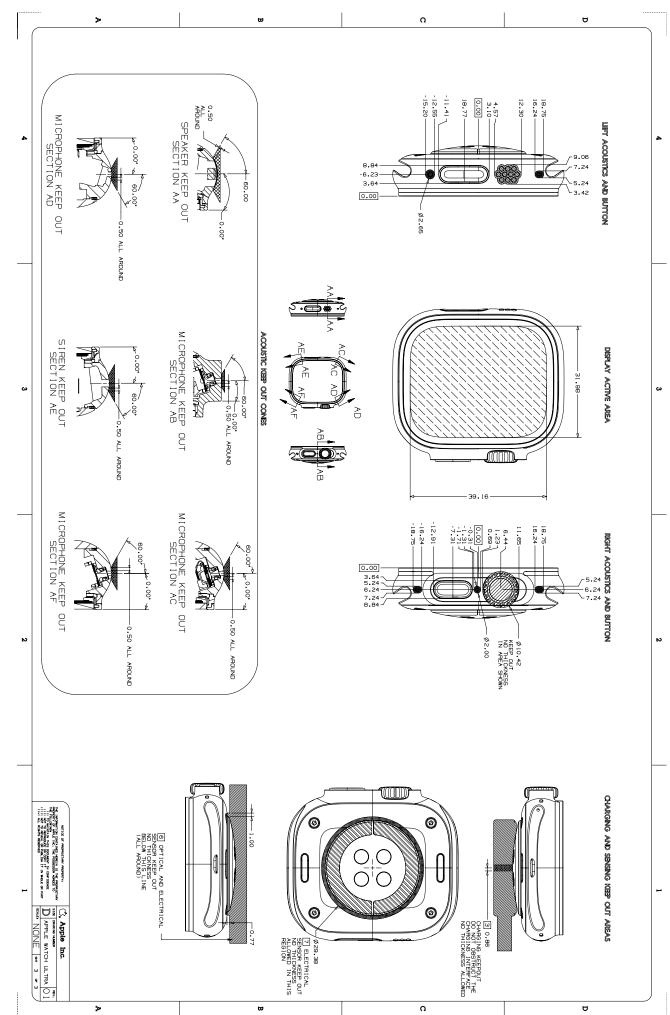
59.206 Apple Watch Ultra, 1 of 3



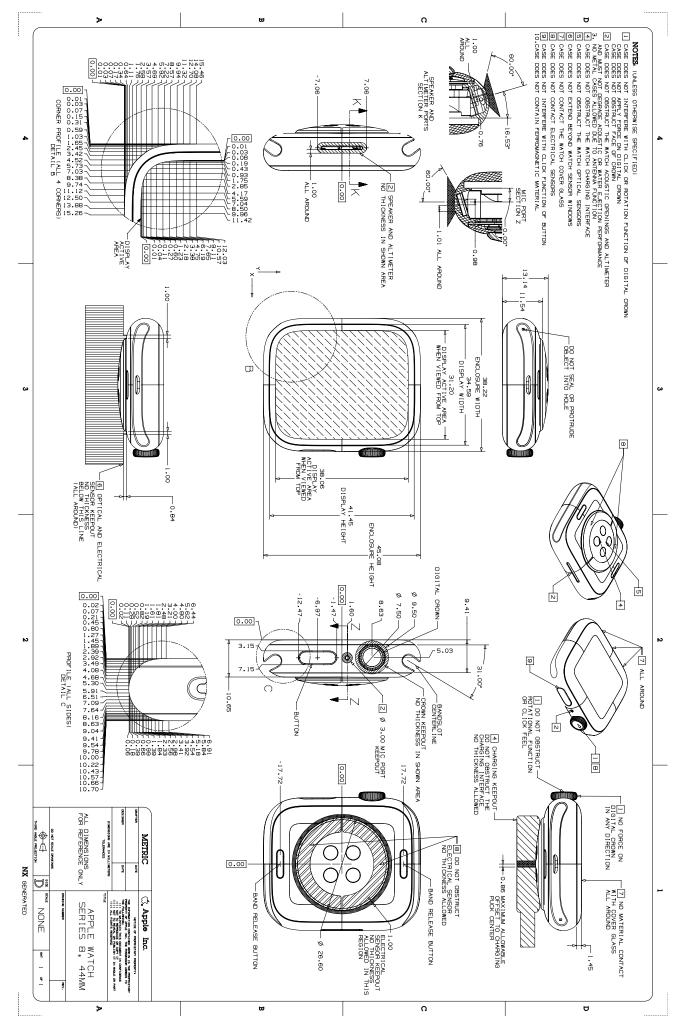
59.207 Apple Watch Ultra, 2 of 3



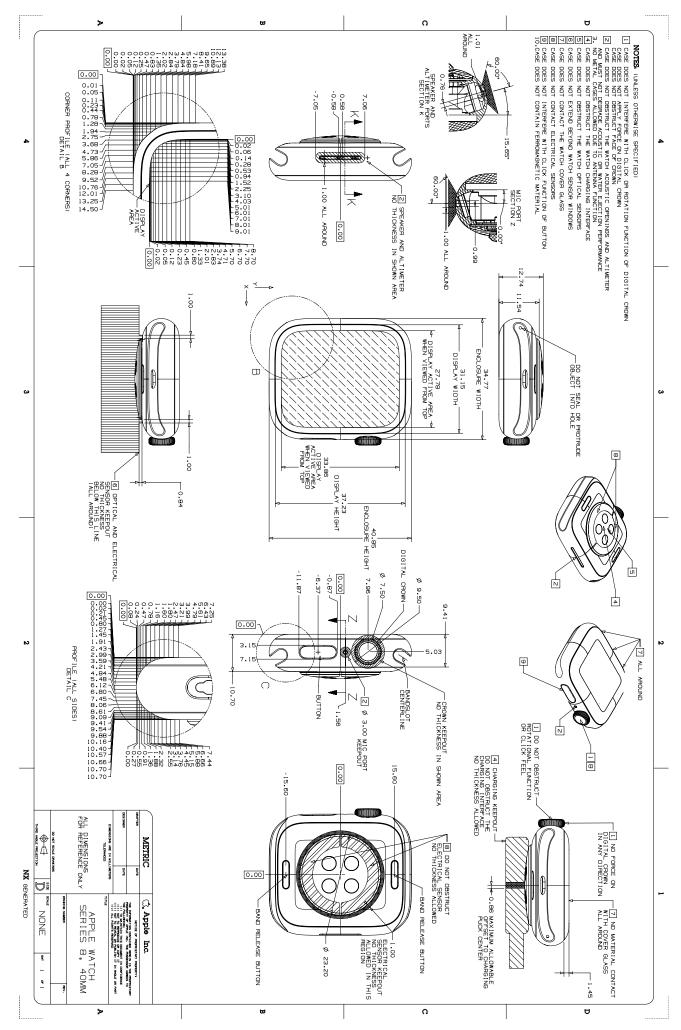
59.208 Apple Watch Ultra, 3 of 3



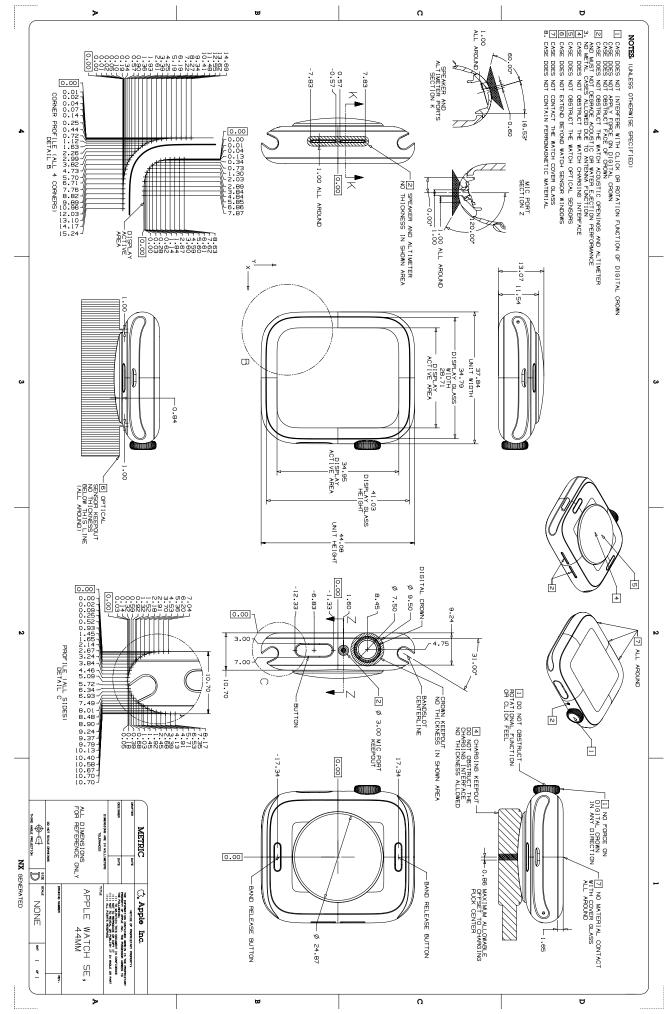
59.209 Apple Watch Series 8, 45 mm



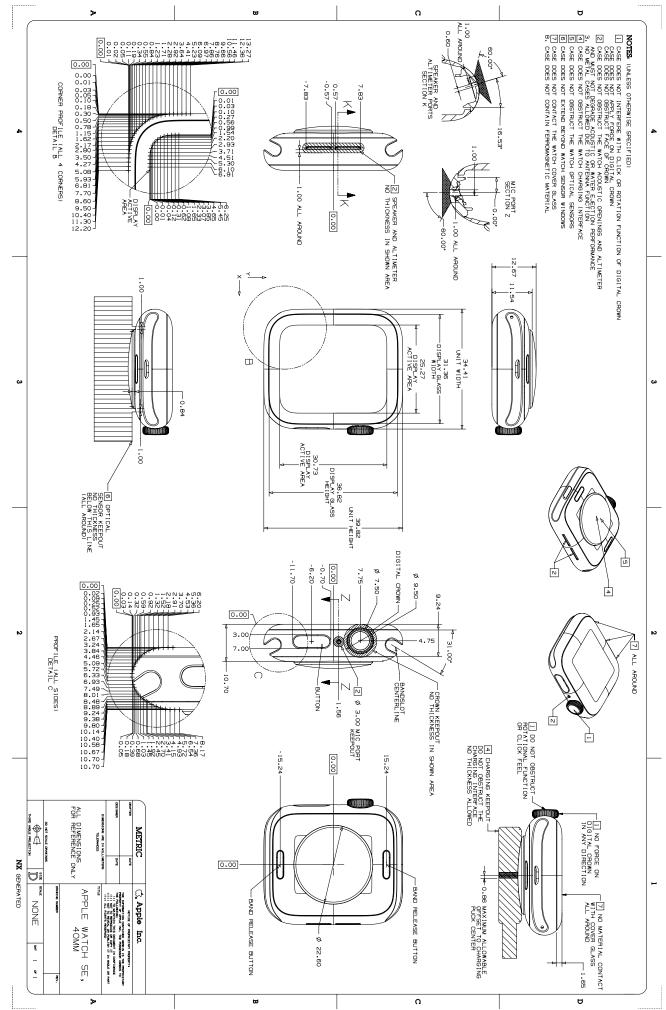
59.210 Apple Watch Series 8, 41 mm

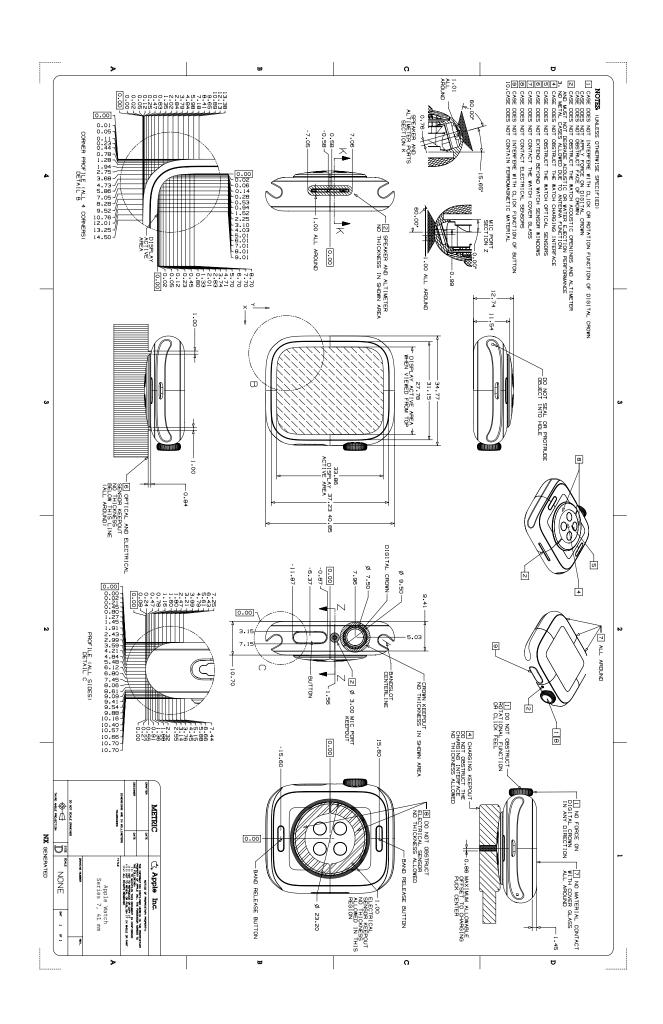


59.211 Apple Watch SE, 44 mm

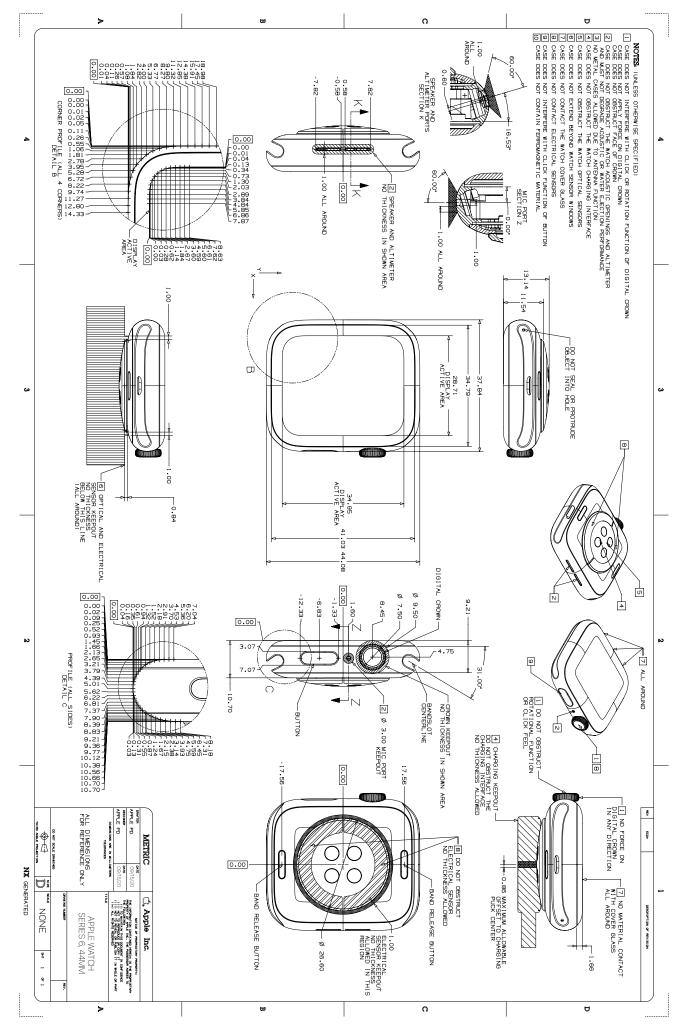


59.212 Apple Watch SE, 40 mm

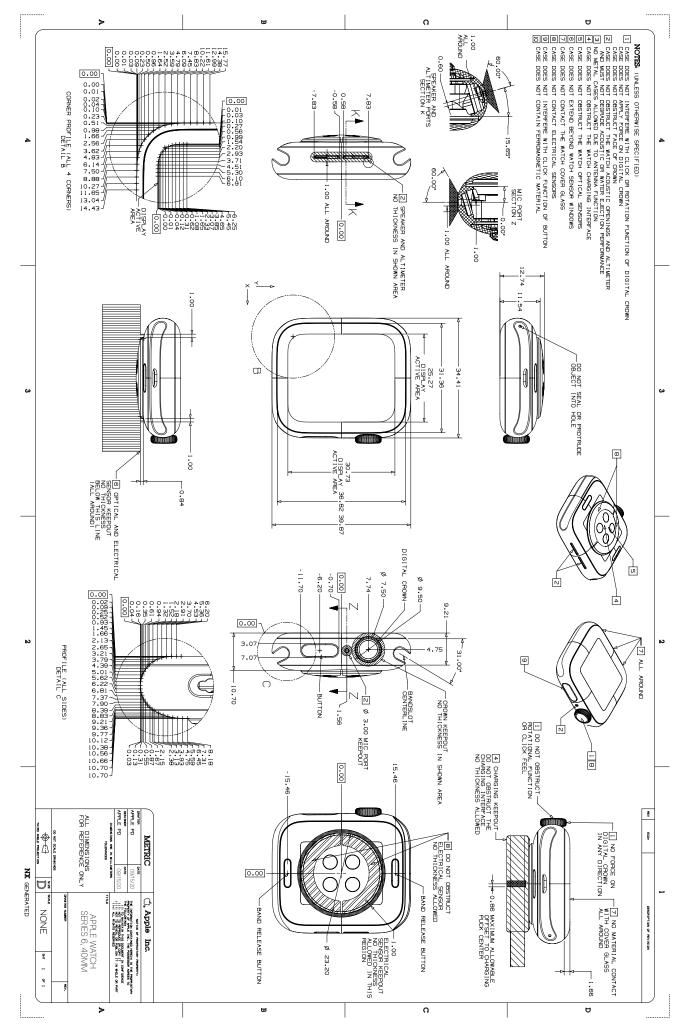




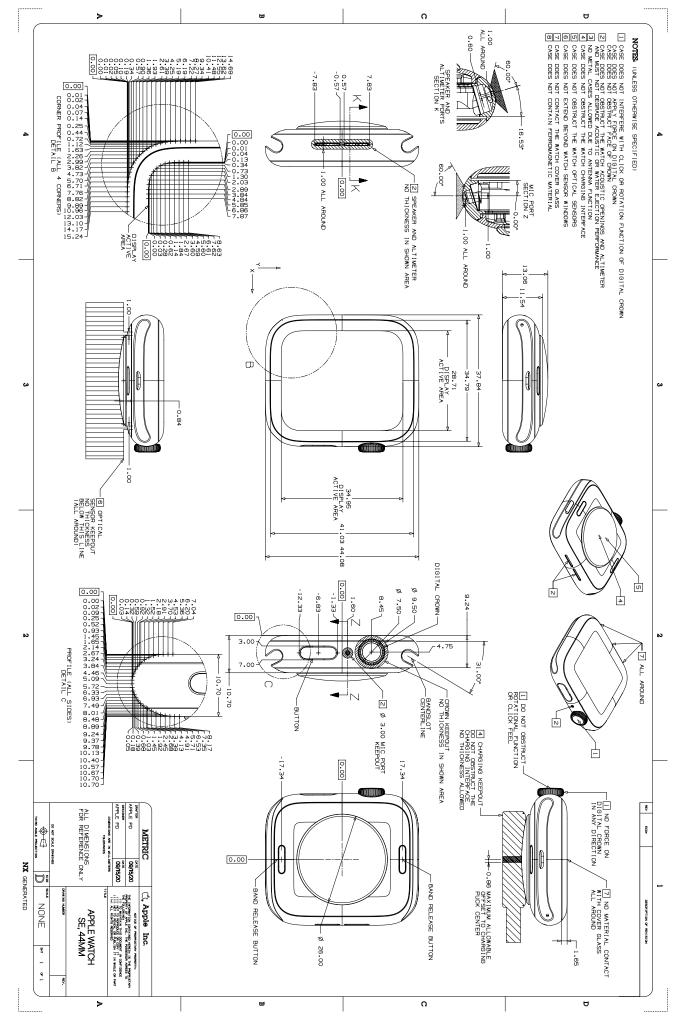
59.215 Apple Watch Series 6, 44 mm



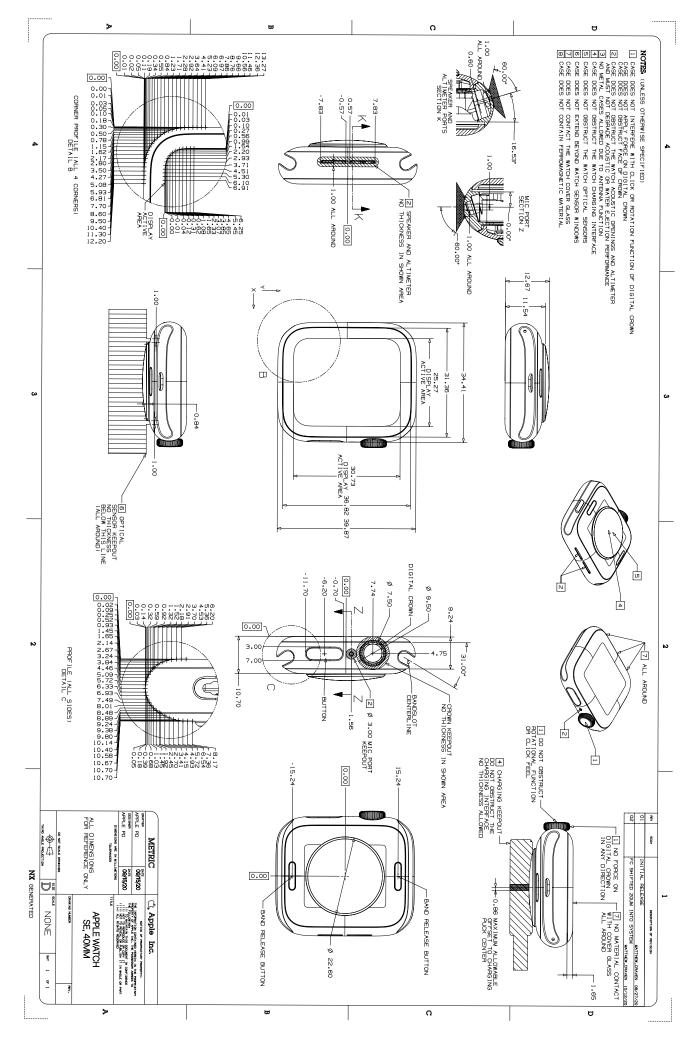
59.216 Apple Watch Series 6, 40 mm



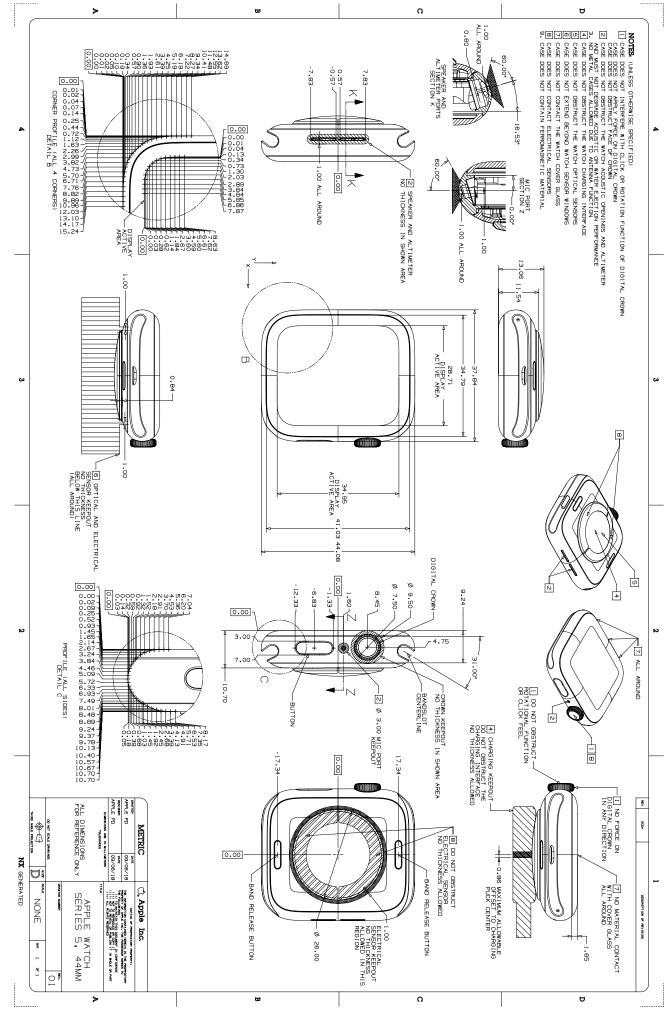
59.217 Apple Watch SE (1st generation), 44 mm



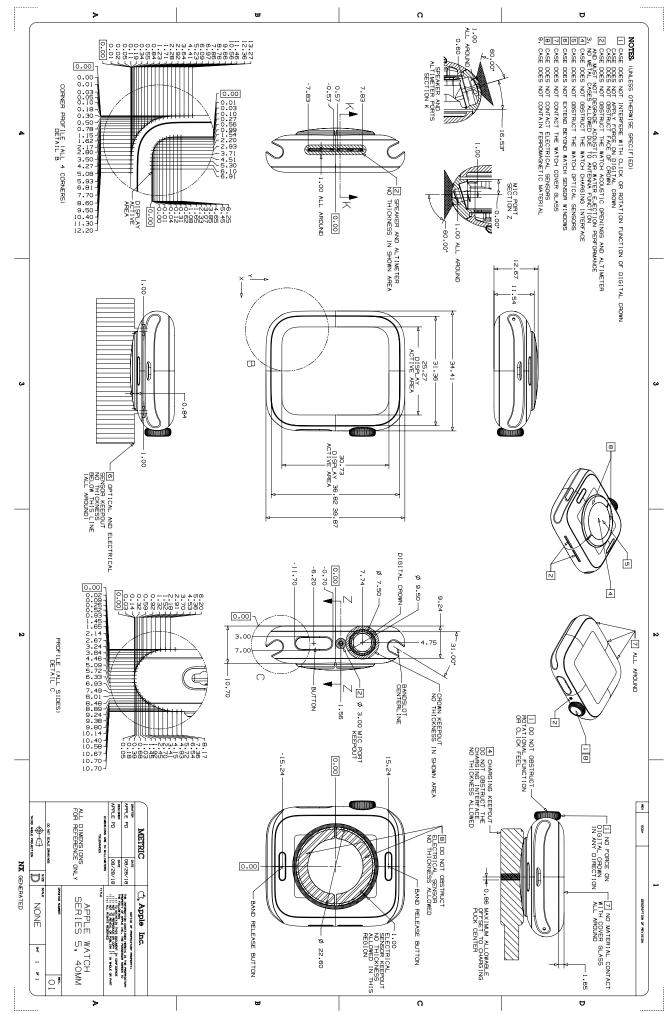
59.218 Apple Watch SE (1st generation), 40 mm



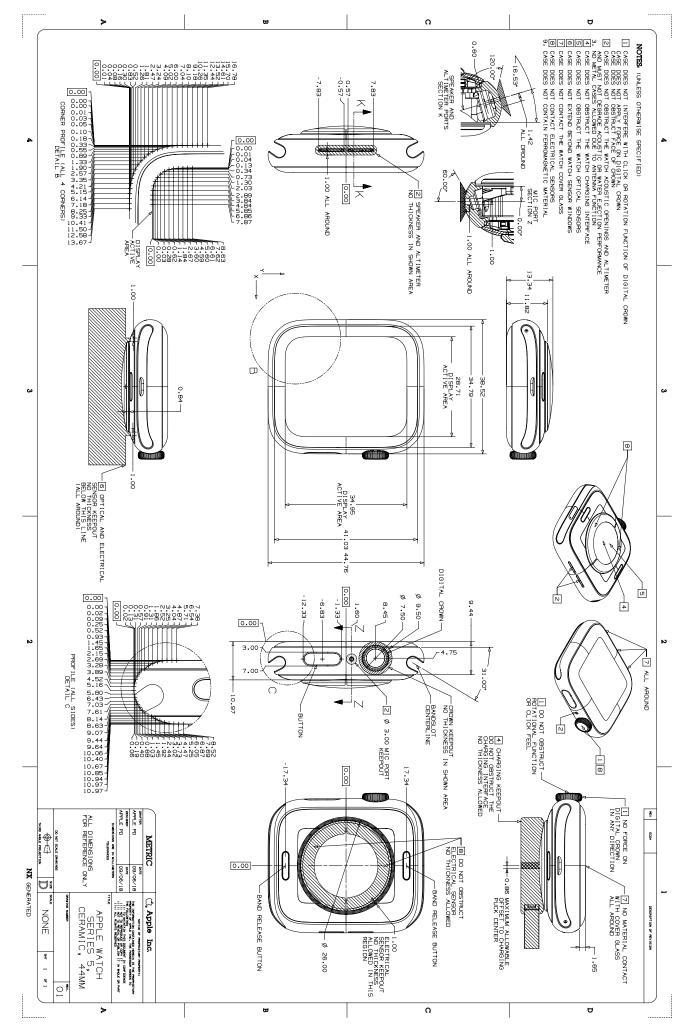
59.219 Apple Watch Series 5, 44 mm



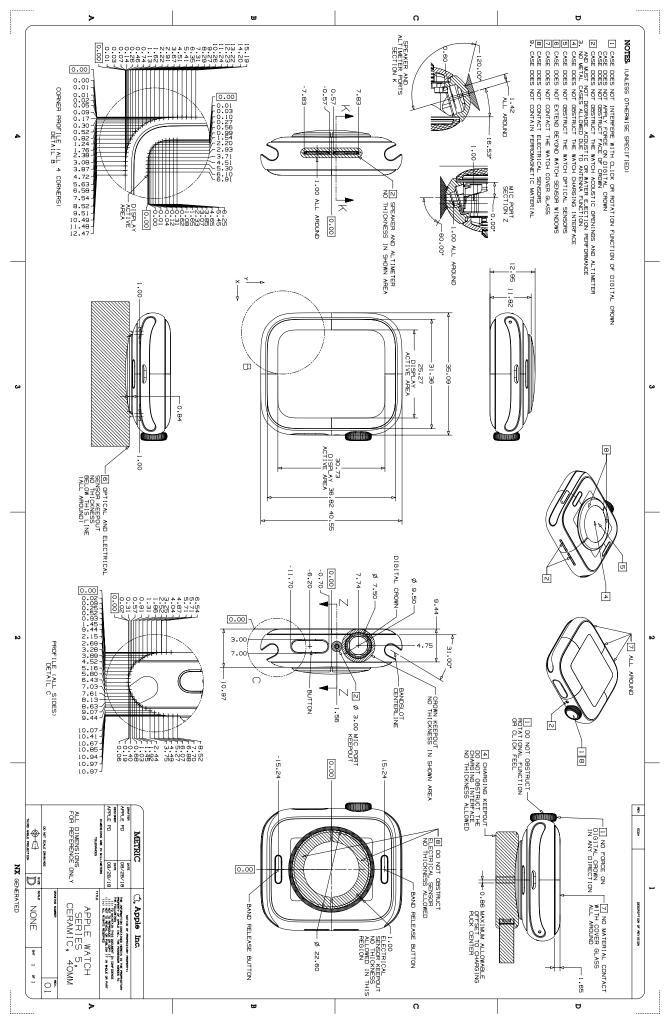
59.220 Apple Watch Series 5, 40 mm



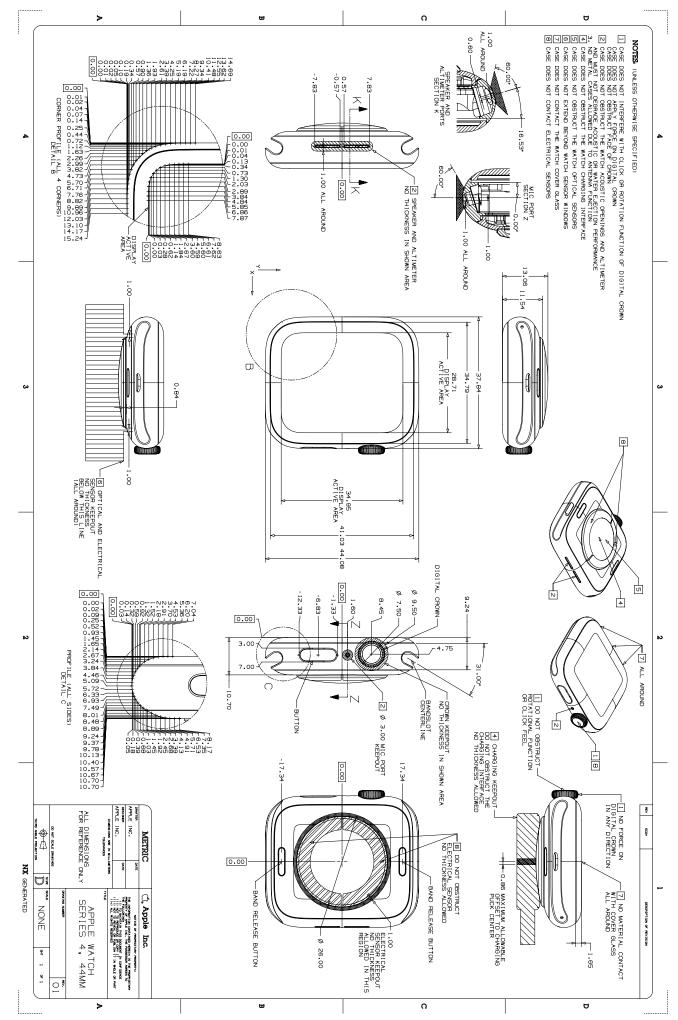
59.221 Apple Watch Series 5 Ceramic, 44 mm



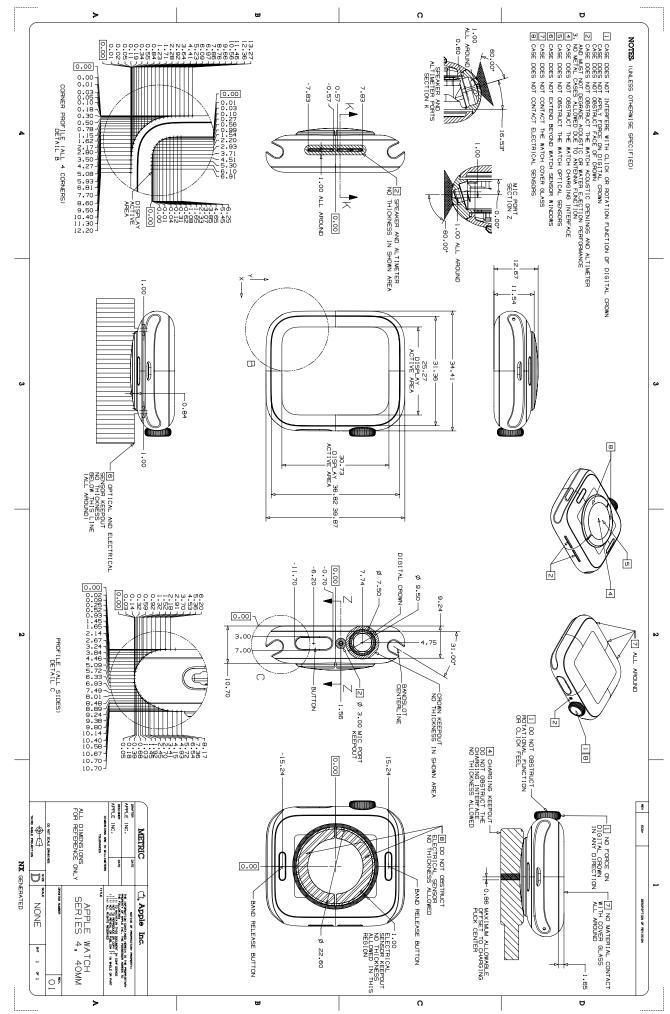
59.222 Apple Watch Series 5 Ceramic, 40 mm



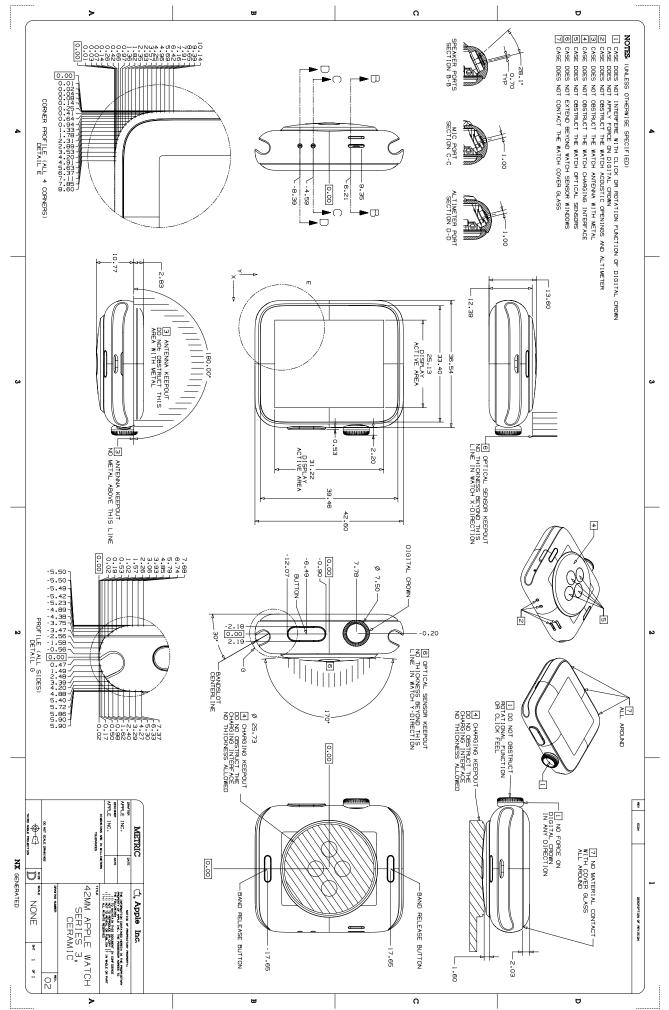
59.223 Apple Watch Series 4, 44 mm



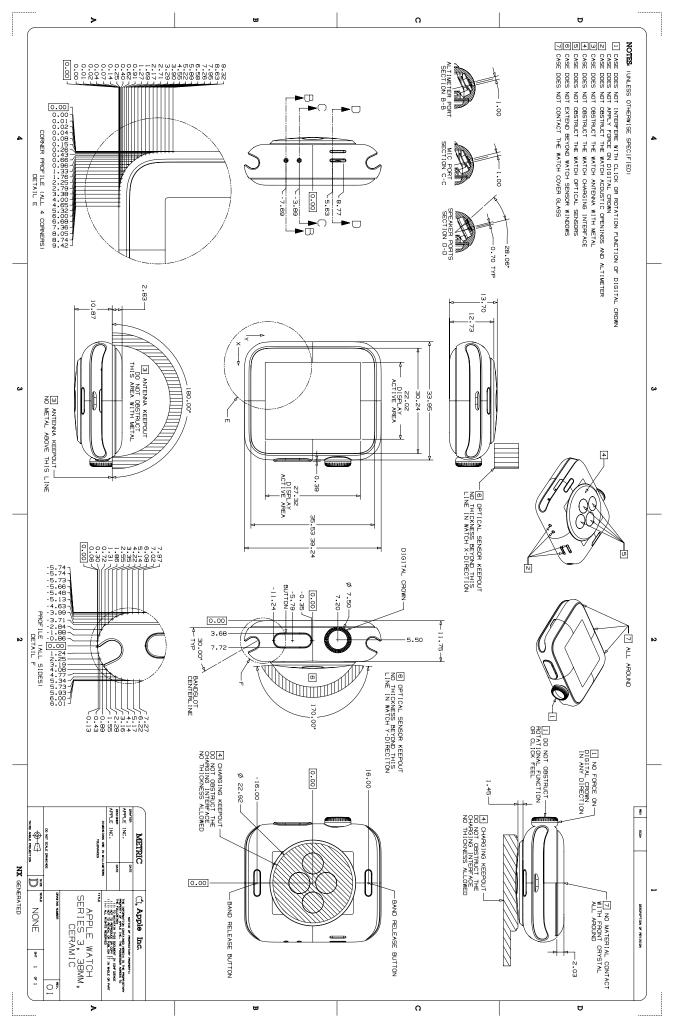
59.224 Apple Watch Series 4, 40 mm



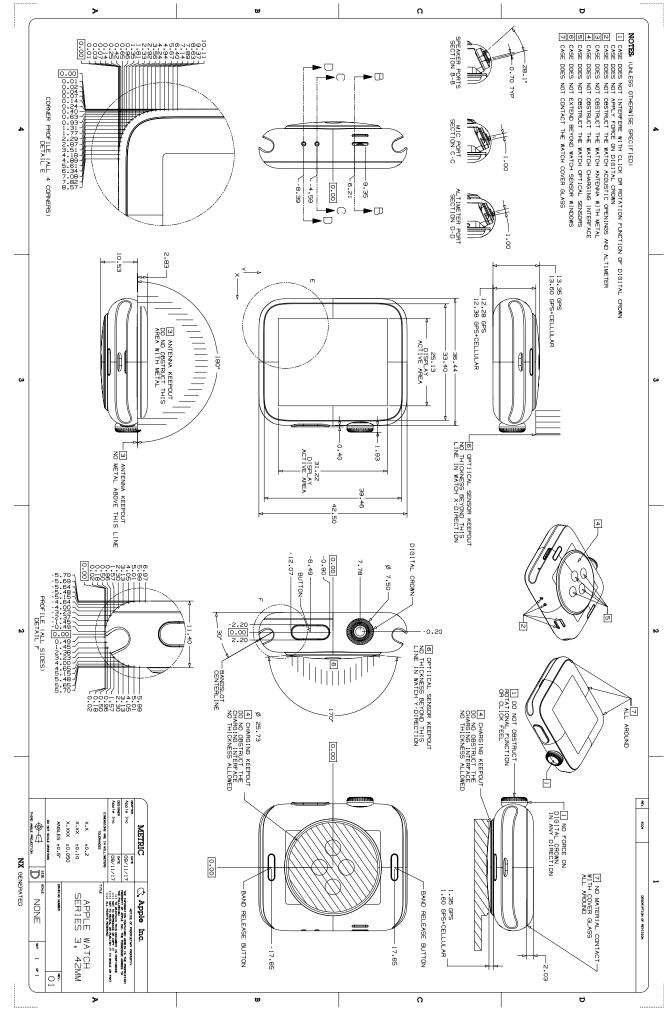
59.225 Apple Watch Series 3 Ceramic, 42 mm



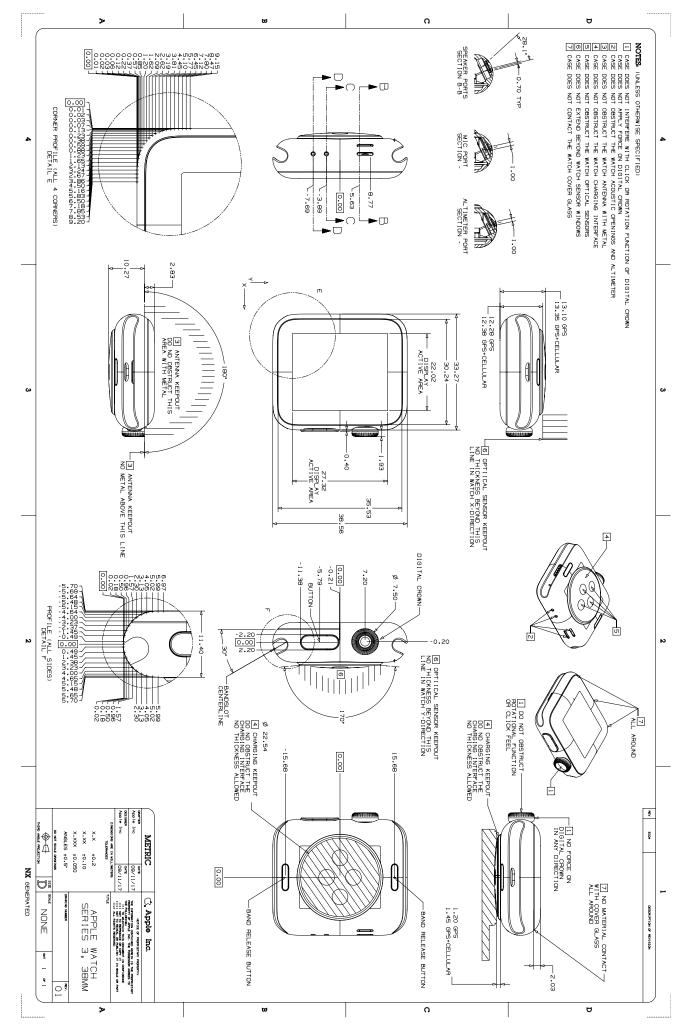
59.226 Apple Watch Series 3 Ceramic, 38 mm



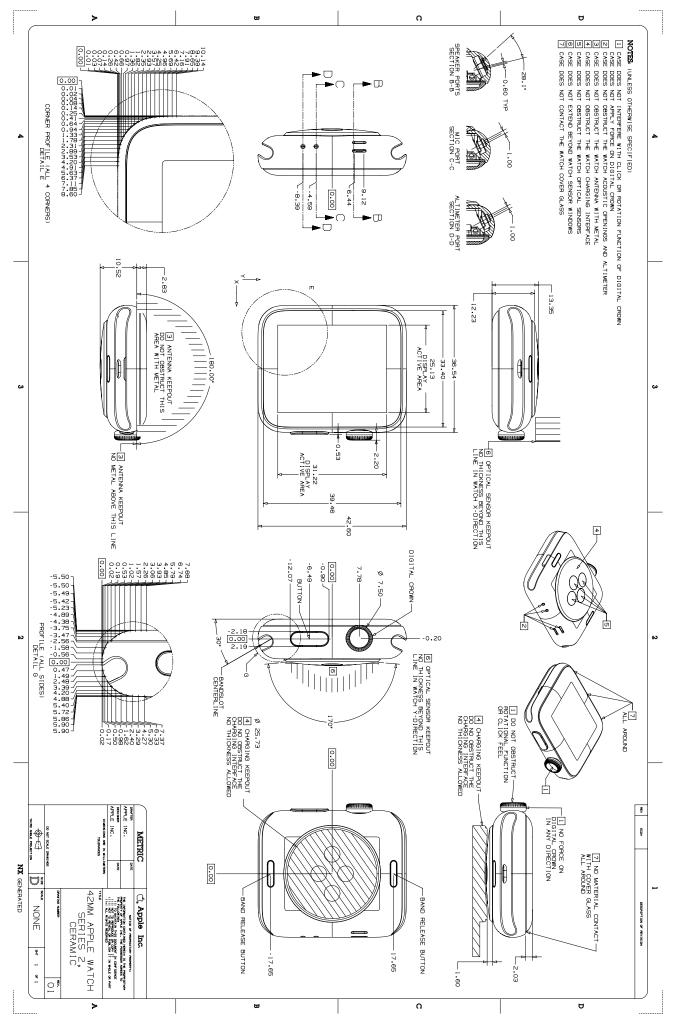
59.227 Apple Watch Series 3 Metal, 42 mm



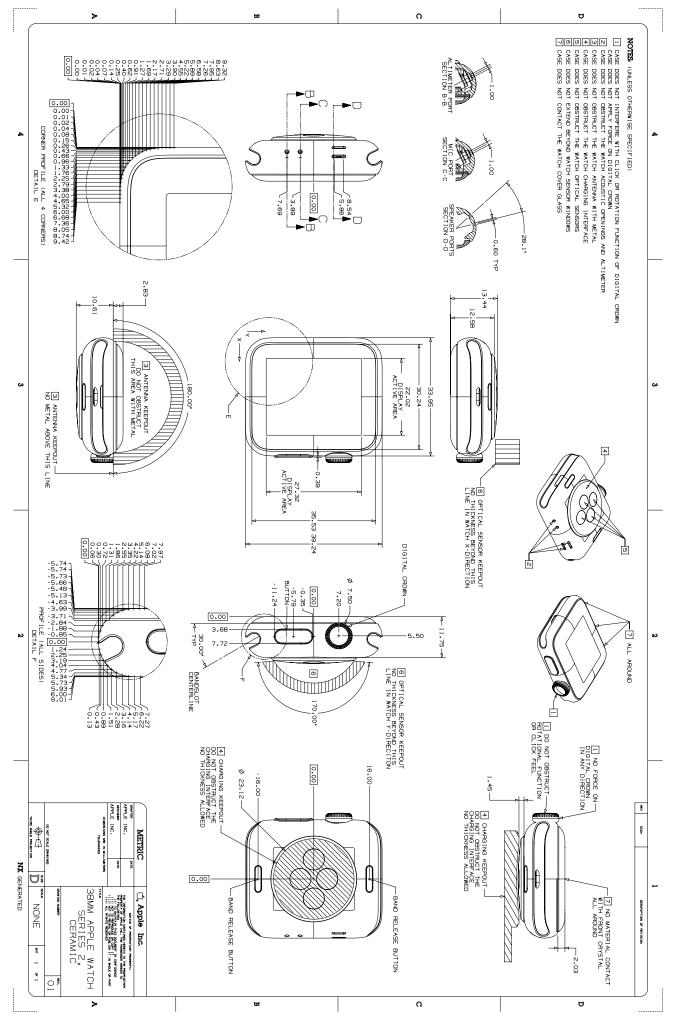
59.228 Apple Watch Series 3 Metal, 38 mm



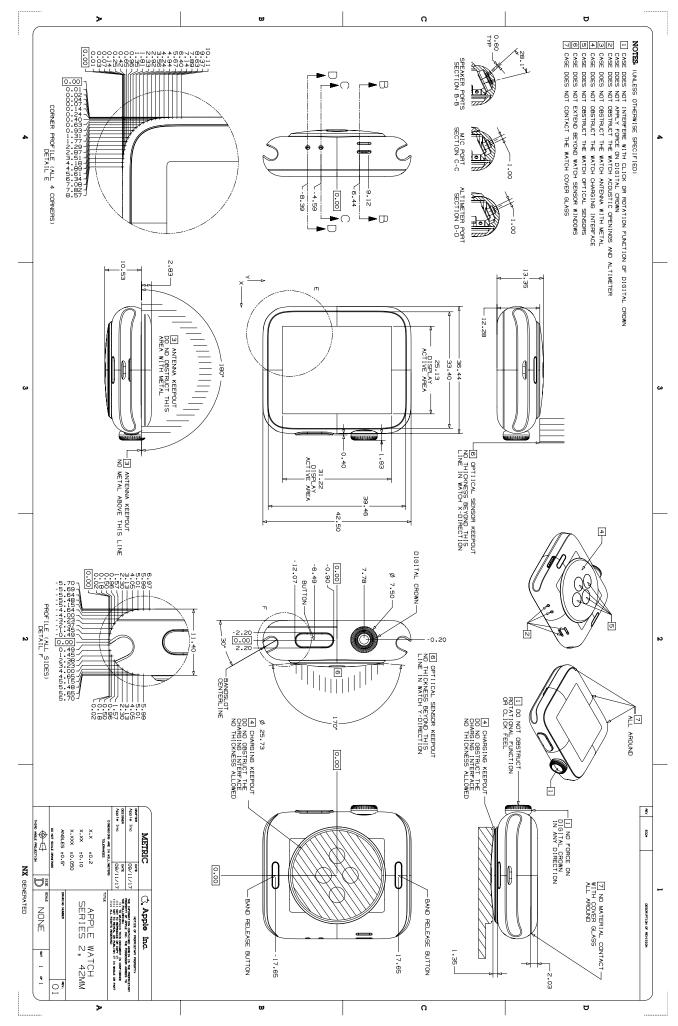
59.229 Apple Watch Series 2 Ceramic, 42 mm



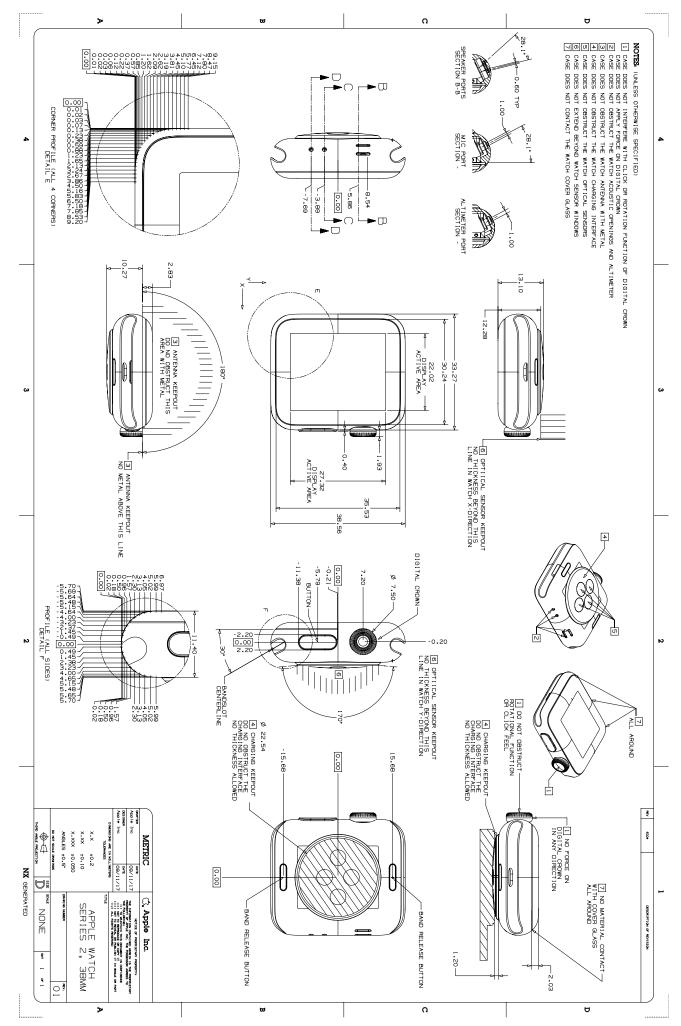
59.230 Apple Watch Series 2 Ceramic, 38 mm



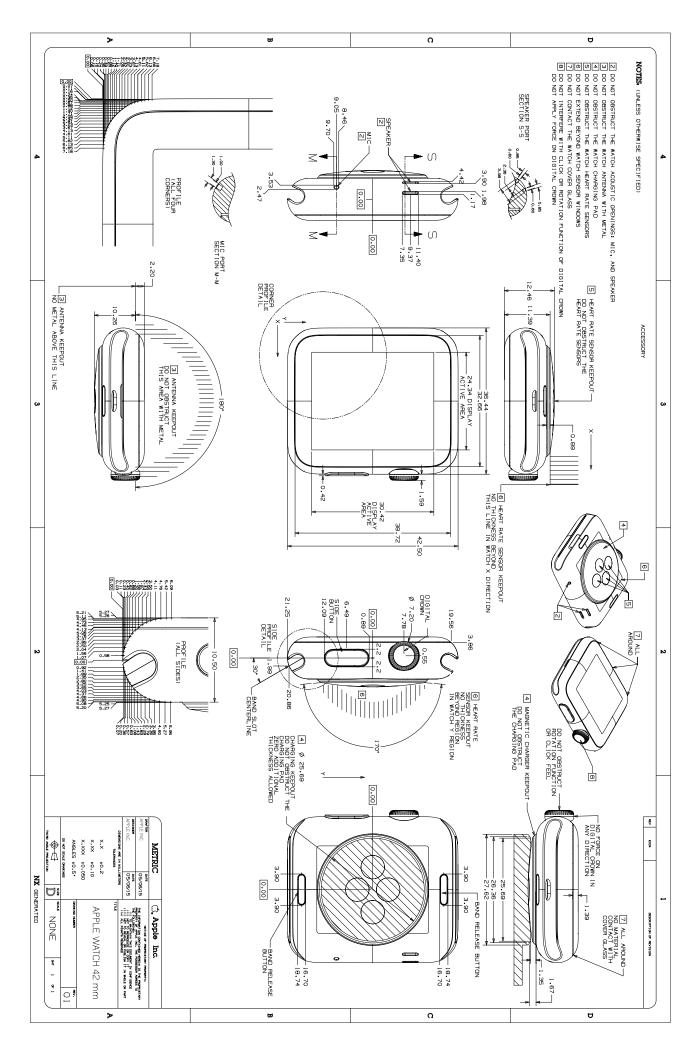
59.231 Apple Watch Series 2 Metal, 42 mm



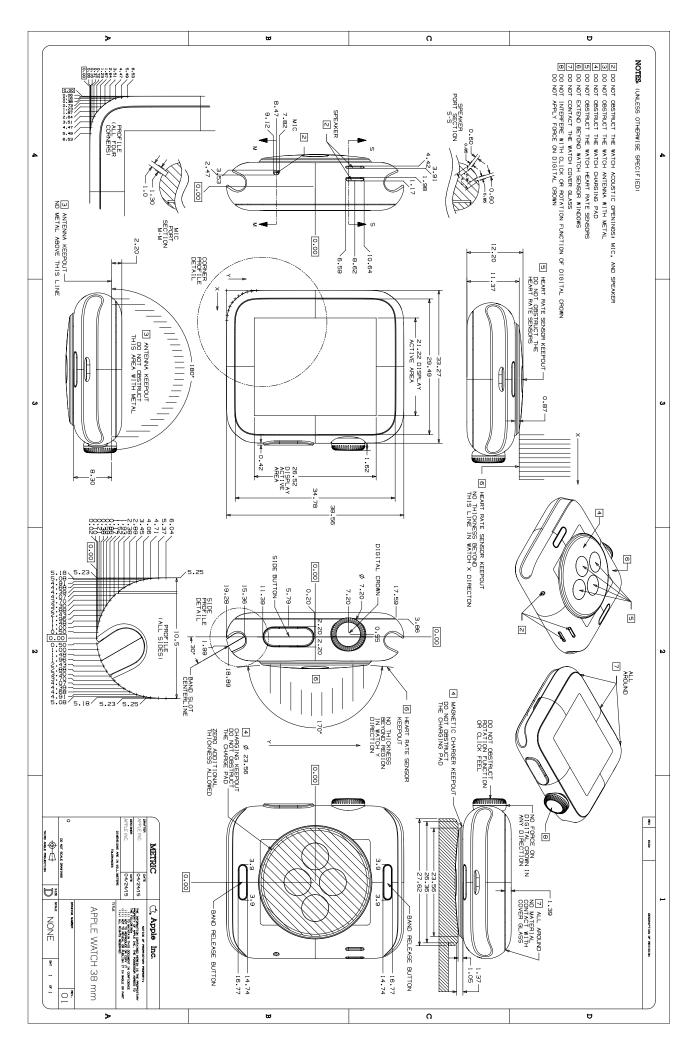
59.232 Apple Watch Series 2 Metal, 38 mm

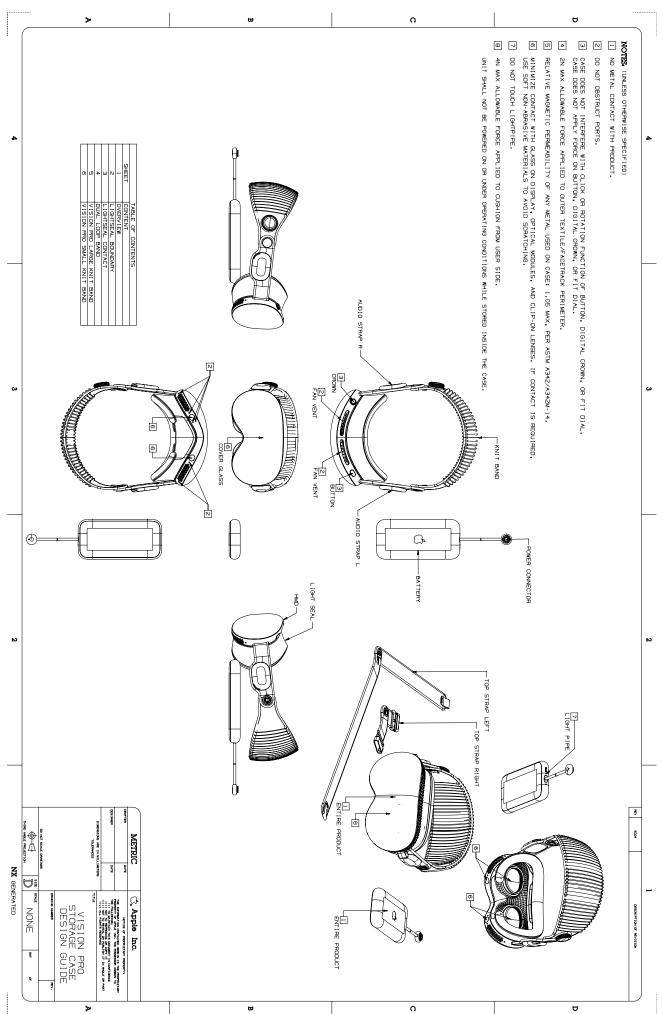


59.233 Apple Watch (1st generation) and Apple Watch Series 1, 42 mm

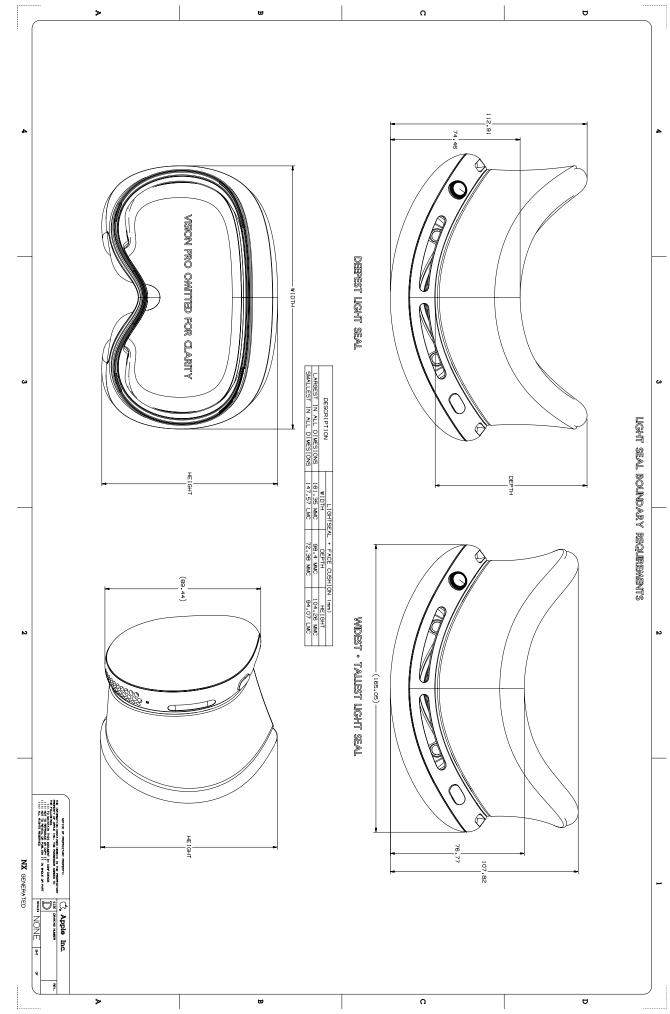


59.234 Apple Watch (1st generation) and Apple Watch Series 1, 38 mm

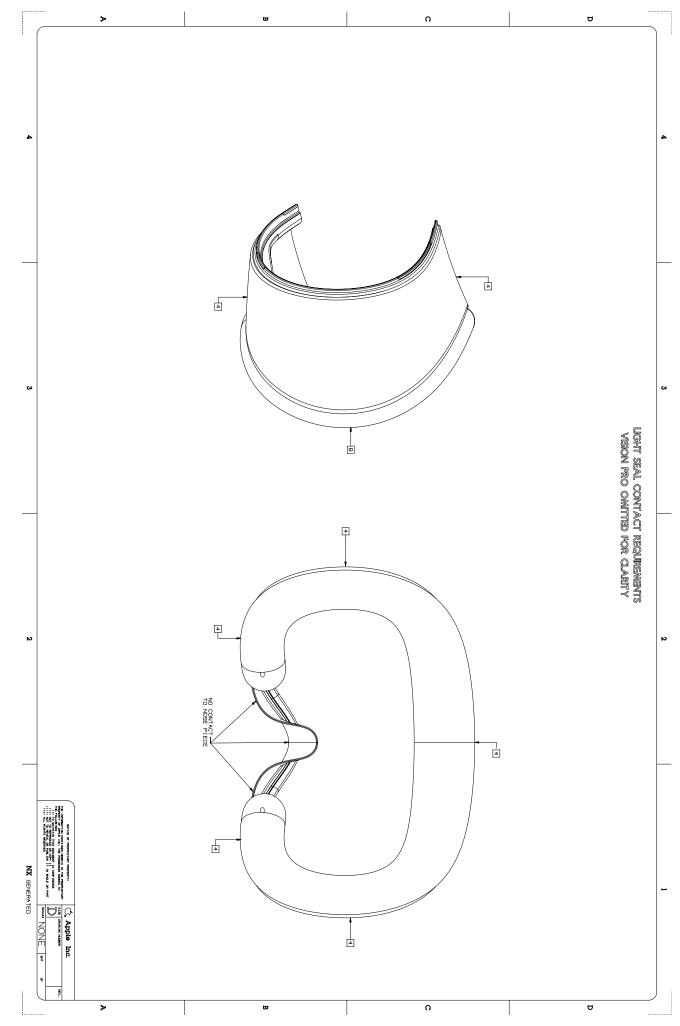




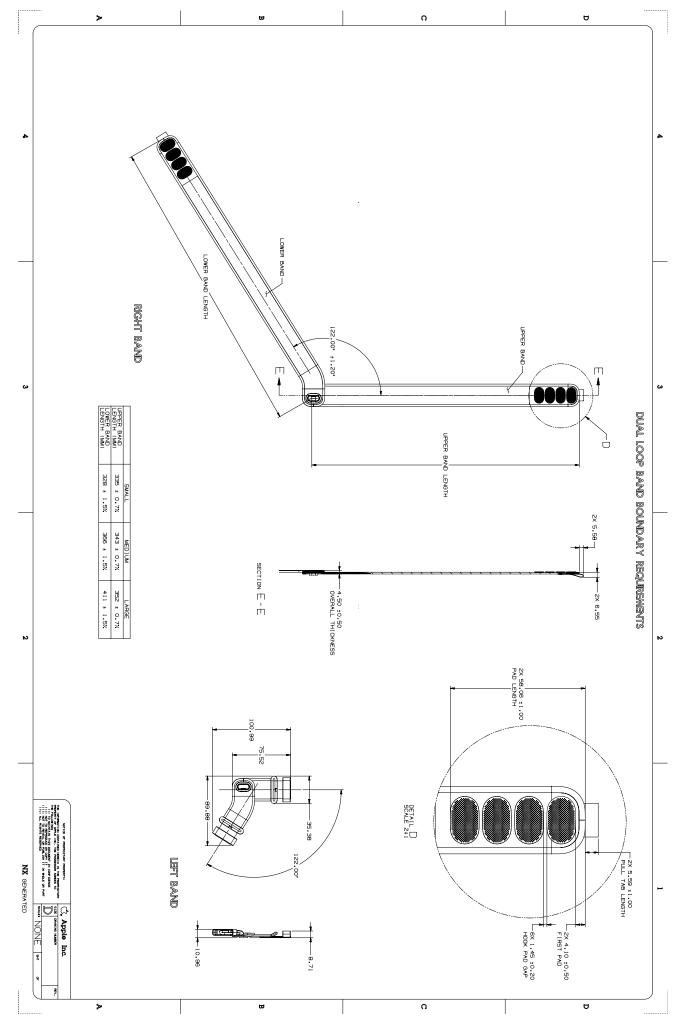
59.236 Apple Vision Pro, 2 of 6



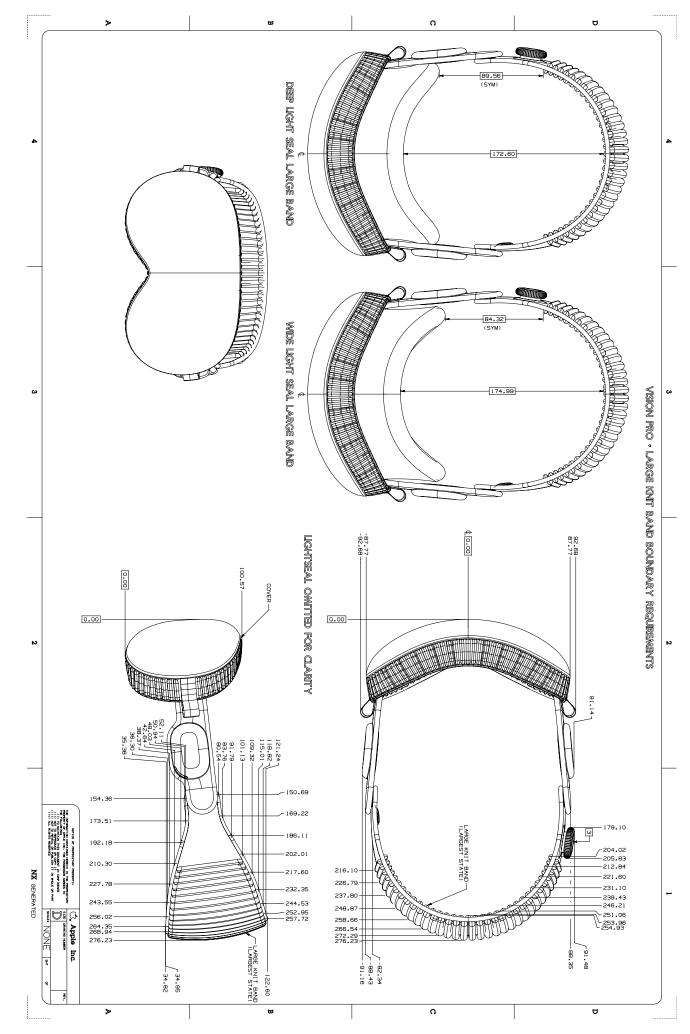
59.237 Apple Vision Pro, 3 of 6



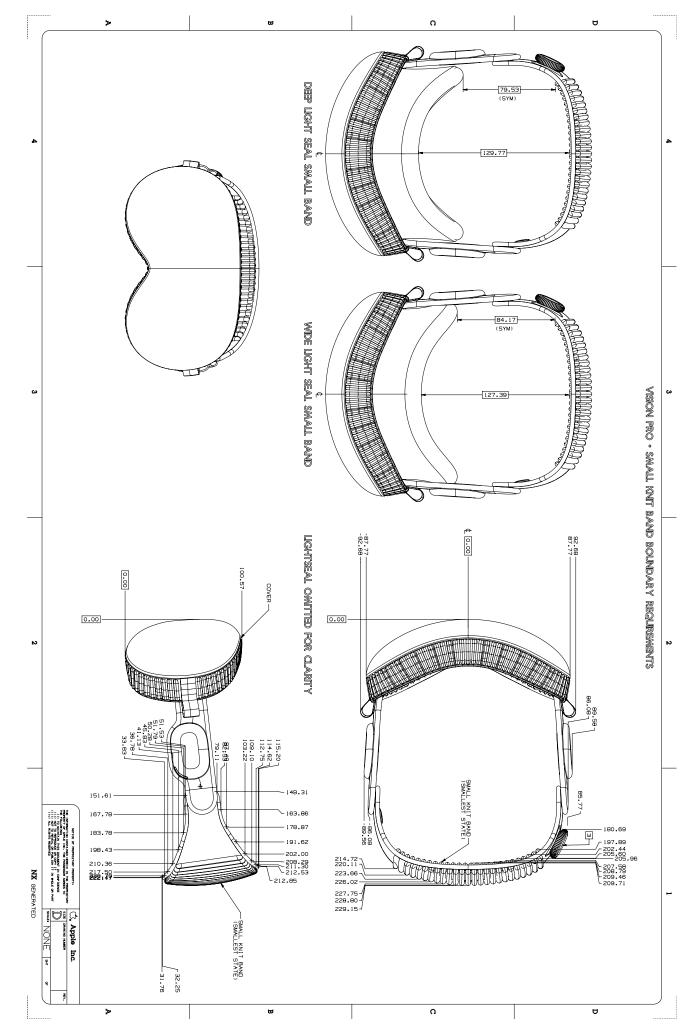
59.238 Apple Vision Pro, 4 of 6



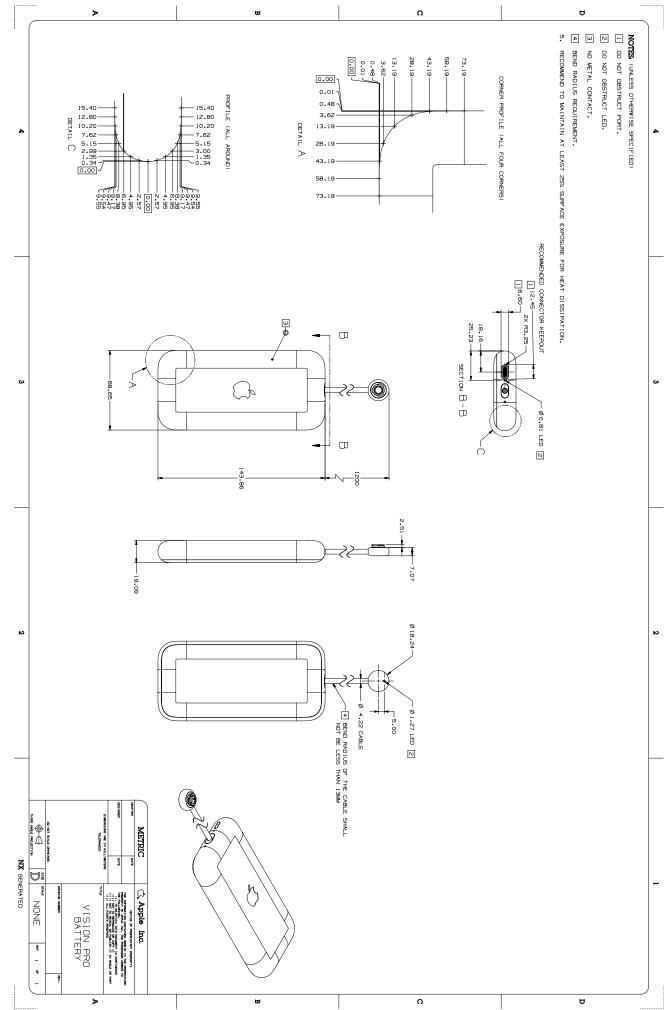
59.239 Apple Vision Pro, 5 of 6



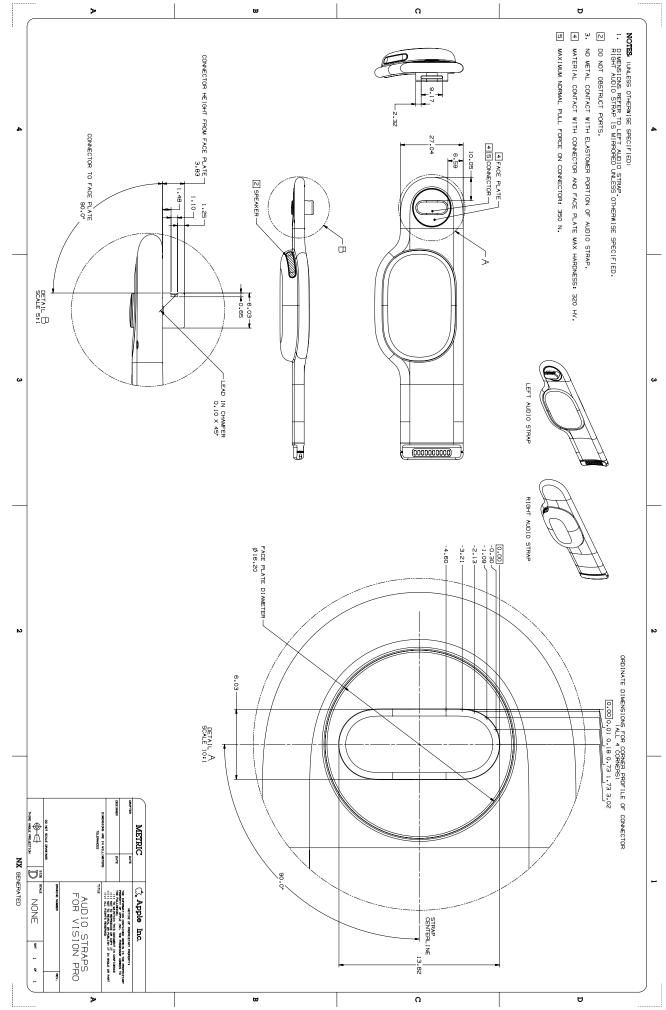
59.240 Apple Vision Pro, 6 of 6



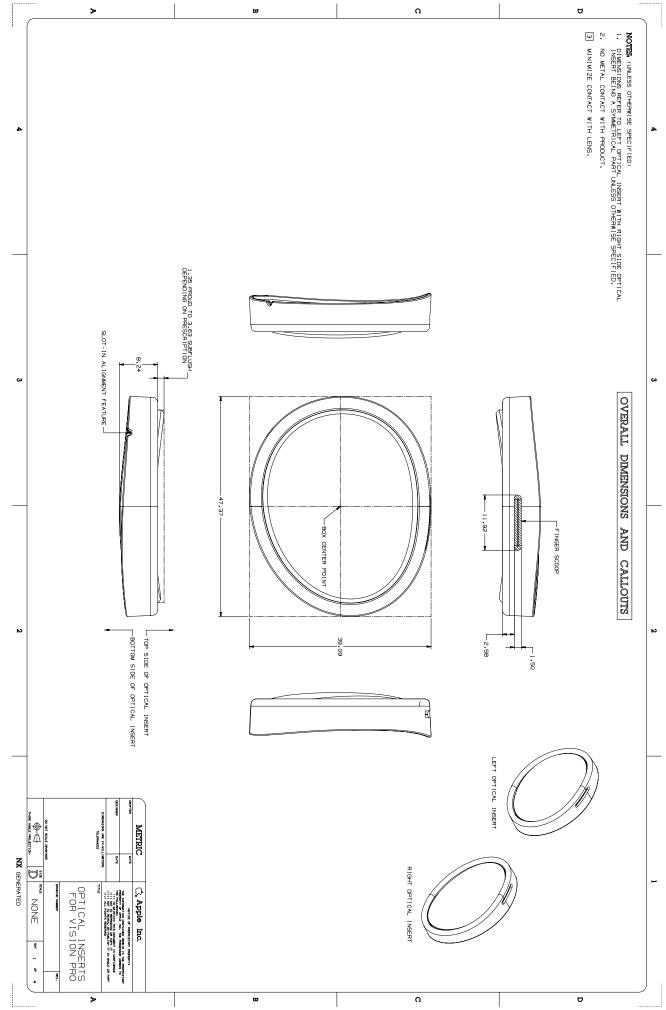
59.241 Apple Vision Pro Battery



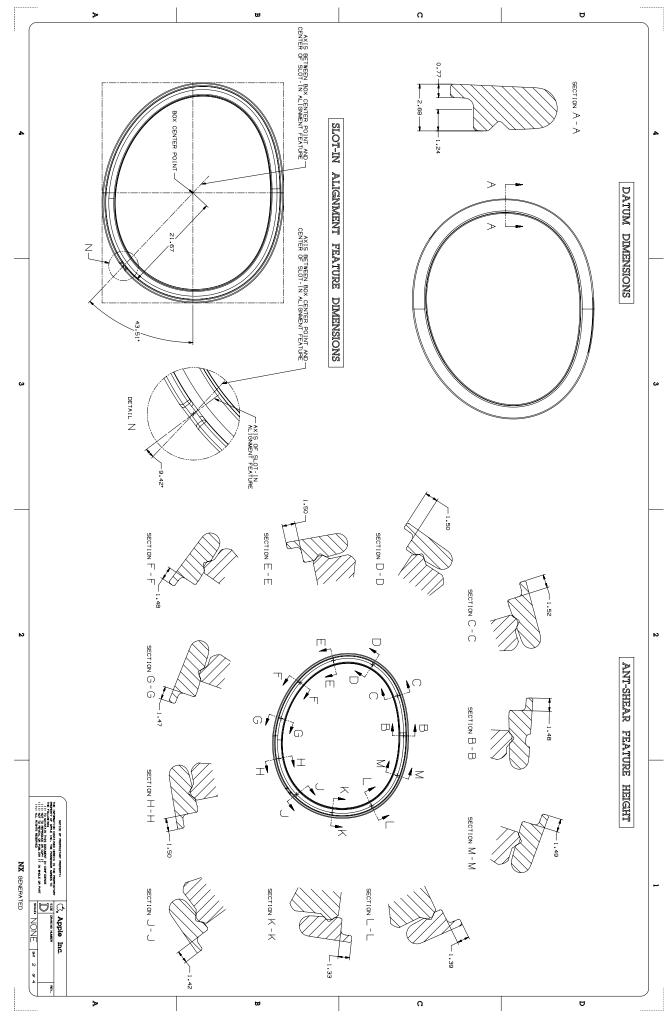
59.242 Apple Vision Pro Audio Strap



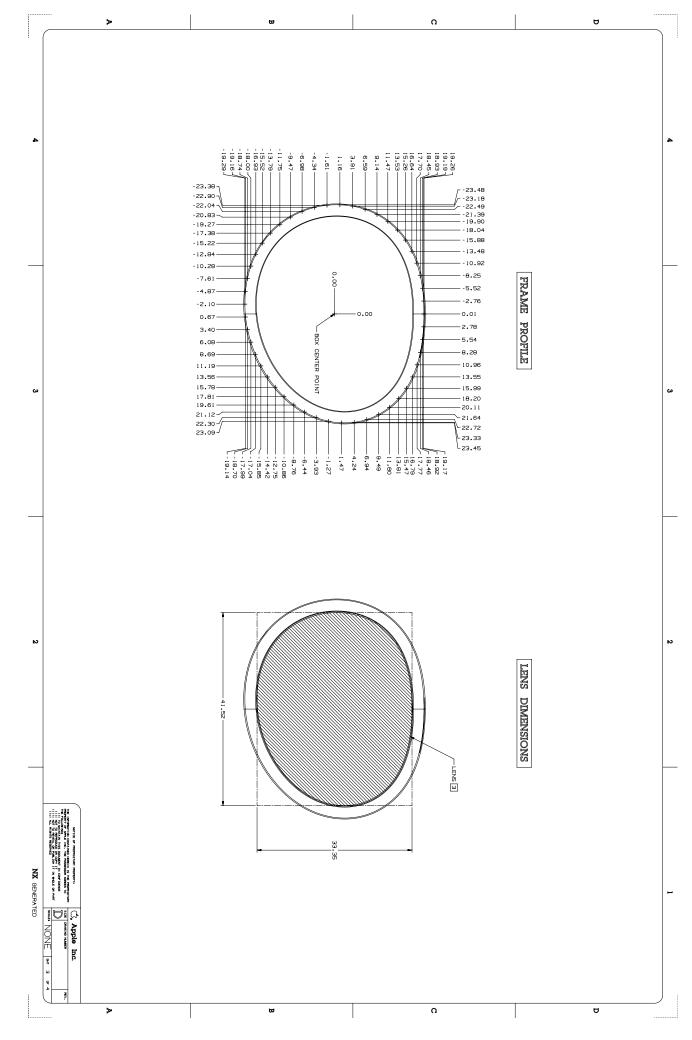
59.243 ZEISS Optical Inserts, 1 of 4



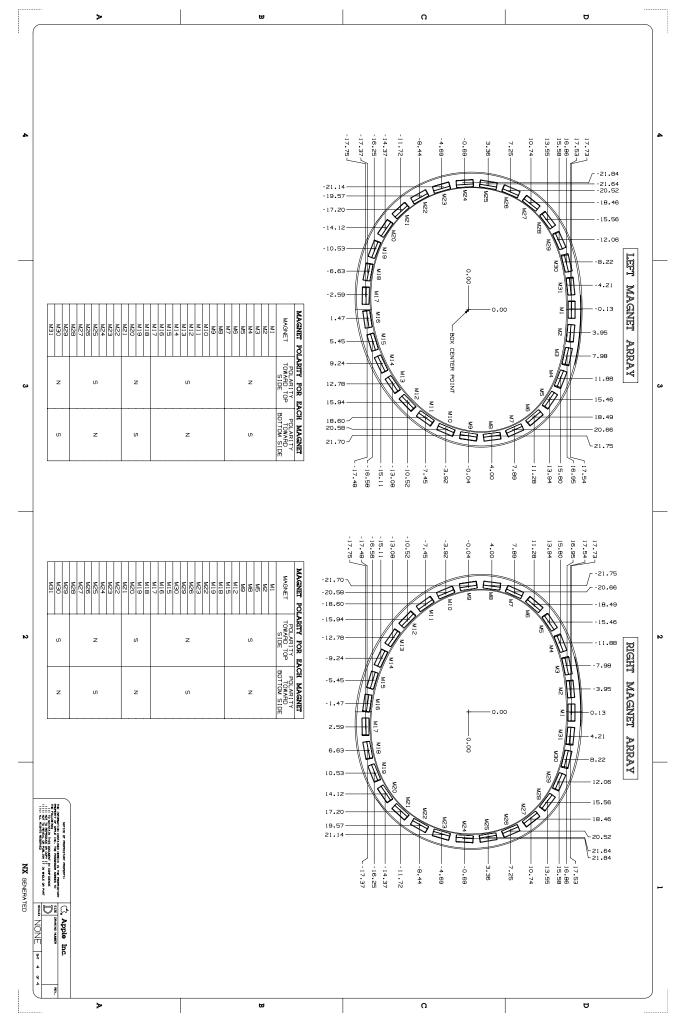
59.244 ZEISS Optical Inserts, 2 of 4

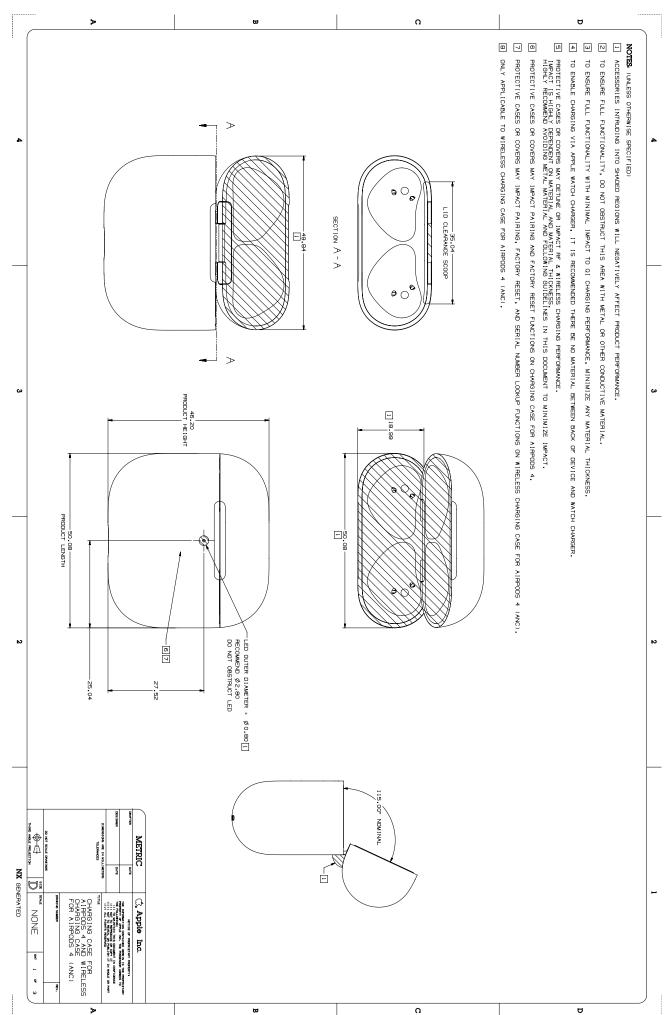


59.245 ZEISS Optical Inserts, 3 of 4

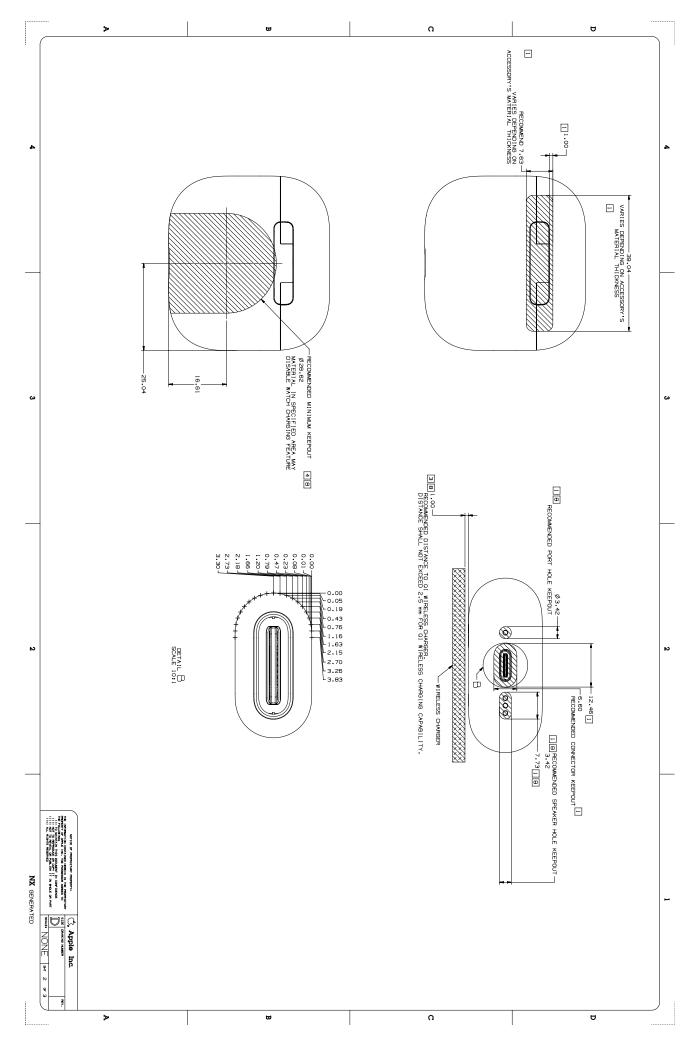


59.246 ZEISS Optical Inserts, 4 of 4

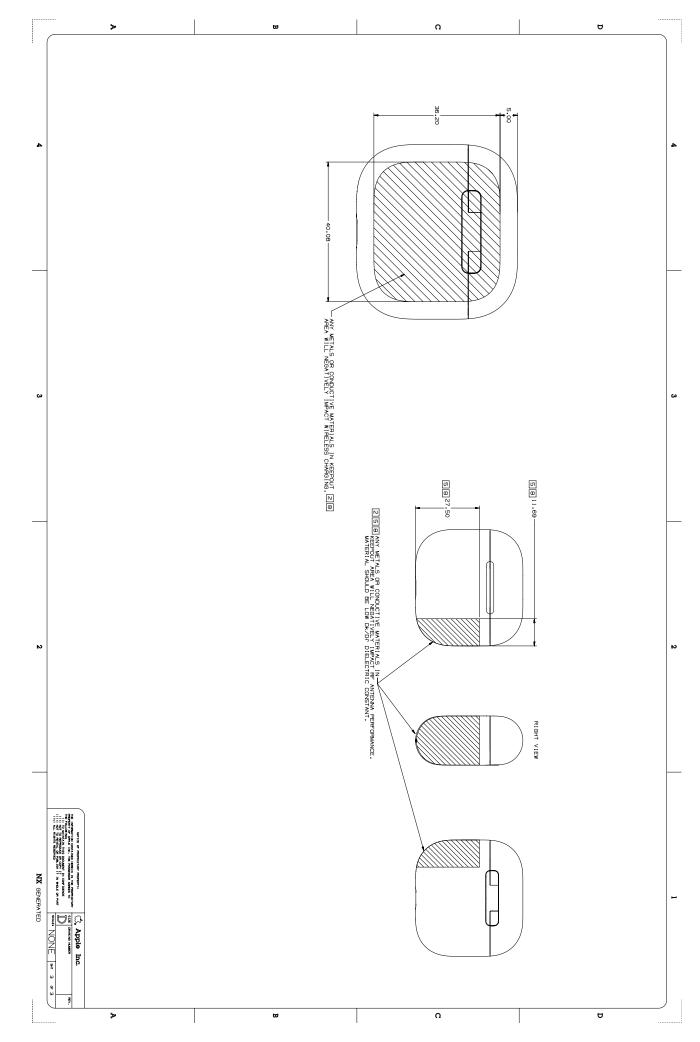


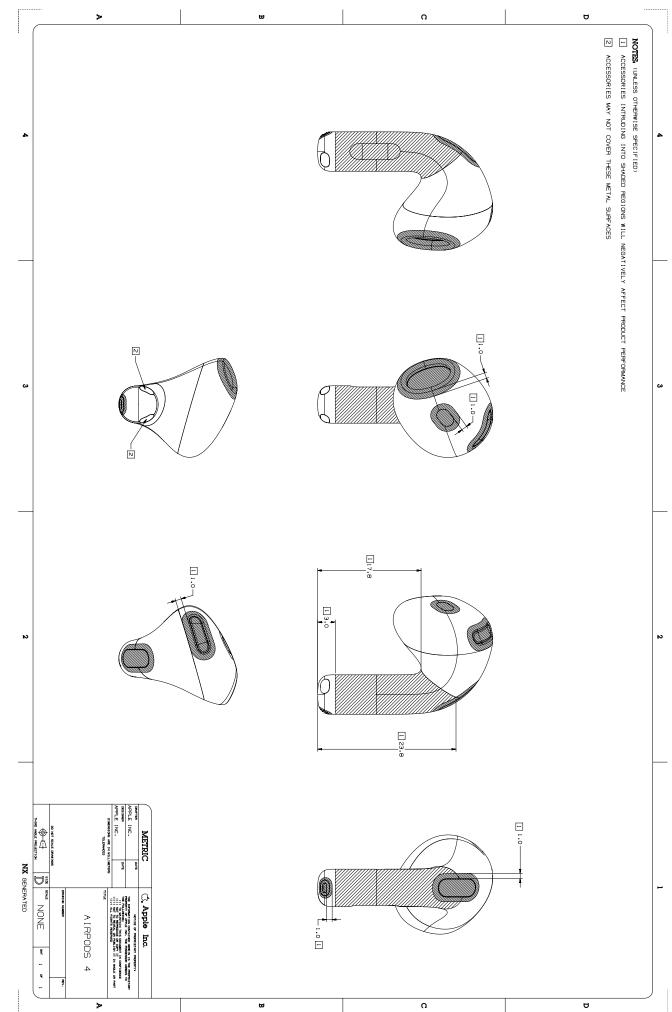


59.248 Wireless Charging Case (USB-C) for AirPods 4, 2 of 3

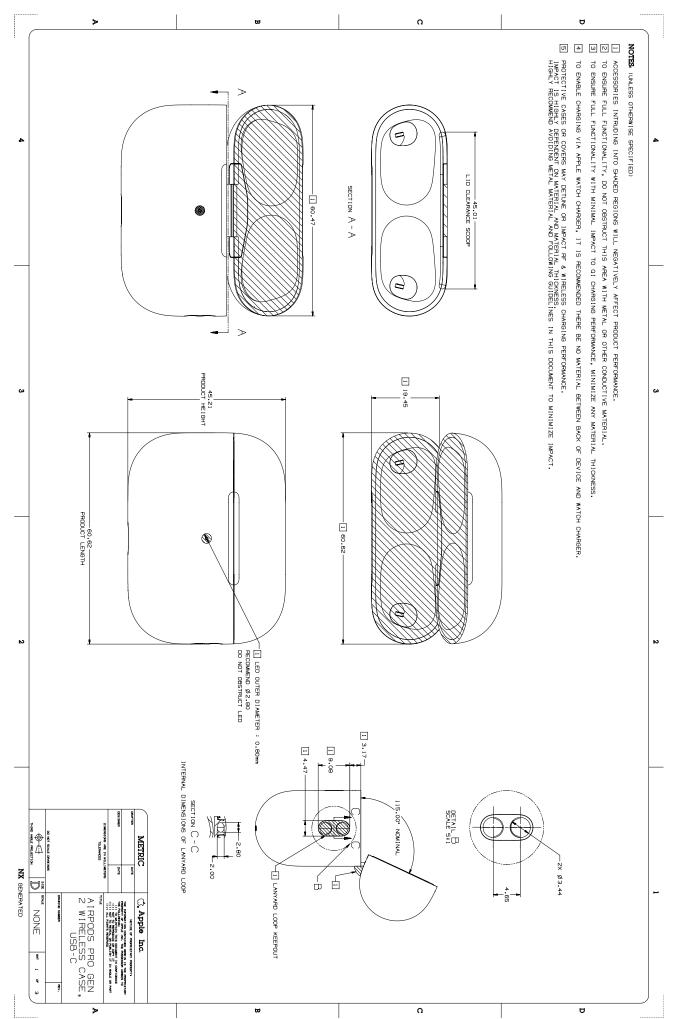


59.249 Wireless Charging Case (USB-C) for AirPods 4, 3 of 3

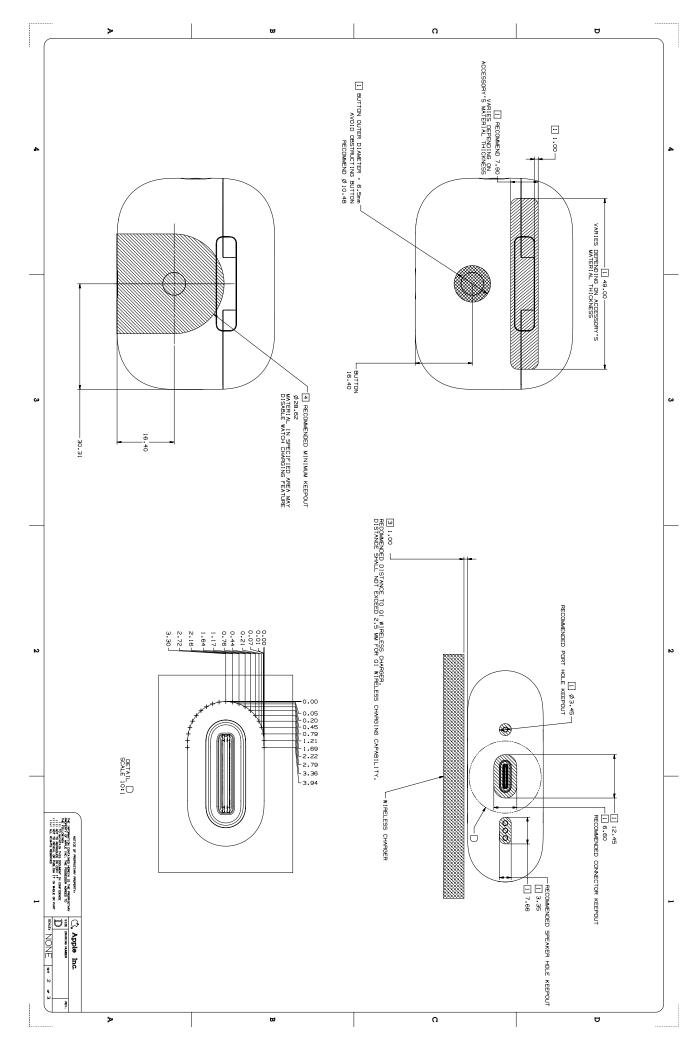




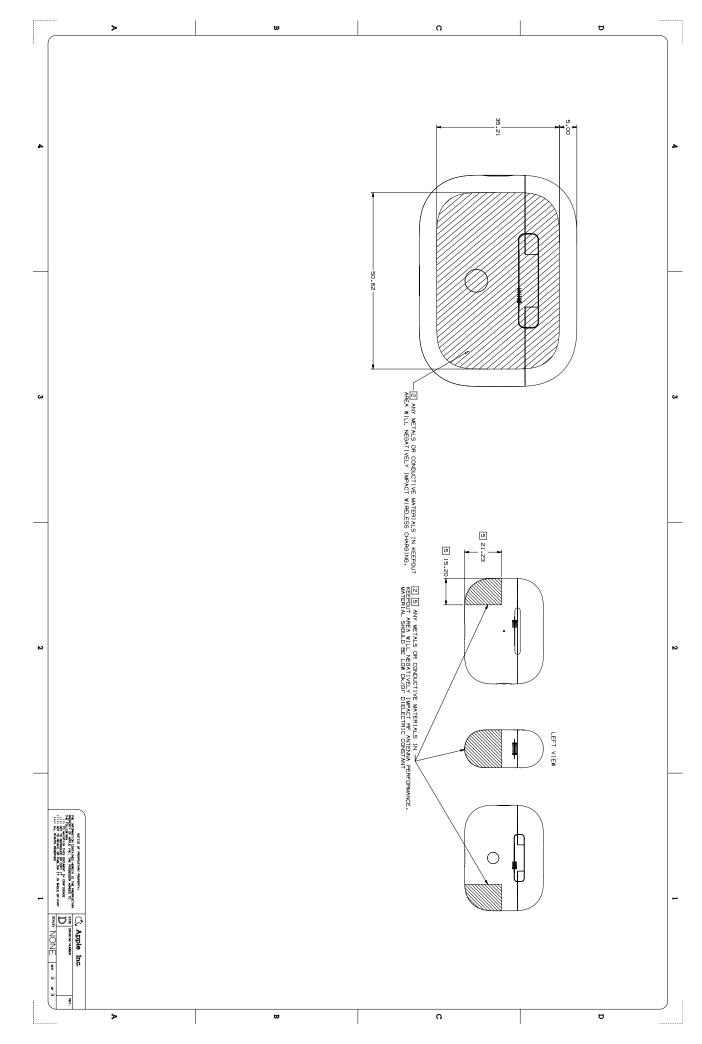
59.251 MagSafe Charging Case (USB-C) for AirPods Pro (2nd generation), 1 of 3

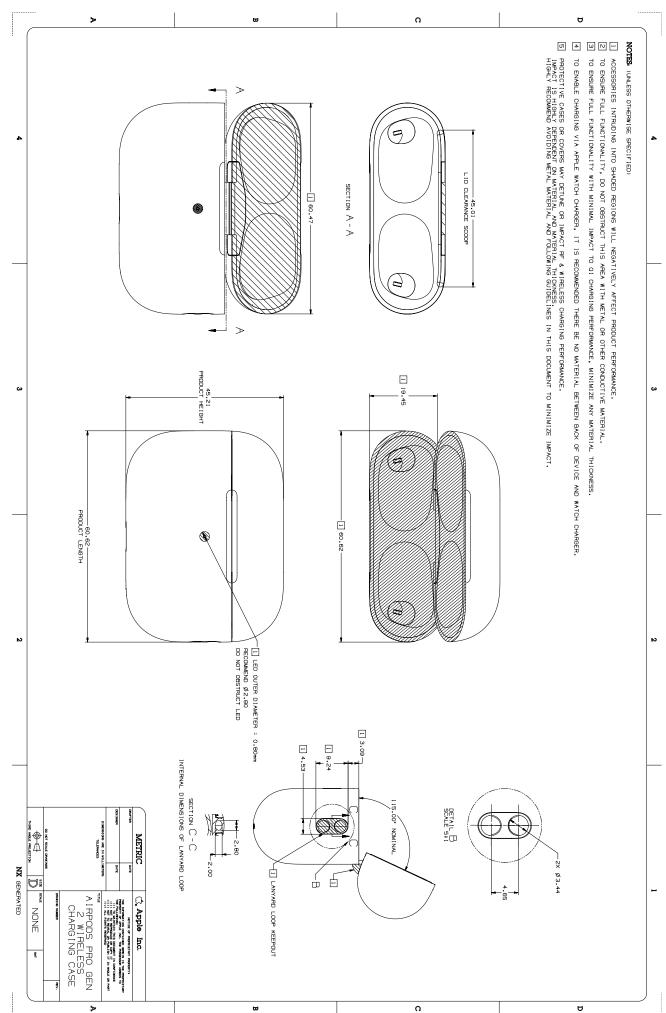


59.252 MagSafe Charging Case (USB-C) for AirPods Pro (2nd generation), 2 of 3

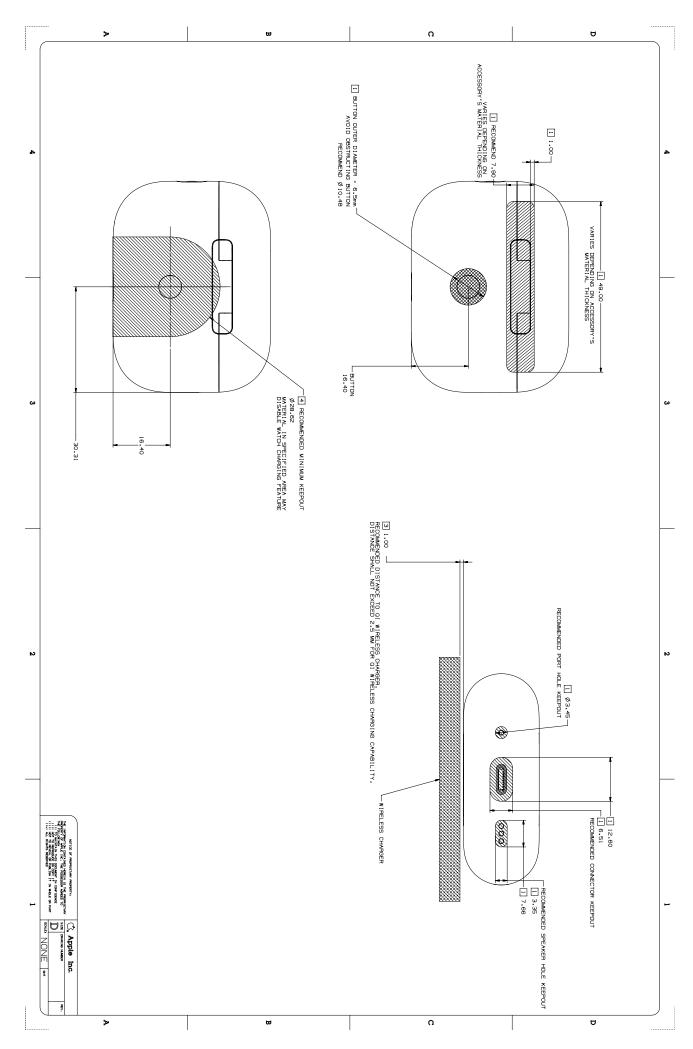


59.253 MagSafe Charging Case (USB-C) for AirPods Pro (2nd generation), 3 of 3

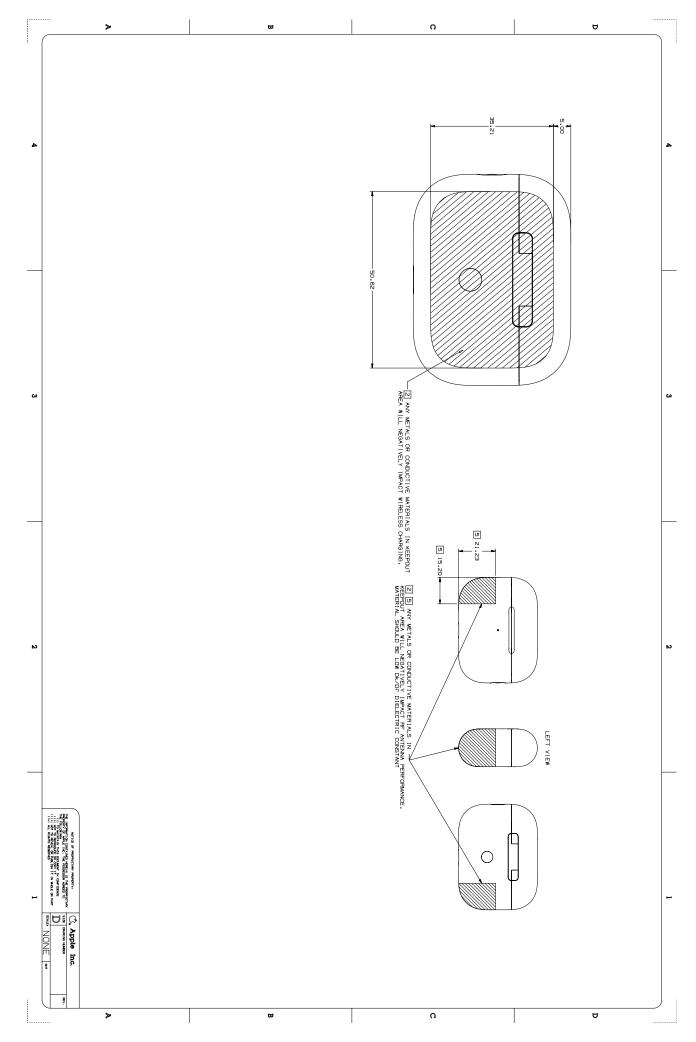




59.255 MagSafe Charging Case for AirPods Pro (2nd generation), 2 of 3



59.256 MagSafe Charging Case for AirPods Pro (2nd generation), 3 of 3



ယ

N

NX GENERATED

Þ

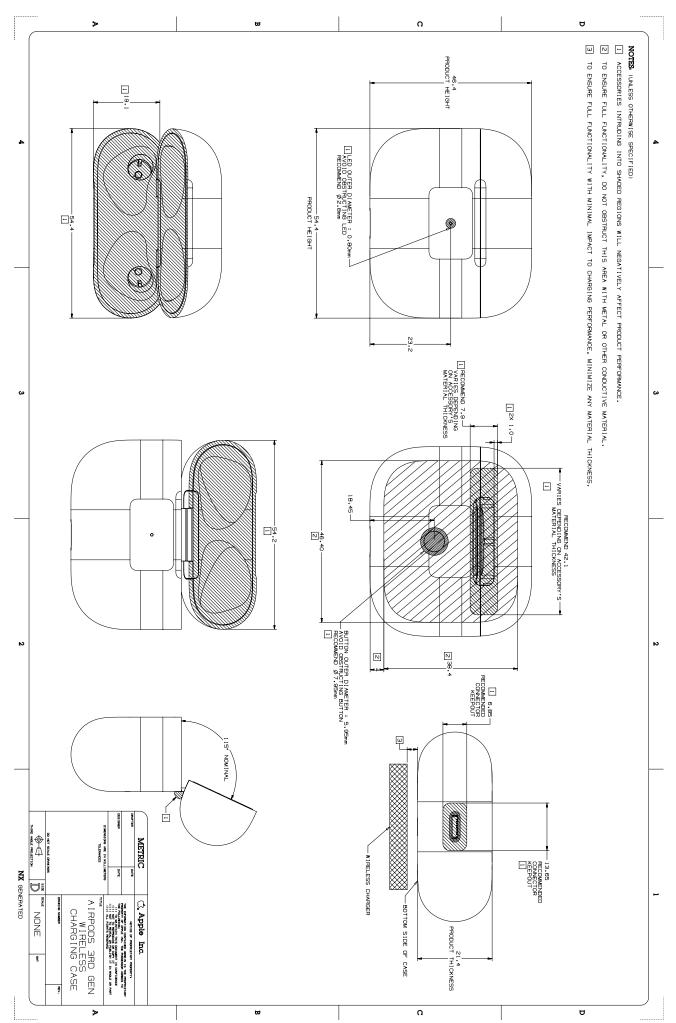
В

59.257 AirPods Pro (2nd generation) U) Б Ω 2 ACCESSORIES MAY NOT COVER THESE METAL SURFACES 1 ACCESSORIES INTRUDING INTO SHADED REGION WILL NEGATIVELY AFFECT PRODUCT PERFORMANCE NOTES: (UNLESS OTHERWISE SPECIFIED) 7.6 1 -5.7 1.0 1 23.3 METRIC AIRPODS PRO (), Apple Inc. THE INCOMMTION CONTAINED HEREIN IS THE PROPRIETMAY THE INCOMMENT THIS DOCUMENT, IN CONTENSES TO THE INCOMMENT THIS DOCUMENT, IN CONTENSES TO THE INCOMMENT THIS DOCUMENT, IN CONTENSES TO MAKE THE INCOMMENT OF PRESENCE. NONE 1.0 1 £ GEN2 우

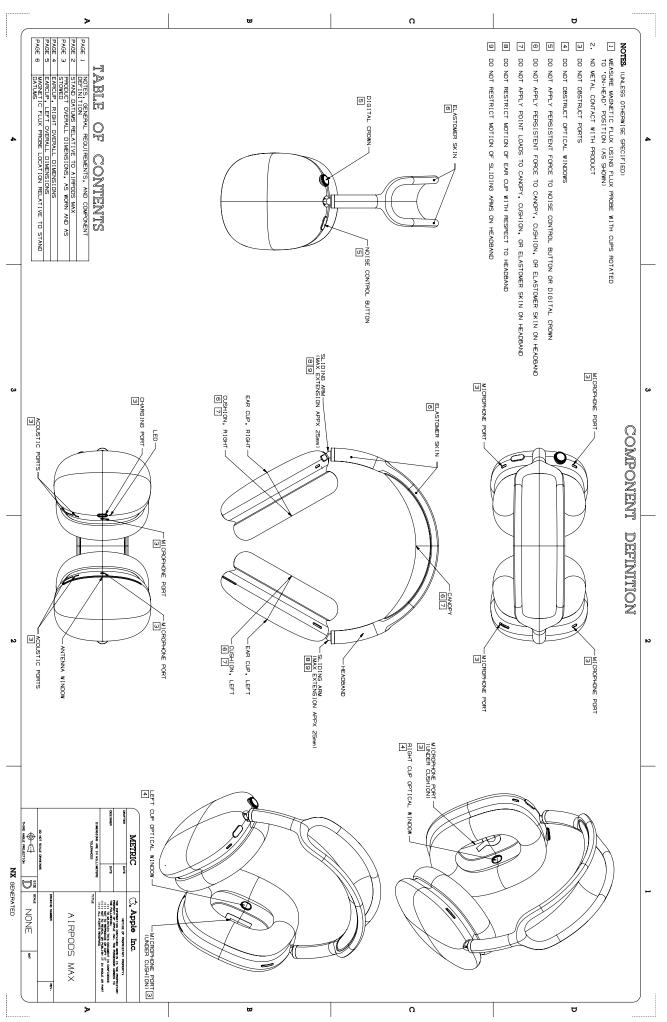
Ω

D

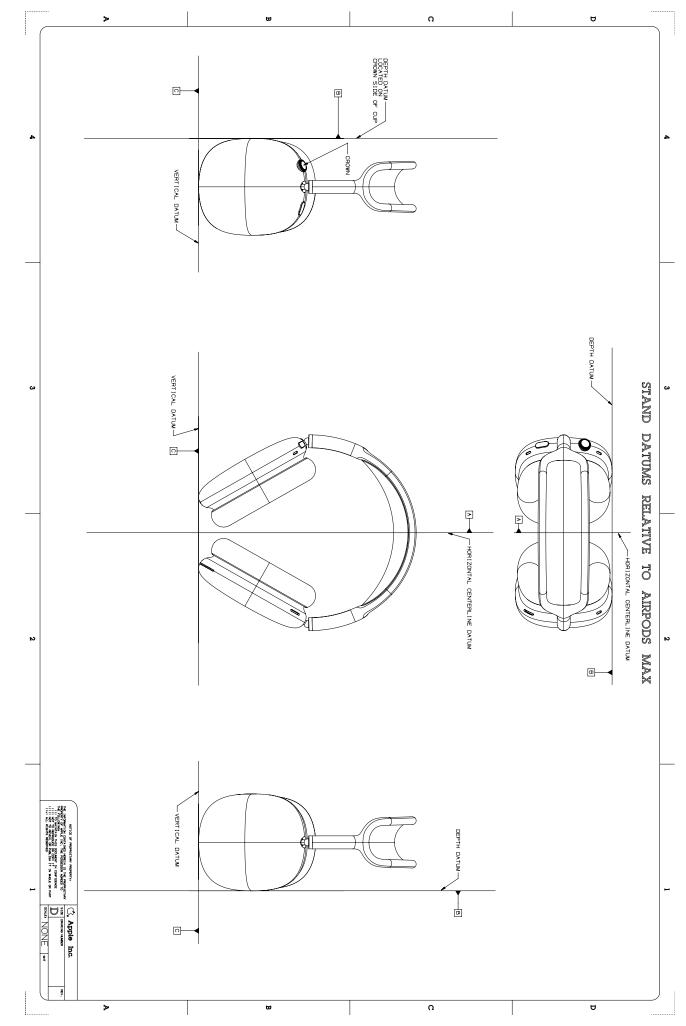
59.258 MagSafe Charging Case for AirPods (3rd generation)



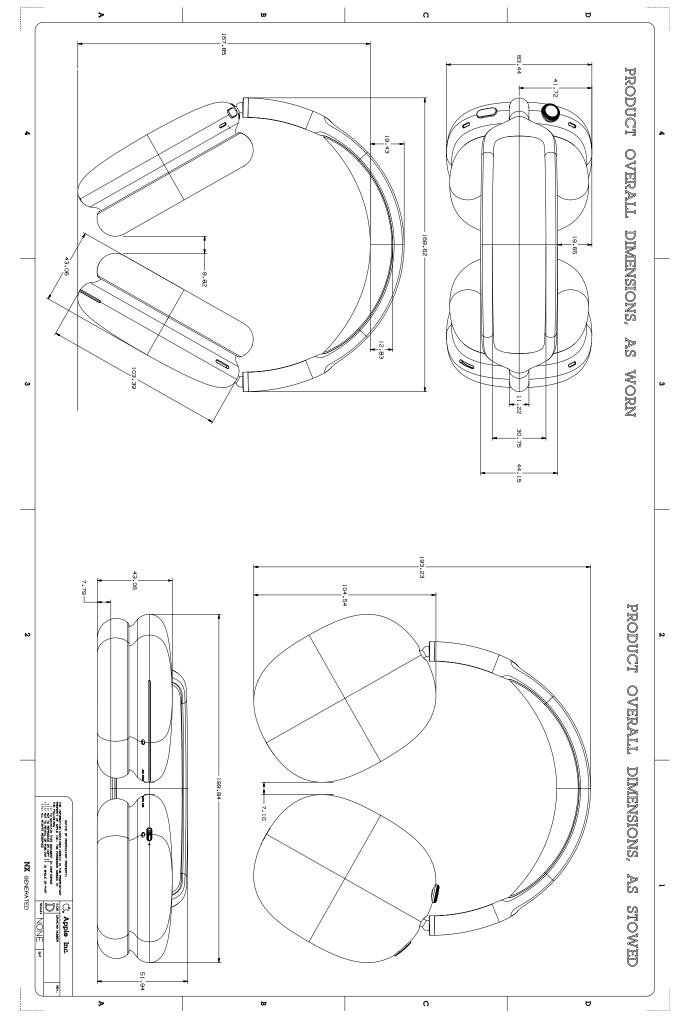
59.259 AirPods (3rd generation) Þ ш Ω U 15.3 2 ACCESSORIES MUST NOT COVER THESE METAL SURFACES NOTES: (UNLESS OTHERWISE SPECIFIED) ACCESSORIES INTRUDING INTO SHADED REGION WILL NEGATIVELY AFFECT PRODUCT PERFORMANCE 11.0-ယ ယ N N Ð × × × X.XXX ±0.050 DO NOT SCALE DRAWINGS ANGLES ±0.5° METRIC ±0.10 ±0.2 (), Apple Inc. THE INCOMMTION CONTAINED HEREIN IS THE PROPRIETIVANY THE INCOMMENTAL THIS DOCUMENT IN COMPILENCE THE TO MANIFACTURE OF CORPY IT THE INCOMMENTAL THIS DOCUMENT IN COMPILENCE THE INCOMMENTAL OF PARTICIPATION OF PARTICIPATION OF THE INCOMMENTAL OF PARTICIPATION OF THE INCOMMENTAL OF PARTICIPATION OF THE INCOMMENTAL OF T AirPods (3rd generation) NONE NX GENERATED ¥ 17.6 0.1 Þ ᄧ Ω U



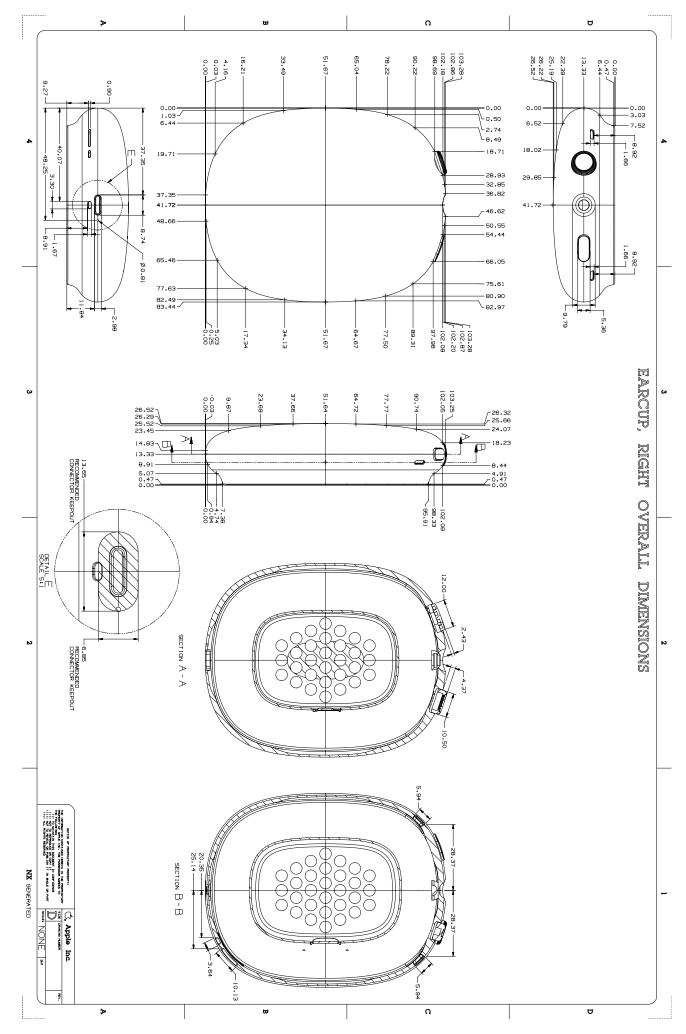
59.261 AirPods Max, 2 of 5



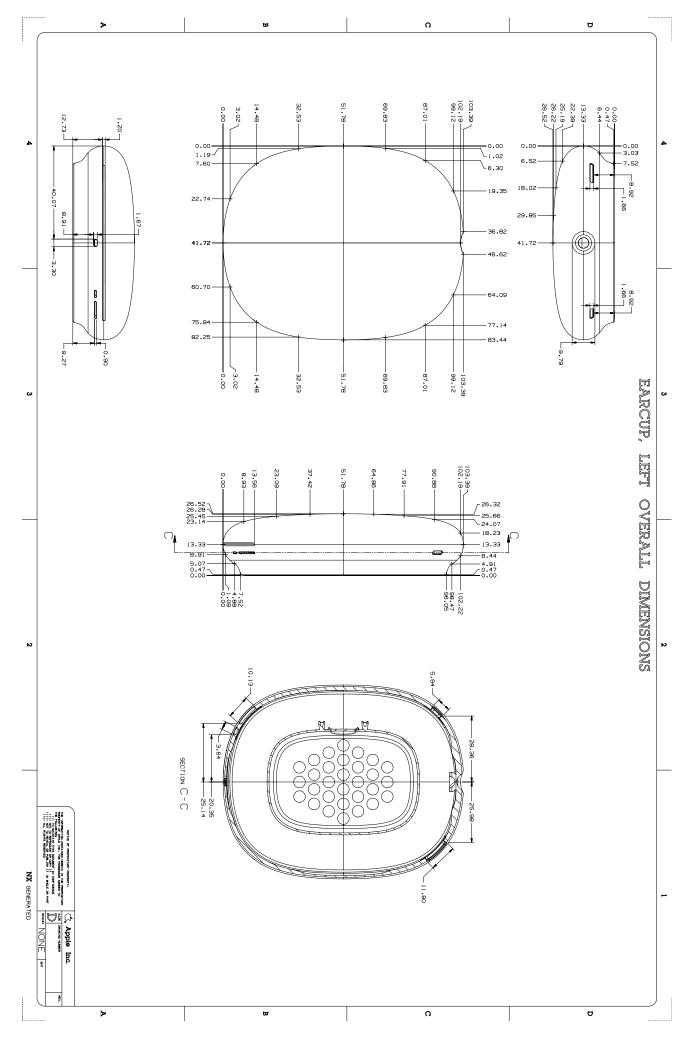
59.262 AirPods Max, 3 of 5



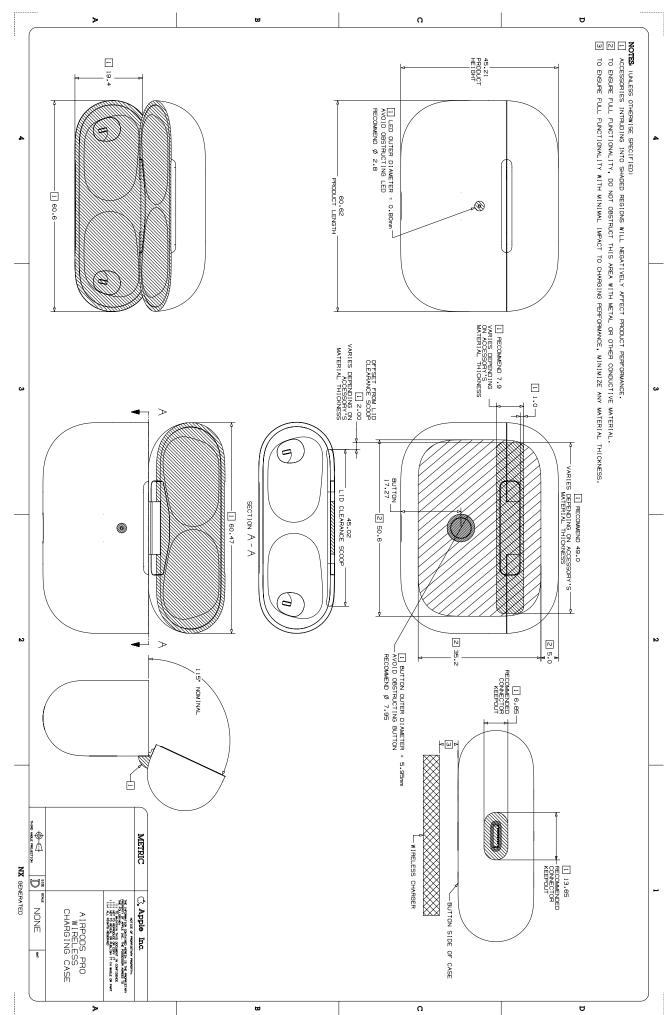
59.263 AirPods Max, 4 of 5



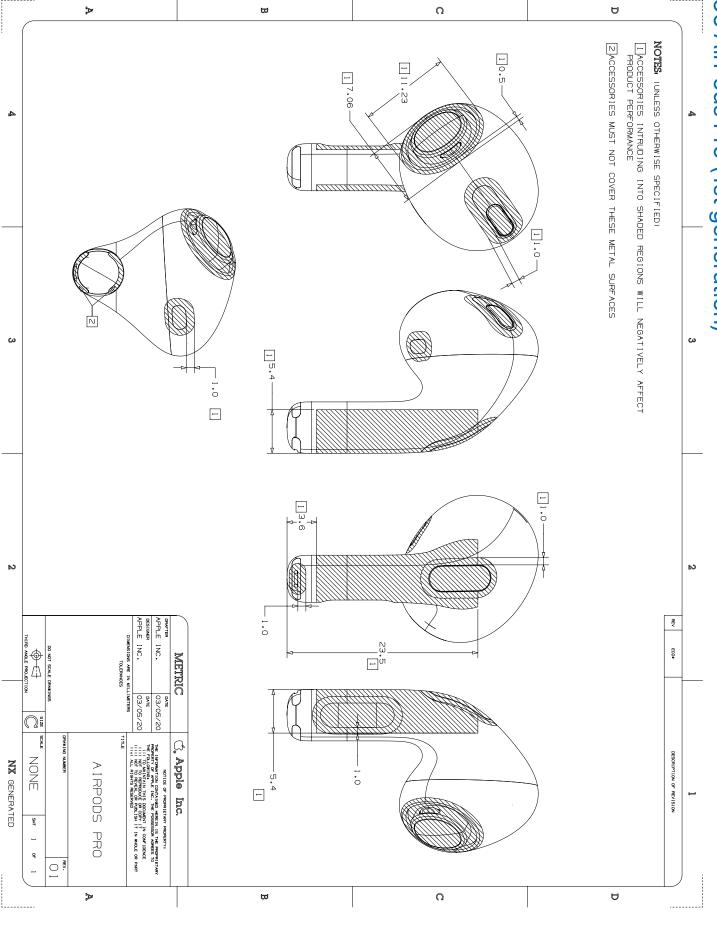
59.264 AirPods Max, 5 of 5



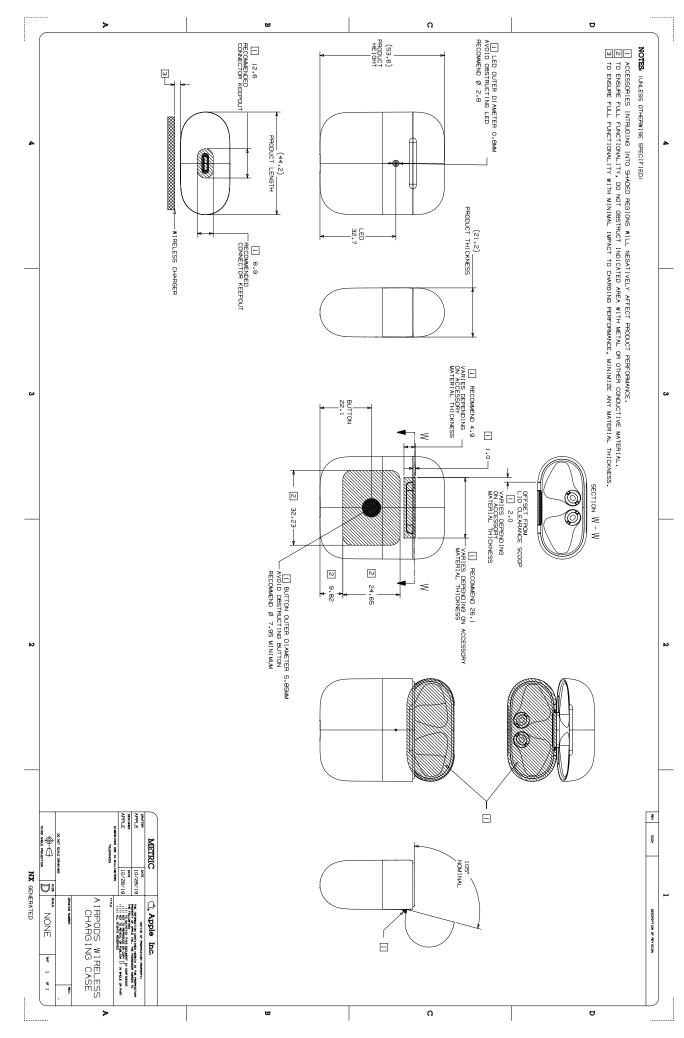
59.265 Wireless Charging Case for AirPods Pro (1st generation)



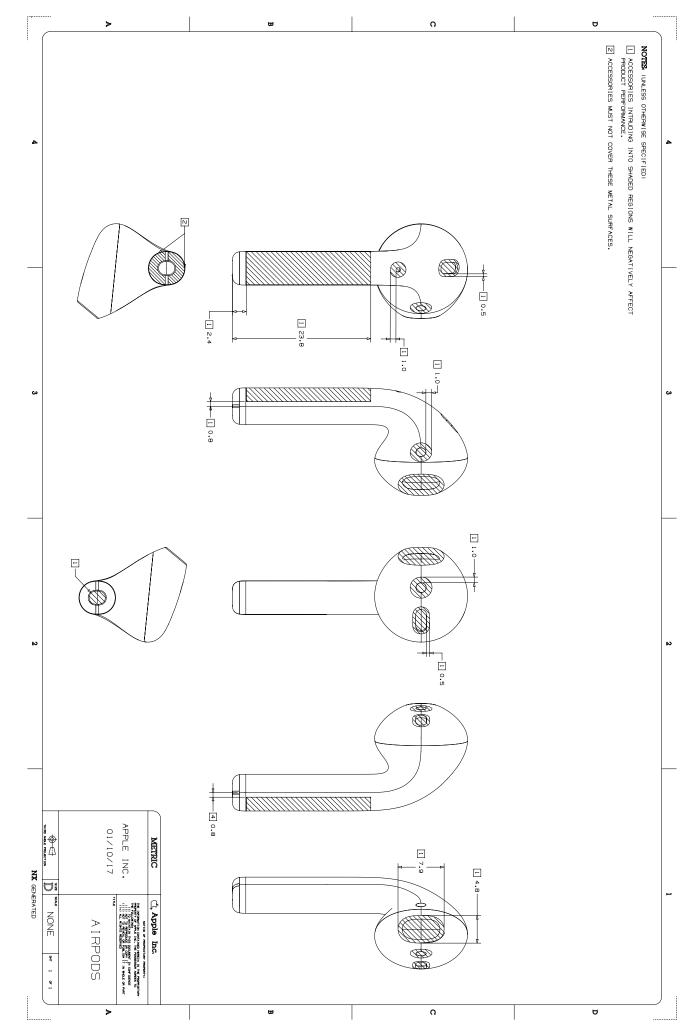
59.266 AirPods Pro (1st generation) NOTES: (UNLESS OTHERWISE SPECIFIED) N P ECO.



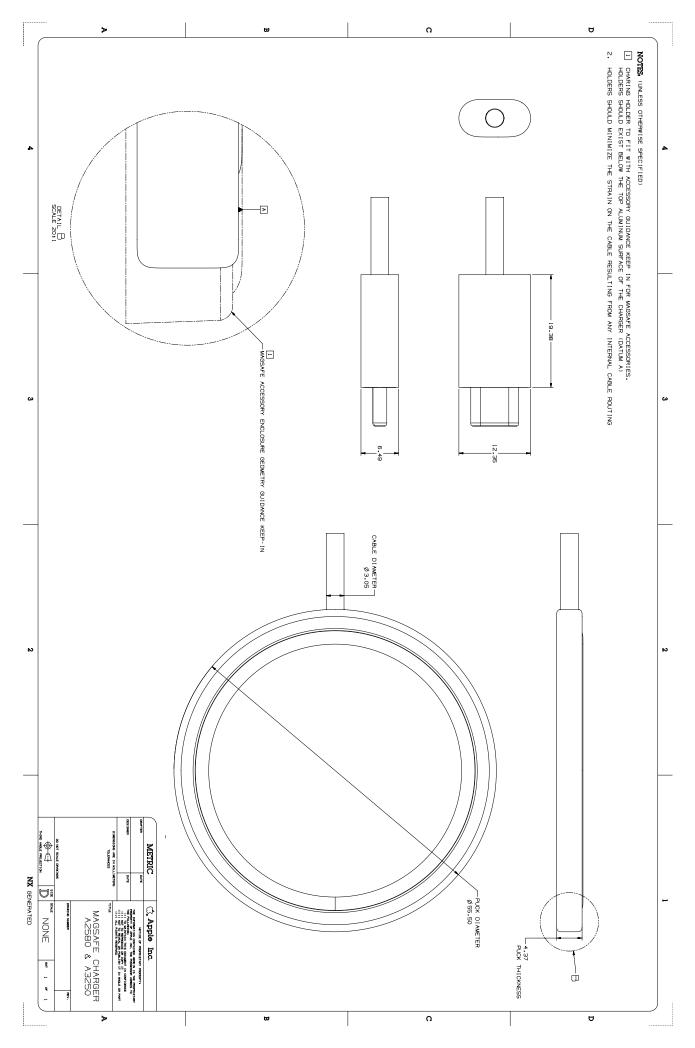
59.267 Wireless Charging Case for AirPods



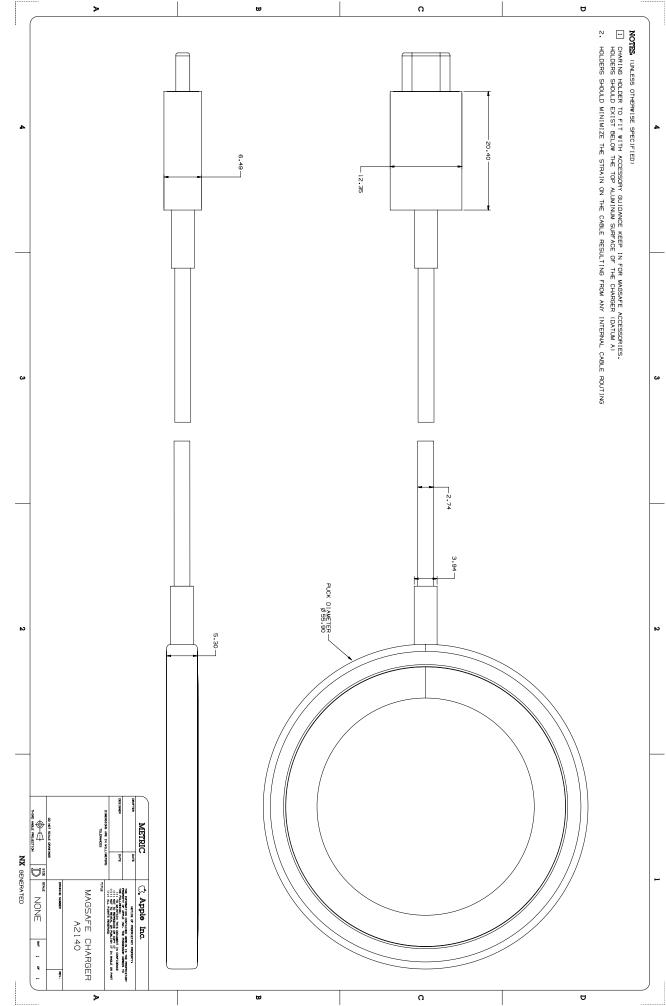
59.268 AirPods (1st generation) and AirPods (2nd generation)



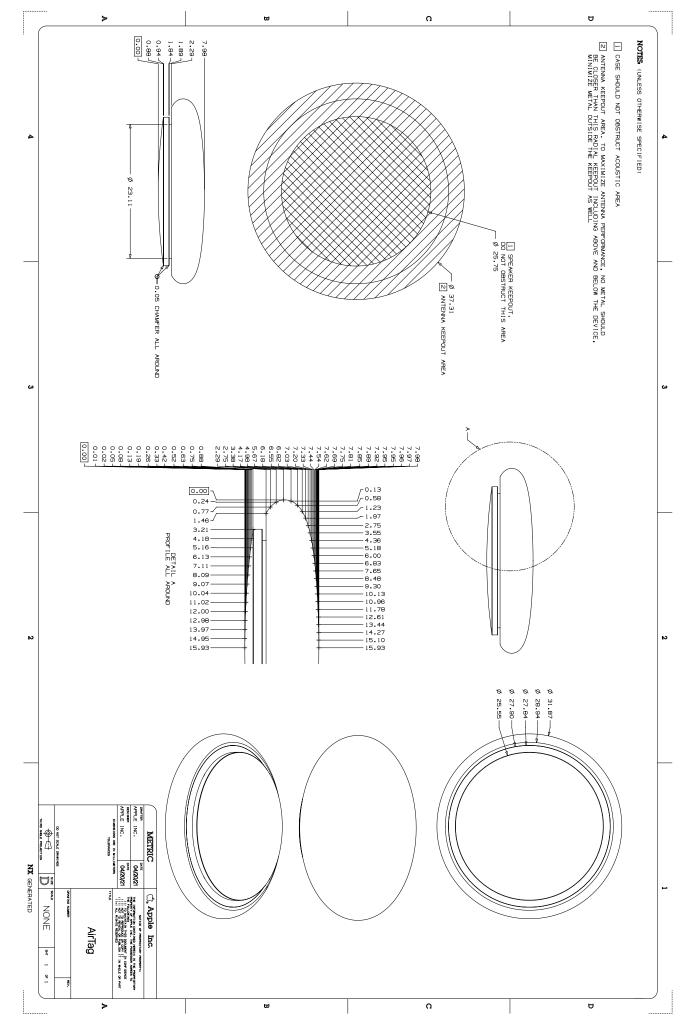
59.269 Apple MagSafe Charger (1 m) and Apple MagSafe Charger (2 m)



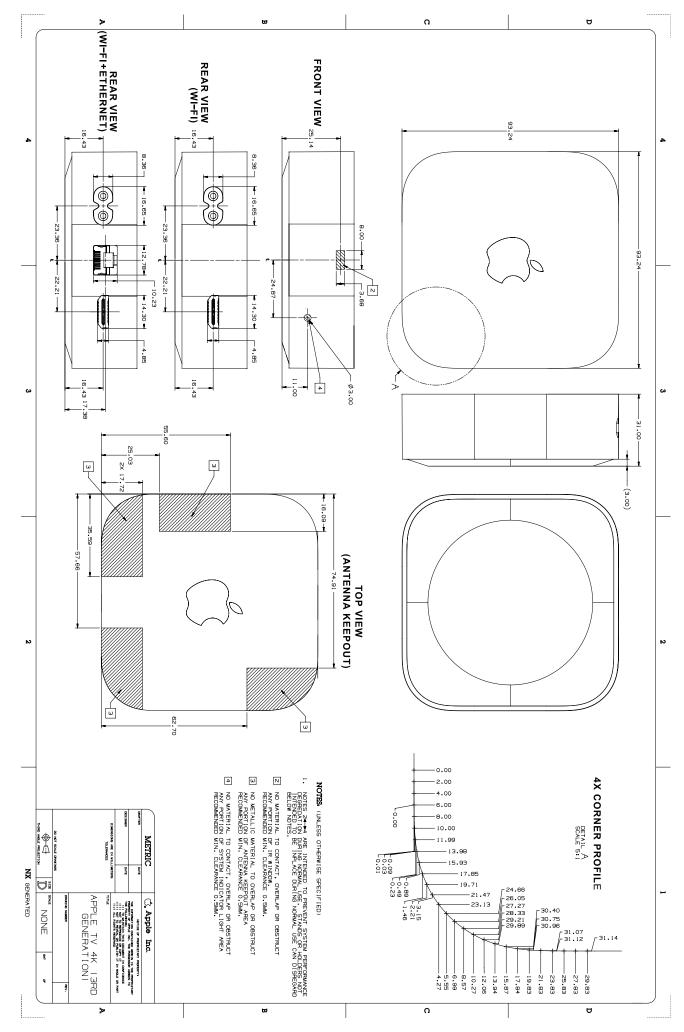
59.270 Apple MagSafe Charger



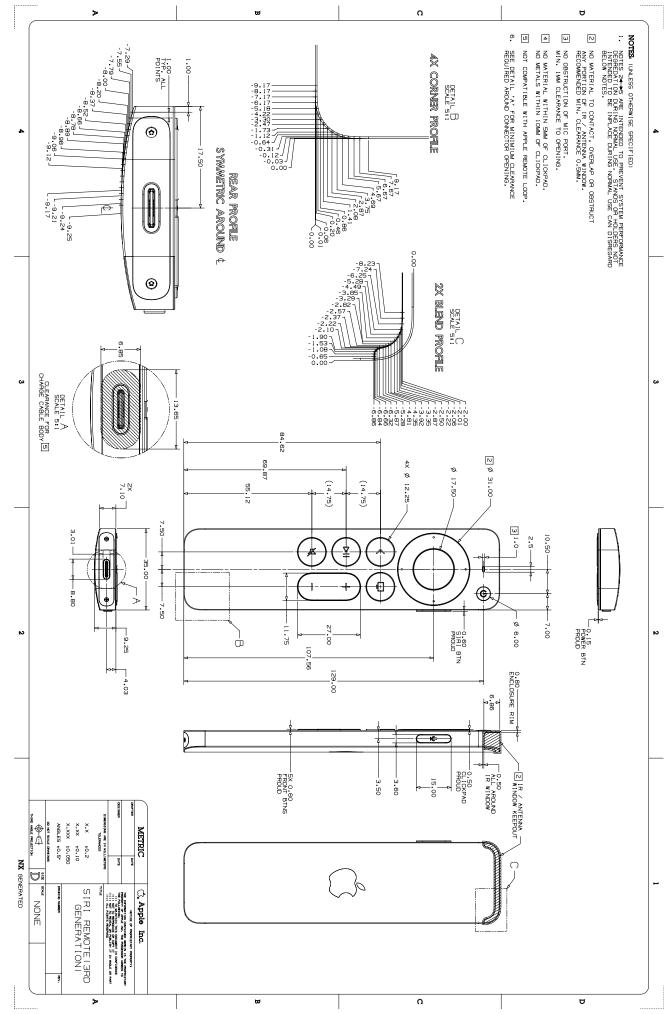
59.271 AirTa



59.272 Apple TV 4K (3rd generation)



59.273 Siri Remote (3rd generation)



Revision History

This chapter describes changes to the Accessory Design Guidelines for Apple Devices from the previous revision, excluding stylistic and editorial changes.

Added Content

- Anthropometric Considerations (page 34)
- Access to the Camera Control (page 36)
- External Storage (page 106)
 - Test Procedures (page 107)
- AirPods Accessories (page 108)
 - AirPods Max Accessories (page 109)
- Apple MagSafe Charger Mounts (page 121)
- iPhone 16 Pro Max, 1 of 4 (page 292)
- iPhone 16 Pro Max, 2 of 4 (page 293)
- iPhone 16 Pro Max, 3 of 4 (page 294)
- iPhone 16 Pro, 1 of 4 (page 296)
- iPhone 16 Pro, 2 of 4 (page 297)
- iPhone 16 Pro, 3 of 4 (page 298)
- iPhone 16 Plus, 1 of 4 (page 300)
- iPhone 16 Plus, 2 of 4 (page 301)
- iPhone 16 Plus, 3 of 4 (page 302)
- iPhone 16, 1 of 4 (page 304)
- iPhone 16, 2 of 4 (page 305)
- iPhone 16, 3 of 4 (page 306)
- Apple Watch Series 10, 46 mm (page 490)
- Apple Watch Series 10, 42 mm (page 491)
- Wireless Charging Case (USB-C) for AirPods 4, 1 of 3 (page 538)
- Wireless Charging Case (USB-C) for AirPods 4, 2 of 3 (page 539)
- Wireless Charging Case (USB-C) for AirPods 4, 3 of 3 (page 540)
- AirPods 4 (page 541)
- AirPods Max, 1 of 5 (page 551)
- AirPods Max, 2 of 5 (page 552)
- AirPods Max, 3 of 5 (page 553)

- AirPods Max, 4 of 5 (page 554)
- AirPods Max, 5 of 5 (page 555)
- Apple MagSafe Charger (1 m) and Apple MagSafe Charger (2 m) (page 560)
- Apple MagSafe Charger (page 561)

Updated Content

- Introduction (page 22)
- External Storage (page 106)
- AirPods Accessories (page 108)
 - Chargers (page 109)
- Available Current (page 135)
- Apple USB-C Analog Headset Module (page 243)
 - Overview (page 243)

Apple Inc.
Copyright © 2024 Apple Inc.
All rights reserved

Terms and Conditions ("Terms")

These Guidelines are made available to you for informational purposes only. If you make or distribute any accessory for an Apple device based on or in connection with these Guidelines ("Accessories"), you agree to the following covenants, terms and conditions:

All intellectual property rights in and to the Guidelines, and all technology described therein, are retained by Apple Inc. ("Apple"). You acknowledge and agree that Apple is not granting you, and nothing contained herein shall constitute or be construed or interpreted as a grant, by implication, estoppel or otherwise, of any license, covenant, immunity, release or right under or with respect to any intellectual property rights of Apple, including without limitation any rights to make, use, have made, sell, import, or otherwise relating in any way to any Apple device or technology described in or relating to the Guidelines.

You agree to follow Apple's Guidelines For Using Apple Trademarks and Copyrights as published on Apple's website at www.apple.com/legal/guidelinesfor3rdparties.html ("IP Guidelines") and as may be modified from time to time. You agree not to use the marks "Apple," the Apple Logo, "Mac", "iPhone," "iPod touch," "iPad," "Apple Watch," " WATCH" or any other marks belonging or licensed to Apple in any way except as expressly authorized in writing by Apple in each instance or as permitted in the IP Guidelines. You agree that all goodwill arising out of your authorized use of Apple's marks shall inure to the benefit of and belong to Apple.

You agree to indemnify, hold harmless, and, at Apple's option, defend, Apple against any claims, causes of action, losses, liabilities, damages, fines, settlements, costs, fees, and expenses (including attorney and other professional fees and expenses) arising out of: (i) your use of the Guidelines, including without limitation, any claims that any Accessory, or the combination of any Accessory with any software, technology, intellectual property, device, apparatus or assembly not supplied by Apple, infringes any patent, copyright, trade secret or other intellectual property right; (ii) the manufacture, use, promotion, distribution, sale, offer for sale, import, other distribution or exploitation or performance of any product, case, cover, band, charging stand, or other Accessory or product incorporating any Accessory, including any personal injury or product liability claims; or (iii) any failure to comply with any of the Guidelines. You will not, without Apple's prior written consent, make any admissions of liability, enter into any settlement that imposes any obligation on Apple, or publicize any settlement details relating to Apple. In addition, for any claims related to these Terms where you do not have an indemnification obligation, you shall provide all reasonable assistance to Apple and/or its counsel in connection with the defense, remedy or mitigation of such claims.

Applicable laws or regulations may impose additional restrictions or requirements on Accessories or products that incorporate the Accessories. You represent and warrant that you are in full compliance with all applicable laws, regulations, and policies in the United States and in any other location in which you engage, in whole or in part, in any activity related to the design, manufacture, marketing, sale or offer for sale, use, or other distribution of Accessories or products that incorporate the Accessories. You agree to promptly notify Apple of any complaints or threats of complaints regarding products that incorporate the Accessories with respect to any such regulatory requirements, in which case Apple may limit or terminate your ability to make, sell or purchase additional Accessories.

You expressly acknowledge and agree that access to the Guidelines is at your sole and entire risk and that you are solely responsible and liable for any harm or damage to any Apple product arising out of any breach by you of these covenants, terms and conditions. THE GUIDELINES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND WITHOUT REPRESENTATION, WARRANTY, UPGRADES OR SUPPORT OF ANY KIND. APPLE AND APPLE'S DISTRIBUTORS, AFFILIATES, LICENSOR(S) AND SUPPLIER(S) ("APPLE PARTIES") EXPRESSLY DISCLAIM ALL REPRESENTATIONS, WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF NON-INFRINGEMENT AND OF ACCURACY. NONE OF THE APPLE PARTIES WARRANTS THAT THE GUIDELINES OR ANY ACCESSORY WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, THAT DEFECTS IN THEM WILL BE CORRECTED OR THAT THEY WILL BE COMPATIBLE WITH FUTURE APPLE PRODUCTS. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY ANY APPLE PARTY OR AN APPLE AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE WILL CREATE A WARRANTY.

EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT SUCH A LIMITATION IS PROHIBITED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT WILL ANY APPLE PARTY BE LIABLE FOR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT, CONSEQUENTIAL, EXEMPLARY OR PUNITIVE DAMAGES, INCLUDING LOST PROFITS, LOST REVENUES OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTIONS, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATING TO THE GUIDELINES UNDER A THEORY OF CONTRACT, WARRANTY, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE), PRODUCTS LIABILITY OR OTHERWISE, EVEN IF ANY APPLE PARTY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES, AND NOTWITHSTANDING THE FAILURE OF ESSENTIAL PURPOSE OF ANY REMEDY. IN NO EVENT WILL THE APPLE PARTIES' TOTAL LIABILITY TO YOU FOR ALL DAMAGES AND CLAIMS UNDER OR RELATED TO THE GUIDELINES EXCEED THE AMOUNT OF US\$50.00.

These Terms will be governed by and construed and enforced under the laws of the United States and the State of Delaware, except that the arbitration clause and any arbitration hereunder shall be governed by the Federal Arbitration Act, Chapters 1 and 2. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply to these Terms. All disputes arising out of or in connection with these Terms shall be finally settled under the Rules of Arbitration of the International Chamber of Commerce by one arbitrator appointed in accordance with such rules, and shall be conducted according to the International Bar Association Rules on the Taking of Evidence in International Arbitration. The arbitration shall take place in San Francisco, California. The arbitration shall be conducted in English. The award shall be rendered within six months of the commencement of the arbitration, unless the arbitrator determines that the interest of justice requires that such limit be extended.